

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

HDI
HW 22KD C

Digitized by Google

KE10426

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A

NEW METHOD

OF LEARNING THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE:

EMBRACING BOTH THE

Analytic and Synthetic Modes of Instruction;

BEING

A PLAIN AND PRACTICAL WAY OF ACQUIRING THE ART

OF

READING, SPEAKING, AND COMPOSING GERMAN.

BY

W. H. WOODBURY, A.M.,

AUTHOR OF "SHORTER COURSE WITH GERMAN," "ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER," "ECLECTIC GERMAN READER," "GERMAN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-GERMAN READER," "NEW METHOD FOR GERMANS TO LEARN ENGLISH," OR: "Neue Methode zur Erlernung der englischen Sprache," ETC.

Wer fremde Sprachen nicht kennt, weiß nichts von seiner eignen.

Goethe.

NEW YORK:
IVISON, PHINNEY, BLAKEMAN & CO.,
CHICAGO: S. C. GRIGGS & CO.

1866.

Digitized by Google

KE10426

Just Published.

A KEY TO THE EXERCISES IN WOODBURY'S NEW METHOD WITH THE GERMAN LANGUAGE.

IVISON, PHINNEY & CO.

HARVARD UNIVERSITY LIBRARY
04A172

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1855, by
W. H. WOODBURY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the Southern District of New York.

STEREOTYPED BY
SMITH & McDOUGAL,
82 & 84 Beekman-st.

Digitized by Google

TO

JAMES N. M°ELLIGOTT, LL.D.

IN WHOM ARE FOUND

HIGH MORAL WORTH, RARE PHILOLOGICAL ATTAINMENTS,

EXTRAORDINARY SUCCESS AS A PRACTICAL EDUCATOR,

AND AN ABLE AND ELOQUENT ADVOCATE OF

THE CAUSE OF GENERAL EDUCATION,

This Volume

IS MOST CORDIALLY DEDICATED

BY HIS FRIEND,

THE AUTHOR.

Digitized by Google

WOODBURY'S GERMAN SERIES.

I. NEW METHOD WITH GERMAN.
523 pp. 12mo.—Price,

II. KEY TO NEW METHOD
80 pp. 12mo.—Price

III. SHORTER COURSE WITH GERMAN.
230 pp. 12mo.— Price

IV. KEY TO SHORTER COURSE.
80 pp. 12mo.—Price

V. ELEMENTARY GERMAN READER.
250 pp. 12mo.—Price,

VI. ECLECTIC GERMAN READER.
280 pp. 12mo.—Price,

VII. GERMAN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-GERMAN READER.
70 pp. 12mo.—Price

VIII. Woodbury's Neue Methode
zur Erlernung der englischen Sprache.
Preis

Fasquelle's French Series.

I. FRENCH COURSE.
500 pp. 12mo.—Price

II. KEY TO FRENCH COURSE.
140 pp. 12mo.—Price,

III. COLLOQUIAL FRENCH READER.
260 pp. 12mo.—Price

IV. TÉLÉMAQUE.
390 pp. 12mo.—Price,

V. NAPOLEON
274 pp. 12mo.—Price,

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

The German Language is now deservedly ranked among the leading studies in many of our High Schools and Academies. Its treasures in every department of knowledge, in every variety of composition, are certainly among the wonders of literary achievement. Among European tongues it holds a decided superiority of rank; surpassing them all in the abundance of its words, in the richness of its internal resources, and in its wonderful flexibility. Hence the propriety of its place among liberal studies.

But the motives to the study of this language reach far beyond the circles of literary life. Celerity and cheapness of travel, growing out of recent improvements in navigation, have united in producing an easy intercourse between Germany and America. Besides, we have already in our midst an immense and daily augmenting German population. The language of this people is spoken extensively among us, and has hence come to have a high practical value. It is often set down as an indispensable qualification even for a common clerkship.

Such being the character and importance of the German language, various attempts have been made, as was natural, to give greater facility in learning it. Some of these are unquestionably excellent works; executed, according to the plan which they have adopted, in a manner skillful and judicious. But just here, in *plan*, as it seems to the present writer, all of them are more or less lacking; and out of this conviction has arisen the present volume.

The grounds of this conviction may be briefly stated. Years ago, when the author, with something of enthusiasm, resolved, if possible, to master the language, and for that, among other

Digitized by Google

purposes, resided for some time in Germany, he found his ardor not a little abated by the circumstance, that, in no one of the numerous grammars which he had collected about him, was he able to pursue his studies on what he deemed philosophical principles. The methods of the books were in one sense various; but all were plainly divisible into two extremely opposite classes. In one class *theory* held the sway; in the other *practice* was supreme. The one seemed bent upon grounding the pupil in set rules and forms, and anxious chiefly to present and impress the language, as a thing of science, a systematic whole. The other appeared to deal almost exclusively in separate and independent facts; intent only on exhibiting and teaching the German tongue, as a thing of art, a medium of common communication. That such a knowledge of the language as he had proposed to himself to acquire, could never be obtained by either of these methods exclusively, was perfectly evident. That not only the surest, but even the shortest route to his object, might be found in the due combination of the two, seemed not less obvious. For art has her only just basis in the science that lies underneath; without which she is liable to frequent failure and perpetual uncertainty.

The attempt, then, in this book is to unite and harmonize more fully two things, which, in teaching a language, ought never to be separated: the *theoretical* and the *practical*. This leading feature being announced, we now proceed to specify some details of the plan.

It assumes in the outset, as ever afterward, the position of the careful and considerate *living* teacher; that is, introduces one by one the easier forms and usages of the language, and directs attention to the more obvious differences between the German and the English. It here seeks to avoid the error of frightening the beginner with a formidable array of rules, declensions and conjugations, which he is, as yet, in no wise prepared to entertain.

After a certain amount of progress in these preliminary steps, the pupil is put upon the exercise of composing in German. To this end he is taught to regard every German sentence, given him for translation, as a model on which he is to

Digitized by Google

build one of his own. He is in no wise trammeled as to the thought; he is under no necessity of divesting it of some particular English dress, given it by the hand of another; but is encouraged to take *any* thought which may suggest itself, and, under the guidance of his model sentence and what other light he has received, to put it into a German garb. In this way, he comes gradually to *feel* the difference between the English and the German modes of expression, and thence derives accuracy and readiness in *making* them. Conjointly with this process, and in order to its more complete success, the practice of turning English sentences into German, as well as German into English, is carried on in a series of exercises at once progressive, comprehensive and systematic.

It supplies the learner throughout all these various exercises with the materials necessary to their due performance. Every lesson is headed with the statement and illustration of all new principles involved, an explanation of difficult words and phrases, and a vocabulary alphabetically arranged. Nothing, indeed, is left unsupplied, which the student can not readily obtain for himself.

It does not, however, in regard to grammatical instruction, leave the learner here. For, although it embraces somewhere or other in the previous course, all the leading facts and features of the language, it purposely deals with them rather as *individuals* than as components of a grammatical system. It takes them analytically, not synthetically. But now, having accomplished its purpose in this respect, it invites the attention of the student to a new and more scientific aspect of them. They come before him now, not as *new* things, but in new relations. He has all the advantage of an impressive review, and at the same time gives discipline to his mind, by giving order to its acquisitions.

It furthermore, as is plain, adapts itself to all classes of teachers and learners. Those who insist upon the more purely practical method, who regard every thing beyond as superfluous, if not pernicious, will find the course contained in the first part, all-sufficient, it is believed, to answer their demands. To those, on the other hand, who can tolerate nothing short of

Digitized by Google

a strictly systematic course, first and last, the second part will, it is hoped, be found no unacceptable offering. To those, finally, who sympathize with the author in the view that these two methods can and ought to be united in teaching a language, the entire work is presented with all the confidence of experienced success.

To render it yet more complete in itself, a carefully selected series of Reading Lessons, from the best German writers, has been added, together with a full vocabulary (pp. 471 and 505).

Throughout the volume, great care has been taken to furnish in every particular, however trivial it might seem, the most reliable instruction. And in this respect, as in others, it is hoped, the work will be found especially acceptable to that large class of students who aim at the acquisition of the language mainly without the aid of a teacher. Indeed, for their purposes, many features in the system will prove peculiarly serviceable.

In the matter of declension and conjugation—in the account of derivatives and compounds—in the tabular views of verbs, regular and irregular, simple and compound—in the illustrations of the powers and uses of the prepositions and other particles—in short, in all leading points, the author has sought to present those views only which are now recognized as the best and truest by the highest German authorities. To the labors of Becker and Heyse especially is he indebted; though numerous are the works on German grammar, which have been consulted in view of this publication.

Finally, with the sincere desire that this course of study may subserve the purpose of rendering the German language and literature more easy of access, and with a grateful acknowledg ment of the friendly aid which has been received from several gentlemen of known ability in linguistic science, the work is respectfully submitted.

New York, October, 1855.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS OF THE LESSONS.

PAGE

LESSON I.—German Alphabet 19

LESSON II.—Sounds of letters.—I. Vowels.—II. Umlauts.—III. Diphthongs.—IV. Consonants.—V. Compound Consonants.—VI. Accent 20

LESSON III.—Current hand 22

LESSON IV.—1. Forms of definite article.—2. Haben present singular 23

LESSON V.—Singen and Warten present singular.—1. Root.—2. Form of Conjugation 24

LESSON VI.—Interrogative Conjugation 26

LESSON VII.—1. Verbs irregular present singular.—2. Gender of Nouns 27

LESSON VIII.—1. Cases.—2. Declension of Nouns.—3. Nouns of *Old* decl. ending in e, el, en, er, chen, lein.—4. *Old* decl. with def. Art. Agreement of article with noun.—5. Verbs with dat. and acc. 29

LESSON IX.—1. Genitive, how rendered.—2. Nouns adding es in gen. Occasional omission of e in gen. and dat. 31

LESSON X.—1. Demonstrative pronouns Dieser and Jener.—2. Often rendered by *latter—former*.—3. The word *one*.—4. Decl. of dieser, etc.—5. Sein and Vergessen pres. sing. 33

LESSON XI.—1. Dative with prepositions.—2. Dative with verbs of motion.—3. Omission of prep.—4. *Of*, how expressed in German.—5. Position of Prep. 36

LESSON XII.—1. Indef. Art.—2. 3. Poss. Prons.—4. Decl. of indef. Art., etc.—5. e when often dropped.—6. Words in apposition ... 38

LESSON XIII.—1. Interrogative Pronouns.—2. Was für separated.—3. Welcher and was für in exclamations.—4. Welch in questions.—5. Ein rendered by *a one*.—6. Was for warum. Decl. of wer and was.—7. Gen. of was.—8. Womit, etc. 41

LESSON XIV.—1. Adjectives used predicatively.—2. Used attributively.—3. *Old* decl. of Adjs.—4. Agreement of Adj. with Nouns.—5. Attributive and predicative forms of Adj.—6. Adjs. preceded by etwas, was and nichts.—7. Adjs. referring to noun understood 44

Digitized by Google

PAGE

LESSON XV.—1. *New* decl. of Adjs.—2. Form of *New* decl. in nom.—3. Final syllable of mancher, etc., sometimes dropped.—4. Adj. placed after noun.—5. Adj. formed from nouns..... 47

LESSON XVI.—1. *Mixed* decl. of Adjs.—2. Adjs. following mein, etc.—3. Eigen. Endings of *Mixed* decl. nom.—4. Ein as numeral.—5. Inflection of ein and kein.—6. Ein preceded by def. art. 50

LESSON XVII.—1. Connected view of *Old*, *New* and *Mixed* declensions.—2. Words requiring adj. in *New* decl.—3. Words requiring adj. in *Mixed* decl..... 54

LESSON XVIII.—1. Indefinite pronouns.—2. 3. Jedermann.—4. Jemand.—5. Niemand.—6. Nicht with Jemand and Etwas.—7. Einer and Keiner..... 56

LESSON XIX.—1. 2. Indefinite pronoun man.—3. Gar, and ganz und gar..... 59

LESSON XX.—1. Prepositions with dat.—2. Prepositions with acc.—3. Prepositions with dat. and acc.—4. Preps. and def. art. contracted. Examples of an, von, auf, aus and nach.....61

LESSON XXI.—1. Negative conjugation.—2. Position of Nicht.—3. In interrogative sentences.—4. Sondern and Aber.—5. 6. Nicht wahr?—7. Nicht with Noch.—8. Auch nicht, auch kein, etc..... 64

LESSON XXII.—1. *New* decl. ending in unaccented ar, e, er, el.—2. Nouns not ending in ar, etc.—3. Adj. or Part. used substantively.—5. For determining decl..... 67

LESSON XXIII.—Feminine gender.—1. Decl. of die, diese and meine.—2. Decl. of Adjs. in fem. gen. *Old* decl.—3. *New* decl.—4. Decl. of Fem. Nouns.—5. 6. Appellations of Females.—7. A, o, u, umlauted before the suffix in..... 70

LESSON XXIV.—1. Formation and Gen. of Diminutives.—2. Use of Diminutives.—3. Fräulein and Mädchen.—4. 5. Compound Nouns. Nouns with Nouns.—6. With Preps., etc.—7. With Adjs.—8. Compound Adjs.—9. 10. Nouns separated by hyphen.—11. 12. 13. Gender of Compound Nouns..... 74

LESSON XXV.—Plan of Composing German.—1. Art., and adj. Prons., *Plural*. Decl. in all Genders of Plur.—2. Adjs.—3. *Old* decl.—4. 5. *Plural* of Nouns of *Old* decl., *Neuter*.—6. 7. *Masc.*—8. *Fem.*—9. Decl. of Nouns in Plural.—10. Haben, Sein and Loben, pres. plur..... 79

LESSON XXVI.—1. Irreg. Plur. of Nouns.—2. *Neuter* Nouns.—3. *Masc.* Nouns.—4. Nouns ending in thum.—5. Plural of Mann.—6. Leute and Volk.—7. Apfel, etc.—8. Mutter and Tochter.—9. Aal, etc.—10. Sing., how used..... 84

LESSON XXVII.—1. Decl. of Pers. Prons.—2. *Second* Pers. *Sing.*—3. *Second* Pers. *Plur.*—4. *Third* Pers. *Sing.*—5. *Third* Pers. *Plur.* 87

Digitized by Google

PAGE

LESSON XXVIII.—1. 2. Gen. of Pers. Prons.—3. Dat. with von.—4. Pronouns referring to *Neuter* Appellations of Persons.—5. Gender of Prons. representing inanimate objects.—6. Adverbs substituted for *pron.* and *prep.*—7. Use of es as gram. subj.—8. Position of.—9. 10. Various uses of es.—11. Prons. of different persons.—12. Pron. repeated.—13. Gen. of a Pers. Pron. before Numerals 91

LESSON XXIX.—1. Reflexive use of Pers. Prons.—2. Sich.—3. 4. 5. Selbſt.—6. Reflexive pronouns used as reciprocal.—7. Sich rendered by Pers. Pron.—8. Position of Pers. Pron. in interrogative sentences.—9. 10. 11. Reflexive Verbs 95

LESSON XXX.—*New* decl. *plur.*—1. Adjs.—2. Nouns.—3. *Fem.* Nouns.—4. 5. 6. Decl. of *Proper* Names.—7. *Foreign* Proper Names.—8. *Proper* Names of *Places* and *Countries*.—9. *Connected View* of the Art., Demonst. and Poss. Prons., Adj. and Nouns, in all Decls. 100

LESSON XXXI.—Irreg. decl. of Nouns.—1. Nouns inflected according to New decl.—2. Mixed decl. of Adjs. in plur.—3. Fels and Friede.—4. Der Schmerz.—5. Nouns taking *Old* decl. in *sing.*, and *New* in *plur.*—6. Decl. of Bauer and Auge.—7. Bett and Hemd.—8. See.—9. *Mixed* decl. of Adj. 106

LESSON XXXII.—Comparison of Adjs.—1. Comparative.—2. Superlative.—3. When umlauted.—4. Irregular.—5. How declined.—6. Superlative after am.—7. Superlative combined with Aller.—8. Comparative by means of Mehr, Weniger, etc.—9. Participles, how declined.—10. Je-deſto and je-je.—11. Position of subject and verb 109

LESSON XXXIII.—1. Adjs. used substantively.—2. As abstract Nouns.—3. Beſt.—4. Comparative of Nahe.—5. Formation of Adjs. from *Proper* Names of *Countries* and *Cities*.—6. From *Proper* Names of *Persons*.—7. Denoting a sect. 113

LESSON XXXIV.—1. Eitel and Lauter, omission of inflectional endings.—2. Several Adjs. qualifying the same noun.—3. In nom. and acc. Neut.—4. Adj. denoting a language.—5 Form of the New decl.—6. Sentences used adjectively.—7. Adjs. used adverbially.—8. 9. Adverbs.—10. Comparative of Viel, etc. 117

LESSON XXXV.—1. Absolute Poss. Prons.—2. 3. Used substantively.—4. Meinesgleichen, etc.—5. Gleichen. 121

LESSON XXXVI.—1. Conjugation of Haben.—2. *Idioms* with Haben.—3. *Position* of the *main* verb in *compound tenses*.—4. Verb with two objects connected by a conj.—5. Two or more nouns in sing.—6. With collective nouns.—7. With words as titles, in sing. 125

Digitized by Google

PAGE

LESSON XXXVII.—Conjugation of Lieben.—1. Present Participle.—2. 3. Perfect Participle.—4. Inflection of the Participles.—5. *Present, sing.*—6. *Plur.*—7. *Imperfect, sing.*—8. *Plur.*—9. *Perfect* and *Pluperfect.*—10. Future.—11. 12. Orthographic and euphonic changes.—13. *Imperative* 129

LESSON XXXVIII.—Use of the Tenses.—1. *Present.*—2. *Imperfect.*—3. *Perfect.*—4. *Future* Tenses.—5. 6. *Imperative.* Du and Ihr, Sie.—7. Verb repeated or wholly omitted 134

LESSON XXXIX.—1. Relative Prons.—2. Decl. of the relative der.—3. Use of gen.—4. Welcher, e, es, used in the sense of *some, any.*—5. Construction of sentences with rel. Prons.—6. Words requiring the same construction. Principal and Subordinate Sentences.—7. Relative clause and principal sentence. Examples of..... 138

LESSON XL.—1. Wer and Was as relative.—2. Wer for Jemand.—3. Use of Was.—4. Pronominal Adverbs.—5. Agreement of the Verb with relative.—6. Position and omission of relative.—7. Relative repeated.—8. Omission of Copula..... 142

LESSON LXI.—1. Determinative Pronouns.—2. Derjenige.—3. Der for Derjenige.—4. Derselbe.—5. Solcher, followed by a relative.—6. Followed by wie.—7. Omitted.—8. Used with indef. art.—9. Used as a substitute for a demonst. or a pers. Pron..... 145

LESSON XLII.—1. *Def.* art.—2. Art. with beide, halb, so, solcher, wie and zu.—3. *Indef.* art..... 149

LESSON XLIII.—1. Omission of art.—2. Nach Hause, etc.—3. Omission or retention of art.—4. Before the substantively used infinitive.—5. Omission formerly more common.—6. With zu before the dat..... 153

LESSON XLIV.—1. Demonstrative Pronouns.—2. Demonstrat. Der with noun.—3. Rendered by pers. pron.—4. Used before the gen.—5. Dessen, Deren.—6. Deß in compounds.—7. Dieses and welches with the verb Sein.—8. Eben..... 156

LESSON XLV.—1. *Auxiliaries* of *mode.*—2. Conjugation of the mode auxiliaries.—3. Formation of *Plur.*—4. Dürfen.—5. Können.—6. Umhin with Können.—7. Mögen.—8. Müssen.—9. Sollen.—10. Wollen.—11. Lassen.—12. *Conjugation of.*—13. Form of *Perfect* and *Pluperfect.*—14. Position of *infinitive form* of the *Participle.*—15. Omission of *main* verb..... 161

LESSON XLVI.—1. Conjugation of Sein.—2. *Idioms* with Sein.—3. Conjugation of Werden.—4. Werden as an independent verb.. 167

LESSON XLVII.—1. "*Irregular*" Verbs.—2. Form of infinitive.—

Digitized by Google

PAGE

§ 4. 5. Formation of *Imperfect* Tense and *Perfect* Participle.—6. *Irregular* in *Present* tense.—7. Formation of *second* and *third* persons..... 172

LESSON XLVIII.—*Use* of the auxiliaries haben and Sein.—1. haben.—2. Sein with what verbs used.—3. haben *or* Sein..... 179

LESSON XLIX.—1. Infinitive without zu.—2. Spazíren with fahren, führen, reiten and gehen.—*Infinitive* as the *Subject* or *Object* of a verb.—4. As a *Noun*.—5. After Anſtatt, Ohne and Um.—6. Used passively.—7. Wiſſen *followed* by an *infinitive*..... 182

LESSON L.—*Participles* and *Imperative*.—1. *Present* participle used *attributively* and *predicatively*.—2. *Perfect* participle.—3. *Perfect* participle for *Imperative*.—4. *Future* participle.—5. Imperative.—6. Dadurch, daß..... 185

LESSON LI.—1. *Compound* verbs *separable*.—2. 3. 4. *Position* of the particle.—5. Prefixed to a verb *not* accented on the first syllable.—6. Signification of..... 188

LESSON LII.—*Adverbs*.—1. Da, etc., with verbs of rest.—2. Her and hin compounded with other words.—3. Separated from wo.—4. Rendered by a Preposition.—5. Formation of adverbs.—6. Formed of various parts of speech..... 191

LESSON LIII.—Collocation of words.—1. Words requiring the verbs at the end of the sentence.—2. Words followed by the correlative ſo.—3. The correlative ſo followed by doch or dennoch.—4. Aber, etc.—5. *Inversion* of subject and verb.—6. Conjunction omitted in translation.—7. *Position* of Adverbs with Adjs.—8. With Verbs.—9. Adverbs of *time* and *manner*..... 194

LESSON LIV.—Compound verbs inseparable.—1. Unaccented particles.—2. 3. Unaccented or accented.—4. Augment..... 199

LESSON LV.—Subjunctive. Conjugation of Sein, haben and Werden.—1. Use of Subjunctive.—2. Perfect and Pluperfect rendered by Present and Perfect.—3. Subjunctive for Imperative.—4. 5. Formation of Subjunctive of regular verbs.—6. Of irregular verbs 201

LESSON LVI.—Conditional. Conjugation of Sein, haben and Werden.—1. Use of Conditional.—2. Imperfect and Pluperfect of Subjunctive substituted.—3. *a. b. c. d.* Employment of Conditional 206

LESSON LVII.—1. *Impersonal* Verbs.—2. Omission of es.—3. Dauchten, dünken.—4. Geben used impersonally.—5. Fehlen, etc.—6. Impersonal and reflexive..... 210

LESSON LVIII.—1. Paradigm of a Passive verb.—2. Formation of Passive Verbs.—3. Omission of Werden.—4. Used impersonally 214

LESSON LXIX.—1. Proper and common Names.—2. Date.—3. Nouns of weight, &c.—4. When the latter noun is qualified by some other word.—5. Mann.—6. Ein Paar..... 218

Digitized by Google

PAGE

LESSON LX.—1. Prepositions with gen.—2. Längs and Trotz.—3. Entlang.—4. Halb, halben or halber, ungeachtet and wegen.—5. Um willen.—6. Halben, etc., in compounds.—7. Anſtatt.—8. Wegen preceded by von 220

LESSON LXI.—1. Adjs. with gen.—2. With acc.—3. Voll.—4. Froh.—5. Schuldig.—6. Werth.—7. Gen. used in denoting relation of magnitude.—8. Used adverbially.—9. Denoting possession.—10. Gen. of Pers. prons. used partitively.—11. Gen. used partitively.—12. As predicate after the verb Sein..... 224

LESSON LXII.—1. Reflexive Verbs with gen.—2. Impersonal Verbs with gen.—3. Transitive Verbs with gen.—4. Verbs followed by prepositions.—5. Verbs with gen. and acc.—6. Achten and Warten.—7. Harren.—8. Gedenken.—9. Lachen, Spotten and Walten 228

LESSON LXIII.—1. Adjs. with dat.—2. Dat. substituted for a poss. pron.—3. Occasional use of the first and second persons of prons. in dat.—4. Dat. with bei, von and zu..... 234

LESSON LXIV.—1. Verbs with dat.—2. Verbs governing dat. or acc.—3. Koſten..... 237

LESSON LXV.— Indefinite Numerals.—1. Ander.—2. Beide.—3. Beides.—4. Etwas.—5. So etwas.—6. Irgend.—7. 8. 9. Viel and Wenig.—10. Superlative of Viel.—11. Alle, all.—12. Plur. of All. 241

LESSON LXVI.—Prepositions construed with dat.—1. Aus.—2. Außer.—3. Bei.—4. Entgegen.—5. Gegenüber.—6. Mit.—7. Mit compounded with verbs.—8. Nach.—9. Nach after its object.—10. Ob.—11. Seit.—12. Von.—13. Zu.—14. Zu preceded by auf or nach.—15. The dat. with zu in connection with Werden.—16. Idioms with zu and nach..... 245

LESSON LXVII.—Prepositions with acc.—1. Durch.—2. Für.—3. Gegen.—4. Ohne.—5. Um.—6. Um in compounds.—7. Acc. with Um rendered by our nom..... 249

LESSON LXVIII.—Prepositions governing dat. and acc.—1. An.—2. Idioms with an.—3. Auf.—4. In.—5. Ueber.—6. Unter.—7. Vor. 251

LESSON LXIX.—Adverbs and Conjunctions.—1. Aber.—2. Allein.—3. Als.—4. Alſo.—5. Auch.—6. Bald.—7. Bis.—8. Da.—9. Daß.—10. Denn.—11. Doch.—12. Eben.—13. Ehe.—14. Erſt.—15. Etwa.—16. Gar.—17. Gern.—18. Gleich.—19. Immer.—20. Ja.—21. Je.—22. Kein.—23. Noch.—24. Nun.—25. Nur.—26. Schon.—27. So.—28. Sonſt.—29. Und.—30. Vielleicht.—31. Wie.—32. Als wie.—33. Wie after an adjective in the comparative —34. Wohl.—35. Wohl denoting a supposition or probability 254

LESSON LXX.—1. Modes of Address, Herr, Frau and Fräulein before Proper names.—2. Before words denoting relationship.... 260

Digitized by Google

INDEX TO THE LESSONS.*

Lessons.

Aber, ſondern, ... 21. 4. 69. 1.
Abbreviations, ... 70.
Acc., 8. 1. With preps., 20. 2. Acc. or dat. with preps., 20. 3. With verbs, 64. 2. Acc. or gen. with adj., 61. 2. 3. With verbs, ... 62. 5.
Achten and warten, ... 62. 6.
Adjs., 14. Attrib., 14. 2. Old dec., 14. 3. Agreement, 14. 4. Preceded by etwas, &c., 14. 6. Referring to noun understood, 14. 7. New decl., 15. 1. Denoting material, 15. 5. Mixed decl., 16. 1. Connected view, 17. Old decl. plur., 25. 3. New decl. plur., 30. 1. Mixed decl. plur., 31. 9. Comparison of, 32. Compar., 32. 1. Superl., 32. 2. Irregul. comp., 32. 4. Superlative after am, 32. 6. Superl. suffixed to all, 32. 7. Comp. by adverbs, 32. 8. Used substantively, 33. 1. Abstract, 33. 2. Formed from countries, &c., 33. 5. From persons, 33. 6. Denoting sect, 33. 7. Omission of infl. endings, 34. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. Used adverbially, 34. 7. Requiring gen., 61. 1. Acc., 61. 2. Dat., ... 63. 1.
Adverbs, pronominal, 28. 6. Formation of adverbs, 34. 8. 9. 52. 5. 6. Nouns used as, 61. 8.
Allein, ... 69. 2.
Aller, prefixed to superlatives, 32. 7.
Als, 69. 3. Omission after ſo, 69. 3. *note.*
Als wie, ... 69. 32.
Also, ... 69. 4
Am, with the superlative, ... 32. 6.
An, 68. 1. Idioms with, ... 68. 2.
Ander, der andere, ... 65. 1.
Anders, ... 65. 1. 5.
Anſtatt, before infinitive, ... 49. 5.
Anſtatt or ſtatt, ... 60. 7.
Apposition, rule for, ... 12. 6.
Arts., decl. of, 8. 4. 12. 4. Fem., 23. 1. Plur., 25. 1. Contracted with preps., 20. 4. Use of, 42. Omission of, ... 43.
Attributive adjective, ... 14. 1.
Auch, 69. 5. Auch nicht, auch kein, &c., after a negation, ... 21. 8.
Auf, ... 68. 3.
Aus, ... 66. 1.
Außer, ... 66. 2.
Auxiliary verbs, 45. 46. Use of the auxiliaries haben and ſein, 48.
Bald, ... 69. 6.
Befinden, ... 29. 10.
Behalten, ... 62. 1. *obs.*
Bei, ... 66. 3.
Beide, ... 65. 2.
Beides, ... 65. 3.
Bis, ... 69. 7.
(Cardinal numbers, ... § 44.)
Cases, ... 8. 60. 61. 62. 63. 64.
Chen, diminutives in, 24. 1. Represented by prons. masc. or fem., ... 28. 4.
Collocation of words, ... 53.
Comparison of adjs., 32. Comps. and sups., decl. of, 32. 5. Irreg. forms of, ... 32. 4
Composing German, plan of, 25.
Compound adjectives, ... 24. 8.
Compound nouns, formation of, 24. 4. Gender of, ... 24. 11.

* See Contents of Lessons, p. ix; also Genera. Index, p. 518.

Digitized by Google

Lessons.

Compound verbs, separable, 51.
Inseparable, ... 54.
Conditional mood, ... 56.
Conjugation of verbs, reg., 37.
Irreg., ... 47.
Conjunctions, examples illustrating the use of, ... 69.
Connected view of article, &c., 30. 9.
Consonants, classification and pronunciation of, ...2. IV. V.
Da, 52. 1. 69. 8. Compounded with other words, ...52. 2.
Dafür (nichts dafür können), ...45. 6.
Das, peculiar use of, ...44. 7.
Daß, ...69. 9.
Dat., after certain preps., 20. 1. With adjs., 63. 1. Substituted for poss. pron., 63. 2. Peculiar use of 63. 3. With verbs, ... 64.
Declension, of the arts., 8. 4. 12. 4. 23. 1. 25. 1. Of nouns, 8. 2. Old form, 8. 3. 25. 9. New form, 22. 30. 2. Of adjs., 14. 15. 16. 23. 2. 3. 25. 2. 3. 30. 1. Of pers. prons., 27. 1. Of comps. and superls.. 32. 5. Of absolute poss. prons., 35. Of adj., art., noun, demonst. and poss. prons., ...30. 9.
Demonstrative pronouns, ..10. 44.
Denn, ...69. 10.
Der, determinative, when absolute, its form in the gen. plur., 41. 3. Relative, ... 39.
Derjenige, ...41. 1.
Derselbe, ...41. 4.
Deßhalb, ...53. 6.
Deßto, ...32. 10.
Determinative pronouns, ... 41.
Dieser and jener distinguished, 10. 1.
Dieses, dies, peculiar use of, ..44. 7.
Diminutives, 24. 1. 2. Gend. of prons. referring to, ...28. 4.
Diphthongs, sounds of, ... 2. III.
Doch, ...69. 11.
Durch, ...67. 1.
Dürfen, remarks on, ...45. 4.
Eben, 69. 12. Before demonst. or determinative, ...44. 8.
Ehe, ...69. 13.
Eigen, ...16. 3.

Lessons.

Einer, ...18. 7
Ein Paar, ...59. 6.
En, suffix, forming adjectives, 15. 5.
Entgegen, ...66. 4.
Entlang, ...60. 3.
Erst, ...69. 14.
Es, peculiar use of, 28. 7. 3. 9. 10.
Es sei denn, ...69. 10.
Etwa, ...69. 15.
Etwas, ...65. 4.
Fehlen, ...57. 5
Femin. nouns, indeclinable in sing. 28. 4.
Frau, Fräulein, ...70. 1. 2.
Froh, ...61. 4.
Für, ...67. 2.
Future tenses, how formed, 37. 10. Observations on the use of, 38. 4.
Ganz und gar, ...19. 3.
Gar, ...19. 3. 69. 16.
Ge, prefixed to the perfect part., 37. 2. Inserted between the prefix and the radical in compound verbs separable, 51. 3. Excluded from the perfect part. of compound verbs inseparable, ...54. 1.
Geben, impersonally used, ...57. 4.
Gegen, ...67. 3.
Gegenüber, ...66. 5.
Gen., with preps., 60. With adjs., 61. Used adverbially, 61. 8. With reflexive verbs, 62. 1. After the impersonal es gelüstet, &c., 62. 2. With transitive verbs, ...62. 3
Genug, ...53. 7.
Gern, ...69. 17.
Gleich, ...69. 18.
Haben, conjugation of, 36. 1. Idioms with, 36. 2. When and how used as an auxiliary, ...48. 1. 3.
Halb, halben or halber, ...60. 4.
Halben, wegen and um—willen with the gen. of pers. prons., 60. 6.
Haus, nach or zu, ...43. 2.
Heißen, ...49. 1. *obs.*
Her and hin, ...52. 2. 3.
Herr, ...70. 1. 2.
Hin, ...52. 2. 3.
Holen lassen, ...49 6.
Immer, ...69. 19.

Digitized by Google

Lessons.

Imper. mood, past part. in place of, 50. 3. Observations on the several uses of, ...50. 5.
Imperfect, how formed, 37. 7. 8. Observations on the use of, 38. 2.
Impersonal verbs, ... 57.
In,.....68. 4.
Indefinite numerals,..... 65.
Indefinite pronouns,..... 18.
Indefinite pronoun man, ..19. 1. 2.
Indicative mood, for imper., 38. 1. c.
Infinitive mood, use of, in place of past part., 45. 13. Without zu, 49. 1. As a neuter noun, 49. 4. Active form used passively, 49. 6. Answering after bleiben, gehen, &c., to our present part.,..49. 1.
Interrogative conjugation,... 6. 1.
Interrogative pronouns,..... 13.
Irgend,.....65. 6.
Irregular verbs..... 47.
Ja,.....69. 20.
Je, 69. 21. Before comparative,.....32. 10.
Jener and dieſer, distinguished, 10. 1.
Kein,.....69, 22.
Keiner,.....18. 7.
Keines von beiden,.....65. 2.
Können, remarks on, ...45. 5.
Länge,.....60. 2.
Laſſen, remark on,.....45. 11.
Lein, diminutives in, 24. 1. Represented by a pron. masc. or fem.....28. 4.
Man, its use, ...19. 1. 2.
Mit,.....66. 6.
Mit, with verbs.....66. 7.
Mixed declension of adjectives, 16.
Mögen, remarks on,.....45. 7.
Moods, indicative, 37. Infinitive, 49. Subjunctive, 55. Conditional, 56. Imperative, 50. 5.
Müſſen, remark on,.....45. 8.
Nach,.....66. 8.
Nach, following the word it governs,.....66. 9. 16.
Negative conjugation, ... 21.
Nicht wahr?.....21. 5.
Noch,.....69. 23.
Nouns, decl. of, 8. 2 Old form of, 8. 4. New form of, 22. Old decl. plur., 25. 9. Irreg. plur., 26. New decl. plur., 30. 2. Fem. plur., 30. 3. Proper names, decl. of, 30. 4. Foreign proper names, 30. 7. 8. Irreg. decl. of nouns, 31.
(Numbers, ...§ 44. § 45.)
Nun,.....69. 24.
Nur,.....69. 25.
Ob,.....66. 10.
Ohne, 67. 4. Followed by the infinitive, ...49. 5
(Ordinal numbers, ...§ 45.)
Paradigm of haben, 36. 1. Of lieben, 37. Of ſein, 46. 1. Of werden, 46. 3. Of a passive verb,.....58. 1.
Participles, how formed, 37. 1. 2. Declined like adjs., 37. 4. Past part. for the imper., 50. 3. Future part....50. 4.
Particles, ...51. 54
Passive verb, mode of forming, 58. 2. Paradigm of, 58. 1. Other methods expressing passivity,.....19. 1. 29. 10.
Perfect tense, how formed, 37. 9. Observat. on the use of, 38. 3.
Pers. prons., decl. of, 27. 1. Second pers. sing., 27. 2. Second pers. plur., 27. 3. Third pers. sing. 27. 4. Third pers. plur. 27. 5. Observations on the use of pers. prons., 28. Used as reflexives, 29. 1. Construed with halben, wegen and um—willen, ...60. 6
Pluperf., how formed,.....37. 9
Plurals, of art. and adj. prons., 25. 1. Of adjs., 25. 2. Old decl., 25. 3. Nouns of old decl., neut., 25. 4. 5. Masc., 25. 6. 7. Fem., 25. 8. Irreg. plur. of nouns, 26. New decl. plur., of adjs., 30. 1. Of nouns,.....30. 2. 3
Poss. prons., 12. 2. When absolute..... 35.
Prefixes of verbs, compound sep., 51. Insep. 54. 1. Sep. and insep.,.....54 2.
Preps., position of, 11. 5. With dat., 20. 1. With acc., 20. 2. With dat. or acc., 20. 3. With

Digitized by Google

Lessons.

gen., 60. Examples of the use of,.....66. 67. 68.
Prons., poss., 12. 2. Absolute poss., 35. Interrog., 13. Indef., 18. Pers., 27. 28. Reflex. and recip., 29 Rel., 39. 40. Determin. 41 Demonst... 44.
Proper names, decl. of, 30. 4. Of countries, &c.,.....30. 8.
Quantity, weight, &c., nouns denoting,.....59. 3.
Recht haben,.....36. 2.
Reciprocal pronouns,.....29. 6.
Reflexive pronouns,.....29. 1.
Reflexive verbs, 29. 9. Equivalent to intransitives or passives,.....29. 10.
Reihe,.....46. 2.
Relat. prons., 39. 40. Never omitted,.....40. 7.
Schon,.....69. 26.
Schuld sein,.....46. 2.
Schuldig,.....61. 5.
Sein, paradigm of, 46. 1. When and how used as auxiliary, 48.
Seit,.....66. 11.
Selbst or selber,.....29. 3. 4.
Selbst, before a noun,.....29. 5.
So,.....69. 27.
So Etwas,.....65. 5.
Solcher,.....41. 5.
Sollen, remarks on, 45. 9. As imper.,.....50. 5. *obs.*
Some,.....39. 4.
Sonst,.....69. 28.
Spaziren gehen, fahren, &c.,...49. 2.
Subjunctive mood, observations on the several uses of, 55.
Tenses, use of, present, 38. 1. Imperfect, 38. 2. Perfect, 38. 3. Futures,.....38. 4.
Trotz,.....60. 2
Ueber,.....68. 5.
Uhr,.....65. 7.
Um,.....67. 5.
Um, in compounds,... 67. 6.

Lessons.

Um, acc. with,.....67. 7.
Um—willen,..... .60. 5.
Umhin, with können,.....45. 6.
Umlauts, sounds of, ... 2. II.
Und,.....69, 29.
Unrecht haben, ...36. 2
Unter,.....68. 6.
Unter vier Augen, ...68. 6.
Verbs, reflex., 29. 9. 10. Aux., 45. Irreg., 47. Compound, sep., 51. Insep., 54. Impers., 57. Passive, ... 58.
Viel, when declined, ...65. 7. 8. 9.
Vielleicht,.....69. 30.
Voll,.....61. 3.
Von, 66. 12. With the dative, instead of the genitive, ...11. 4.
Vor,.....68. 7.
Vowels, classification and pronunciation of, ... 2. I.
Was, interrog., 13. Rel.,... 40.
Was, for warum, ...13. 6.
Was für ein,..... 13.
Wegen, ...60. 4. 6.
Welcher, interrog., 13. Rel.,.. 39.
Wenig, when declined,..65. 7. 8. 9.
Wer, interrog., 13. Rel..... 40.
Werden, paradigm of, 46. 3. As an independent verb, 46. 4. With the dat.,.....46. 4. *obs.*
Werth,.....61. 6.
Wie, 69. 31. 33. Wie viel,...65. 7.
Wie befinden Sie sich?.....29. 10.
Wissen, before an infinitive, 49. 7.
Wo, compounded with other words,..... 52.
Wohl,..... 69. 34.
Wohl, denoting doubt, supposition, &c.,.....69. 35.
Wollen, remarks on, ...45. 10.
Zu, 66. 13. Between the parts of a compound verb.....51. 3.
Zu, ...66. 13. 14 15. 16.
Zufolge, ...60. 2
Zu Grunde gehen, richten, ...43. 6.
Zu Hause,..... ...43. 2.

Digitized by Google

WOODBURY'S NEW METHOD

LESSON I. Lection I.

THE LETTERS.

GERMAN ALPHABET. Deutſches Alphabet.

German.		English Pronunciation.		Examples.
A	a	a	äh	Alt.
B	b	b	bay	Beten.
C	c	c	tsay	Ceder.
D	d	d	day	Dehnen.
E	e	e	e (as in prey)	Eben.
F	f	f	eff	Fett.
G	g	g	gay	Geben.
H	h	h	häh	Hahn.
J*	i	i	i (as in pique)	Ihnen.
J*	j	j	yote	Jota.
K	k	k	käh	Kahl.
L	l	l	ell	Elle.
M	m	m	emm	Empor'.
N	n	n	enn	Ende.
O	o	o	oh	Ohr.
P	p	p	pay	Peter.
Q	q	q	koo	Qual.
R	r	r	err (as in error)	Erſt.
S	ſ s (21. S.)	s	ess	Eſſen.
T	t	t	tay	Thee.
U	u	u	o (as in do)	Uſer.
V	v	v	fow (as in fowl)	Volk.
W	w	w	vay	Weſen.
X	x	x	ix	Fix.
Y	y	y	ipsilon	Syſtem'.
Z	z	z	tset	Zettel.

* J before a consonant answers to I, as in Jn; before a vowel it answers to Y, as in Jahr.

Digitized by Google

COMPOUND CONSONANTS.

ch, ch=tsay-häh; ck, ck=tsay-käh; sch, sch=es-tsay-häh, ss, ß=es-es; st, ſt=es-tay; sz, ß=es-tset; tz, ß=tay-tset.

LESSON II. Lection II.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. *Vowels.*

1. A, a sounds like *a* in ah, marl: Ahn, Saal, Blatt.
2. E, e sounds like *e* in tete, very: Ernſt, Heer, Herr.
3. I, i sounds like *i* in pique, ill: Ihr, Bild, Kind.
4. O, o sounds like *o*, *oo*, in no, door: Ohr, Mond, Boot.
5. U, u sounds like *o*, *oo*, in do, moor: Uhr, Hund, Ufer.
6. Y, y sounds like i in Ihr, Bild, Aeſop, Styx, Syrup.

A vowel when doubled, or followed by h in the same syllable, is thereby lengthened; preceding a double consonant it is shortened.

Words in this and the following lessons, unless otherwise noted, take the primary accent on the first syllable.

II. *Umlauts.*

The Umlauts are produced by a union of e with a, o, u, respectively, as in Aehre or Ähre, Oel or Öl, ueber or über. Except when they are capitals, however, the e is more commonly expressed by two dots; thus, ä, ö, ü, (instead of ae, oe, ue).

1. Ae, ä sounds nearly like e in Aepfel, Gärtner, ſpät.
2. Oe, ö sounds as heard in Oel, Pöbel, Göthe.
3. Ue, ü sounds as heard in Uebel, Müller, Süd.

For ö and ü we have in English no corresponding sounds. Oel and Süd, for example, might be understood if pronounced *ail* and *seed*; but this is by no means the correct pronunciation. The French eu in *peur*, answers most nearly, perhaps, to ö; and u in the word *us* to ü.

III. *Diphthongs.*

1. Ai, ai (or ay) sounds like *ay* in aye: Hai, Mai.
2. Au, au sounds like *ou* in flour: Haus, Maus.
3. Ei, ei (or ey) sounds like *i* in die: Bein, Pein.
4. Eu, eu sounds nearly like *oi* in oil: Eule, Heu.
5. Aeu, äu sounds nearly like eu in: Käufer, Aeugeln.

Digitized by Google

IV. *Consonants.*

1. B, b, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, d, ph, ff and ſt sound like b, d, f, h, k, l, m,n, p, q, x, ck, ph, ss and st.
2. C, c before e (or ä), i and y in the same syllable sounds like z (*ts*); otherwise like k: Ceder, civil', Copal'.
3. G, g at the beginning of a syllable sounds like *g* in *gun*. After n, in the same syllable, it sounds like our *g* hard in like position: Angſt, Rang, gar. Otherwise its sound usually approaches that of ch: Tag, regnen, Magd.
4. H, h in the midst or at the end of a syllable is silent, but serves to lengthen its vowel: Mehr, Lohn, Thun, Muth.
5. J, j sounds like *y* consonant: Jahr, Jude, Januar, Jubel.
6. R, r is uttered with a trill or vibration of the tongue, and with greater stress than our *r*: Rohr, Brod.
7. S, ſ at the beginning of a syllable followed by a vowel, has a sound between that of *s* and *z*: Sohn, ſind. Otherwise it sounds like *s*: Gas, was. At the end of a word s, instead of ſ, is employed.
8. T, t sounds like *t* in *test*: Text, Art. Where in English *t* sounds like *sh*, t has the sound of z (*ts*): Station, station.
9. V, v sounds like *f* in *fit*: Vetter. In foreign words v sounds like w: Vene'dig, Verſai'lles.
10. W, w has a sound between that of *w* and *v*: Welt, Waſſer. After a consonant, in the same syllable, it sounds like *w*: Schwer, zwei.
11. Z, z sounds like *ts*: Zahl, zahm, Zinn, Pelz, Zimmer.

V. *Compound Consonants.*

1. Ch, ch in primitive words, followed by s, sounds like *k*: Dachs, Wachs. Otherwise ch has its guttural sound: Tuch nach, hoch.* In foreign words ch retains its original sound: Chor, charmant'.

* To aid in producing this sound take, for experiment, the above word hoch: pronounce ho precisely like our word *ho!* observing only to give as full and distinct a *breathing* at the *close* as at the beginning; thus, *hoh*—hoch. When not preceded by a, o, or u, however, a slight hissing sound of s or sh naturally attaches to the ch; ich, recht, reich.

Digitized by Google

2. Sch, ſch sounds like *sh:* Schnur, Schild, Schiller, Schule.
3. ß (though compounded of ſ and z) sounds like ſſ, and occurs only at the end of a syllable: Fuß, naß, häßlich.
4. ʒ (compounded of t and z) sounds like z and like ß, is used only at the end of a syllable: Platz, ſtutzen, nützlich.

VI. *Accent.*

1 In words compounded with a separable particle (§ 90 and 91), as also, with the prefix un, the primary accent is on the first syllable: ab'fallen, ab'gefallen, un'gefällig, Un'fall.

2 Ei final, and also ir (*or* ier), in verbs ending in iren (*or* ieren), take the accent: Schreiberei', poli'ren, riſki'ren.

3. Foreign words that have dropped the original endings, usually take the accent on the last syllable: *a.* Admiral', Contraſt'. Those that have taken German endings are generally accented on the penult: *b.* Franzö'ſiſch, Apothe'ker. Those that remain unchanged in form, often retain the original accent: *c.* Colle'gium, Miniſte'rium.

4. Nearly all words, except those above noted, are accented on the radical or primitive syllable, thus corresponding to our words of Anglo-Saxon origin: Wind'mühle, Freund'ſchaft, überwach'ſen, unterneh'men, verſteh'en, le'ben. Leben'dig is one of the very few exceptions to this latter rule.

In German as in English, the accent is often varied for the sake of contrast or emphasis: Er iſt nicht be'kehrt, ſondern ver'kehrt, he is not con'verted, but *per'verted.*

EXERCISE 1 — Aufgabe 1.

Vowels, Umlauts, Diphthongs.

(a) Alter, Aal, Ahle. (e) Erde, ſtehen, mehr, Meer, nett. (i, y) Iſt, ihn, Styl, Symbol'. (o) Ohr, Loos, dort. (u) Unter, Ruhm. (ai, ei) Main, mein. (au) Fauſt. (äu, eu) Häute, Freund, heute. (ä, e) Aehren, Feder, Seſſel. (ö) Oefen, hören. (ü) Über, Mühle.

EXERCISE 2. — Aufgabe 2.

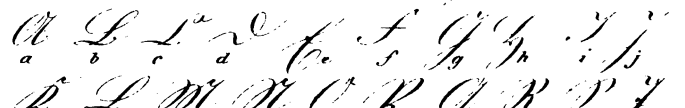
Consonants and Double Consonants.

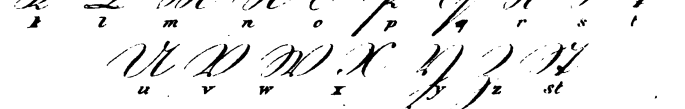
(c) Cadett', Cäſar, Cider, Claſſe, Section'. (g) Gabel, gehen, Gift, Gondel, ruhig, Ring. (j) Ja. (r) Reif, rar. (ſ, s) Süß, Reis. (t) Titel, Nation'. (v) Vaſe, von. (w) Wort, Wind, Schwert. (z) Zink, Holz. (ch) Flachs, wachſen, Chaos, Licht, Chauſſee'. (ſch) Schaft, Fleiſch. (ß, ſ) Reiß, meſſen. (ʒ, z) Klotz, kurz.

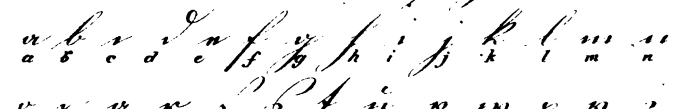
Digitized by Google

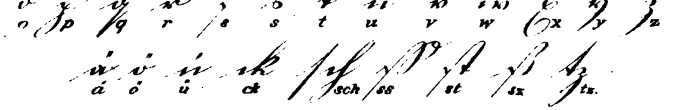
Digitized by Google

Lesson III. Lektion III.



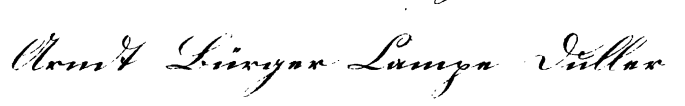




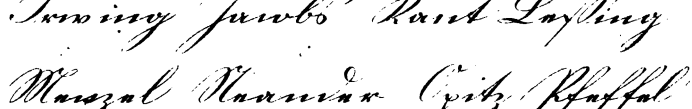


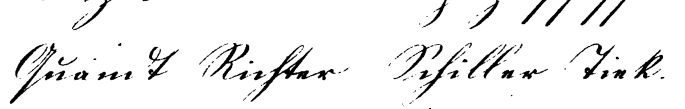


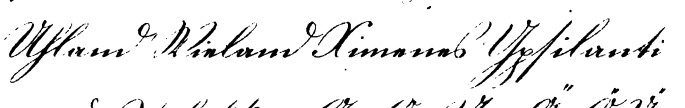
Exercise 3. Übung 3.











Digitized by Google

LESSON IV. Lection IV.

FORMS OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. In German the definite article has, in the nominative singular, a distinct form for each gender:

Masculine, der, the; *feminine*, die, the; *neuter*, das, the.

2 Haben, TO HAVE, IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR.

Affirmatively.	*Interrogatively.*
1*st. prs.* ich habe, I have;	habe ich? have I?
2*d. prs.* Sie haben, you have;	haben Sie? have you?
3*d. prs.* er hat, he has;	hat er? has he?

Beispiele.	Examples.
Haben Sie das Leder?	Have you the leather?
Nein, ich habe das Brod.	No, I have the bread.
Hat der Glaser das Glas?	Has the glazier the glass?
Ja, er hat das Glas und das Gold.	Yes, he has the glass and the gold.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Brod, the bread;
Das, the } see 1);
Der, the }
Er, he;
Es, it;
Das Glas, the glass;
Das Gold, the gold;
Haben, to have (see 2);
Ich, I;
Ja, yes;
Das Leder, the leather.
Nein, no;
Oder, or;
Der Sattler, the saddler;
Der Schmied, the smith;
Sie, you;
Das Silber, the silver;
Und, and;
Was, what;
Wer, who.

Exercise 4. Aufgabe 4.

1. Was haben Sie?* 2. Ich habe Brod.* 3. Was hat der Sattler? 4. Er hat das Glas. 5. Was habe ich? 6. Sie haben Gold. 7. Haben Sie das Glas? 8. Nein, ich habe das Leder. 9. Hat er das Silber? 10. Nein, er hat das Gold. 11. Habe ich das Brod? 12. Ja, Sie haben es. 13. Wer hat das Leder? 14. Der Sattler hat es. 15. Wer hat das Silber? 16. Der Schmied hat es. 17. Hat der Sattler das Glas oder das Gold? 18. Er hat das Gold und das Silber.

* For use of capitals in writing German, see p. 267, note. Writing in the German character (L. III.) will soon render it familiar, and at the same time be well adapted to fix in the memory the forms and meanings of the words.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 5. Aufgabe 5.

1. Have you the bread? 2. Yes, I have it. 3. Has he the glass? 4. No, he has the bread. 5. Who has the bread? 6. I have it. 7. Have I the glass or the gold? 8. You have the glass and the gold. 9. Has the saddler the bread or the leather? 10. He has the bread and the leather. 11. What has the smith? 12. He has the gold and the glass. 13. What has the saddler? 14. He has the gold. 15. Who has the silver? 16. I have it. 17. Have you the gold? 18. No, the saddler has it.

LESSON V. Lection V.

Singen AND Warten IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR.

1*st. prs.*	ich ſing–e, I sing;	ich wart–e, I wait;	
2*d. prs.*	Sie ſing–en, you sing;	Sie wart–en, you wait;	
3*d. prs.*	er ſing–t, he sings;	er wart–et, he waits.	

1. Thus the present tense singular is indicated by e for the first person, en for the second, and t (or et*) for the third: that part preceding these endings being the root.

2. For the three forms common in English, the German has but one: thus, ich ſinge, I sing, I do sing, I am singing.

3. Like ſingen and warten are conjugated in the same tense and number, unless otherwise designated, the verbs in this and subsequent exercises.

Beiſpiele.	EXAMPLES.
Der Mann ſingt das Lied.	The man is singing the song.
Ich höre was Sie ſagen.	I hear what you are saying.
Das Kind ſpielt und ſingt.	The child is playing and singing.
Sie hören was ich ſage.	You hear what I say.
Ich kaufe das Papier'.	I am buying the paper.
Der Müller trinkt Kaffee und Thee.	The miller drinks coffee and tea.

* When the root ends in b or t, the 3d. person adds e to the t; thus, wart–et, instead of wart–t; e is also often added or omitted according to the choice of different writers.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Buch, the book;
Der Fiſch, the fish;
Fliegen, (see 3.) to fly;
Das Fleiſch, the meat;
Der Fleiſcher, the butcher;
Hören, to hear;
Kaufen, to buy;
Der Koch, the cook;
Das Korn, the grain;
Das Mehl, the flour;
Der Müller, the miller;
Sagen, to say;
Schreiben, to write;
Der Schüler, the scholar;
Der Schwan, the swan;
Schwimmen, to swim;
Singen, to sing;
Trinken, to drink;
Warten, to wait;
Das Waſſer, the water.

EXERCISE 6. Aufgabe 6.

1. Der Schüler kauft das Buch. 2. Der Müller kauft das Korn. 3. Wer kauft das Brod? 4. Der Koch kauft das Brod und das Fleiſch. 5. Ich höre was Sie ſagen. 6. Ich trinke Waſſer. 7. Der Fiſch ſchwimmt, der Schwan fliegt. 8. Der Schüler ſchreibt was er hört. 9. Er hört was Sie ſagen und was ich ſage. 10. Ich höre was der Müller ſagt. 11. Wer wartet? 12. Ich warte. 13. Was ſagt der Schmied? 14. Wer ſingt? 15. Der Fleiſcher ſingt und trinkt. 16. Wer kauft das Fleiſch? 17. Der Müller oder der Schmied kauft es. 18. Sie kaufen Brod, er kauft Fleiſch, und ich kaufe Mehl.

EXERCISE 7. Aufgabe 7.

1. The miller is writing. 2. Who is buying the meat? 3. The cook is buying it. 4. I hear what you say. 5. The miller buys the grain and the cook buys the flour. 6. The butcher is singing. 7. Who is singing? 8. Who sings? 9. The cook is singing. 10. The saddler is buying the book. 11. Who buys bread? 12. The miller is drinking water. 13. The fish swims, the swan flies and swims. 14. The butcher buys flour, you buy meat, and I buy bread. 15. Who hears what I say? 16. I hear what you say. 17. You hear what he says. 18. Who is buying meat? 19. The saddler or the smith is buying it.

Digitized by Google

LESSON VI. Lection VI.

INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

1. German verbs in the present and imperfect, when used interrogatively, precede the subject, like *have* and *be* in English:

Was haben Sie?	What have you?	
Was sagen Sie?	What do you say?	(What say you?)
Wo ist er?	Where is he?	
Wo wohnt er?	Where does he live?	(Where lives he?)

2. PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR OF THE IRREGULAR VERB **Wissen**

Affirmatively.	*Interrogatively.*
ich weiß, I know;	weiß ich? do I know?
Sie wissen, you know;	wissen Sie? do you know?
er weiß, he knows;	weiß er? does he know?

Beispiele.	Examples.
Wissen Sie was ich sehe?	Do you know what I see?
Weiß der Mann wo Sie wohnen?	Does the man know where you live?
Dort steht der Jäger; verstehen Sie was er sagt?	Yonder stands the hunter, do you understand what he says?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Bäcker, the baker;
Der Bauer, the peasant;
 Bellen, see p. 474.
Das Eisen, the iron;
Das Geld, the money;
Der Goldschmied, the goldsmith;
 Hämmern, to hammer;
 Heulen, to howl;
Der Hund, the dog;
Der Jäger, the hunter;
Das Öl (*or* Oel, L. 2. II. 2.) the oil,
Das Papier', the paper;
Das Pult, the desk;
Das Salz, the salt;
 Verkau'fen, to sell (L. 2. VI. 4);
 Verste'hen, to understand;
 Wann, when;
 Warum', why;
 Wo, where;
Der Wolf, the wolf.

Exercise 8. Aufgabe 8.

1. Was haben Sie? 2. Was kaufen Sie? 3. Hat der Koch das Papier? 4. Kauft der Koch das Brod? 5. Was hat der Bäcker, und was kauft er? 6. Was kauft der Bäcker, und was verkauft er? 7. Warum verkauft der Goldschmied das Silber? 8. Kauft der Koch das Oel und das Salz? 9. Wann und wo singt der Bauer? 10. Was singt der Jäger? 11. Kauft der Schüler das Pult? 12. Versteht der Bauer was ich sage? 13. Warum hämmert der Schmied das Eisen? 14. Hat der Sattler das Eisen? 15.

Digitized by Google

Warum bellt der Hund? 16. Warum heult der Wolf? 17. Weiß der Schüler warum ich warte? 18. Dort steht der Bauer, verstehen Sie was er sagt?

EXERCISE 9. Aufgabe 9.

1. What has the baker? 2. What does the baker buy? 3. What does the baker sell? 4. Is the dog barking? 5. Why is he barking? 6. Where does he stand, and what does he understand? 7. Why is the goldsmith waiting? 8. Does the peasant buy the grain? 9. When does the smith hammer the iron? 10. Where does the scholar sell the desk? 11. Does the goldsmith hammer the gold? 12. Where does the cook buy the salt? 13. Does the saddler sell the oil? 14. Is the wolf howling? 15. Why is he howling? 16. When and where does the hunter sing? 17. Is the baker or the peasant waiting? 18. Does the peasant know what the baker says?

LESSON VII. Lection VII.

VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PRESENT SINGULAR INDICATIVE.

1. In the third person singular of several verbs, the root vowel e is changed to i *or* ie, while in that of some others a, o and u, take the Umlaut (L. 47. 6. and § 78, p. 346):

ich breche, I break;	ich sehe, I see;
Sie brechen, you break;	Sie sehen, you see;
er bricht (*not* brecht), he breaks;	er sieht (*not* seht), he sees.

GENDER OF NOUNS.

2. In German some names of inanimate objects are called masculine, and some feminine;* while some names of animate objects are called neuter:

Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Der Winter, the winter;	Die Tinte, the ink;	Das Kind, the child.

* This is true of nearly all languages. Many words, however, though denoting the same objects, are regarded in different languages as being of different genders. Thus, for brig, the French, *bric* is masculine, while the German, Brigg is feminine. For *head*, the German Kopf, is masculine, the French, *tête* is feminine, and the Latin, *caput* is neuter.

Digitized by Google

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Lieſt das Kind das Buch?	Does the child read the book?
Was ſagt der Lehrer?	What does the teacher say?
Das Kind hat das Brod.	The child has the bread.
Wer kauft das Pferd?	Who is buying the horse?
Der Donner rollt, der Regen fällt.	The thunder rolls, the rain falls.
Verkauft der Bauer das Kalb und das Lamm?	Does the peasant sell the calf and the lamb?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Brechen, to break; (L. 47. 6.)
Donnern, to thunder;
Entwe'der, either;
Der Eſſig, the vinegar;
Fallen, to fall; (L. 47. 6.)
Der Kaffee, the coffee;
Das Kalb, the calf;
Der Kaufmann, the merchant;
Lachen, to laugh;
Das Lamm, the lamb;
Der Lehrer, the teacher;
Leſen, to read; (L. 47. 6.)
Noch, nor;
Der Pfeffer, the pepper;
Das Schaf, *or* Schaaf, the sheep;
Der Schnee, the snow;
Schneiden, to cut;
Der Senf, the mustard;
Der Thee, the tea;
Weder, neither;
Wie, how;
Der Zucker, the sugar.

Exercise 10. Aufgabe 10.

1. Warum brechen Sie das Brod? 2. Leſen Sie das Buch? 3. Kauft der Fleiſcher das Schaaf oder das Lamm? 4. Er kauft weder das Schaaf noch das Lamm, er kauft das Kalb. 5. Trinkt der Kaufmann entweder Kaffee oder Thee? 6. Was kauft der Koch? 7. Er kauft Eſſig, Pfeffer, Senf und Zucker. 8. Wann fällt der Schnee? 9. Warum trinken Sie Waſſer? 10. Warum trinkt der Kaufmann Bier? 11. Verſtehen Sie was der Lehrer ſagt? 12. Hören Sie was das Kind ſagt? 13. Wer verkauft Kaffee, Thee und Zucker? 14. Warum kauft der Jäger Brod? 15. Verſtehen Sie was der Fleiſcher lieſt? 16. Warum lacht der Schüler? 17. Das Kind ſchneidet das Papier. 18. Es donnert.

Exercise 11. Aufgabe 11.

1. Is the teacher reading? 2. What is he reading? 3. Is the cook breaking the bread? 4. No, he is cutting it. 5. Why does the butcher buy the calf, the sheep and the lamb? 6. What does the child sing? 7. Is the hunter drinking tea or coffee? 8. Why is the cook buying mustard, pepper, sugar and vinegar? 9. Do you know when the snow falls? 10. Why are you laughing? 11. Do you know how the child sings?

Digitized by Google

12. Does the child know how you read? 13. Does the child break the bread? 14. The scholar understands what you say. 15. Do you know why I am laughing? 16. Does it thunder? 17. What are you buying, bread or flour? 18. I am buying neither bread nor flour.

LESSON VIII. Lection VIII.

CASES.

1. There are in German four cases; namely, the

NOMINATIVE, which answers to our nominative; the
GENITIVE, which answers mainly to our possessive; the
DATIVE, for which we have no exact equivalent; and the
ACCUSATIVE, which answers to the English objective.

The dative denotes the object for or in relation to which an action is performed, and is usually rendered by our objective governed by a preposition.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

2. Nouns have two forms of declension, called the *old* and the *new*.

3. Nouns of the *old* declension that end in e, el, en, er, chen and lein, form the genitive by adding s; the dative and accusative remaining like the nominative.

4. OLD DECLENSION OF NOUNS, MASCULINE AND NEUTER, WITH THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

N.	der Maler,	das Eisen,	the iron;
G.	des Malers,	des Eisens,	of the iron (L. 9);
D.	dem Maler,	dem Eisen,	to *or* for the iron;
A.	den Maler,	das Eisen,	the iron.

Haben Sie des Malers Buch?	Have you the painter's book?
Nein, ich habe des Schülers Buch.	No, I have the scholar's book.
Das Leder gehört dem Sattler.	The eather belongs *to* the saddler

The article agrees with its noun in gender, case and number.

Digitized by Google

VERBS WITH THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

5 When the dative and accusative are both governed by the same verb, the *dative* comes *first*; except that the *accusative*, if it be a personal pronoun, precedes the dative.

Der Freund verſpricht dem Sattler das Geld.	The friend promises (to) the saddler the money.
Warum giebt er es dem Schneider?	Why does he give it to the tailor
Er macht dem Lehrer ein Pult.	He is making (for) the teacher desk.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Das Werk lobt den Meiſter.	The work praises the master.
Das Kind hat des Schülers Bleiſtift.	The child has the scholar's pencil.
Wer ſchickt dem Bäcker den Ring?	Who sends the baker the ring?
Warum tadeln Sie den Schüler?	Why do you blame the scholar?
Gehört das Tuch dem Weber?	Does the cloth belong to the weaver?
Verkauft er es dem Schneider?	Does he sell it to the tailor?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Ball, the ball;	Der Mann, the man;
Der Bleiſtift, the pencil;	Das Pferd, the horse;
Der Brief, the letter;	Der Reiß, the rice;
Der Bruder, the brother;	Der Ring, the ring;
Der Deckel, the cover;	Schicken, to send;
Geben, to give; (L. 47. 6.)	Der Stahl, the steel;
Gehö'ren, to belong (L. 2. VI. 4);	Der Stock, the cane;
Der Glaſer, the glazier;	Der Stuhl, the chair;
Der Hut, the hat;	Der Tiſch, the table;
Der Kellner, the waiter;	Der Weizen, the wheat.

Exercise 12. Aufgabe 12.

1. Das Kind giebt dem Schüler den Ball. 2. Wer verkauft dem Glaſer den Deckel, den Stuhl und das Eiſen? 3. Der Deckel gehört dem Glaſer, der Ring gehört dem Schüler, und der Bleiſtift gehört dem Kellner. 4. Des Bäckers Bruder verkauft den Hut, den Stock den Stuhl und den Tiſch. 5. Leſen Sie des Jägers Brief? 6 Nein, ich gebe dem Jäger den Brief. 7. Verkauft der Mann den Reiß und den Weizen? 8. Er verkauft dem Bauer den Reiß und ſchickt dem Müller den Weizen. 9. Warum hämmert der Schmied das Eiſen und den Stahl? 10. Gehört das Geld dem Bauer oder dem Fleiſcher? 11. Es gehört dem Bauer, und das Pferd gehört

Digitized by Google

dem Fleiſcher. 12. Was ſagt das Kind dem Sattler? 13. Warum ſchickt der Bauer dem Müller den Weizen? 14. Der Müller ſchickt dem Bauer das Mehl, und der Bauer verkauft es dem Kellner. 15. Wer verkauft dem Schüler den Bleiſtift und das Papier?

EXERCISE 13. Aufgabe 13.

1. Who sells the saddler the iron and the steel? 2. Has the glazier's brother the waiter's letter? 3. No, the waiter has the letter. 4. The child has the scholar's pencil and ring. 5. The cover belongs to the glazier, the hat belongs to the scholar. 6. The man sells the hunter the horse and the dog. 7. The child gives the scholar the paper and the pencil. 8. What does the peasant send to the miller? 9. Who sends the miller the grain and the money? 10. The peasant sells the miller the wheat, and the miller sends the waiter the flour. 11. The rice belongs to the waiter, the wheat belongs to the peasant, the table belongs to the teacher, and the chair belongs to the scholar. 12. Who hammers the steel and the iron? 13. Why does the cook buy the tea, the coffee, the oil, the pepper, the salt and the vinegar? 14. Does the cane belong to the saddler or to the tailor? 15. Is the smith buying the iron or the steel?

LESSON IX. Lection IX.

GENITIVE RENDERED BY THE OBJECTIVE.

1. The genitive more commonly follows its governing noun, and may be rendered either by our possessive, or by the objective governed by *of*:

Haben Sie das Buch des Schülers?	Have you the book *of* the scholar?	Have you the scholar's book?

NOUNS ADDING ES IN THE GENITIVE.

2. Nouns of the old declension, not ending in e, el, en, er, chen and lein, add es in the genitive and e in the dative; the accusative remaining like the nominative (compare L. 8. 3.):

Wer hat des Koches Brod?	Who has the cook's bread?
Was verkaufen Sie dem Koche?	What do you sell to the cook?

Digitized by Google

Jemand verkauft dem Schmiede den Stahl und das Eisen.	Somebody is selling the smith the steel and the iron.
Der Schmied giebt dem Kinde das Geld und das Brod.	The smith gives the child the money and the bread.

3. Note, however, that nouns of this class sometimes drop the e of the genitive, and, occasionally, that of the dative (§ 13. 3. p. 274):

Auf des Vogts (Vogtes) Geheiß.	At the bailiff's command.
Wer hat des Kaufmanns Pferd?	Who has the merchant's horse?

Beispiele.	Examples.
Der Fischer verkauft dem Koche den Aal und den Lachs.	The fisherman sells the cook the eel and the salmon.
Wer hat den Bogen, den Pfeil, und den Stock des Kindes?	Who has the bow, the arrow and the cane of the child?
Wer giebt dem Pferde das Heu?	Who gives the horse the hay?
Das Kind giebt dem Schaafe das Heu.	The child gives the sheep the hay.
Der Bruder des Kindes verkauft dem Manne den Ring und den Stock.	The brother of the child sells the man the ring and the cane.
Gehört dieses Brett dem Kaufmanne oder dem Schmiede?	Does this board belong to the merchant or to the smith?
Nein, es gehört dem Zimmermanne.	No, it belongs to the carpenter.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Aal, the eel;	Der Kaufmann, the merchant;
Der Baum, the tree;	Der Küfer, the cooper;
Der Bogen, the bow;	Das Kupfer, the copper;
Das Brett, the board;	Der Pfeil, the arrow;
Das Faß, the cask, barrel;	Der Sattel, the saddle;
Der Fischer, the fisherman;	Der Sohn, the son;
Das Garn, the yarn;	Der Spaten, the spade;
Das Gras, the grass;	Spielen, to play;
Das Heu, the hay;	Versprechen (L. 7.) to promise
Das Huhn, the fowl;	Der Wald, the forest;
Der Kalk, the lime;	Das Zinn, the tin.

Exercise 14. Aufgabe 14.

1. Verspricht der Fischer dem Koche den Aal? 2. Sehen Sie den Wald? 3. Verkauft der Bauer dem Küfer den Baum? 4. Ja, und der Küfer verkauft dem Müller das Faß. 5. Gehört der Bogen dem Manne? 6. Der Bogen gehört dem Manne, und der Pfeil ge-

Digitized by Google

hört dem Kinde. 7. Wer verkauft dem Schmiede das Zinn und das Kupfer? 8. Schickt der Sattler dem Manne den Sattel? 9. Wer verkauft dem Kaufmann das Garn, das Heu und den Kalk? 10. Gehört das Brett dem Bruder des Schmiedes? 11. Wer ſchickt dem Schmiede den Spaten? 12. Gehört das Gras dem Schmiede? 13. Verkauft der Koch dem Kinde das Huhn? 14. Nein, das Kind verkauft es dem Koche. 15. Der Kaufmann hat das Eiſen des Schmiedes und das Silber des Goldſchmiedes. 16. Das Kind ſpielt und der Schwan fliegt.

EXERCISE 15. Aufgabe 15

1. Who sells the merchant the tin and the copper? 2. The copper belongs to the merchant, he sells it to the smith. 3. Who sells the cook the eel and the fowl? 4. Who promises the child the bow and the arrow? 5. Does the peasant sell the merchant the forest? 6. No, he sells the cooper the tree. 7. The peasant has the spade of the fisherman. 8. Who sells the man the lime, the cask and the board? 9. The brother of the cook sends the smith the bread, the meat and the flour. 10. The brother of the miller has the horse and the saddle of the smith. 11. The child gives the horse and the sheep the hay. 12. Does the cooper or the miller buy the yarn of the peasant? 13. The brother of the merchant buys it. 14. Who sells the smith the iron and the steel? 15. Who sells the goldsmith the silver? 16. Who is playing, and what is flying?

LESSON X. Lection X.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS Dieſer AND Jener.

1. Dieſer (*this,*) refers to the nearer, and jener (*that,*) to the more remote of two objects. When not contrasted with jener, however, dieſer may often be rendered by *that:*

Dieſer Kaffee iſt beſſer als jener.	This coffee is better than that.
Dieſes Brod iſt beſſer als jenes.	This bread is better than that.
Wie alt iſt dieſes Pferd?	How old is *that* horse?

Digitized by Google

2. Dieſer may often be rendered by *the latter* and jener by *the former:*

Ich kenne den Kaufmann und den Arzt; dieſer iſt reich, jener iſt arm.	I know the merchant and the physician; the *latter* is rich, the *former* is poor.

3. For the word *one* after a pronoun or adjective no corresponding word is employed in German:

Dieſer Tiſch gehört dem Schüler und jener dem Lehrer.	This table belongs to the scholar and that (one) to the teacher.
Jener iſt alt, dieſer iſt neu.	That one is old, this one is new.

4. DECLENSION OF Dieſer COMPARED WITH ARTICLE Der.

Masc.	*Neut.*		(*Lesson* VIII.)
N. dieſ-er,	dieſ-es,	this;	(N. der, das).
G. dieſ-es,	dieſ-es,	of this;	(G. des, des).
D. dieſ-em,	dieſ-em,	to *or* for this;	(D. dem, dem).
A. dieſ-en,	dieſ-es,	this;	(A. den, das).

Like dieſer are declined the following indefinite numerals and adjective pronouns, which, like the definite article, have a distinct form for each gender (the characteristic of the *nominative* masculine being r, and that of the neuter s):

Masc.	*Neut.*		*Masc.*	*Neut.*	
aller,	alles,	all (§ 53. 3.);	jener,	jenes,	that;
einiger,	einiges,	some;	mancher,	manches,	many a;
etlicher,	etliches,	some;	ſolcher,	ſolches,	such;
jeder,	jedes,	every;	welcher,	welches,	which, what.

5. Sein AND Vergeſſen IN THE PRESENT TENSE SINGULAR.

ich bin, I am;	ich vergeſſe, I forget;
Sie ſind, you are;	Sie vergeſſen, you forget;
er iſt, he is.	er vergißt, he forgets.

Beiſpiele.

Dieſer Mann iſt reich, jener iſt arm.
Der Frühling und auch der Herbſt hat ſeine Freuden, dieſer bringt Früchte, jener Blumen.

EXAMPLES.

This man is rich, that one is poor.
The spring and also the autumn has its pleasures, the latter brings fruits, the former flowers.

Digitized by Google

Dieſer Mann iſt ein Maler.	That man is a painter.
Ich bin arm, aber ich bin zufrieden.	I am poor, but I am contented.
Ich leſe dieſen Brief.	I am reading (L. V. 2.) this letter.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Aller, all (see decl. dieſer);
Arm, poor;
Dieſer, this (see 1.);
Der Gärtner, the gardener;
Der Gaul, the horse, nag;
Groß, large;
Gut, good;
Hart, hard;
Das Haus, the house;
Jeder, every;
Jener, that;
Das Kind, the child;
Mancher, many a;
Nicht, not;
Reich, rich;
Sein, to be (infinitive L. X. 5);
Der Schneider, the tailor;
Schön, beautiful;
Solcher, such;
Der Vater, the father;
Wahr, true;
Welcher, which, what;
Wiſſen, to know (p. 358.)

Exercise 16. Aufgabe 16.

1. Dieſer Müller iſt der Sohn jenes Bauers. 2. Jener Bauer iſt der Vater dieſes Bauers. 3. Jener Gaul gehört jenem Müller. 4. Sehen Sie dieſen Garten und jenes Haus? 5. Aller Stahl iſt hart. 6. Nicht alles Eiſen iſt gut. 7. Hat jeder Schmied ſolchen Stahl und ſolches Eiſen? 8. Nicht jeder Hund iſt groß. 9. Mancher Mann iſt arm. 10. Kaufen Sie dieſen Ring oder jenen? 11. Warum kaufen Sie jenen Ring und nicht dieſen? 12. Welchem Schneider ſchicken Sie dieſes Tuch? 13. Welches Tuch ſchicken Sie dieſem Schneider? 14. Was dieſer Mann ſagt iſt wahr. 15. Lieſt der Lehrer dieſen Brief oder jenen? 16. Nicht jeder Mann iſt reich, nicht jedes Buch iſt gut. 17. Wiſſen Sie was dieſer Gärtner verſpricht dieſem Kinde? 18. Solcher Stahl iſt nicht gut. 19. Iſt ſolches Papier ſchön? 20. Welchem Sattler verkauft dieſer Mann dieſes Leder? 21. Was vergißt er?

Exercise 17. Aufgabe 17.

1. Which paper has this scholar? 2. He has the paper of that child. 3. Which pencil has this child? 4. It has the pencil of that scholar. 5. To which teacher does this man send the book? 6. Which steel and which iron does this smith buy? 7. Is every house large and good? 8. Is every horse beautiful? 9. What tree is large? 10. What tree do you see? 11. Has

Digitized by Google

every miller such wheat and such flour? 12. Is not many a man rich? 13. Is all iron hard? 14. Is all steel hard and good? 15. Does this garden belong to this gardener, or to that miller? 16. Is the father of this scholar reading the book of the smith? 17. Which tailor is poor, this one or that one? 18. Who is rich? 19. Who is singing? (L. V. 2.) 20. That child says you have the ball, is it true? 21. That tree is large and beautiful. 22. That tree is falling.

LESSON XI. Lection XI.

DATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

1. The dative is often preceded by prepositions, and then answers to our objective:

Er kommt aus dem Hauſe.	He is coming *out of* the house.
Der Mann iſt in dem Hauſe.	The man is *in* the house.
Das Kind ſpielt mit dem Hunde.	The child is playing *with* the dog.
Der Baum ſteht vor dem Hauſe.	The tree stands *before* the house.

DATIVE WITH VERBS OF MOTION.

2. After verbs denoting direction *toward*, zu must be placed before the name of a *person*, and nach, before the name of a *place* or *country*; zu and nach being both rendered by *to*:

Er geht zu dem Amtmann (§ 13. 3).	He goes *to* the magistrate.
Er geht nach dem Dorfe.	He goes *to* the village.

3. Where in English the preposition may be omitted, it is not usually employed in German:

Ich ſchicke dem Lehrer das Buch.	I send the teacher the book. I send the book *to* the teacher.
Er giebt dem Schneider das Geld.	He gives the tailor the money. He gives the money *to* the tailor.
Ich ſchicke das Kind zu dem Lehrer.	I send the child *to* the teacher.
Das Kind geht zu dem Schneider.	The child goes *to* the tailor.

4. *Of*, when denoting relation (instead of possession L. 9. 1.), must be expressed in German by a corresponding preposition.

Ich ſpreche von dem Gärtner, (not ich ſpreche des Gärtners).	I am speaking *of* the gardener. (Compare Lesson 9. 1.)

Digitized by Google

POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

5. Prepositions precede the words which they govern, and can not, ~~as in English~~, stand at the end of a sentence:

Mit welchem Bleiſtift ſchreibt er?	With what pencil is he writing?	What pencil is he writing with?
In welchem Hauſe iſt er?	In which house is he?	Which house is he in?
Wiſſen Sie von welchem Buche er ſpricht?	Do you know of which book he speaks?	Do you know which book he speaks of?

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Der Schmied geht zu dem Glaſer.	The smith goes to the glazier.
Was ſchickt er dem Glaſer?	What does he send the glazier?
Wer hat das Buch des Lehrers?	Who has the book of the teacher?
Was ſagen Sie von dem Lehrer?	What do you say of the teacher?
Wiſſen Sie in welchem Hauſe der Glaſer wohnt?	Do you know which house the glazier lives in?
Loben Sie den Sohn des Müllers?	Do you praise the miller's son?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Adler, the eagle,
Als, than, as;
Der Amboß, the anvil;
Der Anker, the anchor;
Der Apfel, the apple;
Arbei'ten, to work;
Der Arbei'ter, the laborer;
Der Arm, the arm;
Der Arzt, the physician;
Das Auge, the eye;
Aus, out of;
Gehen, to go;
Der Honig, the honey;
Kommen, to come;
Das Licht, the candle;
Mehr, more;
Mit, with;
Nach, to, after;
Sprechen, to speak; (L. VII.)
Sehr, very;
Von, of, from;
Zu, to (see 2.).

Exercise 18. Aufgabe 18.

1. Kommt der Jäger aus dem Hauſe, oder geht er nach dem Hauſe? 2. Wer ſchreibt mehr als der Arzt? 3. Wann gehen Sie nach dem Walde? 4. Was ſagt der Bauer von dieſem Lichte? 5. Wann geht das Kind zu dem Arbeiter und wann nach dem Dorfe? 6. Das Kind geht weder zu dem Arbeiter noch nach dem Walde. 7. Zu welchem Arzte geht der Glaſer? 8. Warum fällt der Apfel von dem Baume? 9. Wiſſen Sie von welchem Amboß der Schmied ſpricht? 10. Was ſagt der Glaſer von dem Anker? 11. Arbeitet

Digitized by Google

der Schüler mit dem Bauer? 12. Der Arbeiter arbeitet mit dem Bauer. 13. Das Auge des Adlers iſt ſchön. 14. Was ſagen Sie von dem Honig? 15. Der Arm dieſes Schmiedes iſt groß. 16. Der Bruder dieſes Bauers iſt arm. 17. Mit welchem Bleiſtifte ſchreibt der Lehrer? 18. Wiſſen Sie mit welchem Bleiſtifte er ſchreibt?

EXERCISE 19. Aufgabe 19.

1. Are you writing the letter with the pencil of the scholar? 2. What does the child say of the honey? 3. Has this laborer more grain than flour, and more copper than gold? 4. Do you know what pencil the man is writing with? 5. Yes, I know which one he is writing with. 6. Why is the hunter coming out of the forest, and why is the child coming out of the house? 7. When does the laborer go to the forest? 8. When do you go to the teacher? 9. What does he say of the eagle? 10. Is the eye of the eagle large? 11. Does the apple fall from the tree? 12. The miller is coming from the house of the goldsmith, and the child is going to the house of the mil ler. 13. Do you see that anchor? 14. With which smith does the miller work? 15. The arm of the smith is large. 16. The brother of the baker is poor. 17. Which forest is the physician going to? 18. He is going neither to this one, nor to that one (L. X. 3.).

LESSON XII. Lection XII.

INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

1. The form of the indefinite article is less varied than that of the definite; having for its accusative masculine only, a characteristic ending:

Nom. masculine, ein, a;	*Nom. neuter*, ein, a.
Acc. masculine, ein-en, a;	*Acc. neuter*, ein, a.

Digitized by Google

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

2. The possessive pronouns constitute in German a distinct class of words, answering in signification to the *possessive* case of our *personal* pronouns. Like the article, they are subject to inflection, and agree in gender, number and case with their nouns:

Ich habe mein Papier und meinen Ball.	I have my paper and my ball.
Hat Ihr Freund das Buch meines Vetters oder Ihres Onkels?	Has your friend the book of my cousin, or of your uncle?
Schneiden Sie Ihr Brod mit meinem Messer?	Are you cutting your bread with my knife?

3. The indefinite article and the possessive pronouns (unlike dieſer, L. X. 4.) add by inflection, except in the nom. and acc. neuter, another syllable to the form of the nominative:

Der Sohn unſer-es Nachbars iſt ein Freund dieſes Jägers.	The son of our neighbor is a friend of this hunter.

4. DECLENSION OF INDEF. ARTICLE COMPARED WITH DEFINITE.

Masc.	*Neut.*	(*Lesson* VIII. 3.)
N. ein,	ein, a;	(N. der, das.)
G. ein-es,	ein-es, of a;	(G. des, des.)
D. ein-em,	ein-em, to *or* for a;	(D. dem, dem.)
A. ein-en,	ein, a;	(A. den, das.)

Like the indefinite article ein, are declined:

mein, my;	ſein, his, its;	unſer, our;	ihr, their;
dein, thy;	ihr, her;	euer, your;	kein, no.

5. When a word which ends in el, en, er, takes an additional syllable beginning with e, one e is often dropped:

unſ-ers, for unſer-es; unſ-erm, for unſer-em; etc.

WORDS IN APPOSITION.

6. Words in apposition must agree in case (§ 133):

Unſer Nachbar, der Sattler, hat das Pferd ſeines Freundes, des Gerbers.	Our neighbor, the saddler, has the horse of his friend, the tanner.

Digitized by Google

Er geht mit seinem Vetter, dem Maler, nach Paris.

He is going with his cousin, the painter, to Paris.

Beispiele.

Examples.

Ihr Freund hat Ihren Brief und Ihr Buch Ihrem Bruder geschickt.
Your friend has sent your letter and your book to your brother.

Was hat sein Freund in seinem Koffer?
What has his friend in his trunk?

Ich habe kein Eisen und keinen Stahl.
I have no iron and no steel.

Mein Tisch steht in meinem Zimmer.
My table is standing in my room.

Der Baum steht zwischen unserm Hause und Ihrem Garten.
The tree stands between our house and your garden.

Das Kind hat sein Messer und seinen Ball in seinem Hute.
The child has its knife and its ball in its hat.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

An, at;
Auf, on;
Denn (conjunction), for;
Ehe (adverb), ere, before;
Ein (*masc.* or *neut.*), a, an;
Das Feuer, the fire;
Der Freund, the friend;
Der Hammer, the hammer;
Hinter, behind;
Ihr (*masc.* or *neut.*), your;
In, in, into;
Kein (*m.* or *n.*), not any, no;
Liegen, to lie;
Mein (*masc.* or *neut.*), my;
Der Ofen, the stove;
Sein (*masc.* or *neut.*), his, its;
Sitzen, to sit;
Stehen, to stand;
Ueber, over;
Unser (*masc.* or *neut.*), our;
Unter, under, among;
Vor (preposition), before;
Das Zimmer, the room;
Zwischen, between.

Exercise 20.

Aufgabe 20.

1. Mein Bruder hat ein Pult, einen Tisch und einen Stuhl in seinem Zimmer. 2. Er sitzt an seinem Pulte, und sein Bleistift liegt auf dem Tische. 3. Haben Sie ein Feuer in Ihrem Zimmer? 4. Nein, denn ich habe keinen Ofen in meinem Zimmer. 5. Der Schmied hat seinen Hammer und sein Eisen. 6. Es ist der Freund seines Nachbars, des Sattlers. 7. Unser Freund hat unsern Hund. 8. Ist der Sohn unsres Nachbars in unsrem Garten? 9. Stehen Sie vor Ihrem Hause ehe Sie singen? 10. Steht der Baum zwischen Ihrem Garten und unserm Hause? 11. Mein Buch liegt unter Ihrem Pulte. 12. Das Zimmer des Glasers ist über dem Zimmer des Goldschmiedes. 13. Steht der Hund hinter Ihrem Pulte? 14. Hat das Kind sein Buch und seinen Bleistift? 15. Lesen Sie

Digitized by Google

in Ihrem oder in meinem Buche? 16. Dieſer Mann iſt arm, er hat weder Gold noch Brod

EXERCISE 21. Aufgabe 21.

1. Is your friend sitting at his table? 2. No, he is sitting at my table. 3. Why have you a stove in your room? 4. I have no stove in my room. 5. Does your book lie under your table? 6. No, it lies on my desk. 7. Is your friend in his garden? 8. No, he is in our house. 9. Your hammer is lying between the stove and the table. 10. The scholar's room is over the room of his father. 11. Have you no fire in your room? 12. I have no fire in my room, for I have no stove. 13. Is the friend of your teacher sitting behind your desk? 14. No, he is standing before his house; he writes before he reads. 15. Our friend, the miller, has our horse and our dog in his garden. 16. The son of the peasant has your anvil and your iron.

LESSON XIII. Lection XIII.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The interrogative pronouns are

Wer,	who;	welcher,	which, what;
Was,	what;	was für, (§ 66.)	what kind of.

In this connection, für may precede any of the cases:

Was für ein Mann iſt er?	What kind of a man is he?
Mit was für Tinte ſchreiben Sie?	With what kind of ink do you write?
In was für einem Hauſe wohnen Sie?	In what kind of a house do you live?

2. Between was and für other words are sometimes introduced:

Was hat er denn für Wunder vor unſern Augen gethan?—G.	What (kind of) miracles, then, has he performed before our eyes?

3. Welcher and was für are often employed in exclamations, in which use welcher usually drops the last syllable:

Welch ein Held!	What a hero!

Digitized by Google

Was hat unſer Herz für eine ſeltſame Aſtronomi'e gelernt!	What a singular astronomy has our heart learned!

4. The form welch is, also, employed in questions, when the succeeding word is under special emphasis:

Welch Schickſal aber wird das Eure ſein?	What fate though will yours be? (be yours?)

5. When not followed by a noun or an adjective, ein is rendered *a one*, and declined like dieſer (L. X. 4.):

Was für ein Vogel iſt der Adler, und was für einer iſt der Habicht?	What kind of a bird is the eagle, and what kind of *a one* is the hawk?

6. Was is sometimes used in the sense of warum:

Was hältſt Du meinen aufgehobenen Arm?	Why (what) holdest thou my uplifted arm?

DECLENSION OF THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS Wer AND Was.

N. wer?	who?	was?	what?
G. weſſen?	whose?	weß?	of what?
D. wem?	to *or* for whom?	(*dative wanting.*)	
A. wen?	whom?	was?	what?

7. The genitive of was seldom occurs except in compounds:

Weswegen hat er es gethan?	On account of what (why) has he done it?

8. Instead of was, construed with prepositions, the adverb wo (*where*) combined with them, is employed:

Womit (*not* mit was) ſchreibt er?	With what (wherewith) is he writing?
Wovon (*not* von was) ſpricht er?	Of what (whereof) does he speak
Worin (§ 103. 2.) hat er gefehlt?	In what (wherein) has he failed?

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Wiſſen Sie was für ein Thier das Flußpferd iſt, und in was für einem Lande es lebt?	Do you know what kind of an animal the hippopotamus is, and in what kind of a country it lives?
In weſſen Hauſe wohnen Sie?	In whose house do you live?
Wovon ſpricht der Maurer?	What is the mason speaking of?

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Becken, the basin;
Der Eisbär, the white bear:
faul, idle, lazy, indolent;
Der Koffer, the trunk;
Der Korb, the basket;
Das Krokodi'l, the crocodile;
Das Land, the country;
Leben, to live;
Lieben, to love;
Loben, to praise;
Machen, to make, do;
Das Messer, the knife;
Der Schuh, the shoe;
Der Schuhmacher, the shoemaker;
Der Strauß, the ostrich;
Der Tiger, the tiger;
Der Unterschied, the difference;
Der Vogel, the bird, fowl;
Wohnen, to reside, live;
Wovon, see 8.

EXERCISE 22. Aufgabe 22.

1. Wer lobt den Schüler, und wen lobt der Schüler? 2. Wessen Buch lesen Sie? 3. Wem schreiben Sie einen Brief? 4. Wissen Sie wessen Messer der Schuhmacher hat? 5. Was für ein Messer hat er? 6. Was für ein Mann hat mein Messer? 7. Mit wessen Bleistift schreiben Sie den Brief? 8. Mit was für einem Bleistifte und auf was für Papier schreibt der Lehrer? 9. In was für einem Lande lebt der Eisbär? 10. In was für einem lebt der Tiger? 11. In welchem Lande lebt der Eisbär? 12. Wissen Sie in welchem Lande das Krokodil lebt? 13. Was lesen Sie? 14. Was für einen Schuh macht der Schuhmacher? 15. Wem schickt der Schneider das Becken? 16. In wessen Hause wohnen Sie? 17. Was für ein Vogel ist der Strauß? 18. Wissen Sie den Unterschied zwischen "Leben" und "Wohnen?" 19. Liebt das Kind den Mann? 20. Wessen Korb hat der Schuhmacher? 21. Wissen Sie was für einen Koffer ich habe? 22. Von wem spreche ich, und wovon sprechen Sie? 23. Ich spreche von dem Müller; er ist faul.

EXERCISE 23. Aufgabe 23.

1. Whose horse has the tailor? 2. With whose pencil are you writing? 3. To whom does the saddler send the money? 4. To which merchant does this anchor belong? 5. What kind of an animal is the white bear? 6. In what kind of a country does he live? 7. In what kind of a house does the shoemaker live? 8. Do you know what kind of a bird the ostrich is? 9. In what kind of a country does the tiger live? 10. What are you doing with my knife? 11. Why is the child laughing?

Digitized by Google

12. Whom does the shoemaker praise? 13. Is he making a shoe? 14. Who is making the captain a trunk? 15. In what kind of a country does the crocodile live? 16. On whose table is my book lying? 17. Whom does the child love? 18. To whom is the child going? 19. To whom does the peasant send the basket? 20. Of whom are you speaking? 21. Of what am I speaking? 22. Whose basin has the cook? 23. Is our neighbor not idle?

LESSON XIV. Lection XIV.

ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives when used *predicatively*,* undergo no change of form; thus,

Masc. Der Stahl iſt gut.	The steel is good.
Neut. Das Eiſen iſt gut.	The iron is good.

ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

2. Adjectives, when used *attributively*,* are subject to three modes of inflection, called the *old*, the *new* and the *mixed* declensions.

3. Adjectives, when not immediately preceded by dieſer, ein, or some other word of that class (L. X. 4. and L. XII. 4.) are inflected according to the

OLD DECLENSION.

Masculine.	*Neuter.*		*Masc.*	*Neut.*
N. gut–er,	gut–es,	good;	(N. dieſ-er,	dieſ-es.)
G. gut–es (en),	gut–es (en),	of good;	(G. dieſ-es	dieſ-es.)
D. gut–em,	gut–em,	to *or* for good;	(D. dieſ-em,	dieſ-em.)
A. gut–en,	gut–es,	good.	(A. dieſ-en,	dieſ-es.)

* The terms predicative and attributive, which in grammar have a strictly conventional sense, should, by the pupil of German especially, be fully understood. Thus in the sentence, Hart–er Stahl iſt gut, hard steel is good; *hard* is regarded as a known attribute of the steel, while *good* is that which is predicated or affirmed of it. Hence *hard* is *attributive*, and *good predicative*.

Digitized by Google

4. The adjective, like the article, must agree with its noun.

5. The genitive of the old form is now seldom used; that of the new being preferred:

Die Farbe guten (instead of gutes) Goldes iſt gelb. — The color of good gold is yellow.

ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATIVE FORMS OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Attributive.			*Predicative.*	
Hart–er	Stahl	iſt	nützlich.	Hard steel is useful.
Hart–es	Eiſen	iſt	nützlich.	Hard iron is useful.
Nützlich–er	Stahl	iſt	hart.	Useful steel is hard.
Nützlich–es	Eiſen	iſt	hart.	Useful iron is hard.

6. Adjectives preceded by etwas, was and nichts, and used substantively, are of the old declension, and written with a capital initial:

Haben Sie etwas Neues	Have you any thing new?
Sie ſprechen von etwas Neuem.	You speak of something new?
Er ſagt nichts Schlechtes.	He says nothing bad.

7. An adjective, when referring to a noun understood, has the same ending as when the noun is expressed:

Er hat feines Tuch, ich habe grobes.	He has fine cloth, I have coarse.
Harter Stahl iſt gut, weicher iſt ſchlecht.	Hard steel is good, soft is bad.

Give the gender of the nouns in the following examples, as indicated by the adjective. State also which adjectives are *attributive*, and which *predicative*.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Weicher Stahl iſt nicht gut.	Soft steel is not good.
Gutes Blei iſt weich.	Good lead is soft.
Hat der Bauer guten Weizen und gutes Obſt?	Has the peasant good wheat and good fruit?
Wer hat feines Tuch und feinen Sammet?	Who has fine cloth and fine velvet?
Guter Senf iſt gelb, gutes Salz iſt weiß.	Good mustard is yellow, good salt is white.
Er ſpricht mit bitterm Hohne.	He speaks with bitter scorn.
Er ruft in bittrem Harme.—U.	He cries (*or* calls) in bitter sorrow

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Angenehm, pleasant;
Blau, blue;
Das Blei, the lead;
Fein, fine;
Gelb, yellow;
Grau, gray;
Grob, coarse;
Grün, green;
Immer, always;
Jetzt, now;
Der Mantel, the cloak;
Der Rock, the coat;
Roth, red;
Schwarz, black;
Trocken, dry;
Das Tuch, the cloth;
Der Vetter, the cousin;
Warm, warm;
Weiß, white;
Das Wetter, the weather.

EXERCISE 24. Aufgabe 24.

1. Ist Ihr Tuch fein oder grob? 2. Ich habe grobes Tuch, und der Schneider hat feines Tuch. 3. Dieser Rock ist von feinem Tuche, jener ist von grobem. 4. Der Stahl ist hart, das Blei ist weich. 5. Harter Stahl ist gut, weiches Blei ist gut. 6. Guter Stahl ist hart, gutes Blei ist weich. 7. Gutes Gold ist gelb, guter Stahl ist weiß. 8. Der Goldschmied hat weißen Stahl und gelbes Gold. 9. Das Wetter ist jetzt warm. 10. Warmes Wetter ist angenehm. 11. Angenehmes Wetter ist nicht immer warm. 12. Von was für Tuch macht der Schneider den Mantel? 13. Er macht den Mantel von blauem und den Rock von grünem Tuche. 14. Was für Wetter ist angenehm? 15. Kaltes, trockenes Wetter ist angenehm. 16. Das Leder des Sattlers ist gelb, das Leder des Schuhmachers ist schwarz. 17. Der Sattler hat gelbes Leder, und der Schuhmacher hat schwarzes. 18. Haben Sie weißes oder blaues Papier? 19. Ich habe blaues und mein Vetter hat weißes. 20. Hat der Schneider graues oder rothes Tuch? 21. Er hat weder graues noch rothes, er hat grünes, blaues, schwarzes und braunes.

EXERCISE 25. Aufgabe 25.

1. The weather is warm. 2. Warm weather is pleasant. 3. What kind of weather is always pleasant? 4. Dry weather is pleasant. 5. Is your cloth coarse? 6. I have coarse cloth, and my cousin has fine cloth. 7. The cloth of the tailor is blue, the leather of the saddler is yellow. 8. The tailor has blue cloth, and the saddler has yellow leather. 9. Is the saddler's coat of blue, of green, or of black cloth? 10. His coat is of

Digitized by Google

black cloth, and his cloak is of gray cloth. 11. Hard lead is not good, good lead is not hard. 12. Is the cloth of the tailor blue, brown, green, red, or black? 13. The tailor has black, blue, green, gray and red cloth. 14. This paper is white, and that is blue. 15. My cousin has blue paper, and his friend has white. 16. This tailor is making a coat from coarse gray cloth. 17. That smith has good steel and good iron. 18. The iron of our friend, the smith, is very good. 19. With whose good pencil are you writing your friend a letter? 20. From whose blue cloth is the tailor making his coat?

LESSON XV. Lection XV.

NEW DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives, when following dieſer, or any word of that class,* and referring to the same noun, are of the

NEW DECLENSION.

	Masculine.		*Neuter.*		
N.	dieſ-er	gute;	dieſ-es	gute;	this good.
G.	dieſ-es	guten;	dieſ-es	guten;	of this good.
D.	dieſ-em	guten;	dieſ-em	guten;	to *or* for the good.
A.	dieſ-en	guten;	dieſ-es	gute;	this good.

2. FORM OF THE NEW DECLENSION IN THE NOMINATIVE.

	Attributive			*Predicative.*		
Aller	gut-e	Stahl	iſt	hart.	All good steel is hard.	
Alles	gut-e	Eiſen	iſt	hart.	All good iron is hard.	
Der	hart-e	Stahl	iſt	gut.	The hard steel is good.	
Das	hart-e	Eiſen	iſt	gut.	The hard iron is good.	
Dieſer	ſchön-e	Vogel	iſt	weiß.	This beautiful bird is white.	
Dieſes	ſchön-e	Tuch	iſt	weiß.	This beautiful cloth is white.	
Jeder	gut-e	Mann	iſt	ehrlich.	Every good man is honest.	

* Namely: aller, der, einiger, etlicher, jeder, jener, mancher, ſolcher and welcher, (L. X. 4. § 31. § 32).

Digitized by Google

Attributive.			*Predicative.*		
Jedes	gut–e	Kind	iſt	ehrlich.	Every good child is honest.
Jener	ehrlich–e	Mann	iſt	gut.	That honest man is good.
Jenes	ehrlich–e	Kind	iſt	gut.	That honest child is good.
Mancher	gut–e	Mann	iſt	arm.	Many a good man is poor.
Manches	gut–e	Kind	iſt	arm.	Many a good child is poor.
Welcher	ſtolze	Mann	iſt	gut?	What proud man is good?
Welches	ſtolze	Kind	iſt	gut?	What proud child is good?

3. The final syllable of mancher, ſolcher and welcher, which by its characteristic ending, denotes the gender of the noun, is sometimes dropped; in which case the adjective that follows is inflected according to the old declension (L. XIV. 2.):

Manch gut–er Mann *instead of* Mancher gut–e Mann.
Solch grob–es Tuch *instead of* Solches grob–e Tuch.

4. The adjective with the article is often, for the sake of special emphasis, placed after the noun:

Das Bündniß, das verderbliche. The ruinous treaty (the treaty, the ruinous).

5. Adjectives denoting the material of which a thing is made, are formed from nouns by suffixing e, en, ern. In such case a, o and u often take the Umlaut:

ledern, leathern	from Leder, leather;
golden, golden, gold (made of gold)	from Gold, gold;
hölzern, wooden	from Holz, wood;
gläſern, glass (made of glass)	from Glas, glass.

Hat der Koch den hölzernen oder den ſteinernen Tiſch? Has the cook the wooden or the stone table?

Der Schüler hat das ſilberne Tintenfaß und ich das gläſerne. The scholar has the silver inkstand, and I the glass one.

Beiſpiele.

Examples.

Alles gute Schreibpapier iſt glatt. All good writing-paper is smooth.

Haben Sie das rothe Siegellack? Have you the red sealing-wax?

Gehört dieſes alte Pferd dem alten Fleiſcher? Does this old horse belong to the old butcher?

Jeder wirklich gute und nützliche Menſch iſt fleißig. Every really good and useful man (human being) is diligent.

Sehen Sie das glänzende Eis und den weißen Schnee auf jenem hohen Berge? Do you see the glittering ice and the white snow on yonder high mountain?

Digitized by Google

Der junge Mann ſchreibt dem alten Lehrer einen Brief.	The young man is writing the old teacher a letter.
Verzweiflung iſt der einzige ächte Atheismus.—R.	Despair is the only genuine atheism.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Aber, but;	Der Meißel, the chisel;
Alt, old;	Der Menſch, the man, human being;
Artig, polite, agreeable;	Neu, new;
Braun, brown;	Scharf, sharp;
Dumm, stupid;	Stolz, proud;
Fleißig, diligent, industrious;	Der Tiſchler, the cabinet-maker;
Genug, enough;	Unzufrieden, discontented, dissatisfied;
Jung, young;	Vielleicht, perhaps;
Lang, long;	Zufrieden, contented.
Der Lehrling, the apprentice;	
Der Maurer, the mason;	

Exercise 26. Aufgabe 26.

1. Ich habe das feine Tuch und der Schneider hat das grobe Tuch. 2. Dieſer Rock iſt von dem feinen Tuche, jener iſt von dem groben. 3. Der harte Stahl iſt gut, das weiche Blei iſt gut. 4. Dieſer junge Maurer kauft jenes junge Pferd. 5. Jenes junge Pferd gehört dieſem jungen Maurer. 6. Schreiben Sie den langen Brief mit dem alten Bleiſtifte des armen Lehrlings? 7. Gehört dieſer ſcharfe Meißel dem fleißigen Tiſchler? 8. Iſt jeder reiche Mann zufrieden? 9. Iſt nicht jeder zufriedene Mann reich genug? 10. Welcher fleißige Mann iſt unzufrieden? 11. Schreibt jener arme Schüler mit dem neuen Bleiſtifte? 12. Mancher ſtolze Menſch iſt dumm, aber vielleicht nicht jeder. (L. X. 3.) 13. Iſt alles trockene Wetter angenehm? 14. Welches gute Leder hat der alte Sattler, das gelbe, das grüne, das blaue, oder das ſchwarze? 15. Verkauft der artige Kaufmann das weiße Papier, oder das blaue? 16. Iſt aller gute Stahl hart, und alles gute Blei weiß? 17. In welchem kalten Lande lebt der Eisbär? 18. Iſt nicht jeder faule Schüler unzufrieden, oder wiſſen Sie nicht?

Exercise 27. Aufgabe 27.

1. This warm weather is very pleasant. 2. Is that young cabinet-maker the good friend of the old mason? 3. Is every

Digitized by Google

proud man stupid? 4. Is not every industrious man contented? 5. Is not that indolent apprentice very discontented? 6. Is the new chisel of the young cabinet-maker sharp? 7. Who has the sharp chisel of the poor glazier? 8. This polite scholar is writing the old teacher the long letter. 9. Has every contented man money enough? 10. Has this friend, the old glazier, the green, the blue, or the red glass? 11. Is the new cloak of the old mason of the fine cloth, or of the coarse? 12. Is the new cloth of the saddler gray, green, black, or blue? 13. The old saddler has the blue, the gray, the green and the black cloth, and the tailor has the red, the white, and the yellow. 14. Do you understand what that poor old man says? 15. With what old pencil is he writing that long letter? 16. Does any body know in which new house the rich miller lives? 17. Why does the poor peasant buy the fine cloth? 18. The new cloak of the old baker is very good.

LESSON XVI. Lection XVI.

MIXED DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives, when following mein, or a word of that class,* and referring to the same noun, are of the

MIXED DECLENSION.

	Masc.		*Neut.*		
N.	mein	gut-er,	mein	gut-es,	my good;
G.	meines	gut-en,	meines	gut-en,	of my good;
D.	meinem	gut-en,	meinem	gut-en,	to *or* for my good,
A.	meinen	gut-en,	mein	gut-es,	my good.

2. As mein, dein, etc., have the same form for each gender (*i. e.* in nom. masc. and neut.) the adjective following them takes the characteristic ending (L. X. 4.), thus indicating the gender of its noun:

* Namely: dein, ein, sein, ihr, unser, euer and kein; (L. XII. 4. § 32. § 33).

Digitized by Google

Ein alt–er Mann, an old man.	Ein alt–es Pferd, an old horse.
Mein neu–er Tiſch, my new table.	Sein neu–es Buch, his new book.
Ihr eigen–er Hut, your own hat.	Unſer eigen–es Haus, our own house.

3. Eigen, as denoting possession, often requires with "own," in translation, both a preposition and a pronoun, and sometimes only the latter:

Haben Sie ein eigenes Zimmer?	Have you a room *of your* own?
Ich habe kein eigenes Geld.	I have no money *of my* own.
Hat er nichts Eigenes?	Has he nothing *of his* own?
Ich ſchrieb es mit eigener Hand.	I wrote it with *my* own hand.
Er ſchrieb es mit eigener Hand.	He wrote it with *his* own hand.

ENDINGS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION NOMINATIVE.

	Attributive.		*Predicative.*		
Ein	gut–er	Mann	iſt	ehrlich.	A good man is honest.
Ein	gut–es	Kind	iſt	ehrlich.	A good child is honest.
Sein	ehrlich–er	Freund	iſt	gut.	His honest friend is good.
Sein	ehrlich–es	Kind	iſt	gut.	His honest child is good.
Mein	ſchön–er	Vogel	iſt	weiß.	My beautiful bird is white.
Mein	ſchön–es	Tuch	iſt	weiß.	My beautiful cloth is white.
Ihr	alt–er	Baum	iſt	groß.	Your old tree is large.
Ihr	alt–es	Haus	iſt	groß.	Your old house is large.
Unſer	groß–er	Baum	iſt	alt.	Our large tree is old.
Unſer	groß–es	Haus	iſt	alt.	Our large house is old.
Kein	gut–er	Mann	iſt	träge.	No good man is idle.
Kein	gut–es	Kind	iſt	träge.	No good child is idle.

4. Ein is also a numeral answering to *one*, and is then pronounced with a stronger emphasis, and often written with a capital initial:

Ich habe nur Ein Buch, und er hat drei.	I have but one book, and he has three.
Er lernt mehr in Einem Tage als ich in zwei.	He learns more in one day than I (do L. 38. 7.) in two.

5. Ein and kein, when not followed by an adjective or a noun, are inflected according to the old declension (L. XIV. 3.). In the nom. and acc. neut. the e of the final syllable is often omitted:

Sie haben zwei Pferde, ich habe eines (*or* eins), und er hat keines (*or* keins).	You have two horses, I have one, and he has none.

Digitized by Google

Ich habe zwei Tiſche, einer iſt neu, der andere alt.	I have two tables, one is new and the other is old.
Einer liebt oft was ein Anderer haßt.	One often loves what another hates.

6. Ein is frequently preceded by the definite article and then follows the new declension:

Der Eine iſt zu groß, der Andere iſt zu klein.	(The) one is too large, the other is too small.
Ich habe weder das Eine noch das Andere.	I have neither the one nor the other.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Mein neuer Leuchter ſteht auf meinem neuen Tiſche.	My new candlestick is standing on my new table.
Ich habe ein gutes Buch und einen guten Bleiſtift.	I have a good book and a good pencil.
Ich habe Einen, und mein Bruder hat drei.	I have one and my brother has three.
Das ganze Weltall iſt ein uferloſes Meer.—W.	The whole universe is a shoreless sea.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Auch, also, too;
Ehrlich, honest;
Hübſch, pretty, handsome;
Je, ever;
Das Kamee'l, the camel;
Der Kapitä'n, the captain;
Klein, small, little;
Der Klempner, the tinman;
Der Löffel, the spoon;
Noch, yet, still;
Nützlich, useful;
Reif, ripe;
Das Schiff, the ship;
Stark, strong;
Das Thier, the animal;
Todt, dead;
Treu, faithful;
Wachſam, watchful;
Der Wagen, the carriage;
Wirklich, really.

Exercise 28. Aufgabe 28.

1. Sie haben Ihr feines Tuch, und der Schneider hat ſein grobes Tuch. 2. Mein alter Freund hat ein hübſches Pferd und einen alten Wagen. 3. Das Kameel iſt ein großes, ſtarkes und ſehr nützliches Thier. 4. Der treue, wachſame Hund unſeres guten Freundes iſt todt. 5. Iſt unſer alter Freund noch in unſerm neuen Garten? 6. Ihr alter Freund iſt in ſeinem ſchönen, alten Garten. 7. Haben Sie einen guten, reifen Apfel? 8. Ich habe keinen reifen Apfel.

Digitized by Google

9. Wem verkauft der Kaufmann sein großes neues Schiff? 10. Er verkauft es seinem alten Freunde, dem Kapitän. 11. Hat mein junger Vetter mein blaues, mein gelbes, oder mein weißes Papier? 12. Er hat Ihr weißes, und sein guter Freund hat Ihr blaues. 13. Ist kein kaltes Wetter angenehm? 14. Schreiben Sie mit meinem alten Bleistifte oder mit Ihrem neuen? 15. Was für ein Thier ist Ihr alter Hund? 16. Was für ein neues Schiff kauft der Kapitän, ein großes oder ein kleines? 17. Ist ein wirklich ehrlicher, guter Mann je faul? 18. Ist ein fauler Mann je wirklich zufrieden? 19. Der Klempner hat Ihr altes Messer und auch Ihren alten Löffel.

EXERCISE 29. Aufgabe 29.

1. Our old friend is still in our new house. 2. Your young friend has our old horse, and also our old carriage. 3. What kind of black cloth has our old friend, the merchant? 4. He has no black cloth, but he has his good blue cloth. 5. Does the camel live in a warm or in a cold country? 6. Is the camel a large, strong and useful animal? 7. Has your good friend a faithful, watchful dog? 8. Has our old friend, the captain, a new ship, or an old one? 9. Have you a large tree in your new garden? 10. I am writing with your new pencil; have you my old one? 11. Is a faithful, watchful dog a useful animal? 12. Is an indolent scholar faithful, honest and useful? 13. Has the son of the old peasant a ripe apple? 14. The captain is selling the merchant his beautiful new ship. 15. Are you buying a young horse, or an old one? 16. I am buying a young horse, and my old friend is selling an old one. 17. Has the scholar my white paper or your blue? 18. He has my blue paper and your new pencil. 19. Has the child a small spoon?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XVII. Lection XVII.

1. CONNECTED VIEW OF THE OLD, NEW AND MIXED DECLENSIONS.

Masculine.

OLD DECLENSION.	NEW DECLENSION.	MIXED DECLENSION.	(L. XIV. 3.)
N. gut–er;	der gut–e;	mein gut–er;	(dieſ–er.)
G. gut–es (en);	des gut–en;	meines gut–en;	(dieſ–es.)
D. gut–em;	dem gut–en;	meinem gut–en;	(dieſ–em.)
A. gut–en;	den gut–en;	meinen gut–en;	(dieſ–en.)

Neuter.

N. gut–es;	das gut–e;	mein gut–es;	(dieſ–es.)
G. gut–es (en);	des gut–en;	meines gut–en;	(dieſ–es.)
D. gut–em;	dem gut–en;	meinem gut–en;	(dieſ–em.)
A. gut–es;	das gut–e;	mein gut–es;	(dieſ–es.)

2. WORDS REQUIRING THE ADJECTIVE IN THE NEW DECLENSION.

Masc.	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*
aller,	alles;	einiger,	einiges;	jener,	jenes;	welcher,	welches.
der,	das;	etlicher,	etliches;	mancher,	manches;	(L. 15.)	
dieſer,	dieſes;	jeder,	jedes;	ſolcher,	ſolches;		

3. WORDS REQUIRING THE ADJECTIVE IN THE MIXED DECLENSION.

dein, ein, euer, ihr, kein, mein, ſein, unſer. (L. 16.)

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Der junge Maler iſt ein geſchickt'er Künſtler.	The young painter is a skillful artist.
Dieſer geſchickte Künſtler iſt ein guter Freund.	This skillful artist is a good friend.
Der alte Sattler deckt den Koffer mit neuem Leder.	The old saddler covers the trunk with new leather.
Er deckt den Tiſch mit einem grünen Tuche.	He covers the table with a green cloth.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Böſe, cross, ill-natured;
Eiſern, iron (adjective);
Das Gefäß, the vessel;
Gläſern, glass (adjective);
Glatt, smooth;
Haſſen, to hate;
Häßlich, ugly, ill-formed;
Hölzern, wooden;
Der Keſſel, the kettle;
Der Knopf, the button, knob.
Der Knecht, the servant, slave;
Der Krug, the pitcher;
Kupfern, copper (adjective),
Meſſingen, brass (adjective);
Der Nagel, the nail;
Das Pulver, the powder;
Das Schloß, the lock;
Das Schreibpapier, the writing-paper.
Sehen, to see (leſen, L. 7.);
Der Verräther, the traitor.

Exercise 30. Aufgabe 30.

1. Ich habe Ihr feines Tuch und den großen Knopf des Kaufmannes. 2. Deckt der alte Sattler den alten Tiſch mit grünem oder mit blauem Tuche? 3. Er deckt den Tiſch mit dieſem groben grünen Tuche. 4. Unſer junger Freund hat unſer junges Pferd. 5. Der junge Mann verkauft das häßliche Pferd. 6. Hat der böſe Schmied einen großen Nagel, oder den kupfernen Keſſel des Kaufmannes? 7. Er hat kein gutes Eiſen, aber er hat guten Stahl und gutes Kupfer. 8. Jener alte Mann iſt mein alter Nachbar. 9. Wem gehört dieſes neue Schloß? 10. Ich habe kein neues Schloß. 11. Haben Sie weißes Papier oder blaues? 12. Ich habe das weiße Papier meines Bruders, und er hat mein blaues Papier. 13. Alles gute Schreibpapier iſt glatt, aber nicht alles glatte Papier iſt gut. 14. Haßt nicht jeder gute Menſch einen Verräther? 15. Das Faß iſt ein hölzernes Gefäß. 16. Der Keſſel iſt ein eiſernes, kupfernes, oder meſſingenes Gefäß. 17. Wo iſt der gläſerne Krug? 18. Der Knecht hat einen Krug, aber nicht einen gläſernen. 19. Ich habe gutes Pulver, aber kein gutes Blei.

Exercise 31. Aufgabe 31.

1. The ill-natured tailor has his fine cloth and the pretty button of his good friend. 2. Is all smooth writing-paper good? 3. Is not all good writing-paper smooth? 4. To whom does this coarse powder belong? 5. The hunter has fine powder, but he has no coarse. 6. The iron kettle of the servant is large, his copper kettle is small. 7. Do you know where my glass

Digitized by Google

pitcher is? 8. I see your glass pitcher on your new table 9. Does not every honest man hate a traitor? 10. This agreeable child has a wooden horse and a large iron ring. 11. Have you a brass nail or an iron one? 12. A cask is a large wooden vessel; a kettle is an iron, a copper, or a brass one. 13. I have my white paper and the white paper of the scholar. 14. The young saddler is covering the old trunk with black leather. 15. Does the ugly man cover his table with the blue cloth, or with the green? 16. He covers his old table with a red cloth. 17. Which new book have you? 18. I have no new book. 19. I have white paper and he has yellow.

LESSON XVIII. Lection XVIII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. The words jedermann, jemand, man, niemand, nichts and etwas *or* was, are *indefinite pronouns.*

2. Jedermann is declined like a *noun* of the old declension; jemand and niemand may be declined in the same way, or like an *adjective* of the old declension (§ 59). Man, nichts and etwas are indeclinable:

Sie ſprechen von etwas Neuem.	You speak of something new.
Ich ſpreche von nichts.	I do not speak of any thing.

3. Jedermann answers in signification to *every body:*

Jedermann hat ſeine ſchwache Seite.	Every body has his weak side.

4. Jemand answers to any body, somebody, and etwas to any thing, something:

Sehen Sie Jemand?	Do you see any body (*or* somebody)?
Ja, ich ſehe Jemand.	Yes, I see somebody.
Hören Sie nicht Etwas?	Do you not hear something?
Ja, ich höre etwas, *or* was.	Yes, I hear something.

5. Niemand answers to *nobody, not any body;* and nichts to *nothing, not any thing:*

Niemand lobt mich, und ich lobe Niemanden.	Nobody praises me, and I do not praise any body.

Digitized by Google

Schicken Sie Ihrem Bruder nichts?	Do you not send your brother any thing.

6. The negative particle, nicht, is used with jemand and etwas only in interrogative sentences; hence for the twofold forms of expression in English, there is but one in German.

Ich ſehe Niemanden.	I do not see any body. *Literally:* I see nobody.
Er kauft nichts.	He does not buy any thing. *Literally:* He buys nothing.

7. Einer, (*one*), and keiner, (*no one, nobody*), are also called indefinite pronouns:

Zu rein iſt nicht Einer im Reich.—T.	Not one in the kingdom is too pure.
Keiner wußte den Namen.	No one knew the name.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Ich höre Jemanden, aber ich ſehe Niemanden.	I hear somebody, but I do not see any body.
Kaufen Sie nicht etwas?	Do you not buy something?
Nein, ich kaufe Nichts.	No, I do not buy any thing.
Haben Sie etwas Schönes?	Have you any thing beautiful?
Ich habe etwas Schönes.	I have something beautiful.
Jedermann haßt und verachtet einen Verräther.	Every body hates and despises a traitor.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Beſu'chen, to visit;
Der Bohrer, the auger;
Der Buchhändler, the bookseller;
Eigennützig, selfish;
Etwas, something, any thing;
Der Führer, the guide, leader;
Der Hobel, the plane;
Jedermann, every body;
Jemand, any body, somebody;
Der Käſe, the cheese;
Das Kleid, the dress, garment;
Das Lied, the song;
Der Mais, the maize, Indian corn
Nichts, nothing, not any thing,
Niemand, nobody, not anybody
Rauchen, to smoke;
Der Schuhmacher, the shoemaker;
Der Taba'k, the tobacco;
Der Teller, the plate;
Der Ueberſchuh, the overshoe.

Exercise 32. Aufgabe 32.

1. Warum lobt Jedermann dieſen Schüler? 2. Jedermann iſt eigennützig. 3. Hat Jemand meinen Ueberſchuh? 4. Der Schuhmacher macht Jemandem einen Ueberſchuh. 5. Niemand lobt den

Digitized by Google

Buchhändler, und der Buchhändler lobt Niemanden. 6. Jemand ſchickt dem Knechte einen neuen Hobel und einen neuen Bohrer. 7. Schicken Sie dem Schneider den Knopf? 8. Niemand ſchickt dem Schneider den Knopf und das Kleid. 9. Beſuchen Sie Jemanden? 10. Ich beſuche Jemanden, aber mein Freund beſucht Niemanden. 11. Kaufen Sie nicht etwas? 12. Ich kaufe nichts, aber mein Bruder kauft etwas. 13. Kauft er etwas Schönes? 14. Er kauft etwas Nützliches, aber nichts Schönes. 15. Raucht Jemand hier Tabak? 16. Nein, Niemand raucht. 17. Jemand hat den Teller, den Krug und den Käſe unſeres Führers. 18. Jemand ſingt, hören Sie das Lied? 19. Haſſen Sie Jemanden? 20. Nein, ich haſſe Niemanden. 21. Kauft Jemand den Honig, den Mais und den Keſſel?

Exercise 33. Aufgabe 33.

1. Somebody is visiting our old guide. 2. Does any body hate the bookseller? 3. No, and the bookseller does not hate any body. 4. To whom does the peasant send the honey, the maize and the cheese? 5. He does not send any body the maize, but he sells somebody the honey. 6. Why does every body praise this child? 7. Is every body very selfish? 8. Has not somebody my plane? 9. No, nobody has your plane, but somebody has the auger of the servant. 10. Is any body smoking? 11. Is somebody singing a song? 12. Somebody has my pitcher and my plate. 13. Do you not send somebody the money? 14. No, I do not send any body (I send nobody; see 6) the money. 15. Does any body send the tailor the dress and the button? 16. The tailor sends somebody the dress. 17. Has the cook any body's kettle? 18. Yes, he has one. (L. 16. 5) 19. I have somebody's nail. 20. Have you any body's tobacco? 21. Is any body every body's friend?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XIX. Lection XIX.

INDEFINITE PRONOUN Man.

1. The pronoun man (like the French *on*) indicates persons in a general and indefinite manner:

Man darf nicht zu viel ſchlafen.	*One* should not sleep too much; *or* *People* should not sleep too much.
Was trinkt man in Grönland?	What do *they* drink in Greenland? What does *one* drink in Greenland?
Man ißt ſelten zu wenig.	*People* seldom eat too little; *or* *One* seldom eats too little.
Man haßt einen Tyrannen.	*One* hates a tyrant; *or* A tyrant is hated.
Man ſchmeichelt ihr zu ſehr.	*People* flatter her too much; *or* She is too much flattered.

2. Man is used only in the nominative; the oblique cases being supplied by other words:

Man ißt um ſein Leben zu erhalten.	*One* eats in order to preserve *one's* (his) life.
Er will einen nie hören.	He will never listen to *one*.
Man ſoll ſeinen Nächſten wie ſich ſelbſt lieben.	*One* should love *one's* (his) neighbor as *one's self* (himself).

3. Gar (as also the more emphatic ganz und gar), *before* a negative, answers to *at all*, *after* a negative:

Er hat gar nichts.	He has nothing *at all*.	(*at all* nothing).
Es iſt gar nicht kalt.	It is not *at all* cold.	(*at all* not cold).
Ich weiß ganz und gar nichts davon.	I know nothing *at all* of it (thereof).	

Beiſpiele. Examples.

Was man nicht verſteht', beſitzt' man nicht.—G.	What *one* does not understand, *one* does not possess.
Es iſt zuweilen hohe Weisheit zu vergeſſ'en was man weiß.—G.	It is sometimes great wisdom to forget what *one* knows.
Weiß man wer dieſe blut'ge That verübt'e?	Is it known who committed this bloody deed?
Mit der Zeit und mit der Geduld' lernt man Alles.	With (the) time and with (the) patience *one* learns every thing.
Um glücklich zu ſein bedarf' man nur Zufried'enheit.	In order to be happy *one* needs only contentment.

Digitized by Google

Man glaubt es gar nicht welch eintöniges Wesen man wird, wenn man sich immer in dem Zirkel seiner Lieblingsbegriffe herumdreht.—K.

One can not at all imagine what monotonous being *one* becomes if *one* constantly remains (turns one's self) in the circle of *one's* favorite notions.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Besitz'en, to possess;
Fangen, to catch (§ 78);
Finden, to find;
Fürchten, to fear,
Gewöhn'lich, generally·
Glauben, to believe;
Der Krieg, the war;
Leicht, easily, readily;
Der Marmor, the marble;
Man, (see 1.) one;
Nur, only, but;
Das Rußland, (the) Russia;
Der Seehund, the seal;
Sehr, very, very much;
Selten, seldom;
Viel, much;
Während, while;
Wahrscheinlich, probable;
Der Wallfisch, the whale;
Wenig, little, few;
Wünschen, to wish;
Zuverläßig, reliable.

Exercise 34. Aufgabe 34.

1. Wo findet man den Marmor? 2. Was sagt man von dem Kriege in Rußland? 3. Man hört viel von dem Kriege, aber nichts Zuverläßiges. 4. Man lobt gewöhnlich was man liebt. 5. Man besitzt nicht was man nicht versteht. 6. Man ist selten unzufrieden während man arbeitet. 7. Man findet jetzt mehr Gold als Silber. 8. Das Wasser ist gar nicht kalt. 9. Er hat gar kein Geld, und ich habe nur sehr wenig. 10. Wo fängt man den Wallfisch und den Seehund? 11. In was für einem Lande findet man den Wolf? 12. Was er Ihrem Freunde sagt ist gar nicht wahrscheinlich. 13. Man glaubt leicht was man wünscht oder fürchtet. 14. Auf was für Papier schreiben Sie den Brief? 15. Ich habe gar kein Papier, ich schreibe keinen Brief.

Exercise 35. Aufgabe 35.

1. Is one not generally contented while one is working? 2. In what country is the black marble found? 3. Is nothing reliable heard from the war in Russia? 4. In what kind of water is the whale found? 5. Is the seal caught easily? 6. My friend has no money at all, and I have but very little. 7. What is said is not at all probable, but he believes it, for he wishes

Digitized by Google

it. 8. Does one believe easily what one fears? 9. What is said of the war? 10. Much is said of the war, but it is not believed. 11. Our old neighbor is seen very seldom. 12. Whose pencil has the child? 13. It has no pencil at all, it has my new knife. 14. What kind of a book is the scholar reading? 15. He is reading no book at all, he is reading a letter.

LESSON XX. Lection XX.

1. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Aus, out, out of; außer, without, out of; bei, by, with; binnen, within; entgegen, against, toward; gegenüber, over against, opposite; gemäß, conformable; mit, with; nach, to, toward; nächſt, next to; nebſt, beside, including; ob, over, on, on account of; ſammt, together with; ſeit, since; von, of, from; zu, to, at, by, in; zuwider, against, contrary to. These prepositions all govern the dative only.

2. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Durch, through, by, by means of; für, for, instead of; gegen, toward, about; ohne, without, beside; ſonder, without; um, around, near, at, for; wider, against, in opposition to. These prepositions all govern the accusative only.

3. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

An, at, in, on, by, to; auf, upon, in, at, up, toward; hinter, behind, after, back; in, in, into, to; neben, by, near, beside; über, over, above, at, about; unter, under, below, among; vor, before, ago; zwiſchen, between, among. These prepositions govern the *dative*, when used with verbs of *rest*, or with those indicating motion *within* specified limits; and the *accusative*, when motion or tendency *toward* any place or object is indicated:

Er läuft in dem Garten.	He is running *in* the garden.
Er läuft in den Garten.	He is running *into* the garden.

Digitized by Google

Er läuft auf dem Eise.	He is running *on* the ice.
Er läuft auf das Eis.	He is running *on* (*"onto"*) the ice.
Er ist in dem Hause.	He is *in* the house.
Er geht in das Haus.	He goes *into* the house.

4. Prepositions are frequently contracted with the definite article into one word:

Am	(for an	dem).	Er sitzt am Tische.	He sits *at* the table.
Ans	(for an	das).	Er geht ans Fenster.	He goes *to* the window.
Aufs	(for auf	das).	Er legt es aufs Brett.	He lays it *on* the board.
Beim	(for bei	dem).	Er ist beim Bruder.	He is *with* the brother.
Durchs	(for durch	das).	Er geht durchs Feld.	He goes *through* the field.
Fürs	(for für	das).	Es ist fürs Kind.	It is *for* the child.
Hinterm	(for hinter	dem).	Er steht hinterm Zaune.	He stands *behind* the fence.
Im	(for in	dem).	Er ist im Hause.	He is *in* the house.
Ins	(for in	das).	Er geht ins Haus.	He goes *into* the house.
Vom	(for von	dem).	Er kommt vom Markte.	He comes *from* the market.
Zum	(for zu	dem).	Er geht zum Freunde.	He goes *to* the friend.
Zur	(for zu	der; feminine gender, L. 23.)		

EXAMPLES OF an, von, auf, aus AND nach.

Er denkt an seinen Freund.	He thinks *of* (*about*) his friend.
Er spricht von seinem Freunde.	He speaks *of* his friend.
Er ist stolz auf seinen Reichthum.	He is proud *of* his wealth.
Was wurde aus dem Schüler?	What became *of* the scholar?
Das Wasser schmeckt nach Eisen.	The water tastes *of* iron.
Er ist ein Engländer von Geburt.	He is an Englishman *by* birth.
Aller Segen kommt von Oben.	Every blessing comes *from* above.
Er ist fast verzehrt' von der Hitze.	He is almost consumed *with* the heat
Er lebt von Brod und Wein.	He lives *on* bread and wine.
Er ist groß von Person'. (§ 107)	He is tall *in* stature.

Beispiele.	Examples.
Einer steht an dem Fenster, und der Andere geht an das Fenster.	One is standing at the window, and the other is going to the window.
Der alte Mann und sein alter Freund gehen in das alte Haus.	The old man and his old friend are going into the old house.
Fliegt der Vogel in das Zimmer oder in dem Zimmer?	Is the bird flying into the room or in the room.
Warum legt der Kellner das Holz neben den Ofen?	Why does the waiter lay the wood beside the stove?

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Band, the ribbon;
Das Bett, the bed;
Der Bettler, the beggar;
Das Bindewort, the conjunction;
Durch, through;
Das Fenſter, the window;
Für, for (preposition);
Gegen, toward, to, about;
Der Graben, the ditch;
Der Keller, the cellar;
Legen, to place, lay.
Neben, beside;
Oft, often;
Ohne, without;
Roſtig, rusty;
Springen, to spring;
Um, around, near;
Unhöflich, impolite;
Das Verhält'nißwort, the prepositio
Wider, against.

Exercise 36. Aufgabe 36.

1. Der Mann ſteht an dem Fenſter, und das Kind geht an das Fenſter. 2. Er ſitzt auf dem Stuhle und legt ſein Buch auf das Bett. 3. Das Kind iſt hinter dem Ofen; der Hund geht hinter den Ofen. 4. Das Papier liegt neben dem Buche; der Schüler legt den Bleiſtift neben das Buch. 5. Das Haus ſteht über dem Keller; das Pferd ſpringt über den Graben. 6. Der junge Mann ſteht unter dem Baume; ſein Freund geht unter den Baum. 7. Der Kaufmann ſteht vor dem Hauſe; der alte Sattler kommt vor das Haus. 8. Der Baum ſteht zwiſchen dem Hauſe und dem Garten; der Mann geht zwiſchen das Haus und den Garten. 9. Der kleine Vogel fliegt in das Zimmer; fliegt er auch in dem Zimmer? 10. Der Jäger geht durch den Wald und um das Feld; er hat ein rothes Band um ſeinen Hut. 11. Er iſt unhöflich gegen unſern Nachbar. 12. Was ſagt er wider Ihren Vetter? 13. Gehen Sie ohne Ihren Stock? 14. Ich habe nichts für den Schüler, denn er iſt nicht mein Freund. 15. Was iſt der Unterſchied zwiſchen "denn" und "für?" 16. Denn iſt ein Bindewort, für ein Verhältnißwort.

Exercise 37. Aufgabe 37.

1. Who is standing at that window? 2. Before which large table is the scholar sitting? 3. Is the old beggar coming before our house? 4. The dog is going behind the house; the garden lies behind the house. 5. Your new pencil is lying beside my new book; why does the scholar lay his paper beside my new book? 6. The child is playing between the house and the garden; the horse is going between the tree and the house.

Digitized by Google

7. The man is in the house, and his brother is going into the house. 8. The dog springs over the ditch; the room of the tailor is over the room of the shoemaker. 9. The horse is standing under the tree; the dog is going under the tree; the child is going to the window. 10. Who says any thing against the miller? 11. Why does the bird fly around the field and the forest? 12. What kind of paper do you buy for the scholar? 13. I do not buy any paper at all, for I have no money. 14. Do you know the difference between a conjunction and a preposition? 15. The saddler is going through the forest; does he go without his cane? 16. Is the scholar impolite to our friend?

LESSON XXI. Lection XXI.

NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

1. All verbs, in the present and imperfect, in negative sentences, are employed, like *to have* and *to be*, in English, without an auxiliary:

Er iſt nicht hier.	He is not here.	
Er wohnt nicht hier.	He does not live here.	(He lives not here.)
Er hat es nicht.	He has it not.	
Er kauft es nicht.	He does not buy it.	(He buys it not.)

POSITION OF Nicht.

2. In simple sentences nicht follows the object of the verb to which it refers. When, however, that which is in one clause denied, is in another affirmed of a different object, nicht *precedes* the object:

Ich habe den Hut nicht.	I have not the hat (the hat not)
Er lobt ſeinen Sohn nicht.	He does not praise his son.
Ich habe den guten Bleiſtift, aber nicht das Papier.	I have the good pencil, but not the paper.
Ich habe nicht den Bleiſtift, ſondern das Papier.	I have not the pencil, but the paper.

Digitized by Google

3. In interrogative sentences, nicht frequently precedes the object of the verb:

Haben Sie nicht den Bleistift?	Have you not the pencil?

4. Sondern occurs only after a *negative*, of which it introduces the opposite; while

Aber is less strongly adversative; often merely marking something additional, and may follow either an affirmation or negation:

Er ist nicht reich sondern arm.	He is not rich but poor.
Er ist nicht reich aber stolz.	He is not rich but proud.
Er ist freigebig aber nicht reich.	He is generous but not rich.
Er ist nicht nur reich sondern auch freigebig.	He is not only rich but also generous.
Das Messer ist nicht scharf sondern stumpf.	The knife is not sharp but dull.

5. Nicht wahr? not true? (is it not true? like the French *n'est-ce pas?*) answers to our various interrogative phrases after an assertion:

Sie kennen ihn,		You know him, do you not?
Er ist Ihr Bruder,		He is your brother, is he not?
Sie wird gehen,		She will go, will she not?
Er hat es geha'bt,	nicht wahr?	He has had it, has n't he?
Wir können hören,		We can hear, can we not?
Sie sind reich,		They are rich, are they not?
Sie sind nicht reich,		They are not rich, are they?

6. Nicht wahr sometimes *precedes* the assertion; and, occasionally, the latter word is not expressed:

Nicht wahr, er ist sehr reich?	He is very rich, is he not?
Sie kennen den Mann, nicht?	You know the man, do you not?
Er ist noch hier, nicht?	He is still here, is he not?

7. Nicht, when used with noch (*yet*), should *follow* it; as should also, kein, immer, and other words similarly employed

Er ist noch nicht hier.	He is not yet here.	(He is yet not here.)
Er war noch nie krank.	He was never yet sick.	(He was yet never sick.)
Hat er noch kein Buch?	Has he no book yet?	(Has he yet no book?)

8 Auch nicht, auch kein, etc., after a negation, are often best

Digitized by Google

rendered by *neither nor; not either*, or some similar word or phrase, not strictly literal:

Ich ſinge nicht; er ſingt auch nicht.	I do not sing; neither does he sing.	(I do not sing; he too does not sing.)
Er iſt nicht reich; auch iſt er nicht arm.	He is not rich, neither (nor) is he poor.	(He is not rich, he is also not poor.)
Sie haben kein Geld, ich auch nicht.	You have no money, nor I either.	(You have no money, I also not.)
Er iſt nie zufri'eden, ich auch nicht.	He is never contented; neither am I.	(He is never contented; I also (am) not.)

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Warum beſu'chen Sie uns nicht öfter?	Why do you not visit us oftener?
Wiſſen Sie nicht warum er weint?	Do you not know why he is weeping?
Ich kenne den Maler nicht, mein Bruder kennt ihn auch nicht.	I do not know the painter, neither does my brother know him.
Haben Sie nicht mein Papier und meinen Bleiſtift?	Have not you my paper and my pencil?
Ich habe den Bleiſtift, aber nicht das Papier.	I have the pencil, but not the paper.
Das Wetter iſt nicht trocken ſondern feucht.	The weather is not dry, but moist.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Brauſen, to roar;	Morgen, to-morrow;
Aufmerkſam, attentive;	Nachläſſig, negligent;
Das Dorf, the village;	Nie, never;
Engliſch, English;	Der Norweger, the Norwegian;
Der Fluß, the river;	Sondern, but;
Franzöſiſch, French;	Stumpf, dull;
Freigebig, generous;	Der Taucher, the diver;
Heute, to-day;	Der Verbre'cher, the criminal;
Intereſſant, interesting;	Der Wind, the wind;
Langweilig, tedious;	Zittern, to tremble;
Lehrreich, instructive;	Zuwei'len, sometimes.

Exercise 38. Aufgabe 38.

1. Hören Sie nicht wie der Wind brauſt? 2. Ich ſehe wie das Kind zittert. 3. Iſt nicht jedes lehrreiche Buch intereſſant? 4. Iſt nicht manches lehrreiche Buch langweilig? 5. Welchen Unterſchied finden Sie zwiſchen "Nicht jedes lehrreiche Buch iſt intereſſant," und "Jedes lehrreiche Buch iſt nicht intereſſant?" 6. Dieſer Verbrecher

Digitized by Google

ſpricht franzöſiſch, nicht wahr? 7. Der geſchickte Taucher bringt ihn aus dem Fluſſe. 8. Aber, wer ſpricht kein engliſch, und wer ſpricht kein franzöſiſch? 9. Mein Meſſer iſt nicht neu, ſondern alt. 10. Es iſt neu, aber nicht ſcharf. 11. Es iſt nicht ſcharf, ſondern ſtumpf. 12. Warum loben Sie jenen Schüler nicht? 13. Ich lobe jenen, aber nicht dieſen. 14. Iſt er nicht zuweilen ſehr nachläſſig? 15. Nein, er iſt nie nachläſſig, ſondern immer aufmerkſam. 16. Gehen Sie nicht heute nach dem Dorfe? 17. Ja, ich gehe jetzt, und mein Bruder geht morgen. 18. Warum ſprechen Sie nicht engliſch?

EXERCISE 39. Aufgabe 39.

1. Have not you my book? 2. No, I have not the book. 3. This child is not industrious, but idle. 4. Not this child, but that one is attentive. 5. You speak French, do you not? 6. I speak English, but not French. 7. Why do you not write to-day? 8. I write French, but I do not write English. 9. You do not find this book tedious, do you? 10. I do not find it very interesting. 11. Is every instructive book tedious? 12. Do you never go to the village with your brother? 13. My brother is going to-day, and I am going to-morrow. 14. Is that scholar sometimes very idle and very negligent? 15. This new knife and the new chisel are not sharp, but dull and rusty. 16. Our old neighbor, the old Norwegian, is not only a very rich, but also a very generous man. 17. Your new book is not interesting, neither is it instructive. 18. My new book is not only instructive, but also interesting.

LESSON XXII. Lection XXII.

NOUNS OF THE NEW DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the *new* declension ending in unaccented ar, e, er, el, form all their oblique cases by adding n (for fem. sing., however, see L. XXIII. 4):

N.	der Ungar,	der Neffe,	der Baier,
G.	des Ungar-n,	des Neffe-n,	des Baier-n,
D.	dem Ungar-n,	dem Neffe-n,	dem Baier-n,
A.	den Ungar-n,	den Neffe-n,	den Baier-n.

Digitized by Google

2. Nouns of this declension *not* ending in ar, etc., as above, form the oblique cases by adding en:

N.	der Graf,	der Soldat,	der Held,
G.	des Graf–en,	des Soldat–en,	des Held–en,
D.	dem Graf–en,	dem Soldat–en,	dem Held–en,
A.	den Graf–en,	den Soldat–en,	den Held–en.

3. When an adjective or a participle is used substantively, it still follows the declension of its original word:

Dieſer Deutſche iſt ein Geſandt'er.	This German is an embassador.
Dieſer Geſandt'e iſt ein Deutſcher.	This embassador is a German.

4. To the new declension belong most names of males ending in e, many names of nations, as also various foreign nouns (§ 18):

Der Löwe, the lion;	Der Ochs (or, Ochſe), the ox;
Der Haſe, the hare;	Der Advoc'at, the advocate;
Der Baier, the Bavarian;	Der Ungar, the Hungarian.

5. To ascertain to which of the two declensions a noun belongs, the pupil has only to observe the endings of the genitive, as given in the vocabularies; es (or s) denoting the *old* declension, and n (or en) the *new;* thus,

Der Affe, –n, the ape;	Der Käſe, –s, the cheese;
Der Wolf, –es, the wolf;	Der Bär, –en, the bear;
Der Held, –en, the hero;	Der Feind, –es, the enemy;
Der Ruf, –es, the call;	Der Graf, –en, the count;
Der Baier, –n, the Bavarian;	Der Oeſtreicher, –s, the Austrian.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Warum iſt der Franzoſ'e der Freund des Engländers und des Türken?	Why is the Frenchman the friend of the Englishman and the Turk?
Iſt der Oeſtreicher der Feind des Ruſſen oder des Franzoſen?	Is the Austrian the enemy of the Russian or of the Frenchman?
Was für ein Landsmann iſt der König von Griechenland?	What countryman is the king of Greece?
Der Sclave liebt ſeine Sclavere'i nicht.	The slave does not love his slavery.
Der Ungar liebt den Oeſtreicher nicht; der Pole auch nicht.	The Hungarian does not love the Austrian; neither does the Pole.
Der Ungar liebt den Oeſtreicher nicht, den Ruſſen auch nicht.	The Hungarian does not love the Austrian, nor the Russian either.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Amerika'ner, –s, the American;
Anſtreng'end, toilsome;
Der Baier, –n, the Bavarian;
Deutſch, German (adj.);
Der Engländer, –s, the Englishman;
Der Feind, –es, the enemy;
Der Franzo'ſe, –n, the Frenchman;
Führen, to lead;
Das Griechenland, –s, (the) Greece;
Der Italie'ner, –s, the Italian;
Der Knabe, –n, the boy;
Der König, –es, the king;
Das Leben, –s, the life
Der Matro'ſe, –n, the sailor;
Der Neffe, –n, the nephew;
Der Oheim, –s, the uncle;
Der Oeſtreicher, –s, the Austrian;
Der Pole, –n, the Pole;
Der Ruſſe, –n, the Russian;
Der Soldat, –en, the soldier;
Der Türke, –n, the Turk;
Der Ungar, –n, the Hungarian;
Unſicher, insecure;
Unterdrücken, to oppress.

EXERCISE 40. Aufgabe 40.

1. Der Matroſe führt ein unſicheres und anſtrengendes Leben. 2. Das Leben eines Matroſen iſt anſtrengend und unſicher. 3. Der Neffe des alten Soldaten hat einen Brief von ſeinem Oheime. 4. Der alte Soldat ſchreibt ſeinem Neffen, dem jungen Soldaten, einen Brief. 5. Der Knabe lobt nicht den Soldaten, ſondern den Matroſen. 6. Iſt der König von Griechenland ein Deutſcher? 7. Iſt der Deutſche der Freund des Italieners? 8. Iſt der Franzoſe der Freund des Deutſchen? 9. Warum haßt der Türke den Ruſſen? 10. Der Ruſſe unterdrückt den Türken und den Polen. 11. Warum unterdrückt der Oeſtreicher den Italiener, den Ungarn und den Polen? 12. Wen unterdrückt der Amerikaner? 13. Wen unterdrückt der Engländer? 14. Wer haßt den Engländer und den Amerikaner? 15. Haßt der Ruſſe den Engländer, den Franzoſen, den Ungarn, den Polen und den Türken?

EXERCISE 41. Aufgabe 41.

1. Why is the Pole the enemy of the Austrian? 2. Is the Hungarian the friend of the Pole, or is he his enemy? 3. The Pole is the friend of the Hungarian, and the enemy of the Austrian and of the Russian. 4. Is the king of Greece a Bavarian? 5. Is the soldier the nephew of the sailor? 6. No, the sailor is the nephew of the soldier. 7. Does the Englishman hate the American? 8. The Englishman does not hate the American. 9. Who oppresses the Italian, the Hungarian and the

Digitized by Google

Pole? 10. Is this old sailor a Russian, a Turk, an Italian, or a Frenchman? 11. That old soldier is the uncle of this boy. 12. Who leads a toilsome and insecure life? 13. Is this German a soldier, or a sailor? is this sailor a German or a Russian? 14. The boy is writing his uncle, the old soldier, a letter. 15. The Hungarian is the neighbor of the Austrian, of the Pole, of the Russian and of the Turk.

LESSON XXIII. Lection XXIII.

FEMININE GENDER.

1. DECLENSION OF Die, Dieſe AND Meine.

Feminine.

N	die, the;	dieſ-e, this;	mein-e, my;
G.	der, of the;	dieſ-er, of this;	mein-er, of my;
D.	der, to *or* for the;	dieſ-er, to *or* for this;	mein-er, to *or* for my;
A.	die, the;	dieſ-e, this;	mein-e, my.

The article, definite and indefinite, as also, the adjective pronouns (which in the other genders have different endings, and are differently declined), here all end in e, and are inflected alike; namely,

dieſ-e, die, all-e, einig-e, etlich-e, jed-e, manch-e, ſolch-e, welch-e; as also,

mein-e, ein-e, dein-e, euer-e, ihr-e, ſein-e, unſer-e, kein-e, (compare L. X. 4. and L. XII. 4).

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES IN THE FEMININE GENDER.

2. Feminine adjectives, unless they follow die, eine, or some word of the above list, and refer to the same noun, are of the

OLD DECLENSION.

N	gut-e, good;	(dieſ-e, mein-e, ein-e.)
G.	gut-er, of good;	(dieſ-er, mein-er, ein-er.)
D.	gut-er, to *or* for good;	(dieſ-er, mein-er, ein-er.)
A.	gut-e, good;	(dieſ-e, mein-e, ein-e.)

Digitized by Google

3. Feminine adjectives, when they follow dieſe, die, manche, meine, or any word of that list, and refer to the same noun, are of the

NEW DECLENSION.

N. die gute,	the good;	meine gute,	my good;
G. der guten,	of the good;	meiner guten,	of my good,
D. der guten,	to, for the good;	meiner guten,	to, for my good;
A. die gute,	the good;	meine gute,	my good.

Obs. As dieſ-e, mein-e, etc. (*feminine*), equally denote the gender of the noun, the *mixed* declension, in the feminine, is *not* required; hence we have here but *two* declensions of the adjective, the *old* and the *new*.

DECLENSION OF FEMININE NOUNS.

4. Feminine nouns, except proper names, are, in the singular, indeclinable: *

Ich habe die Feder meiner Mutter.	I have the pen of my mother.
Er iſt der Sohn dieſer alten Dame.	He is the son of that old lady.
Vollkommenes Glück iſt nicht der Menſchheit Loos.—W.	Perfect (prosperity) happiness is not the lot of mankind.
Schwärmerei iſt Krankheit der Seele. —W.	Fanaticism is sickness (disease) of the soul.

5. Appellations of females are formed from those of males by means of the suffix in (*or* inn):

der Schneider, the tailor;	die Schneiderin, the tailoress;
der Freund, the friend;	die Freundin, the (female) friend;
der Engländer, the Englishman;	die Engländerin, the Englishwoman
der Schüler, the scholar;	die Schülerin, the female scholar;
der Gema'hl, the consort (husband);	die Gema'hlin, the consort (wife);
der Löwe, the lion;	die Löwin, the lioness.

6. Appellations of women, formed from titles of men, may

* It may be observed, however, that in poetry and certain phrases the endings of the new declension (in which the feminine noun was *formerly* declined) are still sometimes found in the genitive and dative:

Es iſt ſeiner Frauen Schweſter.	It is his wife's sister.
Es iſt beſſer arm mit Ehren, denn reich mit Schanden.	It is better (to be) poor with honor, than rich with disgrace.

Digitized by Google

signify either the wife of an officer, or a female who holds an office herself:

der Präſident', the president; die Präſidentin, the female president, *or* the president's wife.

7. The vowels a, o, u, usually take the Umlaut; *i. e.* are changed to ä, ö, ü, before the suffix in:

der Schwager, the brother-in-law; die Schwägerin, the sister-in-law;
der Koch, the cook; die Köchin, the (female) cook.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Ich habe die neue Feder meiner Mutter.	I have the new pen of my mother.
Du ſiehſt der Mutter Aug' in Thränen.—S.	Thou seest the mother's eye in tears.
Finden Sie dieſe Sprache ſchwer?	Do you find this language hard?
Die Freundin unſerer Schweſter iſt unſere Lehrerin.	The friend of our sister is our teacher.
Ihre kleine Couſine iſt eine aufmerkſame Schülerin.	Your little cousin is an attentive scholar.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Apriko'ſe, –, the apricot (see 4.);
Die Blume, –, the flower;
Die Butter, –, the butter;
Die Dame, –, the lady;
Die Engländerin, –, the Englishwoman;
Die Feder, –, the pen;
Die Kette, –, the chain;
Die Kirche, –, the church;
Die Kirſche, –, the cherry;
Die Melo'ne, –, the melon;
Die Milch, –, the milk;
Die Mutter, –, the mother;
Die Nelke, –, the pink;
Der Schwager, –s, the brother-in-law;
Die Schweſter, –, the sister;
Die Tinte, –, the ink;
Die Tochter, –, the daughter;
Die Uhr, –, the watch.

Exercise 42. Aufgabe 42.

1. Haben Sie ſchwarze Tinte, oder blaue? 2. Ich habe blaue, und meine Schweſter hat ſchwarze. 3. Wer hat meine neue Feder und meine gute Tinte? 4. Ihre junge Freundin hat Ihre neue Feder, aber ich weiß nicht, wo die Tinte iſt. 5. Weſſen neue Feder hat dieſe Schülerin? 6. Die Schülerin hat keine neue Feder, ſondern eine alte. 7. Warum ſchreiben Sie mit blauer Tinte? 8. Ich ſchreibe nicht mit blauer Tinte; ich ſchreibe mit meiner ſchwarzen

Digitized by Google

Tinte. 9. Wer kauft die Milch, die Butter, die Melone, die Kirsche und die Aprikose? 10. Die Köchin kauft die Milch, die Butter und die Melone, und die alte Dame kauft die Aprikose. 11. Die Rose ist eine schöne Blume. 12. Wer schickt der Tochter jener alten Dame eine Rose? 13. Was für eine Rose schickt die Schülerin der Lehrerin, eine weiße oder eine rothe? 14. Wem schickt die Lehrerin die weiße Rose? 15. Was für eine Blume ist die Nelke? 16. Der Schwager und die Schwägerin dieser Engländerin sind in jener alten Kirche. 17. Hat meine junge Freundin meine Uhr und meine Kette? 18. Ihre Freundin hat die Uhr, aber nicht die Kette. 19. Unsere Mutter ist unsere Lehrerin

EXERCISE 43. Aufgabe 43.

1. Are you writing with my new pen? 2. No, I am writing with the new pen of my sister. 3. Has the sister-in-law of your friend a new watch? 4. Whose watch and chain has your mother? 5. My mother has my watch, and my sister has my chain and my pen. 6. The sister of your teacher is our teacher. 7. In which church is the daughter of our old friend? 8. What kind of a flower have you, a rose, or a pink? 9. I have a beautiful pink, and my sister has a rose. 10. This milk is good, but the butter is not good. 11. Have you a ripe melon and a ripe apricot? 12. I have a ripe apricot and a ripe cherry, but I have no ripe melon. 13. What kind of ink has your sister, black or blue? 14. With what kind of a pen, and what kind of ink is your mother writing? 15. Has your friend a white rose, or a red one? 16. Is the pink a beautiful flower? 17. Is not every flower beautiful? 18. You have my watch, your chain, the pen of our teacher and the ink of the scholar. 19. Is your mother your teacher? 20. No, the daughter of that old lady is our teacher.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXIV. Lection XXIV.

FORMATION AND GENDER OF DIMINUTIVES.

1. The syllables chen and lein,* suffixed to nouns, give rise to a large class of words, called diminutives. These diminutives are always of the neuter gender, and their radical vowel, if capable of it, takes the Umlaut:

Das Lamm	the lamb;	das Lämmchen,	the lambkin (little lamb)
Der Sohn,	the son;	das Söhnchen,	the (dear) little son;
Der Fluß,	the river;	das Flüßchen,	the rivulet (little river);
Der Hügel,	the hill;	das Hügelchen,	the hillock (little hill);
Die Blume,	the flower;	das Blümchen,	(or Blümlein) the floweret.

2. The diminutives are also used as terms of endearment, or to indicate familiarity; and are often employed where in English no idea of diminutiveness would be expressed:

"Denn Brüderchen und Schwesterchen	For brother dear and sister dear
die kommen oft zu mir."	(they) often come to me.
Das Vögelchen (or Vöglein) singt ein	The little bird sings a gladsome
frohes Liedchen.	(little) song.

3. The words Fräulein and Mädchen though regularly formed, as diminutives, have lost their strictly diminutive signification. Fräulein signifies a young (unmarried) lady; and also serves as a title of address: answering to *Miss*. Mädchen is rendered by *girl*, or maiden; Magd, from which it is derived, being now employed chiefly in the signification of servant:

Fräulein N. ist eine Freundin dieses	Miss N. is a friend of this girl.
Mädchens.	
Sobald das Mädchen Abschied nahm,	As soon as the maiden took leave,
u. s. w.—S.	etc.
Dieses Mädchen spielt mit seinem Brü-	This girl is playing with her little
derchen.	brother.

* Other forms, chiefly provincial or vulgar, and confined mostly to conversation, which sometimes perplex the learner, are el, li, elchen; as "Mädel," for Mädchen; "Büchelchen," for Büchlein; "Rößli," for Rößlein; etc.

Digitized by Google

FORMATION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

NOUNS WITH NOUNS.

4 In German two or more nouns are often united in one word, where the English equivalents are joined by a hyphen, or several separate words are used:

Zugthier,	draught-animal,	(Zug, draught; Thier, beast.)
Lastthier,	beast of burden;	(Last, burden; Thier, beast.)
Schadenfreude,	malicious pleasure;	(Schade, injury; Freude, joy.)
Preßfreiheit,	freedom of the press;	(Freiheit, freedom; Presse, press.)
Ruhmbegierde,	ambition, thirst of fame;	(Ruhm, fame; Begierde, desire.)
Ordnungsliebe,	love of order;	(Ordnung, order; Liebe, love.)
Schuhmacher,	shoemaker;	(Schuh, shoe; Macher, maker.)
Handwerk,	avocation; trade;	(Hand, hand; Werk, work.)

Schuhmacherhandwerk, shoemaker's trade *or* calling.

5. The first noun is sometimes put in the plural:

Kleiderschrank,	clothes-press;	(Kleider, clothes; Schrank, case, press.)
Bücherschrank,	book-case;	(Bücher, books.)
Wörterbuch,	dictionary;	(Wörter, words; Buch, book.)

NOUNS WITH PREPOSITIONS, PRONOUNS, VERBS, ETC.

6. Compound nouns are also formed by uniting several parts of speech:

Ausweg,	egress;	(aus, out of; Weg, way.)
Fürwort,	pronoun;	(Für, for; Wort, word.)
Mitschüler,	fellow-scholar;	(mit, with; Schüler, scholar.)
Schreibpapier,	writing-paper;	(schreiben, to write; Papier, paper.)
Kaufmann,	merchant;	(kaufen, to buy; Mann, man.)
Störenfried,	agitator;	(stören, to disturb; Friede, peace.)
Springinsfeld,	romp; fly-about;	(springen, spring; in, into; Feld, field.)
Taugenichts,	good-for-nothing;	(taugen, to be fit for; nichts, nothing.)
Vergißmeinnicht,	the forget-me-not;	(vergessen, to forget; mein (L. 28. 2.); and nicht, not.)

NOUNS WITH ADJECTIVES.

7. Nouns are sometimes formed by uniting adjectives (undeclined) with nouns:

der Sauerklee,	the sheep's sorrel;	(sauer, sour; Klee, clover.)
der Krummstab,	the crosier;	(krumm, crooked; Stab, staff.)
das Weißbrod,	the white bread;	(weiß, white; Brod, bread.)

Digitized by Google

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

8. Compound adjectives are formed by uniting two adjectives, or a noun and an adjective:

Dunkelgrün,	dark green;	(dunkel, dark; grün, green.)
Rabenſchwarz,	black as a raven;	(Rabe, raven; ſchwarz, black.)
Lebensſatt,	tired of life;	(Leben, life; ſatt, satiated.)
Waffenfähig,	capable of bearing arms;	(Waffen, arms; fähig, capable.)
Wunderſchön,	extremely beautiful;	(Wunder, miracle; ſchön, beautiful.)

9. Nouns, instead of being written as one word, are sometimes separated by a hyphen:

So ſtark als Gottes Sünden-Haß Iſt ſeine Sünder-Liebe.—H.	As strong as God's hatred of sin, is his love for sinners.

10. The latter member of a compound may refer to words preceding those with which it is united; the first word being followed by a hyphen:

Der Stiefel- und Schuhmacher.	The boot and shoemaker.
Troſt- und hülfsbedürftig.	Needing consolation and help.

GENDER OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

11. The first word of the compound takes the accent, while the latter usually determines the gender:

Ein Blumengarten,	A flower-garden.
Eine Gartenblume,	A garden-flower.

12. Proper names of places, formed by suffixing the masculine noun Berg, or the feminine Burg, to other words, are, like all proper names of places, neuter:

Das ſtark befeſtigte Magdeburg.	The strongly-fortified Magdeburg.

13. The word Muth is masculine; the words Demuth, Großmuth, Langmuth, Sanftmuth, Schwermuth are feminine. Theil is masculine; Gegentheil, Hintertheil and Vordertheil are neuter. Scheu is feminine; Abſcheu is masculine.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Dieſes kleine Mädchen hat einen ſilbernen Fingerhut.	This little girl has a silver thimble.

Digitized by Google

Wer iſt jenes Fräulein?	Who is that young lady?
Es iſt Fräulein N.	It is Miss N.
Die Geſichtsbildung iſt der Spiegel der Seele.	The expression of the countenance is the mirror of the soul.
Der Buchbinder war mein Mitſchüler.	The bookbinder was my fellow-scholar.
Staub ſollſt du eſſen dein Lebenlang. (Gen. iii. 14.)	Dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life.
Der Buchhändler verkauft gutes Schreib- und Briefpapier.	The book-dealer (seller) sells good writing and letter-paper.
Man nennt dieſe Blume das Vergißmeinnicht.	This flower is called the forget-me-not.
Ewigklar und ſpiegelrein und eben Fließt das zephyrleichte Leben.—S.	Ever clear and pure as a mirror flows life light as zephyr (*literally* zephyr-light life)

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Bei, by, with;
Der Berg, –es, the mountain;
Der Buchbinder, –s, the bookbinder;
Das Feld, –es, the field;
Fräulein, (see 3.)
Das Fürwort, –es, the pronoun;
Das Jahr, –es, the year;
Die Jahreszeit, –, the season of the year;
Der Kranich, –es, the crane;
Das Laſtthier, –es, the beast of burden;
Die Lerche, –, the lark;
Mädchen, (see 3.)
Die Nacht, –, the night;
Die Nachtigall, –, the nightingale;
Das Obſt, –es, the fruit;
Der Obſtgarten, –s, the orchard;
Der Raubvogel, –s, the bird of prey;
Die Schildwache, –, the sentinel;
Der Sommer, –s, the summer;
Der Sumpf, –es, the swamp;
Der Sumpfvogel, –s, the wader, morass-bird;
Der Tag, –es, the day;
Die Zeit, –, the time;
Das Zugthier, –es, the draught-animal.

Exercise 44. Aufgabe 44.

1. Was für Papier kaufen Sie, Schreibpapier oder Briefpapier? 2. Haben Sie einen ſchönen Blumengarten? 3. Iſt die Roſe eine Gartenblume, oder eine Feldblume? 4. Haben Sie viel reifes Obſt in Ihrem Obſtgarten? 5. HabenSie einen Apfelbaum, einen Kirſchbaum, oder einen Aprikoſenbaum? (Haben Sie einen Apfel-, einen Kirſch-, oder einen Aprikoſenbaum? see 10.) 6. Was für einen Waldbaum hat der Uhrmacher in ſeinem Garten? 7. Haben Sie nicht Zeit auf den Berg zu gehen? 8. Dieſes Hündchen iſt nur ein Jahr alt. 9. Der Sommer iſt eine ſehr angenehme Jahreszeit. 10. Wer iſt dieſes Mädchen? 11. Es iſt Fräulein N., eine gute

Digitized by Google

Freundin meiner Schweſter. 12. Meine Schweſter iſt eine Mitſchülerin dieſes Fräuleins. 13. Die Schildwache iſt der Bruder des Buchbinders. 14. Das Kameel iſt ein Laſtthier, und der Ochs iſt ein Zugthier. 15. Was iſt ein Fürwort? 16. Der Adler iſt ein Raubvogel, der Schwan iſt ein Schwimmvogel und der Kranich iſt ein Sumpfvogel. 17. Die Nachtigall iſt ein Singvogel, was für ein Vogel iſt die Lerche? 18. Wann ſingt die Lerche, und wann ſingt die Nachtigall? 19. Dieſe ſingt bei Nacht, und jene bei Tag. (L. X. 2.)

EXERCISE 45. Aufgabe 45.

1. What kind of a word is this? 2. It is a pronoun. 3. Have you an apple-tree, or a cherry-tree in your garden? 4. Have you no fruit-tree in your flower-garden? 5. I have no fruit-tree in my flower-garden, but I have a rose and a pink in my orchard. 6. Has the bookbinder a large forest-tree in his new garden? 7. He has no forest-tree, but he has a very beautiful apple-tree. 8. Is the eagle a bird of prey? 9. What kind of a bird is the crane, and where does he live? 10. Is the horse a draught-animal, or a beast of burden? 11. Is the summer a very pleasant season of the year? 12. Has that little girl good letter-paper? 13. The girl has good writing-paper, but no letter-paper. 14. Is Miss L. the sister of this little girl? 15. Do you know what kind of a bird the swan is? 16. Why do you not write your sister a letter? 17. I have not time to write, I am going with the watchmaker to the village. 18. This beautiful little apple-tree is only a year old, how old is that one? 19. My fellow-scholar has a new watch-chain, a sharp pen-knife, an old writing-desk, and a good writing-book.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXV. Lection XXV.

PLAN OF COMPOSING GERMAN.

Hitherto the attention of the learner has been mainly directed to such forms and rules of declension and construction as were necessary to the translation of the several EXERCISES. He may now proceed to the more advanced work of *composing* sentences in German. Having clearly before him the *thought* which he proposes to express, let him endeavor, in accordance with the rules and examples previously studied, to give it a proper German dress. In this process, under the constant guidance of his *model* sentences in German, he will readily acquire the habit of *thinking* in that language, and so avoid the common and natural error of turning English modes of thought and expression into merely literal German.

Moreover, when favored with peculiar opportunities for speaking the language, the pupil might here introduce into the proposed sentences one or more of the additional tenses; or, change to some other tense any verb found in the regular Exercises (See Lessons XXXVI., XXXVII., XXXVIII.). Thus, for example, in Exercise 46., 1, for the *present* tense; as in,

"Dieſe Goldſchmiede haben goldene, ſilberne und ſtählerne Ringe,"

the pupil may be required to substitute the *imperfect;* as,

Dieſe Goldſchmiede hatten goldene, ſilberne und ſtählerne Ringe;

or, the *perfect;* as,

Dieſe Goldſchmiede haben goldene, ſilberne und ſtählerne Ringe gehabt,

or, the *pluperfect;* as,

Dieſe Goldſchmiede hatten goldene, ſilberne und ſtählerne Ringe gehabt,

or, the *first future;* as,

Dieſe Goldſchmiede werden goldene, ſilberne und ſtählerne Ringe haben

For an additional stock of words, with further statement and exemplification of the plan, see page 449.

It has been deemed better to *refer* this class of learners, as above, than to sacrifice the progressive plan of the work, by introducing those Lessons at an earlier period.

Digitized by Google

ARTICLE AND ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, PLURAL.

1. In the plural number the article and adjective pronouns, as also mehrere, end in e; namely,

dieſ–e, die, all–e, einig–e, etlich–e, jen–e, manch–e, mehrer–e, ſolch–e, welch–e (L. X. 4); as also,

mein–e, ein–e, dein–e, ihr–e, ſein–e, unſer–e and kein–e (L. XII. 4) and have all the same form of

DECLENSION IN ALL GENDERS OF THE PLURAL.

N. dieſ–e, these;	mein–e, my;
G. dieſ–er, of these;	mein–er, of my;
D. dieſ–en, to *or* for these;	mein–en, to *or* for my;
A. dieſ–e, these;	mein–e, my.

ADJECTIVES.

2. Adjectives of all genders in the plural end in e, and have but *two* forms of declension, the *old* and the *new* (L. XXX. 1).

3. Adjectives, unless they follow dieſe, meine, or some word of that class (see 1), and refer to the same noun, are of the

OLD DECLENSION.

PLURAL, ALL GENDERS.	PLURAL, ALL GENDERS.
N. gut–e, good;	(dieſ–e.)
G. gut–er, of good;	(dieſ–er.)
D. gut–en, to *or* for good;	(dieſ–en.)
A. gut–e, good;	(dieſ–e.)

Compare rule and declension L. XIV. 3, singular number.

PLURAL OF NOUNS OF THE OLD DECLENSION.

Neuter.

4. *Neuter* nouns *ending* in the nominative singular in e, el en, er, chen and lein, have the same form in the nominative plural:

Das Mittel, the means;	die Mittel, the means;
Das Gebäu'de, the building	die Gebäu'de, the buildings;
Das Bauer, the cage;	die Bauer, the cages.

Digitized by Google

5. *Neuter* nouns *not* ending in the nominative singular in e, el, en, er, chen and lein, form their nominative plural by adding e:

Das Jahr, the year;	die Jahre, the years;
Das Gebo't, the commandment;	die Gebo'te, the commandments;
Das Pult, the desk;	die Pulte, the desks.

Masculine.

6. *Masculine* nouns *ending* in the nominative singular in e el, en er, have the same form in the nominative plural:

Der Sattler, the saddler;	die Sattler, the saddlers;
Der Koffer, the trunk;	die Koffer, the trunks;
Der Brunnen, the well;	die Brunnen, the wells.

7. *Masculine* nouns *not* ending in the nominative singular in e, el, en, er, form the nominative plural by adding e, and taking the Umlaut, if capable of it:

Der Kamm, the comb;	die Kämme, the combs;
Der Strom, the stream;	die Ströme, the streams;
Der Hut, the hat;	die Hüte, the hats;
Der Baum, the tree;	die Bäume, the trees.

Feminine.

8. *Feminine* nouns *ending* in the nominative singular in kunft and niß, as also those in list page 276, form the plural by adding e and taking the Umlaut, if capable of it:

Die Wildniß, the wilderness;	die Wildniſſe, the wildernesses;
Die Hand, the hand;	die Hände, the hands;
Die Frucht, the fruit;	die Früchte, the fruits.

NOTE.—Most feminine nouns belong to the new declension (L. XXX. 8).

DECLENSION OF NOUNS IN THE PLURAL.

9. Nouns whose nominative plural ends in en, have all cases in this number alike; those of other terminations have the genitive and accusative like the nominative, and add n in the dative:

N.	die Degen;	die Hobel;	die Stühle;	die Hände;
G.	der Degen;	der Hobel;	der Stühle;	der Hände;
D.	den Degen;	den Hobeln;	den Stühlen;	den Händen;
A.	die Degen;	die Hobel;	die Stühle;	die Hände.

Digitized by Google

10. Haben, Sein AND THE REGULAR VERB Loben IN THE PLURAL.

Present Tense.

wir haben, we have;	wir ſind, we are;	wir lob-en, we praise;
ihr habt, you have;	ihr ſeid, you are;	ihr lob-t, you praise;
ſie haben, they have;	ſie ſind, they are;	ſie lob-en, they praise.

Thus regular verbs form the first and third persons in the present plural, by adding to the root en, and to the second person t (*or* et. See L. V. 1.)

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Die Tiſchler haben gute Hobel.	The cabinet-makers have good planes.
Die Meſſer der Köche ſind ſcharf.	The knives of the cooks are sharp.
Wer verkauft' den Köchen die Gänſe und die Würſte?	Who sells the cooks the geese and the sausages?
Die Fenſter in den Zimmern der Schüler ſind zu klein.	The windows in the rooms of the scholars are too small.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Art, –, pl. Aexte, the ax;
Das Bein, –es, –e, pl. –e, the leg;
Der Beſen, –s, pl. –, the broom;
Der Dieb, –es, pl. –e, the thief;
Der Einwohner, –s, pl. –, the inhabitant;
Der Eſel, –s, pl. –, the ass, donkey;
Der Finger, –s, pl. –, the finger;
Der Fuß, –es, pl. Füße, the foot;
Die Hand, –, pl. Hände, the hand;
Der Holzhauer, –s, pl. –, the wood-cutter;
Der Kaiſer, –s, pl. –, the emperor;
Der Kopf, -es, pl. Köpfe, the head;
Der Kragen, –s, (§ 13. 4. *b.*) the collar;
Das Maulthier, –es, –e, pl. –e, the mule;
Das Ohr, –es, –e, pl. –en, the ear;
Der Palaſt', –es, pl. Paläſte, the palace;
Der Stiel, –es, pl. –e, the handle;
Unterrich'ten, to instruct;
Ueberneh'men, to undertake;
Verfer'tigen, to make;
Der Zahn, –es, pl. Zähne, the tooth
Zwei (see § 44), two.

Exercise 46. Aufgabe 46.

1. Dieſe Goldſchmiede haben goldene, ſilberne und ſtählerne Ringe. 2. Die Söhne jener Schmiede ſind die Freunde dieſer Müller. 3. Die Lehrer unterrichten die Schüler. 4. Die Wölfe haben große Zähne und kleine Füße. 5. Die Fleiſcher kaufen die Schaafe. 6.

Digitized by Google

Die Hutmacher verfertigen und verkaufen die Hüte. 7. Die Diebe haben lange Finger. 8. Wem schreiben die Schüler so viele Briefe? 9. Diese Stühle und Pulte gehören unsern Lehrern. 10. Die Knöpfe und Krägen an diesen Röcken sind zu groß. 11. Wem gehören diese Tische, Stühle und Pulte? 12. Diese Fische haben kleine Köpfe. 13. Die Paläste der Könige und der Kaiser sind sehr schön. 14. Die Stiele dieser Besen sind zu lang. 15. Die Einwohner dieses Dorfes sind sehr arm. 16. Warum übernehmen Ihre Freunde so viel? 17. Was für Bäume sind diese? 18. Wie viele Hobel haben diese Tischler? 19. Der Bauer hat zwei Wagen, vier Pferde und acht und neunzig Schafe. 20. Die Holzhauer haben scharfe Aexte und harte Hände. 21. Der Esel und das Maulthier haben große Ohren und kleine Beine.

EXERCISE 47. Aufgabe 47.

1. Have you good axes? 2. I have good axes, good planes and good chisels. 3. Do these tables, chairs and desks belong to the scholars? 4. The desks belong to the scholars, and the chairs belong to the teachers. 5. The fingers of the thieves are long. 6. Wolves have white teeth, and mules have long ears. 7. These brooms have long handles. 8. Emperors and kings have beautiful palaces. 9. Have all camels large soft feet? 10. The inhabitants of this village are wood-cutters. 11. The hands of the hatters are often black. 12. These fish have large heads. 13. These scholars are buying coats, hats, rings and canes. 14. The smiths make knives, axes and chisels. 15. Do these teachers instruct all those scholars? 16. Those tailors are making coats, these girls are making collars. 17. Which horses and which carriages do the physicians buy? 18. These shoemakers and those tailors have small rooms, and the cabinet-makers have large ones. 19. The sons of those smiths are industrious scholars. 20. These two scholars have three tables and six chairs. 21. Those goldsmiths have gold rings, and these have silver ones.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXVI. Lection XXVI.

IRREGULAR PLURAL OF NOUNS.

1. As exceptions to Rules 4 and 5, Lesson, XXV., are the *neuter* nouns, das Floß, the raft; das Kloſter, the convent; and das Rohr, the reed, all of which take, in the plural, the Umlaut; as, die Flöße, die Klöſter, die Röhre. Das Boot, the boat, has either the regular form die Boote, or Böte.

2. There are also several *neuter* nouns which contain *two* variations from Rule 5, Lesson XXV., in that they add in the plural er, and take the Umlaut, if capable of it; as, das Dorf, the village, plural, die Dörf-er; das Lied, the song, plural, die Lieder, etc.; see § 13. 5. *Exceptions, b.*

3. A few *masculine* nouns contain *one* exception to Rule 7, Lesson XXV.; namely, they add er, instead of e; as, der Dorn, the thorn, plural, die Dörn-er, etc.; § 13. 6. *Exceptions, a.*

4. All nouns ending in thum, whether *neuter* or *masculine*, form their plural by adding er, and taking the Umlaut:

Das Bisthum, the bishopric;	plural,	die Bisthümer.
Der Irrthum, the error;	plural,	die Irrthümer, etc.

5. The plural of Mann in several compound words is Leute instead of Männer:

Der Bergmann, the miner;	die Bergleute, the miners;
Der Kaufmann, the merchant;	die Kaufleute, the merchants;
Der Zimmermann, the carpenter;	die Zimmerleute, the carpenters.

Give in this manner the plural of Amtmann, Arbeitsmann, Edelmann, Landmann, Landsmann, Spielmann.

6. Leute and Volk are both rendered by *people;* the latter in the most extended, the former in a limited sense. The plural of Volk is usually equivalent to *nations:*

Dieſe Leute ſind Deutſche.	These people are Germans.
Die Deutſchen ſind ein fleißiges Volk.	The Germans are an industrious people.
Die Regie'rung iſt reich, aber das Volk iſt arm.	The government is rich, but the people are (is) poor.
Die verſchie'denen Völker Europas.	The various nations of Europe.

Digitized by Google

7. Several *masculine* nouns form an exception to Rule 6, Lesson XXV., in that they take the Umlaut; as plural, Aepfel, instead of Apfel; Hämmel, instead of Hammel. For entire list see § 13. 4. *Exceptions.*

8. The feminine nouns Mutter and Tochter form their plural by taking the Umlaut:

Gute Mütter unterrichten ihre Töchter. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

9. The masculine nouns Aal, Arm, etc. § 13. 6. *Exceptions, b.* omit the Umlaut; thus forming an exception to Rule 7, Lesson XXV.

10. In German the *singular* is employed to denote some objects, which require in English the *plural* form (§ 15):

Die Scheere ist rostig, die Lichtputze ist blank.	The shears are rusty, the snuffers are bright.
Er kaufte eine Brille und eine Zange.	He bought a pair of spectacles and a pair of tongs.
Ich habe zwei Scheeren und drei Zangen.	I have two pairs of shears and three pairs of tongs.
Seine Lunge ist stark und gesund.	His lungs are strong and sound.
Die Asche ist noch heiß.	The ashes are still hot.
Der Hafer ist schon reif.	The oats are already ripe.
Er wußte Dir keinen Dank dafür.	He gave you no thanks for it.

Beispiele.	Examples.
Diese Landleute sind meine Landsleute.	These peasants (country-people) are my countrymen.
Diese Aepfel sind noch nicht reif.	These apples are not yet ripe.
Jene Vögel haben krumme Schnäbel.	Those birds have crooked beaks.
Meine Brüder kaufen Nägel.	My brothers are buying nails.
Die Kinder singen schöne Lieder.	The children sing beautiful songs.
Der Koch kauft Hühner und Eier.	The cook buys fowls and eggs.
Die Blattern sind eine gefähr'liche Krankheit.	The small-pox is a dangerous disease.
Fühllos wie das Eisen war das Herz in ihrer Brust.—S.	Unfeeling as the iron was the heart in their breast.
Das irdische Geschlecht' murrt ohne Grund; die Götter sind gerecht'.—W.	The terrestrial race murmurs without cause; the gods are just.

Digitized by Google

The numbers 2, 3, etc. in the following vocabulary refer to the irregular plural of the nouns as above designated.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Abend, –es, pl. –e, the evening;
Bauen, to build;
Das Blatt, –es, pl. Blätter, the leaf, 2;
Das Dach, –es, pl. Dächer the roof, 2;
Der Dolch, –es, pl. –e, the dagger 9;
Der Geist, –es, pl. –er, the spirit, 3;
Das Grab, –es, pl. Gräber, grave, 2;
Graben, to dig;
Der Hafen, –s, pl. Häfen, harbor, 7;
Das Horn, –es, pl. Hörner, horn, 2;
Kühl, cool, cold;
Der Leib, –es, pl. –er, the body, 3;
Das Loch, –es, pl. Löcher, the hole, 2;
Der Monat, –es, pl. –e, the month, 9;
Das Nest, –es, pl. –er, the nest, 2,
Ruhen, to rest;
Der Schirm, –es, pl. –e, the screen
Der Schlösser, –s, pl. –, lock-smith;
Schon, already;
Schwer, heavy;
Das Schwert, –es, pl. –er, sword, 2;
Die Stadt, –, pl. Städte, the city;
Steil, steep;
Sterblich, mortal;
Tief, deep;
Unsterblich, immortal;
Der Wärter, –s, pl. –, the waiter;
Der Zimmermann, –es, pl. –leute, the carpenter, 5.

Exercise 48. Aufgabe 48.

1. Die Dächer dieser Häuser sind steil. 2. Die Vögel bauen Nester in den Wäldern. 3. Diese Blätter sind noch grün; jene sind schon gelb. 4. Nicht alle Säbel sind scharf. 5. Was verfertigen diese Schlösser? 6. Jene Männer haben lange Schwerter und schwere Dolche. 7. Diese Hunde sind acht Monate alt. 8. Warum gräbt man diese Löcher? 9. "Unsere Väter ruhen schon in kühlen Gräbern." 10. Die Gräben um diese Stadt sind sehr tief. 11. Unsere Leiber sind sterblich; unsere Geister unsterblich. 12. Die Gärten und Felder sind jetzt sehr schön. 13. Die Schiffe liegen in den Häfen. 14. Diese Abende sind sehr angenehm. 15. Singen diese Kinder schöne Lieder? 16. Warum stehen Sie um die Oefen? 17. Spielen die Kinder in den Gärten? 18. In welche Gärten gehen diese Männer?

Exercise 49. Aufgabe 49.

1. The water in the harbors is deep. 2. Which men have swords and daggers? 3. These houses have very steep roofs. 4. Those men are digging holes and ditches. 5. The graves of our fathers are already green. 6. The leaves of this tree are white. 7. The nests of the birds are in the forests. 8. The evenings are now very long. 9. The sheep are standing around

Digitized by Google

the house; where are the dogs? 10. Are not our spirits immortal? 11. The locksmiths have hammers and anvils. 12. Are those men building houses? 13. These are building houses, and those are building ships. 14. These anvils are not heavy enough. 15. Our bodies are not immortal. 16. What men have strong arms? 17. Those merchants and these carpenters are my countrymen. 18. Eagles are birds of prey, and wolves are beasts of prey.

LESSON XXVII. Lection XXVII.

1. DECLENSION OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR.

N.	ich, I;	du,	thou;	(Sie, you;)
G.	meiner, of me;	deiner,	of thee;	(Ihrer, of you;)
D.	mir, to, for me;	dir,	to, for thee;	(Ihnen, to, for you;)
A.	mich, me;	dich,	thee;	(Sie, you.)

PLURAL.

N.	wir, we;	ihr,	you;	(Sie, you;)
G.	unſer, of us;	euer,	of you;	(Ihrer, of you;)
D.	uns, to *or* for us;	euch,	to *or* for you;	(Ihnen, to, for you;)
A.	uns, us;	euch,	you;	(Sie, you.)

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	er, he;	ſie, she;	es, it;
G.	ſeiner, of him;	ihrer, of her;	ſeiner, of it;
D.	ihm, to, for him;	ihr, to *or* for her;	ihm, to *or* for it;
A.	ihn, him;	ſie, her;	es, it.

PLURAL OF ALL GENDERS.

N.	ſie, they;	———	———
G.	ihrer, of them;	———	———
D.	ihnen, to *or* for them;	———	———
A.	ſie, them.	———	———

Digitized by Google

SECOND PERSON SINGULAR.

2. The pronoun of the second person singular is employed, as in English, in addressing the Supreme Being; in proverbial phrases, and in serious and sublime styles of composition. It is likewise used in addressing relatives, intimate friends and children; as, also, servants and other dependents:

Dein Reich komme.	Thy kingdom come.
Traue keinem Freunde, wenn du ihn nicht geprüft' hast.—H.	Trust no friend if thou hast not tested him.
Erst mußt du säen,	First thou must sow,
Dann kannst du mähen.	Then thou canst mow.
Was hast du gehört'?	What have you heard?
Johann, dein Lehrer lobt dich nicht.	John, your teacher does not praise you.

SECOND PERSON PLURAL.

3. The second person *plural* * denotes, mainly, in this number, the same class as that to which du is applied in the singular. It is employed in addressing religious assemblies:

Wann lernet ihr euere Lectionen?	When do you learn your lessons?
Kinder, euer Lehrer lobt euch nicht.	Children, your teacher does not praise you.

OBS.—Formerly (as at present in French and English), the prevailing form, as being the more polite and respectful, was that of the second, instead of the third person plural, and in some portions of Germany, among the peasantry, its use is still retained. Usually, however, when addressed to a single individual, it implies his inferiority of position:

Das glaubt ihr wirklich? sagte der König.	Do you really believe that? said the king.

THIRD PERSON SINGULAR.

4. The pronouns of the third person singular are sometimes used as the second, and indicate the inferior position of the person addressed:

Er ist ein glücklicher Mensch.	You are (he is) a happy man.

* This form is still retained in the syllable Ew. (contraction of Ewer, an obsolete orthography of euer), which is now used only with titles, and is followed by a plural verb:

Ew. (eure) Majestät sind viel witziger als ich.	Your majesty is (are) much more witty than I.

Digitized by Google

THIRD PERSON PLURAL.

5. In ordinary address, the *form* of the third person plural of the pronoun is applied, as well to one, as to more individuals; hence, when *spoken*, the person and number intended must be inferred from the context, or the manner of the speaker.

In writing, however, Sie and Ihr, except at the beginning of a sentence, are made to designate the *second* person by means of capital initials (§ 57).

Loben Sie mich?	Do *you* praise me?
Nein, ich lobe Sie nicht.	No, I do not praise *you*.
Loben Sie Ihre Freunde?	Do *you* praise your friends?
Nein, ich lobe ſie nicht.	No, I do not praise *them*.
Haben Sie Ihre Bücher?	Have you *your* books?
Haben die Schüler ihre Bücher?	Have the scholars *their* books?
Die Schülerin hat ihre Bücher.	The scholar has *her* books.
Die Kinder haben ihre Bücher.	The children have *their* books.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Singſt Du? (ſingen Sie? ſingt ihr?)	Do you sing?
Sehen Sie dieſe Bäume?	Do you see these trees?
Ja, wir ſehen ſie.	Yes, we see them.
Sehen Sie uns?	Do you see us?
Ja, wir ſehen Sie.	Yes, we see you.
Sehen Sie jene Engländerin?	Do you see that Englishwoman?
Nein, wir ſehen ſie nicht.	No, we do not see her.
Sieht ſie Euch?	Does she see you?
Nein, ſie ſieht uns nicht.	No, she does not see us.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Bank, –, pl. Bänke, the bench;
Dein, thy, your;
Euer, your;
Der Fächer, –s, pl. –, the fan;
Fertig, ready, prepared;
Der Fingerhut, –es, pl. –hüte, the thimble;
Freundlich, kind, friendly;
Die Gans, –, pl. Gänſe, the goose;
Der Gerber, –s, pl. –, the tanner;
Der Handſchuh, –es, pl. –e, the glove;
Hoch, high;
Ihr, her, their;
Die Kuh, –, pl. Kühe, the cow;
Lächeln, to smile;
Der Leuchter, –s, pl. –, the candlestick;
Naß, wet;
Das Regiment', –es, pl. –er, the regiment;
Schlecht, bad;
Der Schleier, –s, pl. –, the vail;
Der Weg, –es, pl. –e, the way.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 50. Aufgabe 50.

1. Haſt du deine Handſchuhe? 2. Nein, mein Bruder hat ſie. 3. Wo ſind deine Freunde? 4. Sie ſind in ihren Zimmern. 5. Sind Ihre Stühle in Ihrem Zimmer? 6. Ja, ſie ſind in meinem Zimmer. 7. Habt ihr eure Fingerhüte? 8. Nein, eure Freunde haben ſie. 9. Eure Freunde loben euch. 10. Seid ihr reich? 11. Wer lobt den Schüler? 12. Warum lächelt ſeine Mutter und lachen ihre Kinder? 13. Wer lobt die Schülerin? 14. Die Lehrerin iſt freundlich gegen das Kind. 15. Wer lobt die Kinder? 16. Ihre Freunde loben ſie. 17. Der Arzt lobt Sie. 18. Was ſchickt die Lehrerin ihrer Mutter? 19. Sie ſchickt ihr einen Schleier und einen Fächer. 20. Was verſprechen Sie mir? 21. Ich verſpreche Ihnen nichts. 22. Was verſprechen Sie Ihren Schülern? 23. Ich verſpreche ihnen nichts. 24. Was ſchicken Sie dem Gerber? 25. Ich ſchicke ihm das Geld. 26. Wer kauft die Gänſe und die Kühe? 27. Die Gerber kaufen ſie. 28. Sind die Wege trocken und gut? 29. Nein, ſie ſind naß und ſchlecht. 30. Sind die Bänke ſchon fertig? 31. Wem gehören dieſe Leuchter? 32. Singen die Töchter Ihrer Nachbarin? 33. Kommt Ihr Freund aus dem Regimente?

EXERCISE 51. Aufgabe 51.

1. Have you my gloves? 2. No, your friends have them. 3. Do you see your mother? 4. No, I do not see her. 5. Do your brothers know where the candlesticks are? 6. Yes, they know where they are. 7. Has the scholar her books and her pencils? 8. Yes, she has them in her desk. 9. Are your benches too high? 10. Yes, they are too high. 11. What do you promise your scholars? 12. I do not promise them any thing. 13. Do your brothers promise you any thing? 14. Yes, they promise me something. 15. What does the scholar send her teacher? 16. She sends her a vail. 17. Are your fans too small? 18. No, they are too large. 19. Do the tanners buy the cows? 20. No, the butchers buy them. 21. Are the scholars friendly toward the children? 22. Yes, they are playing with them. 23. Have you the knives? 24. Yes, I have them. 25. Are they on your table? 26. No, they are

Digitized by Google

on my desk. 27. Are your friends reading? 28. No, they are writing. 29. What are they writing? 30. They are writing letters. 31. Are you writing your father a letter? 32. Yes, I am writing him a letter.

LESSON XXVIII. Lection XXVIII.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The genitive of the personal pronouns does not (like that of nouns, L. IX. 1) indicate possession, but simply answers to our objective with (and sometimes without) a preposition:

Es ſind unſer vier.	There are four *of us* (of us four).
Vergiß' meiner nicht.	Forget *me* not.
Das iſt deiner unwürdig.	That is unworthy *of thee* (of thee unworthy).

2. The genitive of the first and second persons sing. of the *personal* pronouns, is often contracted to the form of the nominative *masculine* and *neuter* of the *possessive*. The genitives of the other pronouns are sometimes similarly abbreviated:

Ich denke dein (-er) wenn der Sonne Schimmer vom Meere ſtrahlt.—G.	I think *of thee* when the glimmer of the sun beams from the sea.
Vergiß' mein (*for* meiner) nicht.	Forget me not (see 1).
Gedenk'e ſein (*for* ſeiner).	Remember (think of) *him*.

3. The dative with von is employed in rendering our possessive with *of* when used partitively:

Er iſt ein Freund von mir.	He is a friend *of mine* (of me).
Sie ſind Verwand'te von uns.	They are relatives *of ours* (of us).

4. Pronouns referring to neuter appellations of persons, generally follow the natural, rather than the grammatical, gender (§ 6, 2):

Sein Söhnchen iſt krank, ich fürchte er (*or* es) wird ſterben.	His little son is sick; I fear *he* will die.
Das Mädchen hat ihr (ſein) Buch.	The girl has *her* book.

5. Pronouns representing inanimate objects must be of the same gender as the nouns to which they refer; hence our neuter

Digitized by Google

pronoun must often be expressed in German by the masculine, or feminine:

Der Hut iſt ſchön, aber er iſt klein.	The hat is fine, but *it* is small.
Die Mütze iſt ſchön, aber ſie iſt klein.	The cap is fine, but *it* is small.
Ich habe den Hut nicht, ſie hat ihn.	I have not the hat, she has *it*.
Sie hat die Mütze nicht, er hat ſie.	She has not the cap, he has *it*.

6. In German a pronominal adverb (applied to things) answer to a preposition and a pronoun, as commonly employed in English:

Ich habe einen Ofen, aber kein Feuer darin (*not* in ihm).	I have a stove, but no fire *in it* (therein).
Er ſchneidet ſeinen Apfel und gibt mir ein Stück davon (*not* von ihm).	He cuts his apple and gives me a part *of it* (thereof).
Er hat ihre Feder und ſchreibt damit.	He has her pen and writes *with it* (therewith).

7. The neuter pronoun, es, employed as a grammatical subject, may represent nouns of all genders, and in both numbers. The verb, however, must agree in number with the *noun*, while in English it agrees with the *pronoun*:

Wer iſt es?	Who *is it*?
Es iſt ein Fremder.	*It is* a stranger.
Es ſind unſere alten Freunde welche wir ſehen.	*It is* (are) our old friends that we see.
Sind es Sterne?	*Is it* stars? (are they stars?)

8. When the logical subject is itself a personal pronoun, es follows the verb; this being exactly the reverse of the English construction:

Ich bin es. *It* is *I*.	Er iſt es. *It* is *he*.
Sind Sie es? *Is* it *you*?	Seid ihr es? *Is* it *you*?
Sind ſie es? *Is* it *they*?	Wir ſind es. *It* is *we*.

9. Es before a verb followed by its subject, frequently answers to *there*, but is often used for the sake of emphasis, where in our language a like construction is not admissible:

Es iſt niemand im (L. 20. 4) Hauſe.	*There* is nobody in the house.
Es ſind drei Bücher da.	*There* are three books there.
Es zieht ein ſtiller Engel.	*There* moves a quiet angel.
Es hallet der Donner ſo laut (*instead of* der Donner hallet ſo laut).	*There* resounds the thunder so loud (The thunder resounds so loud).
Es leuchtet die Sonne über Böſ' und Gute (die Sonne leuchtet, &c.).—G.	The sun shines upon (the) bad and (the) good.

Digitized by Google

10. Es sometimes refers to a previously expressed noun, or adjective, and may be rendered *one* or *so;* es is likewise sometimes so used as not to require translation:

Er ist Schmied, aber ich bin es nicht.	He is (a) smith, but I am not one.
Wir sind nicht alle gleich und können es nicht sein.—G.	We are not all alike and can not be so.
Ich weiß es daß er geht.	I know (it) that he is going.

11. When pronouns of several different persons are the subjects of a plural verb, the first person is preferred to the second, and the second to the third; often, however, the plural of the pronoun is employed after others which are in the singular:

Du und der Knabe sahen es.	You and the boy saw it.
Ich weiß nicht was du und ich sahen.	I do not know what you and I saw.
Du und ich wir sahen es.	You and I (we) saw it.

12. For the sake of additional emphasis, a pronoun is sometimes repeated, or placed after its noun in apposition with it:

So vieler Schweden edles Blut, es ist um Gold und Silber nicht geflossen.—S.	The noble blood of so many Swedes (it) has not flowed for gold and silver.
Und die Tugend sie ist kein leerer Schall.—S.	And virtue (it) is no empty sound.

13. The genitive of the personal pronouns, when referring to individuals, is often used before numerals (like the French *en*), in which position it seldom requires translation:

Er hat drei Brüder und ich habe ihrer nur Einen.	Il a trois frères, et moi je n'*en* ai qu'un.	He has three brothers, and I have only one.

Beispiele.	Examples.
Es ist nicht alles Gold was glänzt.	Not all is gold that glitters (see 10).
Es widerfährt' Manchem mehr Ehre, als er verdient'	There happens to many a one more honor than he deserves.
Wir haben deiner gewar'tet (see 1).	We have waited for thee.
Ich blieb meiner nicht mehr mächtig.	I remained no longer master of myself.
Darunter leidet seine Eigenliebe.	His self-love suffers by this (thereby).
Er ist ein Verwandter von uns.	He is a relative of ours.
Es sind unser drei, und ihrer fünf.	There are three of us, and five of them.

Digitized by Google

Ich habe den Ball nicht, Sie haben ihn.	I have not the ball, you have it.
Er hat meine Feder und schreibt damit.	He has my pen and is writing with it.
Es scheuet das böse Gewiss'en Licht und Tag.—G.	The guilty conscience shuns light and day.
Wer klopft? Ich bin es.	Who is rapping? It is I.
Sind Sie es? Ja, wir sind es.	Is it you? Yes, it is we.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Baumwolle, –, pl. –, the cotton;	Der Kamm, –es, pl. Kämme, comb
Die Brücke, –, pl. –n, the bridge;	Die Nadel, –, pl. –n, the needle;
Damit, with it;	Nähen, to sew;
Darauf, on it;	Die Seide, –, pl. –n, the silk;
Darin, in it;	Das Seil, –es, pl. –e, the rope;
Dort, yonder;	Der Seiler, –s, pl. –, the ropemaker;
Der Dreſcher, –s, pl.–, the thrasher;	Die Stelle, –, pl. –n, place, situation,
Der Färber, –s, pl. –, the dyer;	Der Weber, –s, pl. –, the weaver;
Der Flach's, –es, pl. –, the flax;	Die Wolle, –, pl. –, the wool;
Der Hanf, –es, pl. –, the hemp;	Der Zöllner, –s, pl. –, toll-gatherer.

EXERCISE 52. Aufgabe 52.

1. Kauft der Seiler den Hanf? 2. Ja, er kauft ihn. 3. Ist dieſer Flachs nicht gut? 4. Nein, er iſt nicht gut. 5. Kauft der Seiler die Wolle? 6. Nein, der Weber kauft ſie. 7. Kauft der Weber die Baumwolle? 8. Nein, der Dreſcher kauft ſie. 9. Wer kauft das Seil? 10. Der Matroſe kauft es. 11. Hat das Mädchen die Nadel? 12. Ja, ſie hat die Nadel und näht damit. 13. Wo iſt mein Kamm? 14. Er liegt auf Ihrem Tiſche. 15. Ich habe einen guten Ofen in meinem Zimmer, aber es iſt kein Feuer darin. 16. Kauft das Mädchen die Seide? 17. Nein, ſie kauft ſie nicht. 18. Sehen Sie den Zöllner dort auf der Brücke? 19. Nein, ich ſehe ihn nicht, ſteht er darauf? 20. Der Weber iſt fleißig, aber ſein Nachbar, der Färber, iſt es nicht. 21. Sprechen Sie mit den Schülern? 22. Ja, ich ſpreche mit ihnen. 23. Schreiben Sie mit den Bleiſtiften? 24. Ja, ich ſchreibe damit. 25. Hat Ihr Bruder eine angenehme Stelle?

EXERCISE 53. Aufgabe 53.

1. Who sells the cotton? 2. The weaver buys it, but he does not sell it. 3. Have the children their ball? 4. No, the girls have it. 5. You often play with the children, and your

Digitized by Google

brother often teaches them. 6. I am not playing with them now, I am teaching them. 7. Are the scholars writing with our pencils? 8. Yes, they are writing with them. 9. Who buys the wool? 10. The weaver buys it. 11. Does he buy the hemp? 12. No, the ropemaker buys it. 13. Does the dyer buy the flax? 14. No, our friend, the merchant, buys it for the weaver. 15. What is lying on the table yonder? 16. The needle and the silk are lying on it. 17. What have the toll-gatherers in their trunks? 18. They have their money and their clothes in them. 19. Are the girls sewing with the needles? 20. Yes, they are sewing with them. 21. Whom do you see on the bridge? 22. I do not see any body on it. 23 Does the sailor buy the rope? 24. No, the merchant buys it. 25. Has the thrasher the cotton?

LESSON XXIX. Lection XXIX.

REFLEXIVE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are often used reflexively; answering to our compound personal pronouns in the objective case:

Ich lobe mich.	I praise *myself.*
Du lobſt dich.	Thou praisest *thyself.*
Ihr lobt euch.	You praise *yourselves.*
Ich gedenk'e meiner.	I think of *myself.*
Du gedenk'ſt deiner.	Thou thinkest of *thyself.*
Ich verſprech'e mir nichts.	I do not promise *myself* any thing.
Was verſprecht' ihr euch?	What do you promise *yourselves?*

2. There is in the third person a pronoun (ſich) which is used only reflexively. It is indeclinable, and occurs only in the dative and accusative; answering to all our compound personal pronouns of the third person:

Der Mann lobt ſich.	The man praises *himself.*
Die Frau lobt ſich.	The woman praises *herself.*
Das Kind lobt ſich.	The child praises *itself.*

Digitized by Google

Es können sich nur Wenige regie'ren, den Verstand' verstän'dig gebrau'chen.—S.	There can but few govern *themselves*, (can) use the understanding understandingly.
Er verspricht' sich etwas.	He promises *himself* something.
Man schmeichelt sich oft.	One often flatters *one's self*.
Die Kinder versprech'en sich etwas.	The children promise *themselves* something.
Ich denke dein, wenn sich des Mondes Flimmer in Quellen malt.—G.	I think of thee when the moon's glitter paints *itself* in fountains.

3. When our compound personal pronouns are used merely to give emphasis (and not reflexively) they should be rendered by selbst, or selber, *after* the word which it is intended to emphasize:

Er belo'hnte den Lehrling selbst.	He rewarded the apprentice *himself*.
Er selbst belo'hnte den Lehrling.	He *himself* rewarded the apprentice.
Sie selbst besuch'te die Kranke.	She *herself* visited the patient
Sie ging zu der Kranken selbst.	She went to the patient *herself*.

4. Selbst often follows the reflexive pronouns, and may be rendered *own*, or entirely omitted in translation;

Sie lobt sich selbst.	She praises her (*own*) self.
Wir loben uns selbst.	We praise our (*own*) selves.
Wer kennt sich selbst?—G.	Who knows himself? (one's self.)

5. Selbst before a noun answers to the adverb *even:*

Selbst seine Feinde achten ihn.	Even his enemies esteem him.
Selbst seine Freunde halten ihn für schuldig.	Even his friends consider him (hold him for) guilty.

6. The reflexive pronouns, of all persons, in the plural, are frequently employed, where the signification is sufficiently obvious, instead of the reciprocal pronoun einander:

Wir loben uns. (*instead of*)	We praise *us* (*i. e. each other*).
Wir loben einander.	We praise *one another*.
Vor eurer Mutter Aug' zerstört' euch. —S.	Before your mother's eye destroy *each other*.
Wir werden uns wiedersehen.—G.	We shall see *each other* again.
Die Tyran'nen reichen sich die Hände. —S.	The tyrants extend to *each other* their hands (*i. e.* are forming a league).

Digitized by Google

7. Sich, after a preposition, is often best rendered by a personal pronoun:

Große Seelen halten ſich an den Himmel feſt und laſſen die Erde unter ſich fortrollen.—D.	Great souls hold firmly to Heaven, and let the earth roll on beneath *them* (*selves*).
Sie hatte kein Geld bei ſich.	She had no money with *her*.
Hat er ſeine Uhr bei ſich?	Has he his watch with *him*?

8. In interrogative sentences, the personal pronoun, in the dative or accusative, is often placed between the verb and its subject (when the subject is a noun):

Loben ihn ſeine Freunde?	*instead of*	Loben ſeine Freunde ihn?
Was ſagt ihm der Lehrer?	"	Was ſagt der Lehrer ihm?
Wie befin'det ſich Ihr Freund?	"	Wie befin'det Ihr Freund ſich?

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

9. The number of verbs that are used exclusively as reflexive, is much larger in German than in English:

Sie bege'ben ſich in die Flucht.	They betake themselves to flight.
Er behilft' ſich mit Lügen.	He resorts to falsehoods.
Der Feind bemäch'tigte ſich der Stadt.	The enemy took possession (possessed himself) of the city.
Er beſinnt' ſich zu lange.	He bethinks himself too long.
Er beſtrebt' ſich es zu thun.	He tries (exerts himself) to do it.
Warum' erei'fert ihr euch?	Why are you becoming angry?
Es erei'gnet ſich ſelten.	It seldom happens.
Er erho'lt ſich langſam.	He recovers (himself) slowly.
Er verkäl'tet ſich ſehr leicht.	He takes cold very easily.
Nach wem erkun'digt er ſich?	After whom does he inquire?
Er getraut' ſich nicht zu ſprechen.	He does not dare (venture) to speak.
Sie ſchämen ſich ihres eigenen Betra'gens.	They are ashamed (shame themselves) of their own conduct.
Sie ſehnen ſich nach Ruhe.	They long for quiet.
Warum' widerſetz'en Sie ſich allen meinen Plänen?	Why do you oppose (yourself to) all my plans?
Unterſtehſt' du dich mir das zu ſagen?	Do you venture (presume so far as) to tell me that?

10. Many verbs are used reflexively whose equivalents in English are employed intransitively or passively:

Die Sold'ten ſammelten ſich um ihren Führer.	The soldiers assembled (themselves) around their leader.

Digitized by Google

Das Wetter hellt ſich auf.	The weather is clearing (itself) up.
Wir hielten uns in Berlin' auf.	We stopped (ourselves) in Berlin.
Die Erde dreht ſich an ihrer Achſe.	The earth turns (itself) on its axis.
Der Himmel bedeckt' ſich mit ſchwarzen Wolken.	The sky is being covered (covers itself) with black clouds.
Das Volk empört' ſich gegen die Regie'rung.	The people rebel against the government.
Ich freue mich daß er geht.	I rejoice (myself) that he is going.
Sie haben ſich entſchloſſ'en zu kommen.	They have determined (themselves) to come.
Wie befin'den Sie ſich?	How do you do? (find yourself?)
Ich befin'de mich ſehr wohl.	I am (find myself) very well.
Es findet ſich oft eine Gele'genheit.	An opportunity is often found.
Das läßt ſich leicht denken.	That is (may be) easily imagined.
Verän'dert ſich nicht Alles in der Welt? —G.	Does not every thing change (itself) in the world?
Ein üppig laſtervolles Leben büßt ſich in Mangel und Ernie'drigung allein'. —S.	A luxurious vicious life repents (itself) alone in want and degradation.
Der Jüngling iſt aus Willkühr ſonderbar und freut ſich; der Mann iſt es unabſichtlich und ärgert ſich.—R.	The youth is singular, by choice, and is delighted; the man is so unintentionally, and is mortified.

11. Some transitive verbs in taking the reflexive form, undergo a change of signification (§ 86. 6):

Er ſchickt ſich in die Umſtände.	He adapts himself to circumstances.
Es ſchickt ſich nicht ſo zu handeln.	It is not proper to act thus.
Er verſteht' ſich auf Muſik'.	He is a judge of music.
Ich verlaſſe mich auf ſie.	I depend upon them.
Es verſteht' ſich daß es wahr iſt.	Of course (i. e. evidently) it is true.
Das verſteht' ſich von ſelbſt.	That is a matter of course.

Beiſpiele.

Examples.

"Die Hand am Schwerte, ſchauen ſie ſich drohend an."	The hand on the sword, they gaze threateningly at each other.
So widerſprech'en die Ora'kel ſich.—S.	So do the oracles contradict each other.
"Es verber'gen ſich noch Viele in dieſen Mauern."	Many still conceal themselves within these walls.
Ich freue mich, daß Sie nicht gehen.	I am glad that you do not go.
Verſteh'en Sie ſich auf Tuch?	Are you a judge of cloth?
Er brach in die bitterſten Vorwürfe gegen ſich ſelber aus.—R—s.	He broke out in (into) the bitterest reproaches against himself.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Achſe –, pl. –n, the axis;
Achten, to esteem;
Bei, in, with;
Beſcheiden, modest;
Betragen, to behave;
Der Diener, –s, pl. –, the servant;
Drehen, to turn;
Einander, each other;
Die Erde, –, pl. –n, the earth;
Erkälten, to take cold;
Die Frau, –, pl. –en, the woman;
Gut, (*adv.*) well;
Schlagen, to strike, to beat;
Schmeicheln, to flatter;
Selbſt, see 4. 5;
Sich, see 2;
Tadeln, to blame;
Der Wundarzt, –es, pl. –ärzte, the surgeon.

Exercise 54. Aufgabe 54.

1. Warum lobſt du dich? 2. Ich lobe mich nicht. 3. Wer lobt ſich? 4. Jener Redner lobt ſich. 5. Warum tadelt ihr euch? 6. Wir tadeln uns nicht. 7. Jene Frau lobt ſich. 8. Dieſe Kinder ſchlagen ſich. 9. Warum ſchlagen ſie ſich? 10. Jene Schüler haſſen einander. 11. Warum ſchmeicheln Sie ſich? 12. Ich ſchmeichle mich nicht. 13. Gehen Sie zu dem Wundarzte ſelbſt, oder zu ſeinem Bruder? 14. Gehen Sie ſelbſt zu dem Wundarzte, oder ſchicken Sie Ihren Diener? 15. Selbſt die Feinde dieſes Mannes achten und loben ihn. 16. Ein beſcheidener Mann lobt ſich ſelbſt nicht. 17. Man erkältet ſich leicht bei ſolchem Wetter. 18. Dieſe Kinder betragen ſich nicht gut. 19. Wie oft dreht ſich die Erde um ihre Achſe? 20. Wie erkältet ſich Ihr Diener? 21. Er erkältet ſich nicht. 22. Betragen ſich die Schüler gut? 23. Unſere Schüler betragen ſich immer ſehr gut. 24. Sie ſind nicht Ihr eigener Freund, denn Sie ſchmeicheln ſich. 25. Ein wahrer Freund ſchmeichelt nie.

Exercise 55. Aufgabe 55.

1. The idle scholar blames himself. 2. Do you praise yourself? 3. Why does not the boy behave himself well? 4. Do you take cold easily? (do you easily take cold?) 5. Do you see yourself? 6. Do you see the surgeon himself? 7. Do you see the surgeon yourself? 8. Really good men flatter themselves sometimes. 9. The earth turns on its axis. 10. Even the enemies of a good man esteem him. 11. In what kind of weather does one take cold easily? 12. Does this

Digitized by Google

woman blame herself? 13. She blames herself, but her friends do not blame her. 14. Those children strike each other. 15. Do modest men praise themselves? 16. Dost thou blame thyself? 17. I do not blame myself. 18. Does the servant praise himself? 19. No, he blames himself. 20. Do you flatter yourselves? 21. We do not flatter ourselves. 22. Why do you blame each other? 23. Do those men understand each other? 24. They do not hear each other. 25. We visit each other very often.

LESSON XXX. Lection XXX.

NEW DECLENSION PLURAL.

ADJECTIVES.

1. Adjectives in the plural, when they follow dieſe, keine, or a word of that class (L. XXV. 1) end. in all their cases, in en, and are of the

NEW DECLENSION.

N.	dieſe gut–en (Männer);	keine gut–en (Männer);
G.	dieſer gut–en (Männer);	keiner gut–en (Männer);
D.	dieſen gut–en (Männern);	keinen gut–en (Männern);
A.	dieſe gut–en (Männer):	keine gut–en (Männer*).

NOUNS.

2. Nouns of the new declension have all cases of the plural like the oblique cases of the singular (L. XXII.), except Herr, which takes only n in the singular, and en in the plural:

N.	die Ungar–n,	die Neffe–n,	die Soldat–en,
G.	der Ungar–n,	der Neffe–n,	der Soldat–en,
D.	den Ungar–n,	den Neffe–n,	den Soldat–en,
A.	die Ungar–n,	die Neffe–n,	die Soldat–en.

* In what respect is the form Männer, an exception to Rule 7 L. XXV? See L. XXVI. 3.

Digitized by Google

FEMININE NOUNS.

3. Feminine nouns, except those ending in kunſt and niß, and those contained in the list page 276, form their plural according to the *new* declension. Those ending in the suffix in double the n in the plural; as, Freundin, Freundinnen.

N.	die Blume–n,	die Uhr–en,	die Schweſter–n,	die Nadel–n
G.	der Blume–n,	der Uhr–en,	der Schweſter–n,	der Nadel–n
D.	den Blume–n,	den Uhr–en,	den Schweſter–n,	den Nadel–n
A.	die Blume–n,	die Uhr–en,	die Schweſter–n,	die Nadel–n

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

4. Proper names of persons usually take s in the genitive, except feminines ending in e, which add ns:

Nom.	Heinrich,	Henry,	Gen.	Heinrich–s,	Henry's,
Nom.	Göthe,	Goethe,	Gen.	Göthe–s,	Goethe's,
Nom.	Gertrud,	Gertrude,	Gen.	Gertrud–s,	Gertrude's,
Nom.	Charlotte,	Charlotte,	Gen.	Charlotte–ns,	Charlotte's.

5. Masculine nouns ending in such a letter that euphony will not admit of an additional s, add in the genitive ens:

Nom.	Opitz,	Opitz,	Gen.	Opitz–ens,	Opitz's,
Nom.	Franz,	Francis,	Gen.	Franz–ens,	Francis'.

6. Masculine nouns whose endings would admit of s in the genitive, sometimes (though rarely) add ns *or* ens, and n or en in the dative and accusative:

Kennt ihr Adalbert–en (*instead of* Adalbert)?	Do you know (are you acquainted with) Adalbert?

FOREIGN PROPER NAMES.

7. Foreign proper names, if the final letter admit of it, usually form the genitive by adding s, frequently preceded by the apostrophe; those of other terminations generally indicate the case by means of the article; the noun being unchanged:

Er lieſt Byrons Gedich'te.	He is reading Byron's poems.
Die Reden des Demos'thenes ſind weltberü'hmt.	The orations of Demosthenes are world-renowned.
Sieh da! ſieh da, Timo'theus, die Kraniche des Ibykus.—S.	See there! see there, Timotheus, the cranes of Ibycus.

Digitized by Google

8. Proper names of places and countries form their genitive by adding s, if the final letter admit of it, otherwise the case is indicated by the article:

Die deutſche Freiheit erhob ſich aus Magdeburg's Aſche.—S.	The German freedom rose from Magdeburg's ashes.
Die Einwohner der Stadt Paris'. (L. LIX. 1.)	The inhabitants of the city (of) Paris

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Die Sachſen ſtanden durch einen breiten Zwiſchenraum von den Schweden getrennt'.—S.	The Saxons stood separated by a wide intervening space from the Swedes.
Alle Guten, alle Böſen folgen ihrer Roſenſpur.—S.	All (the) good, all (the) bad follow her rosy path.
Die Dänen ſind geſchick'te Matro'ſen.	The Danes are skillful sailors.
Die Türken ſind gute Solda'ten.	The Turks are good soldiers.
Die Ruſſen und Preußen unterdrück'en die Polen.	The Russians and Prussians oppress the Poles.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Biene, –, pl. –n, the bee;
Die Birne, –, pl. –n, the pear;
Die Couſ'ine, –, pl. –n, the cousin;
Der Däne, –n, pl. –n, the Dane;
Duftig, fragrant;
Fett, fat;
Friedlich, peaceful;
Die Gabel, –, pl. –n, the fork;
Geſchickt', skillful;
Der Heſſe, –n, pl. –n, the Hessian;
Die Kanzel, –, pl. –n, the pulpit;
Der Ochs, –en (*or* Ochſe, –n), pl. –en, the ox;
Patrio'tiſch, patriotic;
Die Pflaume, –, pl. –n, the plum,
Das Porzellan', –s, pl. –e, the porcelain;
Der Preuße, –n, pl. –n, the Prussian;
Die Rede, –, pl. –n, the oration;
Die Roſe, –, pl. –n, the rose;
Schlachten, to slaughter;
Der Schwede, –n, pl. –n, the Swede;
Die Taſſe, –, pl. –n, the cup;
Das Volk, –es, pl. Völker, the people;
Weltberühmt, world-renowned.

Exercise 56. Aufgabe 56.

1. Die Preußen, Heſſen, Baiern und Sachſen ſind Deutſche. 2. Die Deutſchen ſind ein fleißiges, friedliches Volk. 3. Die Franzoſen, Polen, Türken und Ungarn ſind Feinde der Ruſſen. 4. Die Soldaten kaufen und ſchlachten die fetten Ochſen. 5. Dieſe kleinen Knaben haben Birnen, Pflaumen, Kirſchen und Aprikoſen. 6. Die Schülerinnen gehen zu den Lehrerinnen. 7. Ihre Schülerinnen ſind unſere Couſinen. 8. Die patriotiſchen Reden des Demoſthenes

Digitized by Google

ſind weltberühmt. 9. Die neuen Uhren und Ketten unſerer Freundinnen ſind von Gold. 10. Dieſe Roſen und Nelken ſind ſchöne Blumen. 11. Die Kanzeln in jenen Kirchen ſind zu hoch. 12. Die fleißigen Bienen lieben die duftigen Blumen. 13. Meine Schweſtern haben meine neuen Federn. 14. Dieſe Taſſen ſind von Porzellan, die Gabeln von Silber. 15. Die Schweden und Dänen ſind geſchickte Matroſen.

EXERCISE 57. Aufgabe 57.

1. These Germans are Bavarians, Hessians, Prussians and Saxons. 2. Those boys sell pears, plums and cherries. 3. The cups are of porcelain. 4. The French are a patriotic people. 5. Who buys and slaughters the oxen of the soldiers? 6. Are these sailors Danes, Swedes or Russians? 7. Are the Russians and Turks skillful sailors? 8. Who sells the soldiers the fat oxen? 9. Are these roses and pinks fragrant and beautiful flowers? 10. Are not the pulpits in these new churches high enough? 11. Do the industrious bees love all beautiful flowers? 12. Are the Danes an industrious, peaceful people? 13. Have our cousins our pens and our books? 14. The boys in our schools read the world-renowned orations of Demosthenes. 15. These cups and those forks belong to the nephews of those old sailors.

REMARK.—By means of the appended table the pupil will be enabled to compare at one view the various terminations which have been separately given him in the preceding Lessons. This arrangement will both serve the purpose of a more *general* review, and at the same time be well adapted to fix in the memory the peculiarities of the different declensions. The endings of the adjective, especially, in its various modes of inflection, as well as the words by which those endings are affected, should receive a patient attention.

Digitized by Google

9. CONNECTED VIEW OF THE ARTICLE, DEMONSTRATIVE IN ALL.

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N	der,	die,	das,	dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſes,	mein,	meine,	mein,
G	des,	der,	des,	dieſes,	dieſer,	dieſes,	meines,	meiner,	meines,
D	dem,	der,	dem,	dieſem,	dieſer,	dieſem,	meinem,	meiner,	meinem.
A	den,	die,	das,	dieſen,	dieſe,	dieſes,	meinen,	meine.	mein.

OLD DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE AND NOUN.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Neut.*
N.	guter,	gute,	gutes,	Koffer,	Hut,	Jahr,	Mittel,
G.	gutes (en),	guter,	gutes (en),	Koffers,	Hutes,	Jahres,	Mittels,
D.	gutem,	guter,	gutem,	Koffer,	Hute,	Jahre,	Mittel,
A.	guten,	gute,	gutes,	Koffer,	Hut,	Jahr,	Mittel.

NEW DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE (L. XV.) AND NOUN (L. XXII.).

	Masc.	*Fem.* (L. XXIII. 3. OBS.)	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Masc.*
N.	der gute,	die, *or* meine gute,	das gute,	Baier,	Graf,
G.	des guten,	der, *or* meiner guten,	des guten,	Baiern,	Grafen,
D.	dem guten,	der, *or* meiner guten,	dem guten,	Baiern,	Grafen,
A.	den guten,	die, *or* meine gute,	das gute,	Baiern,	Grafen.

MIXED DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE (L. XVI. 1, 2).

	Masc.	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*
N.	mein guter,	mein gutes,	kein alter,	kein altes,
G.	meines guten,	meines guten,	keines alten,	keines alten,
D.	meinem guten,	meinem guten,	keinem alten,	keinem alten,
A.	meinen guten,	mein gutes,	keinen alten,	kein altes.

WORDS REQUIRING THE NEW DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*Fem.*
aller,	alle,	alles;	jeder,	jede,	jedes;	deine;	ſeine;
der,	die,	das;	jener,	jene,	jenes;	eine;	unſere;
dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſes;	mancher,	manche,	manches;	eure;	keine;
einiger,	einige,	einiges;	ſolcher,	ſolche,	ſolches;	ihre; (L. 23. 3. ob-	
etlicher,	etliche,	etliches;	welcher,	welche,	welches;	meine.	

WORDS REQUIRING THE MIXED DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

dein, ein, euer, ihr, mein, ſein, unſer and kein. (L. XVI. 1. note)

Digitized by Google

AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, ADJECTIVE AND NOUNS, DECLENSIONS.

PLURAL.

All Genders.				
die;	dieſe;	meine;	———	———
der;	dieſer;	meiner;	———	———
den	dieſen;	meinen;	———	———
die;	dieſe;	meine.	———	———

OLD DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE AND NOUN.

All Gend.	*Masc.*	*Masc.*	*Neut.*	*Neut.*	*Fem.*	*Fem.*
gute;	Koffer;	Hüte;	Jahre;	Mittel;	Bänke;	Wildniſſe;
guter;	Koffer;	Hüte;	Jahre;	Mittel;	Bänke;	Wildniſſe;
guten;	Koffern;	Hüten;	Jahren;	Mitteln;	Bänken;	Wildniſſen;
gute;	Koffer;	Hüte;	Jahre;	Mittel;	Bänke;	Wildniſſe.

NEW DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE (L. XXX. 1.) AND NOUN.

All Genders.		*Masc.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
die guten;	meine guten;	Baiern;	Grafen;	Federn;	Herzen;
der guten;	meiner guten;	Baiern;	Grafen;	Federn;	Herzen;
den guten;	meinen guten;	Baiern;	Grafen;	Federn;	Herzen;
die guten;	meine guten;	Baiern;	Grafen;	Federn;	Herzen.

MIXED DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

All Genders.		
alle gute;*	welche gute;	einige große;
aller guten;	welcher guten;	einiger großen;
allen guten;	welchen guten;	einigen großen;
alle gute;	welche gute;	einige große.

WORDS REQUIRING THE NEW DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

alle;*	einige;	manche;	welche;	eure;	ſeine;
die;	etliche;	mehrere;		ihre;	unſere;
dieſe;	jene;	ſolche;	deine;	meine;	keine.

* Note, that after alle, einige, etliche, manche, mehrere *or* mehre, ſolche and welche, the adjective sometimes takes a *mixed* declension (L. XXXI. 9).

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXI. Lection XXXI.

IRREGULAR DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. The following nouns are inflected according to the *new* declension, (except that they add s to en of gen. sing.): der Buchſtabe, the letter; der Fels, the rock; der Friede, the peace; der Funke, the spark; der Gedanke, the thought; der Glaube, the belief; der Haufe, the heap; der Name, the name; der Same, the seed; der Schade, the damage; der Wille, the will.

N.	der Fels;	der Friede;	der Name;
G.	des Felſ-ens;	des Friede-ns;	des Name-ns;
D.	dem Felſ-en;	dem Friede-n;	dem Name-n;
A.	den Felſ-en;	den Friede-n;	den Name-n.

2. Some of the above words, however, sometimes take in the nominative singular en, and are regularly inflected according to the *old* declension; as, der Felſen, des Felſens, etc.

3. Fels and Friede sometimes follow the *old* declension in the singular; as, der Fels, des Felſes, dem Felſe, den Fels.

Da ſollſt du den Fels ſchlagen. Thou shalt smite the rock.—Exodus xvii. 5.

4. Der Schmerz forms the genitive by adding ens; das Herz adds ens in the genitive and en in the dative, and both form their plural according to the *new* declension (L. XXX. 2).

5. The following nouns take the *old* declension in the singular, and the *new* in the plural; namely *masculine*, der Ahn, the ancestor; der Bauer, the peasant; der Dorn, the thorn (§ 15. 3); der Flitter, the spangle; der Forſt, the forest; der Gau, the country; der Gevat'ter, the god-father; der Lorbeer, the laurel; der Maſt, the mast; der Nachbar, the neighbor; der Pfau, the peacock; der See, the lake; der Sporn, the spur; der Staat, the state; der Stachel, the sting; der Strahl, the beam; der Strauß, the ostrich (§ 15. 3); der Unterthan, the subject; der Vetter, the cousin; der Zierat or Zierath, the ornament. *Neuter*, das Auge, the eye; das Bett, the bed; das Ende, the end; das Hemd, the shirt; das Ohr, the ear.

Digitized by Google

6. DECLENSION OF Bauer AND Auge.

Singular (old).	*Plural (new).*	*Singular (old).*	*Plural (new).*
N. der Bauer,	die Bauer–n,	das Auge,	die Auge–n,
G. des Bauer–s,	der Bauer–n,	des Auge–s,	der Auge–n,
D. dem Bauer,	den Bauer–n,	dem Auge,	den Auge–n,
A. den Bauer,	die Bauer–n,	das Auge,	die Auge–n.

7. Bett and Hemd sometimes take the plural forms Bette and Hemder.

8. Der See signifies the *lake;* die See, the *ocean;* their form is the same in all cases except the genitive singular. Sporn frequently has the plural Sporen, instead of Sporne.

For further examples of nouns with a mixed declension see § 19.

MIXED DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

9. After alle, einige, etliche, manche, mehrere *or* mehre, solche and welche the nominative and accusative of the adjective sometimes follow the *old*, and the other cases the *new* declension, thus forming in the plural also a *mixed* declension:

Er hat einige gute (*or* guten) Freunde.	He has a few good friends.
Durch die Güte einiger guten Freunde.	Through the kindness of a few good friends.

Beispiele.	Examples.
Der Name ist ein ungewöhnlicher.	The name is an uncommon one.
Ich kenne Niemand dieses Namens.	I know nobody by (of) this name.
Gute Fürsten bekom'men leicht gute Unterthanen, nicht so leicht diese jene. —R.	Good princes easily obtain good subjects, the latter (do) not so easily (obtain) the former.
Die Polen und Ungarn sind die Nachbarn der Böhmen.	The Poles and Hungarians are the neighbors of the Bohemians.
O, eine edle Himmelsgabe ist das Licht des Auges.—S.	O, a precious gift of Heaven is the light of the eye.
Wir sind eines Herzens, eines Bluts. —S.	We are of one heart, of one blood.
Vier Augen sehen besser als zwei.	Four eyes are better than two (two heads are better than one).
Es ist keine Rose ohne Dornen.	There is no rose without thorns.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Barke, –, pl. –n, the bark;
Der Dorn, –es, pl. (§ 15. 3) the thorn;
Drei (see p. 299.) three;
Dreſchen, to thrash;
Der Elephant', –en, pl. –en, elephant;
Erſt, first;
Der Friede, –ns, pl. –, the peace;
Der Fürſt, –en, pl. –en, the prince;
Das Getrei'de, –s, pl. –, the grain;
Letzt, last;
Der Maſt, –es, pl. –en, the mast;
Der Name, –ns, pl. –n, the name;
Nennen, to call; name;
Der Pfau, –es, pl. –en, the peacock;
Rufen, to call (see nennen);
Der Schmerz, –es *or* –ens, pl. –en, the pain
Der Staat, –es, pl. –en, the state;
Der Stachel, –s, pl. –n, the sting;
Der Störenfried, L. XXIV. 6;
Der Störer, –s, pl. –, the disturber;
Ueberſetz'en, to translate;
Der Unterthan, –s, pl. –en, subject;
Verei'nigt, united;
Verur'ſachen, to cause;
Die Weſpe, –, pl. –n, the wasp.

EXERCISE 58. Aufgabe 58.

1. Man findet in den Vereinigten Staaten keine Fürſten und keine Unterthanen. 2. Eine Barke hat drei Maſten. 3. Die Bauern dreſchen ihr Getreide. 4. Ich habe den Wagen meines Nachbars und die Pferde Ihrer Nachbarn. 5. Es ſind keine Roſen ohne Dornen. 6. Meine Vettern haben drei ſchöne Pfauen. 7. Die Ohren des Elephanten ſind groß, ſeine Augen ſind klein. 8. Ich kenne den Mann, aber ich weiß ſeinen Namen nicht. 9. Kleine Stacheln verurſachen oft große Schmerzen. 10. Man nennt einen Störer des Friedens einen Störenfried. 11. Seine Vettern rufen ihn, aber er hört ſie nicht. 12. Wiſſen Sie den Unterſchied zwiſchen "Nennen" und "Rufen"? 13. Wie überſetzt man "Rufen" und wie "Nennen"? 14. Der Lehrer ruft die Kinder in ſein Haus und nennt ſie aufmerkſame Schüler. 15. Die Federn des Straußes ſind ſehr ſchön.

EXERCISE 59. Aufgabe 59.

1. Do you know how many masts a bark has? 2. What is a disturber of the peace called? 3. Why does the teacher call his scholars into the house? 4. The elephant has small eyes and large ears. 5. Ostriches and peacocks have beautiful feathers, and large, ugly feet. 6. How are the words Rufen and Nennen translated? 7. There are many Germans in the United States. 8. Which pupils are idle? 9. All good princes have good subjects, but not all good subjects have good princes. 10. Our old neighbors, the peasants, are thrashing their grain;

Digitized by Google

they have wheat, oats, rye and barley. 11. Every rose has its thorns. 12. The bees and wasps cause great pain with their sharp stings. 13. Under what name is that old soldier known here? 14. Somebody is calling your cousins. 15. Their teacher calls them good and attentive scholars.

LESSON XXXII. Lection XXXII.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

COMPARATIVE.

1. Adjectives, which in the positive end in e, form their comparative by adding r, those of other terminations by adding er:

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Positive.*	*Comparative.*
weiſe, wise;	weiſ-er, wiser;	mild, mild;	mild-er, milder;
fein, fine;	fein-er, finer;	treu, true;	treu-er, truer;
eitel, vain;	eit-ler, (L. XII. 5.)	ſüß, sweet;	ſüß-er, sweeter;
ſtolz, proud;	ſtolz-er, prouder;	derb, firm;	derb-er, firmer.

SUPERLATIVE.

2. Adjectives ending in d, t, ß, ſch, t, u or z, usually form the superlative by adding eſt; those of other terminations add ſt:

Positive.	*Superlative.*	*Positive.*	*Superlative.*
mild, mild;	mild-eſt, mildest;	frei, free;	frei-eſt, freest;
ſüß, sweet;	ſüß-eſt, sweetest;	laut, loud;	laut-eſt, loudest;
ſtolz, proud;	ſtolz-eſt, proudest;	derb, firm;	derb-ſt, firmest;
lahm, lame;	lahm-ſt, lamest;	ſteif, stiff;	ſteif-ſt, stiffest.

3. When the positive is a monosyllable, the root vowels a, o, u, generally assume the Umlaut in the other degrees (for exceptions, however, see §. 36. 5.):

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
alt, old;	ält-er, older;	ält-eſt, oldest;
grob, coarse;	gröb-er, coarser;	gröb-ſt, coarsest;
klug, prudent;	klüg-er, more prudent;	klüg-ſt, most prudent.

Digitized by Google

4. The following are of irregular comparison:

groß, large;	größer, larger;	größt, largest;	
gut, good;	beſſer, better;	beſt, best;	
hoch, high;	höher, higher;	höchſt, highest;	
nahe near	näher, nearer;	nächſt, nearest, next;	
viel, much, many;	mehr, more;	meiſt (mehrſt), most.	

Hoch, when used attributively drops its c, also in the positive; as, ein hoher (*not* hocher) Berg, a high mountain.

5. Adjectives are subject to the same rules of declension in the comparative and superlative, as in the positive (L. XIV. 3. L. XV. 1. and L. XVI. 1):

Er iſt reicher als ich.	He is richer than I.
Er iſt ein reicherer Mann als ich.	He is a richer man than I.
Er iſt der reichſte Mann.	He is the richest man.
Mein beſter Hut iſt nicht neu.	My best hat is not new.
Der beſte Hut iſt nicht ſehr gut.	The best hat is not very good.
Weſſen Hut iſt der beſte?	Whose hat is the best?
Weſſen Buch iſt das beſte?	Whose book is the best?

6. When the superlative is used predicatively it usually stands in the dative after a m (an dem § 38.):

Mein Hut iſt a m beſten.	My hat is the best (*lit.* at the best).
Mein Buch iſt a m beſten.	My book is the best.
Er iſt a m älteſten von allen.	He is the oldest of all.
Sie leſen a m beſten.	You read the best.

7. The superlative is often suffixed to the genitive plural of all:

Dieſer Hut iſt der allerſchönſte, *or* Dieſer Hut iſt a m allerſchönſten.	This hat is the finest of all.
Ein allerliebſtes Kind.	A most charming child.

8. When two qualities of the same object are compared, the adjective, without change of form, is qualified by some other word:

Er iſt m e h r tapfer als klug.	He is more valiant than prudent.
Er iſt w e n i g e r tapfer als klug.	He is less valiant than prudent.
Er iſt eben ſo tapfer als klug.	He is just as valiant as prudent.

9. Participles are subject to the same rules of comparison

Digitized by Google

and declension as the adjective, except that they do not take the Umlaut; and in the present ſt, instead of eſt, is added:

Ein rührenderes Schauſpiel.	A more touching spectacle.
Das rührendſte Schauſpiel.	The most touching spectacle.

10. Je—deſto, or je—je (with the comparative) answers to *the—the* in English:

Je älter deſto (*or* je) ehrwürdiger.	The older the more venerable.
Je eher der Bote geht, um deſto beſſer für uns.	The sooner the messenger goes th better for us.
Je länger je lieber.	The longer the better.

11. After the latter of these words (—deſto, *or* —je) the verb precedes its subject:

Je fleißiger wir ſind, deſto ſchneller lernen wir (*instead of* wir lernen).	The more industrious we are, the faster we learn (learn we).
Je höher man iſt deſto tiefer kann man fallen.	The higher one is, the deeper one can (can one) fall.
Je länger ich mit ihm bekannt bin, deſto lieber wird er mir.	The longer I am acquainted with him, the more dear he becomes to me.

Beiſpiele.

Examples.

Es iſt nichts als ein bloßer Wahn. —D.	It is nothing (*else*) than a mere illusion.
Er iſt Nichts weniger als mein Freund.	He is nothing *less* than (he is) my friend.
Je mehr Gottes- und Menſchenliebe, deſto weniger Selber-Liebe.—R.	The more (one's) love of God and of man, the less (one's) self-love.
In jedem edlen Herz brennt ein ewiger Durſt nach einem edlern.—R.	In every noble heart burns an eternal thirst for (after) a nobler.
Das frohere Kind iſt überall das beſſere. —R.	The more joyous child is every where the better (one).
Es iſt nichts erbärm'licher in der Welt als ein unentſchloſſ'ner Menſch.—G.	There is nothing more pitiable in the world than an undecided man (human being).
Der größte Haß iſt wie die größte Tugend und die ſchlimmſten Hunde, ſtill. —R.	The greatest hatred is like the greatest virtue and the worst dogs, still.
Es iſt mit dem Wiſſen wie mit dem Sehen, je mehr man ſieht, deſto beſſer und angenehmer iſt es.	It is with (the) knowing as with (the) seeing, the more one sees, the better and the more agreeable it is.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Buche, –, pl. –n, the beech;
Dick, thick;
Edel, noble;
Die Eiche, –, pl. –n, the oak;
Entfernt', remote, distant;
Der Feldherr, –n, pl. –en, the commander-in-chief;
Gelehrt', learned;
Glücklich, fortunate;
Klug, prudent;
Die Luft, –, pl. Lüfte, the air;
Der Mond, –es, pl. –e and ¨–en, the moon;
Die Sonne, –, pl. –n, the sun;
Der Sperling, –s, pl. –e, the sparrow;
Der Stamm, –es, pl. Stämme, trunk;
Der Stern, –s, pl. –e, the star;
Tapfer, brave, valiant;
Die Taube, –, pl. –n, the pigeon;
Unrein, impure;
Verdie'nen, to earn;
Verschenk'en, to give away.

EXERCISE 60. Aufgabe 60.

1. Der Bauer ist reich, aber der Kaufmann ist reicher. 2. Der Kaufmann ist ein reicherer Mann als der Bauer. 3. Ist nicht der Kaufmann der reichste Mann in dieser Stadt? 4. Ich bin reich, mein Vetter ist reicher, und sein Vater ist am reichsten. 5. Ist der reichste Mann am zufriedensten? 6. Ist nicht der fleißigste Mann immer der zufriedenste Mann? 7. In welchem Lande sind das Kameel und der Elephant nützlicher als das Pferd? 8. Welche Thiere sind am nützlichsten? 9. Welches ist das nützlichere Thier, das Schaf oder das Pferd? 10. Der edelste Mensch ist nicht immer der glücklichste, und der gelehrteste nicht immer der weiseste. 11. Die Erde ist kleiner als die Sonne, und die Sterne sind entfernter als der Mond. 12. Der Stamm des Apfelbaumes ist dick, der Stamm der Buche ist dicker, und der Stamm der Eiche ist am dicksten. 13. Der Apfelbaum hat einen dicken Stamm, die Buche hat einen dickern, und die Eiche hat den dicksten. 14. Je mehr er verdient, desto mehr verschenkt er. 15. Ein guter Feldherr ist mehr klug als tapfer. 16. Die Luft in den Städten ist unreiner als die Landluft. 17. Ein Sperling in der Hand ist besser als eine Taube auf dem Dache.

EXERCISE 61. Aufgabe 61.

1. Are the merchants richer than the peasants? 2. Are the merchants richer men than the peasants? 3. Who is the richest man in this city? 4. Is your house better than the house of your richer neighbor? 5. Which is the more useful tree, the oak or the beech? 6. Is the oak a more useful tree than

Digitized by Google

the beech? 7. Why is the country air purer than the air in large cities? 8. What flower is more beautiful than the rose? 9. In what countries do we find the most beautiful flowers? 10. Is the most learned man always the wisest, and the richest the most contented? 11. Are not these boys more industrious scholars than those? 12. Is the earth larger than the moon? 13. The more industrious we are the more we know. 14. These people say they have better horses, better sheep, better oxen, better carriages and better dogs than our neighbors. 15. I have the oldest table, the oldest pen, the oldest book, and the oldest chairs in the city. 16. You have older iron, older steel and older axes than the smith. 17. Where or when is a sparrow better than a pigeon?

LESSON XXXIII. Lection XXXIII.

ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIVELY.

1. Adjectives denoting persons are often used substantively, where in English they are followed by a word referring to individuals or objects:

Der Gute bedau'ert den Böſen.	The good (man) pities the bad (one).
Der Böſe haßt oft den Guten.	The bad (man) often hates the good.
Ein Neidiſcher iſt nie glücklich.	An envious (person) is never happy.
Jeder Neidiſche iſt unzufrieden.	Every envious man is discontented.
Jene Schöne iſt ſehr ſtolz.	That fair (one) is very proud.
Die Unglückliche weint.	The unfortunate (woman) weeps.
Was willſt du, mein Kleiner?	What do you wish, my little fellow?
Der Trauernde weint (L. XXXVII. 1).	The mourner (mourning man) weeps.

2. In the neuter, the adjective is often employed as an abstract noun, and may be preceded as well by the indefinite as the definite article; or it may be used without either:

Das Nützliche iſt beſſer als das Schöne.	The useful is better than the beautiful.
Der Weiſe weiß nicht Alles.	The wise (man) does not know every thing (all).

Digitized by Google

Es iſt ihm ein Leichtes.	It is an easy thing for him.
Vergel'te nicht Böſes mit Böſem	Repay not evil with (for) evil.
Es liebt die Welt das Strahlende zu ſchwärzen und das Erha'bene in den Staub zu ziehen.—S.	The world loves to blacken what is bright (the glittering) and drag into the dust the elevated.

3. The superlative Beſt, in the sense of an abstract noun, answers to a variety of terms in English which are generally best suggested according to the sentence where it is employed. Thus it may be rendered by *good; benefit;* or, by other parts of speech:

Es iſt für das allgemeine Beſte.	It is for the general *good.*
Sie ſang zum Beſten der Armen.	She sang for the *benefit* of the poor.
Er gab uns etwas zum Beſten.	He *favored* us with something.
Geben Sie uns ein Lied zum Beſten.	Give us a song for our *entertainment.*

With haben, and sometimes with halten, the same word is used to denote the *advantage* which a person seeks to gain by means of facetious irony, or playful ridicule:

Die Naſeweiſe hat Sie zum Beſten. —L.	The pert (girl) is rallying you.
Er hat ihn zum Beſten.	He is ridiculing (or, "befooling") him.
Dieſe beiden Freunde haben gern einander zum Beſten.	These two friends are fond of rallying each other.
Der Lügner hält gern Andere zum Beſten.	The liar is fond of duping others.

4. The comparative of Nahe, is often used substantively in the signification of *particulars, nearer* details:

Wiſſen Sie nicht das Nähere von der Sache?	Do you not know the *particulars* of the affair?
Näheres kann er Ihnen ſagen.	(The) *nearer details* he can communicate you.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM PROPER NAMES OF COUNTRIES AND CITIES.

5. Adjectives are formed from names of countries and cities, by means of the suffix iſch; and those of the former frequently take the Umlaut, if capable of it. In place of an adjective of this ending, however, the name of the city with the suffix er is often employed, and is undeclined:

Digitized by Google

Viele Pommern traten in ſchwediſchen Dienſt.—S.	Many Pomeranians entered into Swedish service.
Die Urſache dieſer Verän'derung iſt in eben dieſem Augsburgiſchen Bekennt'niſſe zu ſuchen.—S.	The cause of this change is to be sought for in this very Augsburg confession.
Die griechiſche Sprache iſt die gebil'detſte der Welt.—H.	The Greek language is the most cultivated in (of) the world.
Er ſagte es auf deutſch (L. XXXIV. 4).	He said it in German.
Er ſagte es im Franzöſiſchen.	He said it in (the) French.
Sieben Jahre nach der Prager Schlacht war alle Religio'nsduldung gegen die Proteſtant'en im Königreiche aufgeho'ben.—S.	Seven years after the battle o Prague all religious toleration toward the Protestants in the kingdom was abolished.

OBS.– Note, that adjectives derived from the names of cities, are written with capital initials; as are also those denoting a language, if preceded by the article and used without a noun.

FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES FROM PROPER NAMES OF PERSONS.

6. Adjectives are formed from the names of persons by means of the suffix iſch, and are usually rendered by a noun:

Ganz Deutſchland ſeufzte unter Kriegeslaſt, doch Friede war's im Wallenſteiniſchen Lager.—S.	All Germany sighed under the burden of war, but there was peace in Wallenstein's camp.
Die Gebhardiſchen Truppen lieferten dem Feinde einen Platz nach dem andern aus.—S.	The troops of Gebhard gave up to the enemy one place after an (the) other.

7. Adjectives denoting a sect, derived from proper names are often written with a small initial:

Dem neunjährigen Kurfürſten gab man calviniſche Lehrer.—S.	To the nine years old elector Calvinist teachers were given.
Alles, was die lutheriſche Kirche erhielt' war Duldung.	All that the Lutheran church obtained was toleration.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Der Starke iſt am mächtigſten allein.—S.	The *strong man* is most powerful alone.
Der Sehende begreift' den Blinden, aber nicht dieſer jenen.—R.	The *seeing* (man) comprehends the *blind*, but the latter does not the former.

Digitized by Google

Nur das Neue scheint gewöhnlich wichtig.—G.	Only the (that which is) new generally seems important.
Nicht alles Schwere ist deßwegen ein Labyrinth ohne Leitfaden.—K.	Not every thing *difficult* is therefore a labyrinth without guide (guiding thread).
Reden Sie zu meinem Besten.	Intercede (speak) in my behalf.
Sie haben diesen Fremden zum Besten.	They are making (having) this stranger a laughing-stock.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Bedau'ern, to pity;
Benei'den, to envy;
Blind, blind;
Der Dom, –es, pl. –e, the cathedral;
Elend, miserable, wretched;
Folglich, consequently;
Das Gebäude, –s, pl. –, the building;
Geschwind', quick, rapid;
Die Hausfrau, –, pl. –en, housewife;
Hülflos, helpless;
Lahm, lame;
Laufen, to run;
Magdeburger, see 5;
Neidisch, envious;
Praktisch, practical;
Schnell, fast;
Taub, deaf;
Thätig, active;
Der Thor, –en, pl. –en, the fool
Thöricht, foolish;
Traurig, sad, sorrowful;
Weise, wise.

EXERCISE 62. Aufgabe 62.

1. Der ehrliche fleißige Arme ist viel nützlicher und glücklicher, als der faule Reiche. 2. Nicht jeder Arme ist traurig, nicht jeder Reiche ist glücklich. 3. Der Thor beneidet oft den Reichen. 4. Ein Neidischer ist nie zufrieden, und folglich nicht glücklich. 5. Niemand ist elender und thörichter als der Neidische. 6. Das Schöne und Angenehme ist gut, aber das Nützliche und Praktische ist noch besser. 7. Ist jeder Taube unglücklich? 8. Nicht jeder Gelehrte ist ein Weiser, und nicht jeder Weise ist ein Gelehrter. 9. Der Blinde ist noch unglücklicher und hülfloser als der Taube oder der Lahme. 10. Ein Gelehrter ist nicht immer ein thätiger, nützlicher Mann. 11. Eine Gelehrte ist nicht immer eine gute Hausfrau. 12. Was für ein Buch lesen Sie, ein deutsches, ein französisches oder ein englisches? 13. Ich lese ein französisches. 14. Jene Schüler lesen deutsche und englische Bücher. 15. Der Magdeburger (see 5.) Dom ist ein schönes Gebäude. 16. Er ist geschwind in Allem.

EXERCISE 63. Aufgabe 63.

1. Who is more foolish and more miserable than the envious man? 2. Nobody is more foolish than an envious man. 3.

Digitized by Google

The idle man is not useful, and consequently not happy. 4. Is only the useful man contented? 5. Is the idle man ever really contented and happy? 6. Is the industrious man never sad? 7. Do you learn the practical, or only the agreeable? 8. Why is the idle man unhappy? 9. Is the blind man more helpless than the deaf or the lame one? 10. Who leads a more miserable life than the envious man? 11. The good man pities the poor, but he does not envy the rich. 12. Is the Magdeburg cathedral the largest building in the city? 13. The idle man is not useful, and consequently not good, for only the useful man is really good and wise. 14. These German books are new, those French ones are old. 15. Who is more wretched than the envious man?

LESSON XXXIV. Lection XXXIV.

OMISSION OF INFLECTIONAL ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES.

1. The adjectives eitel and lauter, in the signification of *all, nothing but, mere*, sometimes stand without inflection before nouns:

Es iſt lauter Eigenſinn.	It is *mere* obstinacy.
Wir ſtolzen Menſchenkinder ſind eitel arme Sünder.—Cl.	We proud sons of men are *nothing but* poor sinners.
Unter lauter guten Dingen iſt die Wahl ſchwer.	Among things that are *all* good the choice is difficult.

2. When several adjectives qualify the same noun, the inflectional endings of all but the last are sometimes dropped, and the omission indicated by a hyphen. In like manner the last syllable of compound adjectives is sometimes omitted:

Die ſchwarz-roth-goldene Fahne.	The black red golden banner.
Niemand war ſo freuden- und ſchlafloſ wie er.—R.	Nobody was as joyless and sleev less (joy- and sleepless) as he.

3. In the nominative and accusative neuter, adjectives often omit the inflectional endings:

Des Menſchen Leben ſcheint ein herrlich Loos.—G.	The life of man seems a glorious allotment.

Digitized by Google

4. An adjective in denoting a language, when not preceded by the article, as exemplified in the preceding lesson, is also undeclined:

Er ſagte es auf engliſch.	He said it in English.

5. When the *latter* of two adjectives is employed, conjointly with its noun, to embrace as *one* idea that which the *first* qualifies, it takes the form of the *new* declension:

Denn geend'iget nach langem verderb'lichen Streit,* war die kaiſerloſe, die ſchreckliche Zeit, und ein Richter war wieder auf Erden.—S.	For, ended, after long ruinous strife, was the emperorless, the terrible period, and there was a ruler (judge) again upon earth.

Obs.—The above rule, though extending to both the gen. and dat., is rarely applied, except in the masc. and neut. of the latter. Note, also, that where the adjectives may be joined by und, or so separated as equally to refer to the same noun, the *latter* one also takes the *old* form (compare 1, 2. § 34.); thus, Er löſcht ſeinen Durſt mit klarem kalten (n, as euphonic) Waſſer; *or*, mit klarem und kaltem Waſſer, as also mit klarem, kaltem Waſſer.

6. A clause or sentence is often used adjectively, sometimes requiring to be translated by a relative clause:

Die zu Präpoſitio'nen geworbenen Subſtanti'ven.	The nouns that have become prepositions.	(The to prepositions become nouns).
"Die urſprünglich aus all und ſo zuſam'mengeſetzte Konjunction als hat immer die Bedeu'tung eines Relati'vs."	The conjunction als (*as*) originally compounded of all and ſo always has the signification of a relative.	(The originally from all and ſo compounded conjunction als has always, etc.)

ADJECTIVES USED ADVERBIALLY.

7. Adjectives in all degrees of comparison, in the form in which they occur as predicate, are employed adverbially:

Er lieſt ſchnell; er ſpricht langſam.	He reads fast; he speaks slowly.
Der einzelne Mann entflie'ht am leichteſten.—G.	The single man escapes the easiest.
Je mehr Schwäche, je mehr Lüge; die Kraft geht gera'de: eine Kano'nenkugel, die Höhlen oder Gruben hat, geht krumm.—R.	The more infirmity the more falsehood; strength goes straight: a cannon-ball that has holes or cavities goes crooked.

* Verderblichen Streit; *i. e. contest:* here embracing as a *single idea* the conjoint signification of the "*latter* adjective" and "its *noun*."

Digitized by Google

Er ſchreibt gut, ſie ſchreibt beſſer, und Sie ſchreiben am beſten.	He writes well, she writes better, and you write the best.
Es iſt höchſt wahrſcheinlich.	It is (most) highly probable.
Er verricht'ete das Geſchäft' aufs (§ 38. 1.) gewiſſenhaft'eſte.	He transacted the business most conscientiously.

8. Adverbs are produced by adding to the simple form of the superlative the termination ens:

Wir wohnen meiſtens auf dem Lande.	We live mostly in the country.
Sie iſt höchſtens dreißig Jahre alt.	She is at most thirty years old

9. Formerly adverbs were distinguished, in the positive degree, from adjectives by a final e. This termination is still often used, especially in poetry; and in the adverb lange is always retained:

Keiner möchte da feſte ſtehen, mein ich, wo er fiel.—S.	No one could stand firmly (there), I think, where he fell.
Wie lange wohnte er hier?	How long did he live here?
Er iſt lange nicht ſo alt wie ich.	He is not as old by far as I.
Ich habe ihn lange nicht geſehen.	I have not seen him for a long time.

10. The comparative of viel is often rendered by *longer*, that of lange by *more;* the superlative längſt by *a long time, long ago;* the superlative of jung by *recently, lately:*

Er iſt nicht mehr jung.	He is no longer young.
Ich wohne länger als zehn Jahre in dieſem Hauſe.	I (reside) have resided *more* than ten years in this house.
Das wußt' ich längſt.—S.	That I knew *long ago.*
Vor dieſer Linde ſaß ich jüngſt.—S.	*Recently* I was sitting before that lime-tree.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Er ſagte es auf franzöſiſch.	He said it in French.
Wir wollen deutſch ſprechen.	We wish to speak German.
Geſetze ſind glatt (ſanft) und geſchmeidig, wandelbar wie Laune und Leidenſchaft; Religion bindet ſtreng und ewig.—S.	Laws are smooth and flexible, changeable as humor and passion; religion binds firmly and eternally.
Ein unnütz Leben iſt ein früher Tod.—G.	A useless life is an early death.
Je ſchneller ſich ein Wandelſtern um die Sonne bewegt', deſto langſamer dreht er ſich um ſich.—R.	The more rapidly a planet moves around the sun, the more slowly it turns on its axis (around itself).

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Bleich, pale;
Deutlich, distinct;
Fechten, to fight, p. 348;
Das Gedächt'niß, –es, pl. –e, memory;
Gerecht', just;
Hager, haggard;
Handeln, to act;
Kehren, to sweep;
Krank, sick;
Lange (adverb), long;
Langsam, slow;
Laut, loud;
Der Rabe, –n, pl. –n, the raven;
Reden, to speak;
Der Redner, –s, pl. –, the orator;
Die Schwalbe, –, pl. –n, swallow
Ungemein, uncommon;
Die Zange, –, pl. –n, the tongs.

Exercise 64. Aufgabe 64.

1. Lernen Sie französisch? 2. Nein, wir lernen deutsch. 3. Wie sagt man im Englischen, "die Schwalbe fliegt schneller als der Rabe?" 4. Welches von diesen Kindern liest am besten, und welches am schlechtesten? 5. Der Diener hat die Zange, wer hat den neuesten Besen? 6. Der Fleißige lernt schnell, der Faule langsam. 7. Jener Redner spricht besser als er schreibt. 8. Warum lernen Sie langsamer als Ihr Bruder? 9. Er lernt viel leichter als ich, er hat ein besseres Gedächtniß. 10. Sie sprechen laut, aber nicht deutlich. 11. Der Kranke ist heute ungemein bleich und hager. 12. Gute Soldaten fechten tapfer in allen gerechten Kriegen. 13. Er redet weise aber er handelt thöricht. 14. Er ist reicher als sein Nachbar, denn er arbeitet fleißiger als er. 15. Ich verstehe Sie besser als ihn, denn Sie sprechen deutlicher und langsamer. 16. "Neue Besen kehren am besten;" wie sagen Sie das im Englischen? (L. XXXIII. Obs.)

Exercise 65. Aufg be 65.

1. Does your cousin speak German? 2. No, he speaks only English. 3. Does he learn more slowly than his friend? 4. No, he learns faster, and speaks more distinctly. 5. Do all soldiers fight bravely in all just wars? 6. The old soldier is uncommonly pale and haggard, he is sick, is he not? 7. I do not understand what the teacher says; he speaks very rapidly, and not very distinctly. 8. The idle man acts very foolishly, but not every industrious man acts wisely. 9. That crator speaks much louder than this one, but not so distinctly. 10. Which one of your scholars writes the best, and which writes the worst? 11. Which flies the fastest, the eagle, the raven, or the swallow? 12. Are all your scholars learning German?

Digitized by Google

13. No, they are learning French. 14. I do not learn rapidly, for my memory is not good. 15. How do you say in German, "He speaks very slowly?" 16. How do you say in German, "A new broom sweeps the cleanest?"

LESSON XXXV. Lection XXXV.

ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. When the possessive pronouns relate, attributively, to a noun understood, and are not followed by an adjective, they are called absolute possessive pronouns. They are of two forms; as, mein-er, e, es, inflected like an adjective of the *old* declension; and der, die, das mein-ige, or the shorter form, der, die, das mein-e, inflected like an adjective of the *new* declension:

OLD DECLENSION.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*	
N.	mein-er;	mein-e;	mein-es;	mine;
G.	mein-es;	mein-er;	mein-es;	of mine;
D.	mein-em;	mein-er;	mein-em;	to, *or* for mine,
A.	mein-en;	mein-e;	mein-es;	mine.

NEW DECLENSION.

N.	der mein-ige;	die mein-ige;	das mein-ige;	mine;
G.	des mein-igen;	der mein-igen;	des mein-igen;	of mine,
D.	dem mein-igen;	der mein-igen;	dem mein-igen;	to, for mine,
A.	den mein-igen;	die mein-ige;	das mein-ige;	mine; *or*,

N.	der mein-e;	die mein-e;	das mein-e;	mine;
G.	des mein-en;	der mein-en;	des mein-en;	of mine;
D.	dem mein-en;	der mein-en;	dem mein-en;	to, for mine,
A.	den mein-en;	die mein-e;	das mein-e;	mine.

ALL GENDERS IN THE PLURAL.

	OLD.	NEW.		NEW.	
N.	mein-e;	die mein-igen	*or*	die mein-en;	mine;
G.	mein-er;	der mein-igen	*or*	der mein-en;	of mine;
D.	mein-en;	den mein-igen	*or*	den mein-en;	to, for mine;
A.	mein-e;	die mein-igen	*or*	die mein-en;	mine.

Digitized by Google

EXAMPLES OF THE ABSOLUTE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Form of old declension.	*Forms of new declension.*	
Mein Hut iſt ſchwarz und ſein-er iſt weiß.	Mein Hut iſt ſchwarz, und der ſeine (*or* der ſeinige) iſt weiß.	My hat is black and his is white.
Sein Hut iſt ſchwarz und mein-er iſt weiß.	Sein Hut iſt ſchwarz und der mein-e (*or* der mein-ige) iſt weiß.	His hat is black and mine is white.
Mein Buch iſt neu und ſein-es iſt alt.	Mein Buch iſt neu und das ſein-e (*or* das ſein-ige) iſt alt.	My book is new and his is old.
Sein Buch iſt neu und mein-es iſt alt.	Sein Buch iſt neu und das mein-e (*or* mein-ige) iſt alt.	His book is new and mine is old.
Er geht zu meinem Freunde und nicht zu dein-em.	Er geht zu meinem Freunde und nicht zu dem dein-en (*or* dem dein-igen).	He is going to my friend and not to yours.

2. The absolute possessive pronouns are often used substantively in the neuter singular, to denote property or obligation:

Ich ſtehe wieder auf dem Meinigen.—S.	I am standing again upon my own ground.
Cardina'l, ich habe das Meinige gethan. Thun Sie das Ihre.—S.	Cardinal, I have done my duty (I have done mine). Do yours.

3. In the plural the absolute possessive pronouns often denote one's family or relatives; they are likewise, where the application is sufficiently obvious, made to refer to dependents; as servants, soldiers, etc.:

Haſt du das Schrecklichſte, das Letzte von den Deinen abgewehrt?—S.	Hast thou averted from thy own the most dreadful, the final (fate)?
Leopold aber befa'hl den Seinen von den Roſſen zu ſteigen.—M.	But Leopold ordered his (soldiers) to dismount from their horses.
Was liegt dem guten Menſchen näher als die Seinen?—S.	What lies nearer (in interest) to the good man than his own (family)?

4. The genitive singular of the possessive pronoun is often compounded with g l e i c h e n, as is also that of the plural d e r. The words thus formed are indeclinable, and refer to nouns of each gender and in either number:

Wer in der Committe' iſt meines gleichen?—S.	Who in the committee is my equal?

Digitized by Google

Ich habe deinesgleichen nie gehaßt'.—G.	I never have hated such as you (your peers).
Verord'net iſt, daß jeder Angeklagte durch Geſchwor'ne von ſeinesgleichen ſoll gerich'tet werden.—S.	It is prescribed that every accused (one) shall be judged by jurors of his peers.
Man muß dergleichen Thaten hinterher nicht ſo beſchau'n.—S.	One should not afterward view the like deeds so critically.
Saufen, Freſſen und dergleichen.—Gal. V. 21.	Drunkenness, revelings, and such like.

5 Gleichen, however, often stands apart from the pronoun, and is then written with a capital initial:

Es wirkt mit Macht der edle Mann Jahrhunderte auf ſeines Gleichen.—G.	The noble man works, with power, for centuries upon those like himself.
Das Beſte dabei iſt, der Kerl hält Sie für ſeines Gleichen.—L.	The best thing about it is, the fellow takes you for his peer.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Jedermann liebt die Seinigen und ſchützt das Seinige.	Every one loves his own family, and protects his own property.
Dich zieht dein Vaterland, und meines ſollte mich nicht halten?—L.	Thy native country attracts thee, and mine should not detain me?
Sein Nam' iſt Friedland, auch der Meinige.—S.	His name is Friedland, (it is) also mine.
Er ſchickte es nicht Ihrem Bruder, ſondern meinem.	He did not send it to your brother, but to mine.
Er handelt mit Knöpfen, Nadeln und dergleichen.	He deals in buttons, pins, and the like.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Ander, other;
Der Baumeiſter, –s, pl. –, architect;
Die Bürſte, –, pl. –n, the brush;
Die Eigenheit, –, pl. -en, peculiarity;
Der Fehler, –s, pl. –, the fault;
Die Flöte, –, pl. –n, the flute;
Hier, here;
Die Kreide, –, the chalk;
Der Maler, –s, pl. –, the painter;
Der Pinſel, –s, pl. –, the painter's pencil or brush;
Der Regenſchirm, –es, pl. –e, the umbrella;
Der Schlüſſel, –s, pl. –, the key;
Der Schwamm, –es, pl. Schwämme, the sponge;
Der, das Sofa, –s, pl. –s, the sofa;
Der Sonnenſchirm, –es, pl. –e, the parasol;
Das Taſchentuch, –es, pl. –tücher, the handkerchief;
Das Tintenfaß, –ſſes, pl. –fäſſer, the inkstand;
Verlan'gen, to demand, require;
Das Weltmeer, –s, pl. –e, the ocean;
Das Wörterbuch, –es, pl. –bücher, the dictionary.

Digitized by Google

Exercise 66. Aufgabe 66.

1. Hat der Maler ſeinen Pinſel oder den meinigen? 2. Er hat den ſeinigen und den Ihrigen. 3. Ich habe meinen Regenſchirm und den Ihrigen, meine Flöte und die Ihrige, mein Taſchentuch und das Ihrige, meine Wörterbücher und die Ihrigen. 4. Der Baumeiſter hat ſein Tintenfaß und das meinige, meine Kreide und die ſeinige. 5. Liegt der Sonnenſchirm auf meinem Sofa oder auf dem Ihrigen? 6. Er liegt auf dem meinigen. 7. Iſt Ihr Schlüſſel beſſer als der meinige? 8. Nein, der meinige iſt beſſer als der Ihrige. 9. Der Vater Ihres Lehrers und der Bruder des unſrigen ſind krank. 10. Alle Menſchen haben ihre Fehler und Eigenheiten; ich habe die meinigen, Sie haben die Ihrigen, und er hat die ſeinigen. 11. Ich habe hier zwei Taſſen, eine gehört Ihrem Freunde, und die andere gehört dem unſrigen. 12. Jedermann liebt die Seinigen und verlangt das Seinige. 13. Das Weltmeer iſt zwiſchen mir und den Meinigen. 14. Meine Mutter hat meinen Schwamm und den ihrigen, meine Bürſte und die ihrige.

Exercise 67. Aufgabe 67.

1. Have you my inkstand, or yours? 2. I have mine, and the scholar has his. 3. My keys are new, yours are old. 4. My mother has my cup, and I have hers; she has my handkerchiefs, and I have hers. 5. You have my parasol, and I have yours; yours is new, and mine is old. 6. Your flute is lying on my sofa, and mine is lying on yours. 7. Your chalk is better than ours; your sponge is smaller than ours. 8. Is your umbrella larger than mine? 9. Mine is smaller than yours. 10. The painter has my paint-brush and his, my dictionary and his, my flute and his, my pencils and his. 11. Your friend has his faults and unpleasant peculiarities; but all other men have theirs—you are not without yours. 12. Here is your brush; do you know where mine is? 13. The architect has yours, and I have his, but I do not know where yours is. 14. You are writing with your cousin's pencil, and he is writing with yours, or with mine.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXVI. Lection XXXVI.

1. CONJUGATION OF haben.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	*Perfect.*
haben, to have.	gehabt haben, to have had.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	*Perfect.*
habend, having.	gehabt, had.

INDICATIVE.

Singular.	*Plural.*

PRESENT.

ich habe, I have;	wir haben, we have;
du haſt, thou hast;	ihr habet, you have;
er hat, he has;	ſie haben, they have.

IMPERFECT.

ich hatte, I had;	wir hatten, we had;
du hatteſt, thou hadst;	ihr hattet, you had;
er hatte, he had;	ſie hatten, they had.

PERFECT.

ich habe gehabt, I have had;	wir haben gehabt, we have had;
du haſt gehabt, thou hast had;	ihr habt gehabt, you have had;
er hat gehabt, he has had;	ſie haben gehabt, they have had.

PLUPERFECT.

ich hatte gehabt, I had had;	wir hatten gehabt, we had had;
du hatteſt gehabt, thou hadst had;	ihr hattet gehabt, you had had;
er hatte gehabt, he had had;	ſie hatten gehabt, they had had.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich werde haben, I shall have;	wir werden haben, we shall have;
du wirſt haben, thou wilt have;	ihr werdet haben, you will have;
er wird haben, he will have;	ſie werden haben, they will, h've.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich werde	gehabt haben,	I shall have had;	wir werden	gehabt haben,	we shall have had.
du wirſt		thou wilt	ihr werdet		you will
er wird		he will	ſie werden		they will

IMPERATIVE.

habe (du), have (thou); habet or habt (ihr), have (ye, or you).

Digitized by Google

2. IDIOMS WITH Haben.

Du haſt gut Lachen. (See p. 446).	You may well laugh.
Er hat recht, ſie hat unrecht.	He is right, she is wrong.
Haben Sie Hunger? ich habe Durſt.	Are you hungry? I am thirsty.
Er hat gern ein warmes Zimmer.	He likes a warm room.
Er hat ſeine Freunde gern.	He is fond of his friends.
Sie haben ihn ſehr lieb.	They love him very much.
Wir haben große Eile	We are in great haste.
Ich habe ihn in Verdacht'.	I suspect him; *or*
Ich habe Verdacht' auf ihn.	I am suspicious of him.
Wir haben das Geld nöthig.	We are in want of the money.
Ich werde Acht auf ihn haben.	I will attend to (take care of) him.
Was haben Sie?	What ails you?
Ich habe Langeweile.	I feel ennui.
Was haben Sie dage'gen?	What objection have you?
Frau N. hat Trauer.	Mrs. N. is in mourning.
Man hat ihn zum Beſten.	They are bantering him.
Es hat keine Eile.	There is no hurry about it.

POSITION OF THE MAIN VERB IN COMPOUND TENSES.

3. In compound tenses and independent propositions the infinitive or participle is placed at the end of the sentence. In the second future the auxiliary haben (*or* ſein) follows the past participle:

Was hat er gehabt?	What has he had?	
Er hat Nichts gehabt'.	He has had nothing.	(He has nothing had.)
Hatten Sie es gehabt'?	Had you had it?	(Had you it had?)
Ich werde es haben.	I shall have it.	(I shall it have.)
Sie werden es gewiß' gehabt' haben.	You will certainly have had it.	(You will it certainly had have.)

4. When a verb has two objects connected by a conjunction, the last may either precede or follow the verb:

Haben Sie mein Buch gehabt' oder das Ihrige? *or*
Haben Sie mein Buch oder das Ihrige gehabt'? } Have you had my book or yours?

The infinitive with zu, when depending on another verb, is placed *last:*

Er hat nicht Zeit gehabt' einen Brief zu ſchreiben. He has not had time to write a letter.

Digitized by Google

5. Two or more nouns in the singular, as embracing but one idea, are sometimes made the subject of a singular verb:

Verrath' und Argwohn lauſcht in allen Ecken.—S.	Treachery and suspicion *lurk* (s) in every corner.
Auf blut'ge Schlachten folgt Geſang' und Tanz.—S.	Upon (the) bloody battles *follow* (s) song and dance.
Furcht und Zittern iſt mir angekommen.—Ps. 55, 6.	Fearfulness and trembling *are (is)* come upon me.

6. With collective nouns, except those used as numerals, the verb is usually in the singular:

Was zagt das Volk?—S.	Why do (does) the people despair?

7. With words in the singular, used as titles of respect, the verb is usually in the plural:

Eure königliche Hoheit verlaſſen es nicht heiterer.—S.	Your royal Highness leaves (*leave*) it not more joyful.

Beiſpiele.

Was hatte der Alte nöthig?	What did the old man need?
Wer hatte die Bruſtnadel?	Who had the breast-pin?
Hatte Ihr Freund ſie gehabt'?	Had your friend had it?
Wer hat das Löſchpapier gehabt'?	Who has had the blotting-paper?
Wann werden Sie die Obla'ten und das Petſchaft haben?	When shall you have the wafers and stamp?
Ich habe gern einen großen Ofen.	I like a large stove.
Der Glückliche, der Behag'liche hat gut Reden.—S.	The fortunate, the comfortable (person) may well talk.

Examples.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Angel, –, pl. –n, the angle (fishing-tackle);
Bald, soon;
Die Blatter, –, pl. –n, the small-pox;
Die Bohne, –, pl. –n, the bean;
Die Bruſtnadel, –, pl. –n, breast-pin;
Das Dienſtmädchen, –s, pl. –, the servant-girl;
Die Erbſe, –, pl. –n, the pea;
Die Gerſte, –, the barley;
Geſtern, yesterday;
Der Hafer, –s, the oats, L. XXVI. 10;
Der Kahn, –es, pl. Kähne, the boat;
Das Löſchpapier, –es, pl. –e, the blotting-paper;
Die Maſern, –, pl. –, the measles;
Die Obla'te, –, pl. –n, the wafer;
Der Roggen, –s, the rye;
Der Sack, –es, pl. Säcke, the bag;
Das Scharlachfieber, –s, pl. –, the scarlet-fever;
Die Schaufel, –, pl. –n, the shovel
Das Petſchaft, –es, pl. –e, the seal;
Uebermorgen, day after to-morrow;
Das Vaterland, –es, pl. –e, –länder, the native country;
Der or die Verwandte, –n, pl. –n, the relative, relation;
Der or die Waiſe, –n, –, pl. –n, the orphan.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 68. Aufgabe 68

1. Was hatte der Bauer in den großen Säcken? 2. Er hatte Bohnen, Gerste, Hafer und Roggen darin. 3. Wer hat meinen Kahn und meine Angel gehabt? 4. Der alte Fischer hatte sie gestern, und ich habe sie heute gehabt. 5. Wann hatte dieses Kind die Blattern? 6. Es hat die Masern gehabt, aber nicht die Blattern. 7. Haben diese Waisen keine Verwandten gehabt? 8. Sie haben Verwandten in ihrem Vaterlande gehabt, und werden bald hier Freunde haben. 9. Wann werden Sie die Oblaten, das Petschaft und das Löschpapier haben? 10. Ich werde sie morgen oder übermorgen haben. 11. Jene Kinder haben den Besen und die Schaufel des Dienstmädchens gehabt. 12. Wie lange hatten Sie die Brustnadel gehabt? 13. Ich hatte sie nicht lange gehabt. 14. Haben Sie je das Scharlachfieber gehabt? 15. Nein, ich habe es nie gehabt. 16. Habe ich recht oder unrecht? 17. Sie haben unrecht, und er hat recht. 18. Ich habe gern ein warmes Zimmer.

EXERCISE 69. Aufgabe 69.

1. Had the miller the barley, the oats and the peas? 2. The miller had the wheat and the rye, and the peasant had the oats, the peas and the beans. 3. Have the children had the servant-girl's shovel and broom? 4. How soon shall you have the wafers, the seal and the blotting-paper? 5. I shall have them to day or to-morrow. 6. These orphans have relatives in their native country, but have had none in this. 7. Did you have my boat and my angle yesterday? 8. No, but I have had them to-day, and shall have them the day after to-morrow. 9 How long will the boy have this hat? 10. He will not have it long. 11. What has the miller had in those large bags? 12. He has had wheat and flour in them. 13. My brother has had the measles. 14. Have you had the scarlet-fever? 15. Has that man had the small-pox? 16. When will the child have a new breast-pin? 17. Who likes a warm room? 18. Who has had my blotting-paper?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXVII. Lection XXXVII.

CONJUGATION OF Lieben.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	*Perfect.*
lieben, to love.	geliebt haben, to have loved.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	*Perfect.*
liebend, loving.	geliebt, loved.

INDICATIVE.

Singular.	*Plural.*

PRESENT TENSE.

ich liebe, I love;	wir lieben, we love;
du liebſt, thou lovest;	ihr liebet, you love;
er liebt, he loves;	ſie lieben, they love.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich liebte, I loved;	wir liebten, we loved;
du liebteſt, thou lovedst;	ihr liebtet, you loved;
er liebte, he loved;	ſie liebten, they loved.

PERFECT TENSE.

ich habe geliebt, I have loved;	wir haben geliebt, we have loved;
du haſt geliebt, thou hast lov'd.	ihr habt geliebt, you have l'v'd.
er hat geliebt, he has loved;	ſie haben geliebt, they have l'v'd.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich hatte geliebt, I had loved;	wir hatten geliebt, we had loved;
du hatteſt geliebt, thou hadst lv'd.	ihr hattet geliebt, you had l'v'd.
er hatte geliebt, he had loved;	ſie hatten geliebt, they had l'v'd.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde lieben, I shall love;	wir werden lieben, we shall love;
du wirſt lieben, thou wilt love;	ihr werdet lieben, you will love;
er wird lieben, he will love;	ſie werden lieben, they will love.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde		I shall	wir werden		we shall
du wirſt	geliebt haben,	thou wilt	ihr werdet	geliebt haben,	you will
er wird		he will	ſie werden		they will
	have loved;			have loved.	

IMPERATIVE.

liebe (du), love (thou); liebet or liebt (ihr), love (ye or you)

Digitized by Google

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

1 The present participle is formed by suffixing **end** to the root:

hoff–end, hoping; hör–end, hearing; mach–end, making;
leb–end, living; lieb–end, loving; lob–end, praising.

PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

2. The perfect participle is formed by suffixing **t** to the root, and prefixing, to verbs that have the accent in the first syllable, the augment **ge**:

ge–hoff–t, hoped; ge–hör–t, heard; ge–mach–t, made;
ge–leb–t, lived; ge–lieb–t, loved; ge–lob–t, praised;
ſtudir–t, studied; verkauf–t, sold; beſtraf–t, punished.

3. Verbs compounded with the particles be, empt, ent, etc., (§ 94. and 95.) do not take the *augment* **ge**; hence those compounded with the *particle* **ge** have the same form for the perfect participle as the simple verb; thus, gehört is the participle of hören and gehören; gelobt of loben and geloben, etc.:

Er hat mich gehört'.	He has heard me.
Es hat mir gehört'.	It has belonged to me.

INFLECTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

4. Participles are often used as adjectives, and are then subject to the same declension:

Ein geliebt–er Sohn kränkt oft ſeine liebend–en Eltern.	A loved son often grieves his loving parents.
Wo das Geliebt–e wohnt, da iſt unſer Herz.—H.	Where the loved (object) dwells, there is one's (our) heart.

PRESENT TENSE.

Singular.

5. The first person singular adds **e**, the second **ſt**, and the third **t** to the root:

First Person.	*Second Person.*	*Third Person.*
ich lob–e, I praise;	du lob–ſt, thou praisest;	er lob–t, he praises;
ich ſtudir–e, I study;	du ſtudir–ſt, thou studiest;	er ſtudir–t, he studies.

Digitized by Google

Plural.

6. The first and third persons add en, and the second adds t to the root:

wir lob–en, we praise; ihr lob–t, you praise; ſie lob–en, they praise;
wir ſtudir–en, we study; ihr ſtudir–t, you study; ſie ſtudir–en, they study.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Singular.

7. The first and third persons singular of the imperfect add te, and the second teſt to the root:

ich lob–te, I praised; du lob–teſt, thou praisedst; er lob–te, he praised;
ich ſtudir–te, I studied; du ſtudir–teſt, thou studiedst; er ſtudir–te, he studied.

Plural.

8. The first and third persons plural of the imperfect add ten, and the second tet:

wir lob–ten, we praised; ihr lob–tet, you praised; ſie lob–ten, they, etc.
wir ſtudir–ten, we studied; ihr ſtudir–tet, you studied; ſie ſtudir–ten, they, etc.

PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES.

9. The perfect and pluperfect tenses are formed by combining the perfect participle with the present and imperfect tenses of haben (or ſein L. XLVIII.):

Was haben Sie gelernt'?	What have you learned?
Wen hat der Mann gelobt'?	Whom has the man praised?
Warum' hatte er geweint'?	Why had he wept?

FUTURE TENSES.

10. The first and second futures are formed by combining the present and perfect infinitive with the present indicative of the auxiliary werden (L. XLVI.):

Was werden Sie kaufen?	What shall you buy?
Was wird ſie kaufen?	What will she buy?
Was wird er gehört' haben?	What will he have heard?

Digitized by Google

ORTHOGRAPHIC AND EUPHONIC CHANGES.

11. Where the roots end in d *or* t, an e is inserted between it and the inflectional endings, which begin with ſ or t. Thus, also, e is sometimes inserted after other final root letters:

Present. bild–eſt, for bild–ſt; wart–et, for wart–t;
Imperfect. bild–ete, for bild–te; wart–ete, for wart–te;
Participle. gebild–et, for gebild–t; gewart–et, for gewart–t.
beſt, lobet, lobete, gelobet, etc., see 2. 5. 6. etc.

12. Verbs whose roots end in el *or* er drop the e in the first person singular of the present tense, as also the e of the termination in the infinitive and present participle:

bettel–n for bettel–en; zitt–re for zitt–ere;
bettel–nd for bettel–end; zitter–nd for zitter–end.

13. The imperative adds, in the singular, e, and in the plural t:

Sage mir, was denkſt du von dem Eid? See L. IX. 8.
Tell me, what thinkest thou of the oath?

Braucht euer Anſehn.—S.
Use your authority.

Beiſpiele.

Schöneres iſt nichts in der Welt, als Neigung durch Vernunft' und Gewiſſen gelei'tet.—G.

Gehen Sie nun, und urthei'len Sie künftighin weniger vorſchnell von der Gerech'tigkeit in Vene'dig.—S.

Fromme Ehrfurcht ſchaffte mir mein Unglück, wo ich wandernd klopfte.—S.

Ihr habt's gehört'. Recht und Gerech'tigkeit erwar'tet nicht vom Kaiſer.—S.

Examples.

Nothing in the world is more beautiful than inclination guided by reason and conscience.

Go now, and in future judge less rashly (precipitately) of justice in Venice.

My misfortune procured for me pious reverence wherever wandering I rapped.

You have heard it. Right and justice do not expect from the emperor.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Die Ankunft, –, the arrival;
Der Atlaß, –ſſes, pl. –ſſe, the satin;
Bedeck'en, to cover;
Berühmt', celebrated;
Das Bier, –es, pl. –e, the beer;
Der Brauer, –s, pl. –, the brewer;
Färben, to color;
Die Geige, –e, pl. –n, the violin;
Der Künſtler, –s, pl. –, the artist;
Die Landſchaft, –, pl. –en, the landscape;
Die Nachricht, –, pl. –en, the news;
Der Schauſpieler, –s, pl. –, the actor
Die Wolke, pl. –n, the cloud;
Zeichnen, to draw, delineate;
Ziehen, to draw, pull, p. 358.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 70. Aufgabe 70.

1. Wer kaufte die Pferde und den Wagen des Schauſpielers? 2. Niemand hat ſie gekauft, er hat ſie nicht verkauft. 3. Was hörten Sie geſtern in der Stadt? 4. Ich hörte nichts Neues. 5. Was hat der Brauer gekauft? 6. Er hat die Gerſte gekauft, und das Bier verkauft. 7. Er wird die Nachricht gehört haben vor Ihrer Ankunft. 8. Der Maler hat mir eine ſchöne Landſchaft gezeichnet. 9. Der alte Spieler hat auf der Geige geſpielt, aber die Kinder haben ihn nicht gehört. 10. Wann werden Sie die Nägel aus dieſem Brette ziehen? 11. Die Pferde ziehen den Wagen, der Künſtler zeichnet die Pferde. 12. Der Fleiſcher hat die Ochſen geſchlachtet. 13. Die Sonne hat ſich mit Wolken bedeckt. 14. Der Färber hatte den Atlas grün gefärbt. 15. Hörten Sie was ich ſagte? 16. Einer von uns hörte es, aber die andern hörten es nicht. 17. Wer hat dieſes Eiſen und dieſen Stahl gehämmert? 18. Warum hat man (L. XIX.) uns gelobt? 19. Wen hat man getadelt? 20. Man hat Niemanden getadelt.

EXERCISE 71. Aufgabe 71.

1. Your friend will have heard this news before my arrival. 2. Has the dyer colored the satin and the silk? 3. He has colored the satin, but not the silk. 4. The old player has bought a new violin. 5. The brewer has sold his beer, what has he bought? 6. Whose oxen has the butcher slaughtered? 7. How has the actor played? 8. From whom have you heard this favorable news? 9. I have heard no favorable news, but I have heard much unfavorable. 10. Has this artist drawn you a landscape? 11. He is drawing a landscape, and the child is drawing a little wagon. 12. Who has been praised? 13. No body has been praised, but somebody has been blamed. 14. The falling snow is white and soft. 15. What have you learned to-day? 16. Have you heard what the scholars said? 17. No, I have not heard it. 18. The peasants have sold their horses and bought oxen. 19. To whom have the horses belonged? 20. I have heard the celebrated Italian singer, whom have you heard?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXVIII. Lection XXXVIII.

ON THE USE OF THE TENSES.

PRESENT.

1. The present tense is used:

a. To denote what is transpiring at the time of speaking, as also stating general truths:

Es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel von beſſeren künftigen Tagen.—S.	Men (mankind) speak and dream much of better future days.
Wenn euer Gewiſſ'en rein iſt, ſo ſeid ihr frei.—G.	If your conscience is clear, (then) you are free.

PRESENT RENDERED BY THE PERFECT.

b. To indicate a time that an unfinished action has continued, in which use the verb is frequently accompanied by the adverb ſchon, generally not requiring translation; or by the preposition ſeit, which may be rendered by *for*, or entirely omitted. In this use the German present is rendered by the English perfect:

Er iſt herein' ſeit mehreren Stunden. —S.	He has been here for (since) several hours.
Schon in den ſechſten Mond liegt er im Thurm.—S.	He has lain (he lies) nearly six months in the tower.

THE PRESENT FOR THE FUTURE.

c. To denote a future action, or to indicate the willingness or ability of the subject:

Wer weiß, wer morgen über uns befiehlt'?—S.	Who knows who will command us to-morrow?
Ich fechte nicht gegen dich, wenn ich's vermei'den kann.—S.	I will not fight against you, if I can avoid it.
Wer beſchreibt' die Schmerzen eines verkann'ten, von allen Seiten zurück'geſtoßenen menſchenfreundlichen Herzens?—G.	Who can describe the sorrows of a misapprehended, philanthropic heart, repelled (thrust back) on every side?

d. THE PRESENT INDICATIVE FOR THE IMPERATIVE.

Ihr ſchweigt bis man euch aufruft.—S.	Be silent till you are summoned.

IMPERFECT.

2. The imperfect corresponds mainly to the same tense in

Digitized by Google

English, § 138. Frequently, however, it refers to an action performed at an indefinite past time, and is best rendered by the English perfect:

Tapfer iſt der Weltbezwinger, Tapferer wer ſich ſelbſt bezwang.'—H.	Brave is the conqueror of the world, braver (he) who (has) conquered himself.
Wer nennt das Glück noch falſch? mir war es treu.—S.	Who still calls fortune false? it has been (was) true to me.

PERFECT.

3. The perfect is used as in English; and also in reference to a period of time fully passed, in which latter use it is rendered by the English imperfect:

Ich habe es geſtern gehört'.	I heard it yesterday.	(I have it yesterday heard.)
Er hat uns vergan'gene Woche beſucht'.	He visited us last week.	(He has us last week visited.)

FUTURE TENSES.

4. The future tenses, besides answering to the corresponding English ones, often indicate a probability. Thus used the first future is rendered by the *present*, and the second by the *imperfect* or *perfect* with an appropriate adverb:

Ich höre Jemand kommen; es wird der Wirth ſein.—L.	I hear somebody coming (come); it is probably the host (landlord).
Du wirſt dieſe Nachricht ſchon gehört' haben.	You have doubtless already heard this news.

IMPERATIVE.

5. Du and ihr, as subject of the imperative are usually omitted; other pronouns are expressed:

Bringe mir deine Bücher. Bringt mir eure Bücher. Bringen Sie mir Ihre Bücher.	Bring me your books. See Lesson XXVII. 2. 3. 5.

6. Although sentences in which Sie is the subject, have, for both the interrogative and imperative, the same form, yet they are as readily distinguished by the inflections of the voice in speaking, as by the mark of interrogation in writing:

Vergeſſ'en Sie jenen Namen.	Forget that name.

Digitized by Google

Vergeſſen Sie jenen Namen?	Do you forget that name?
Glauben Sie nicht was er ſagt.	Do not believe what he says.
Glauben Sie nicht was er ſagt?	Do you not believe what he says?

7. Where in English an auxiliary stands as the substitute of a previously expressed verb, the Germans either repeat the verb entire, or wholly omit it:

Sie kennen ihn, ich nicht; *or*	You know him, I (do) not; *or*
Sie kennen ihn, ich kenne ihn nicht.	You know him, I do not know him.
Er hat das Buch gele'ſen, ich nicht; *or*	He has read the book, I (have) not; *or*
Er hat das Buch gele'ſen, ich habe es nicht gele'ſen.	He has read the book, I have not read it.
Ich ſehe ihn nicht, Sie?	I do not see him, (do) you?
Ich habe ihn nicht geſe'hen, hat er ihn geſe'hen?	I have not seen him, has he (seen him)?
Er denkt nicht wie ich.	He does not think as I (do).

Beiſpiele.

Examples.

Du kennſt ihn erſt ſeit heut. Ich aber lebe ſchon zehn Jahre unter ſeinen Augen.—S.	You have known him only to-day. But I have lived (already) ten years under his eye (eyes).
Seit wann biſt du ſo vorſichtig?—L.	How long have you been so provident?
Aber lange ſchon kommt er nicht mehr die Palmen zu beſu'chen, die unſres Aufgeſtandenen Grab umſchat'ten.—L.	But for a long time he has not come to visit the palm-trees, that overshadow the tomb of our risen one.
Das Licht der Sonne ſchaut er niemals wieder.—S.	The light of the sun he will never behold again.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Acht, eight;
Achtzehn, eighteen;
Der Bote, –n, pl. –n, the messenger;
Dreißig, thirty;
Das Ende, –s, pl. –n, the end;
Der Feldwebel, –s, pl. –, sergeant;
Fühlen, to feel;
Fünfzehn, fifteen;
Das Gaſthaus, –es, pl. –häuſer, hotel;
Der Hauptmann, –es, pl. –männer or –leute, the captain;
Die Hoffnung, –, pl. –en, the hope;
Hundert, hundred;
Kennen, to know, p. 350;
Das Leiden, –s, pl. –, affliction;
Mehrere, several;
Seit, since, for;
Die Sprache, –, pl. –n, language;
Die Straße, –, pl. –n, the street;
Der Tröſter, –s, pl. –, the comforter;
Die Tröſterin, –, pl. –nen, (see L. XXIII. 5.);
Um, at;
Unwohl, unwell.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 72. Aufgabe 72.

1. Wie lange wohnt der Hauptmann in diesem Hause? 2. Er wohnt schon länger als acht Jahre darin. 3. Wie lange ist der Feldwebel in der Stadt? 4. Er ist seit fünfzehn Tagen hier. 5. Ich fühle mich (L. 29. 9.) seit mehreren Tagen sehr unwohl. 6. Um welche Zeit sehen wir Sie morgen? 7. Wir kommen morgen Abend zu Ihnen, wo finden wir Sie? 8. Sie finden uns in dem Gasthaus am Ende dieser Straße. 9. Wie lange kennen Sie den alten Mann? 10. Ich kenne ihn seit dem Jahre achtzehnhundert ein und dreißig. 11. Wen haben Sie gestern besucht? 12. Ich habe gestern Niemanden besucht. 13. Der Bote weiß wo Sie wohnen, ich nicht. 14. Dieser Schüler hat Zeit gehabt seine Aufgabe zu lernen, der andere nicht. 15. Sprechen Sie lauter, ich verstehe Sie nicht. 16. Sprechen Sie diese Sprache besser als Ihr Bruder? 17. Nein, er spricht viel besser als ich. 18. Ehe Sie gehen, schreiben Sie Ihre Aufgabe. 19. O Hoffnung, süße Trösterin im Leiden! (L. XLII. 1. *a.*)

EXERCISE 73. Aufgabe 73.

1. How long have your friends been in this city? 2. They have been here for more than eight days. 3. My brothers have visited our friends, I have not. 4. You know those people, we do not. 5. Your brother knows them, does he not? (L. XXI. 5.) 6. How long has this man been in this hotel? 7. He has been several years in it. 8. This child has for several days felt unwell, it is now very sick. 9. Where will we find you to-morrow? 10. You will find me in the new house of our neighbor. 11. At what time do you go to the city? 12. I go to-morrow evening. 13. I have lived since the year eighteen hundred and thirty-eight in this house. 14. Who lives in the large house at the end of the street? 15. I do not know to whom it belongs. 16. How long have you known these people? 17. I have known them for more than fifteen years. 18. You have known them longer than I have.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XXXIX. Lection XXXIX.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The relative pronouns are welcher, welche, welches, der, die, das, and the indeclinable (and nearly obsolete) ſo:

Ein Menſch, welcher ſtiehlt, iſt ein Dieb.	A man who steals is a thief.
Der Mann, den (*or* welchen) Sie loben, iſt mein Freund.	The man that (whom) you are · aising is my friend.
Dies iſt das Wort, das zu Jeremi'a geſchah' an alle Juden, ſo in Aegyptenland wohnten.—Jer. xliv, 1.	(This is) the word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the Jews that dwell in the land of Egypt.
Man lernt Verſchwie'genheit am meiſten unter Menſchen, die keine haben.—R.	One learns discretion (the art of keeping silence) the best among those who have none.

2. DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE Der.

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*All Genders.*	
N.	der,	die,	das,	die,	who, which, that;
G.	deſſen,	deren,	deſſen,	deren,	whose, of which, that;
D.	dem,	der,	dem,	denen,	to *or* for whom, which;
A.	den,	die,	das,	die,	whom, which, that.

The relative welcher is declined like the interrogative welcher (see list L. X. 4).

3. The genitive of welcher is used when the relative is immediately followed by the noun to which it refers; otherwise the genitive of der is preferred:

"Schiller, welches großen Schriftſtellers Werke die Welt bewun'dert, war der Liebling des deutſchen Volkes."	Schiller, *which* great writer's works the world admires, was the favorite of the German people.
Der Mann, deſſen (*not* welches) Buch Sie haben, iſt ein Deutſcher.	The man *whose* book you have is a German.
Die Frau, deren (*not* welcher) Stimme man ſo bewun'dert, iſt eine Italiä'nerin.	The lady *whose* voice is so admired is an Italian.

Digitized by Google

4. Welcher, welche, *or* welches is sometimes used in the signification of *some, any*, as a substitute for a previously expressed noun:

Ich habe wieder Geld, brauchen Sie welches?	I have (some) money again, do you need *some* (any)?

Some or *any*, before nouns, is only rendered in German, when it signifies *a few, a little*, and in this sense it usually answers to einiger, etlicher, *or* etwas:

Haben Sie etwas Wein?	Have you any (*some*) wine?
Bringe mir einige Aepfel.	Bring me some (*a few*) apples.
Er will einige Pferde kaufen.	He wishes to buy some (*a few*) horses.
Ich habe einige Stahlfedern, brauchen Sie welche?	I have some (*a few*) steel pens, do you need some (*any*)?
Ich habe auch welche, aber mein Freund hat keine.	I have some too, but my friend has none.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES CONNECTED WITH THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

5. When the members of a sentence are connected by a relative pronoun, the verb is placed *last;* and the auxiliary, when used, follows the main verb;

Ich lobe den Mann, den Sie loben.	I praise the man whom you praise.	
Ich lobe den Mann, der mich lobt.	I praise the man who praises me.	I praise the man who me praises.
Nicht Alle sind zufrie'den, die reich sind.	Not all are contented who are rich.	Not all are contented who rich are.
Er hat das Buch, das ich gehabt' habe.	He has the book that I have had.	He has the book that I had have.
Sie wohnen in dem Hause in welchem wir wohnen werden.	They live in the house in which we shall live.	They live in the house in which we live shall.

6. Besides the relative pronoun, there are many connecting words which require the same construction (List L. 53.):

Er ist heute,	wo	er gestern war.
Er war gestern,	wo	er heute ist.
Sie sind unzufrieden,	weil	sie arm sind.
Sie sind unzufrieden,	obgleich	sie reich sind.
Sie hat mehr gesagt	als	er gehört' hat.
Er hat weniger gehört',	als	sie gesagt' hat.
Sie werden kommen,	wenn	sie Zeit haben.
Der Bote wartete,	bis	er es hörte.

Digitized by Google

EXAMPLES OF PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE SENTENCES.

Principal Sentence.	*Subordinate Sentence.*
Nicht Alle ſind zufrie'den,	welche reich ſind.
Diejenigen ſind nicht weiſe,	welche nichts lernen.
Die Leute ſind heute hier,	die geſtern hier waren.
Jedermann macht ſich lächerlich,	der ſich ſelbſt lobt.

7. A relative clause, as in English, may be placed between the subject and predicate of the principal sentence, without changing the construction of the latter:

Subject of the principal Sentence.	*Relative Clause.*	*Predicate of the principal Sentence.*
Nicht Alle,	die reich ſind,	ſind zufrie'den.
Nicht Alle,	die zufrie'den ſind,	ſind reich.
Diejenigen,	welche nichts lernen,	ſind nicht weiſe.
Jedermann,	der ſich ſelbſt lobt,	macht ſich lächerlich.
Die Leute,	die geſtern da waren,	ſind heute hier.
Die Leute,	die heute hier ſind,	waren geſtern da.

EXAMPLES OF THE USE OF WORDS EMPLOYED AS INTERROGATIVE AND RELATIVE.

Interrogative Sentences.	*Relative Sentences*
Wer hat das Buch gehabt'?	Ich weiß, wer das Buch gehabt' hat.
Was haben Sie gehört'?	Sie wiſſen, was ich gehört' habe.
Wann werden Sie gehen?	Ich weiß nicht, wann ſie gehen werden.
Wo wohnen die Schüler?	Sie wohnen noch, wo ſie gewohnt'haben.
Warum' hatte man den Soldat'en beſtraft'?	Wir hörten nicht, warum man ihn beſtraft' hatte.
Wie hatte der Schüler ſeine Aufgaben gelernt'?	Man ſagte uns nicht, wie er ſie gelernt' hatte.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Es gewährt' die Liebe gar oft ein ſchädlich Gut, wenn ſie den Willen des Fordernden mehr als ſein Glück bedenkt'.—G.	Love very often grants an injurious possession, when it considers the wish rather than the happiness of the asker.
Manches Gute ſchadet uns, weil wir es mißbrau'chen.	Many a good thing injures us, because we misuse it.
Heilig iſt das Geſetz', ſo dem Künſtler Schönheit gebie'tet.—K.	Holy is the law that enjoins beauty upon the artist.

Digitized by Google

Was ist unschuldig, heilig, menschlich, gut, wenn es der Kampf nicht ist ums Vaterland?—S.

What is innocent, holy, humane, good, if the contest for the fatherland is not so?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Bedien'te, –n, pl. –n, servant;
Bestel'len, to order
Enge, narrow;
Erzählen, to tell, relate;
Frech, impudent, bold;
Die Geschich'te, –e, pl. –n, the story;
Das Geschöpf, –es, pl. –e, creature;
Gesund, healthy;
Die Hinsicht, pl. –en, the respect;
Höchst, extremely;
Hoffen, to hope;
Kurz, short;
Der Meister, –s, pl. –, the master;
Siegen, to conquer;
Der Stiefel, –s, pl. –, –n, the boot;
Die Uebung, –, pl. –en, the exercise, the practice;
Unwahrscheinlich, improbable;
Verzwei'feln, to despair;
Weil, because;
Zweifeln, to doubt

EXERCISE 74. Aufgabe 74.

1. Glauben Sie die Geschichte, die der Meister uns erzählt hat? 2. Ich weiß nicht von welcher Sie sprechen, er hat uns mehrere erzählt. 3. Die Stiefel, die er gekauft hat, sind ihm zu enge und zu kurz. 4. Leute, welche zweifeln, verzweifeln; aber die Hoffenden siegen. 5. Was Sie in der Stadt gehört haben, ist höchst unwahrscheinlich. 6. Er wird die Nachricht gehört haben, ehe wir ihn sehen. 7. Hier ist der Wagen, den Ihr Bediente bestellt hat. 8. Der Mann, in dessen Hause wir gewohnt haben, ist sehr frech. 9. Ich habe zwei Aepfel, und er hat deren drei. 10. Die Bleistifte, mit denen Sie schreiben, gehören dem Knaben, dessen Bücher ich habe. 11. Ein gesunder Mensch, der nie fleißig arbeitet, ist, in jeder Hinsicht, ein elendes Geschöpf. 12. Die Frau, deren Sohn Ihren Tisch gemacht hat, ist unsere Nachbarin. 13. Die Schüler, denen diese Federn gehören, lernen nicht viel, weil sie nicht fleißig ihre Uebungen lesen. 14. Wissen Sie, wer die Pferde jetzt hat, die ich gestern gehabt habe? 15. Ich weiß nicht, welche Pferde Sie gestern gehabt haben. 16. Diese Aufgabe ist die schwerste, die ich gelernt habe.

EXERCISE 75. Aufgabe 75.

1. Where is the servant that has ordered these horses? 2. I do not know who has ordered them. 3. Are the shoes that the boy has made too narrow? 4. The boots that he has made

Digitized by Google

are too short. 5. Why do you not believe the story that they told us? 6. I do not believe it because he has told me other stories that are not true. 7. Not every man who is industrious is in every respect a good man. 8. Not all stories are untrue which are improbable. 9. Not all despair who doubt; not all conquer who hope. 10. Is a wise man ever unhappy because he is poor? 11. Is every healthy man discontented who is not industrious? 12. Do you know where the man lives whose house we have bought? 13. I know where he has lived, and I have a friend who knows where he now lives. 14. Have you my pens? 15. Yes, I have three of them. 16. The lady whose books we have had is a sister of the scholars with whose pens we are writing. 17. Do you find these exercises more difficult than the others that you have learned?

LESSON XL. Lection XL.

Wer and Was as relative.

1. Wer is used with the force of an antecedent and relative, or may be followed by the demonstrative pronoun der, (L. XLIV.) in a succeeding clause:

Wer ſich nicht ſelbſt beherrſcht, bleibt immer ein Knecht.—G.	(He) who governs not himself remains always a slave.
Wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen.	He who will not hear must feel.

2. Wer sometimes occurs in the signification of Jemand:

Ließ auch die ew'ge Pforte wen zurück, er ſchwiege.—A. W. S.	Even if the eternal portal should let any one return, he would keep silence.

3. Was, like *what*, is used with the signification of an antecedent and relative; it also stands as a simple relative after a neuter antecedent which does not refer to a previously expressed noun:

Doppelt giebt, wer gleich giebt Was man wünſcht und liebt.—G	He who gives immediately *what* one wishes and loves, gives twofold.
Was du heute thun kannſt, das verſchie'be nicht auf morgen.	*What* thou canst do to-day defer not until to-morrow.

Digitized by Google

Alles, was ich höre, ſind Stimmen der Freude und des Danks.—Geß.	All that I hear are voices of joy and thankfulness.
Alles, was iſt und geſchie'ht, gehört zu einem Plan, von dem wir nichts verſtehen.	Every thing that exists and occurs belongs to a plan of which we understand nothing.

4. For further illustration of the use of the pronominal adverbs, compare with the following examples, § 103. 1. 2 :

Nicht die Sprache an und für ſich iſt richtig tüchtig und zierlich, ſondern der Geiſt iſt es, der ſich darin verkör'pert.—G.	Not (L. XLII. 1. *a.*) language in and of itself is correct, forcible and elegant, but it is the spirit that is embodied in it.
Worin' hat er Unrecht?	In what (wherein) is he wrong?

5. When the antecedent is a pronoun of the first or second person, the verb agrees with the relative in the *third;* or the personal pronoun is repeated after the relative :

Was kann ich thun, der ſelber hülflos iſt?	What can I do, *who* myself am (is) helpless?
Das wiſſen wir, die wir die Gemſen jagen.—S.	That we know, who (we) hunt the chamois.

6. The relative sometimes precedes the word to which it refers, which *latter* is sometimes omitted :

Die es genoſſen haben, denen iſt es theuer.—S.	Those who have enjoyed it, to them it is dear.
Die er gemehrt' hat, mögen um ihn weinen.—S.	(They) whom he has aggrandized may weep for him.

7. The relative can not, as sometimes in English, be omitted, but must always be expressed :

Ich ſchäme mich der Rolle, die ich ſpielte ;	I shame me of the part (—) I played.—Scott.
'S iſt der Abend des Lebens, der mir geheimnißvolles Wiſſen giebt.	'T is the sunset of life (that) gives me mystical lore.

8. In subordinate sentences the copula (auxiliary verb) is frequently omitted :

Den Durſt nach ſeiner Erkennt'niß ſtillt gewiß', der uns mit dieſem Durſt erſchaf'fen (hat).—K.	The thirst after a knowledge of himself, He will certainly satisfy who (has) created us with this thirst.
Wenn du das große Spiel der Welt geſe'hen (haſt), ſo kehreſt du reicher in dich ſelbſt zurück'.—S.	When thou hast seen the great game of the world (life), thou returnest richer to thyself.

Digitized by Google

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Ein fröhliches Volk thut Alles, was es zu thun hat, mit beſſerem Willen, als ein dummes oder ſchwermüthiges. —W.	A cheerful people does all that it has to do, with (a) better will than a stupid or a melancholy one.
Wer gut iſt, findet Gutes im Leben und im Tod.—B.	He who is good finds good (things) in life and in death.
Die Widerwärtigkeiten ſind für die Seele das, was ein Ungewitter für die Luft iſt.	(The) disappointments are to (for) the soul what a thunder-storm is to (for) the air.
Wer nicht zuweilen zu viel und zu weich empfin'det, der empfin'det gewiß' immer zu wenig.—R.	He who does not sometimes feel too much and too tenderly certainly always feels too little.
Ihr, Ihr ſelbſt ſeid es, die ihr euer eignes Vaterland beſtie'hlt.—S	It is you, you yourselves who rob your own fatherland.
Geſe'gnet ſei, der dich erkannt' hat.—Ruth, II. 19.	Blessed be he that did take knowledge of thee.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Begra'ben, buried;
Beſtä'tigen, to confirm;
Der Bundesgenoß, -en, pl. -en, the confederate, ally;
Darin, in, into it, therein, § 103. 2.;
Erwar'ten, to expect;
Gethan', done;
Gewinn'en, to gain; p. 350.
Die Grube, -, pl. -n, the pit;
Kränken, to grieve;
Die Macht, -, pl. Mächte, power;
Das Sprichwort, -es, pl. -wörter, the adage;
Suchen, to seek, look for;
Der Tand, -es, the trash;
Unrecht, wrong;
Vorgeſtern, day before yesterday;
Wagen, to venture;
Walten, to act, rule;
Worin', in what, wherein.

Exercise 76. Aufgabe 76.

1. Wer zweifelt, verzweifelt; wer hofft, hat geſiegt.—R. 2. Ein altes Sprichwort ſagt, "Wer Andern eine Grube gräbt, fällt ſelber darein." 3. Alles, was man uns vorgeſtern in der Stadt von dem Kriege erzählte, hat ſich beſtätigt. 4. Wiſſen Sie, worin wir unrecht haben? 5. Du, der du ſo fleißig biſt, wirſt ſchnell lernen. 6. Du, die du ſo fleißig biſt, wirſt viel lernen. 7. Ihr, die ihr ſo fleißig ſeid, werdet viel lernen. 8. Sie, die ſie ſo fleißig ſind, werden viel lernen. 9. Wiſſen Sie, was für ein Buch und was für Papier ich gekauft habe? 10. Man glaubt leicht, was man hofft und wünſcht. 11. Sie ſind begraben Alle, mit denen ich gewaltet und geliebt (habe

Digitized by Google

see 8).—S. 12. Wer nichts wagt, gewinnt nichts. 13. Nicht was er gesagt, sondern was er gethan, hat sie gekränkt. 14. Seine Macht war größer als seine Bundesgenossen erwartet, größer als sie gewünscht hatten. 15. Wer nichts als Geld sucht, liebt Tand.

EXERCISE 77. Aufgabe 77.

1. Do you know what the children have told me? 2. I have heard all that they have said to you. 3. What has been said and done grieved the old man. 4. All that was told to our friends has been confirmed. 5. We do not know wherein the boys are wrong, do you? (L. XXXVIII. 7.) 6. They have learned less than we had wished and expected. 7. Do you know whom the scholars have been looking for? 8. Who steals my purse steals trash. 9. Not all gain who venture; do all venture who gain? 10. The power of the king was greater than he had expected, greater than his allies had wished. 11. What does the adage say of a man who digs others a pit? 12. Do you understand what I have told you, and do you know why I have told it to you? 13. The people I have been visiting are Americans. 14. Did you hear what the boys are speaking of? 15. Do you know whose pen he will write the letter with? 16. I have told you that I have heard.

LESSON XLI. Lection XLI.

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The determinative pronouns are derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, (der, see 3.) derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe and solcher, solche, solches. Solcher, is declined like dieser (L. X. 4.); der, die, dasjenige; der, die, dasselbe, is declined like der, die, das meinige, L. XXXV.

2. Derjenige refers to something specified in a succeeding part of the sentence, and must be followed by a relative clause; derjenige may be rendered by *he*, *the one*, *that*, etc.

Derjenige, welcher nachlässig ist, lernt nicht schnell. He (the one) who is negligent does not learn rapidly.

Digitized by Google

Diejenige, welche nachläſſig iſt, lernt nicht ſchnell.	She (the one) who is negligent does not learn rapidly.
Dasjenige iſt gut, was nützlich iſt.	That is good which is useful.
Wir loben diejenigen, die wir lieben.	We praise those whom we love.
Diejenigen, die wir lieben, lieben uns.	Those whom we love, love us.
Die Bücher, welche (die) ich habe, ſind beſſer als diejenigen, die er hat.	The books which I have are better than those which he has.

3. For derjenige der is often substituted, in which signification, when used adjectively, it is inflected like the definite article. When supplying the place of a noun, it has the declension of the *relative* der, except that the genitive plural is derer instead of deren.

Wie traurig iſt das Loos derer, deren Freuden und Hoffnungen ſich auf dieſes Leben beſchränken!	How sad is the lot of *those whose* joys and hopes are limited (limit themselves) to this life!
"Der Ruhm deſſen (desjenigen), der lügt, dauert nicht lange."	The glory of him (any one) who lies, does not endure long.
Ich bin nicht von denen (denjenigen), die mit Worten tapfer ſind.—S.	I am not (one) of those who are valiant with words.
Die (diejenigen), die (welche) die Wahrheit nicht lieben, ſind nicht gut.	Those who do not love the truth are not good.
Ich meine nicht dieſes Buch, ſondern das, welches das Kind hat.	I do not mean this book, but that (the one) that the child has.

4. Derſelbe answers in use and signification to *the same:*

Ich habe denſelben Mann geſehen, den er geſehen hat.	I have seen the same man that he has seen.
Wir beide leſen dieſelben Bücher.	We both read the same books.

SUBSTITUTION OF Derſelbe FOR THE PERSONAL PRONOUN.

Derſelbe is substituted for the personal pronouns:

a. After prepositions when the pronoun refers to animate, *or* inanimate objects:

Er hat meinen Bleiſtift und ſchreibt mit demſelben (*not* mit ihm).	He has my pencil and is writing with it (with the same).
Er ſchnitt den Apfel und gab mir einen Theil deſſelben.	He cut the apple and gave me a part of it (of the same).

b. To avoid ambiguity or the repetition of a pronoun:

Dieſe Leute ſind unſere Nachbarn, kennen Sie dieſelben?	These people are our neighbors, do you know *them* (the same)?
Er lobt den Knaben, weil derſelbe ſeine Mutter ehrt.	He praises the boy because *he* (the same), honors his mother.

Digitized by Google

Er liebt ſeinen Bruder, aber nicht die Kinder deſſelben.	He loves his brother, but not *his* (brother's) children.
Er hat die Fehler eines großen Mannes, ohne die Verdienſte deſſelben.	He has the errors of a great man without *his* merits (the merits of one).
Sie ſchrieben ihren Kindern, dieſelben müßten gleich abreiſen.	They wrote to their children that *they* must start immediately.

5. Solcher is frequently followed by a relative pronoun, which in this position is rendered by *as*:

Ich leſe nur ſolche Bücher, die lehrreich ſind.	I read only such books as (which) are instructive.

6. When ſolcher marks similarity, rather than identity, it is followed by wie:

Haben Sie ſolche Tinte wie ich gekauft' habe?	Have you bought *such* ink *as* I have?
Ja, ich habe eben ſolche.	Yes, I have just *such*.
Solche Schiffe, wie die, von denen Sie ſprechen, ſind unſicher.	*Such* ships *as* (those that) you speak of are unsafe.

7. Solcher is sometimes omitted (from a sentence) and a personal pronoun introduced after the subject:

Eine Thräne (ſolche) wie die Unſterblichen ſie weinen, trat in ſein großes dunkles Auge.—Kr.	A tear *such as* (the) immortals weep, entered his large, dark eye.

8. Solcher, when used with the indefinite article, follows it; when, however, the final syllable is dropped (L. XV. 3.) ſolch- precedes the article:

Ein ſolcher Auftrag ſchreckt mich nicht.—G.	Such a mandate frightens me not.
Solch-ein Wetter iſt ſelten zu ſolcher Ernte gekom'men.—G.	Such weather has seldom come to such a harvest.

9. Solcher is sometimes used as a substitute for a demonstrative, or a personal pronoun:

Die Schnelligkeit mit der Solches ausgeführt war, ließ dem Feinde nicht Zeit, es zu verhin'dern.—S.	The rapidity with which *this* (such) was executed, did not leave the foe time to prevent it.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Biſt du nur deſſen Freund, der glücklich iſt? Nicht deß, den Elend ſtürzt?—K.	Art thou the friend of him only who is happy? Not of him, whom adversity overthrows?

Digitized by Google

Weiſe Natur', wie ſelig iſt der, der niemals den Endzweck deiner Schönheit verkl'ert!—W.

Die That—dieſe Zunge des Herzens—iſt zugleich der geſun'deſte Balſam deſſelben, und jeder gute Vorſatz iſt ein Troſt.—R.

Wise Nature, how happy is he who never loses the design of thy beauty!

Action—that tongue of the heart—is at the same time its most wholesome balm, and every good purpose is a comfort.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Böttcher, –, pl. –, the cooper;
Dauern, to continue, last;
Die Ente, –, pl. –n, the duck;
Die Eule, –, pl. –n, the owl;
Die Forelle, –, pl. –n, the trout;
Geſe'hen, seen;
Der Habicht, –es, pl. –e, the hawk;
Der Haſe, –n, pl. –n, the hare;
Der Käfig, –s, pl. –e, the cage;
Der Lachs, –es, pl. –e, the salmon;
Lügen, to lie;
Die Mandel, –, pl. –n, the almond;
Der Meſſerſchmied, –es, pl. –e, cutler;
Ordentlich, orderly;
Die Pfirſiche, –, pl. –en, the peach;
Der Rubin', –s, pl. –e, the ruby;
Der Ruhm, –es, the glory;
Saufen, to tipple, p. 352;
Der Smaragd', –s, –es, pl. –en, the emerald;
Der Teppich, –s, –es, pl. –e, carpet;
Die Thür, –, pl. –en, the door;
Tugendhaft, virtuous;
Die Wahrheit, –, pl. –en, the truth.

Exercise 78. Aufgabe 78.

1. Diejenigen, die uns ſchmeicheln, ſind keine wahre Freunde. 2. Unſer beſter Freund iſt derjenige, der uns die Wahrheit ſagt. 3. Das Glück deſſen (desjenigen), der ſäuft, dauert nicht lange. 4. Dasjenige, was weder ſchön noch nützlich iſt, iſt nicht gut. 5. Wir leſen nur ſolche Bücher, welche nützlich und lehrreich ſind. 6. Die Lehrer loben ihre Schüler, weil dieſelben gut und ordentlich ſind. 7. Es ſind zwei Adler, ein Habicht, eine Eule, ein Rabe und eine Taube in jenen Käfigen; haben Sie dieſelben geſehen? 8. Iſt dieſer Teppich derſelbe, den Sie gekauft haben? 9. Nein, ich habe denjenigen gekauft, den Sie heute Morgen geſehen haben. 10. Ich ſehe die Thür des Hauſes, aber nicht die Fenſter deſſelben. 11. Meine Freunde kaufen die Pfirſichen Ihrer Nachbarn, aber nicht die Mandeln derſelben. 12. Ich ſchicke dieſen Smaragd und dieſen Rubin demſelben Manne, der ſie mir geſchickt hat. 13. Nur diejenigen ſind weiſe, welche tugendhaft ſind. 14. Der Mann, der den Aal, den Lachs und die Forelle gekauft hat, iſt ein Böttcher; und derjenige, der die Ente und den Haſen kauft, iſt ein Meſſerſchmied.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 79. Aufgabe 79.

1. Have you bought these peaches, or those that belonged to our neighbors? 2. Are these carpets better than those that the cooper has bought? 3. He who does not speak the truth is not a good man. 4. Those who love the truth are much more happy than those who do not love it. 5. Is this the same ruby that the cutler had yesterday? 6. No, the one that he had is larger than this one, but I have the same emerald that he had. 7. Those who lie are foolish and miserable. 8. True friends are those who tell us the truth, and do not flatter us. 9. The almonds that you have bought are better than those that he has. 10. The shoes that the boy made are too small, and those that the man made are too large. 11. He who is proud and vain is foolish. 12. Those who do not make themselves useful are not contented, and those who are discontented are not happy 13. It is not always those who have much money that are contented. 14. Those who are wise read only such books as are instructive and useful.

LESSON XLII. Lection XLII.

USE OF THE ARTICLE.

1. The definite article is used:

a. Before nouns, whether singular or plural, when taken in a general and unlimited sense:

Der Diamant iſt ein Edelſtein.	The diamond is a precious stone.
Das Gold iſt ein edeles Metall'.	(The) gold is a precious metal.
Die Kunſt iſt eine Tochter der Freiheit.—S.	(The) art is a daughter of (the) freedom.
Der Haß iſt partei'iſch, aber die Liebe iſt es noch mehr.—G.	Hatred is partial, but love is still more so.
Das Buch des Schickſals iſt vor uns verſchloſſen.—W.	The book of fate is closed before (from) us.

b. Before nouns denoting an individual:

Der Heiland iſt das wahre Licht.	The Saviour is the true light.
Der Himmel hat es gewollt'.	Heaven has (so) willed it.
Die Erde iſt kleiner als die Sonne.	The earth is smaller than the sun

Digitized by Google

c. Before the names of lakes, mountains, rivers and the masculine and feminine names of countries:

Der Vesuv' iſt ein Vulkan'.	Vesuvius is a volcano.
Die Türkei' iſt mächtiger als man glaubte.	Turkey is more powerful than was supposed.

d. Before the names of days, months and seasons:

Der Samſtag iſt uns angenehmer als der Montag.	Saturday is more agreeable to us than Monday.
Der Februar' iſt der kürzeſte Monat.	February is the shortest month.

e. Before the names of ranks, bodies and systems of doctrine:

Das Parlament' verur'theilte Karl den Zweiten zum Tode.	Parliament sentenced Charles the Second to death.
Das Chriſtenthum iſt der Welt ein großer Segen.	Christianity is a great blessing to the world.

f. Before the superlative of adjectives, before infinitives used substantively, as also before the words Hof, Kirche, Markt, Mühle, Schule and Stadt:

Die meiſten Eltern ſchicken ihre Kinder in die Schule und in die Kirche.	Most parents send their children to school and to church.
Er geht oft in die Stadt, aber er wohnt nicht gern in der Stadt.	He often goes to town, but he does not like to live in town.

g. Before the proper names of intimate friends, or servants, and when the name of an author is put for his works:

Wann geht der Johann auf den Markt?	When does John go to market?
Wir leſen den Klopſtock.	We are reading Klopstock.

h. Before proper names preceded by adjectives or titles, as also before those which do not by their ending indicate their case:

Die ſchöne Helena war die Urſache der Zerſtö'rung Trojas.	The beautiful Helen was the cause of the destruction of Troy.
Der arme Wilhelm war untrö'ſtlich über den Verluſt'.	Poor William was inconsolable at his loss.
Vier Jahrhun'derte lang finden wir Bata'vier in den römiſchen Heeren, aber nach den Zeiten des Honorius verſchwin'det auch ihr Name aus der Geſchich'te —S.	During the period of four centuries we find Batavians in the Roman armies, but subsequent to the time of Honorius, their very name disappears from history.

Digitized by Google

i. Before nouns specifying time or quantity, where in English the indefinite article is used:

Ich ſehe ihn zweimal des Jahres.	I see him twice a the) year.
Es koſtet einen Thaler das Pfund.	It costs a thaler a pound.

j. In many expressions that mark a change in the condition of a person or thing, and in English require the nominative or accusative after a verb, the dative with zum *or* zur (p. 62. 4.) is used:

Die entſchie'denſte Mehrheit erklä'rte ihn zum Kaiſer.—S.	The most decided majority declared him emperor.
Es iſt zum Sprichwort geworden.	It has become a proverb.

k. The definite article (unless its use would render the sentence ambiguous) is often substituted for a possessive pronoun.

Er verſetz'te mir einen Schlag auf den Arm.	He gave me a blow on the (*or* my) arm.
Er hat den Hut noch auf dem Kopf.	He still has his hat on his head.

2. When used with beide, halb, ſo, ſolcher, wie and zu, the article precedes them:

Die beiden Diener blieben einen halben Tag.	Both the (the two) servants remained half a (a half) day.
Einen ſolchen Mann kenne ich auch.	I also know such a man.
Ein wie alter Mann iſt er?	How old a man is he?
Das iſt ein zu kleines Zimmer.	This is too small a room.
Eine ſo große Feder kann ich nicht gebrauchen.	I can not use so large a pen.

3. The indefinite article is used in a few phrases where i is omitted in English:

Ein jeglicher für ſich.	Every one for himself.
Laß einem Jeden das Seine.	Allow to every one his own.
Von dir erwar'tet man ein beſſeres Betra'gen.	From you (a) better conduct (behavior) is expected.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Die Freiheit iſt des Menſchen höchſtes Gut.—A.	Freedom is man's noblest possession.
Geheim'niſſe in der Ehe ſind gefähr'lich und nichtig, ihre Scheide deckt immer einen Dolch den die Zeit endlich zieht.—R.	Secrets in wedlock are dangerous and vain, their sheath always covers a dagger which time finally draws.

Digitized by Google

Die Cohor'ten des Civi'lis schwören am Rhein dem Vespa'sian in Syrien.—S.

The cohorts of Civilis swear allegiance on the Rhine to Vespasian in Syria.

Der Aberglaub' ist das Schädlichste, was bei den Menschen einkehren kann. —G.

Superstition is the most injurious (thing) that can visit men.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

ie Armuth, –, the poverty;
Beste'gen, to conquer;
Denken, to think, p. 346;
Die Ewigkeit, –, the eternity;
Die Faulheit, –, the idleness;
Der Franz, –enS, pl. –e, (the) Francis;
Frei, free;
Der Frühling, –S, pl. –e, the spring;
Fünfte, fifth;
Der Gehül'fe, –n, pl. –n, assistant;
Der Himmel, –S, pl. –, the heaven;
Der Karl, –S, pl. –e, (the) Charles;
Kosten, to cost;
Die Leidenschaft, –, pl. –en, passion;
Der Lohn, –eS, pl. Löhne, reward·
Mächtig, mighty, powerful;
Der Mai, –eS, the May;
Der März, –eS, the March;
Der Markt, –eS, pl. Märkte, market;
Die Musik, –, the music;
Das Pavia, –S, (the) Pavia;
Das Pfund, –eS, pl. –e, the pound;
Schmücken, to adorn;
Die Schule, –, pl. –n, the school;
Der September, –S, the September;
Die Stunde, –, pl. –n, the hour;
Die Türkei, –, (the) Turkey;
Die Unschuld, –, the innocence

Exercise 80. Aufgabe 80.

1. Die Musik ist die Sprache der Leidenschaften.—W. 2. Die Unschuld hat im Himmel einen Freund.—S. 3. Die Hoffnung ist der treueste Tröster des Menschen. 4. Die Armuth ist oft der verdiente Lohn der Faulheit. 5. Der Freie liebt gewöhnlich den Frieden—aber fürchtet nicht den Krieg. 6. Der Bote wartet schon über eine halbe Stunde. 7. Es sind jetzt viele Engländer und Franzosen in der Türkei. 8. Der Mai ist ein angenehmerer Monat als der März. 9. Die Kinder sind in der Schule, der Vater und die Mutter in der Kirche und der Knecht auf dem Markte (L. 42. 1. *f.*). 10. Ein solcher Mann ist ein zu schwacher Gehülfe. 11. Wie viel kostet dieser Thee das Pfund? 12. Warum hat er den Hut in der Hand und nicht auf dem Kopfe? 13. Der Kaiser Karl der Fünfte besiegte den König Franz den Ersten bei Pavia. 14. Die meisten Menschen arbeiten und lesen genug, aber sie denken viel zu wenig. 15. Weißt du wo der Karl ist? 16. Man machte den tapfern Feldwebel zum Hauptmann. 17. Zwölfmal hat jetzt schon der Frühling dein Grab mit Blumen geschmückt!

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 81. Aufgabe 81.

1. The English and French, who are now in Turkey, are the enemies of the Russians. 2. In what country is the city where the Emperor Charles the Fifth conquered King Francis the First? 3. Who calls music the language of the passions? 4. What sergeant was made a captain? 5. How much does this sugar cost a pound? 6. Did the messenger wait more than half an hour? 7. Why have they sent us so weak an assistant? 8. Hope is often man's only comforter. 9. The friend of innocence is more powerful than all its enemies. 10. Most men think and write too little. 11. Poverty is not always the result of idleness. 12. Why is the rose called the queen of flowers? 13. March is a cold, unpleasant month; is May a more agreeable month than September? 14. The free love peace, but they love liberty still more. 15. Life is short, death is certain, eternity is long, Heaven is just. 16. Why has the boy his hat in his hand?

LESSON XLIII. Lection XLIII.

OMISSION OF THE ARTICLE.

1. The article is omitted:

a. Before the names of the cardinal *points*, when direction toward, or from them is indicated:

Das eine Schiff segelte nach Osten, das andere nach Süden.	(The) one ship sailed toward the east, the other toward the south.

b. Before nouns used in a general sense, as the predicate of sein *or* werden, and before those standing in apposition after als, with a previously or subsequently expressed word:

Der Schmetterling ist Sinnbild der Unsterblichkeit.—U.	The butterfly is (the *or* an) emblem of immortality.
Einer meiner Brüder ist Kaufmann, der andere Arzt.	One of my brothers is a merchant, the other a physician.
Als Freund kann ich es nicht rathen.	As a friend I can not advise it.
Das ist nicht Mode, nicht Sitte bei uns.	That is not the fashion, not the custom with us (in our country).

Digitized by Google

c. In legal reports and instruments, as also in many phrases before erſterer, letzterer, folgender:

Ueberbring'er dieſes iſt ein Freund von mir (L. XXVIII. 3).	The bearer of this is a friend of mine.
Beklag'ter behaup'tet daß, ꝛc.	The accused maintains that, etc.
Unterzeich'neter verpflich'tet ſich daß, ꝛc.	The undersigned pledges himself that, etc.

d. Before nouns preceded by zu, indicating the purpose or manner of an action:

Er reiſt zu Pferde.	He travels *on* horseback.
Reiſen Sie zu Land oder zu Waſſer?	Do you travel by land or by water?
Er ſaß noch zu Tiſch.	He was still sitting at table.
Die Kinder gehen zu Bett.	The children are going to bed.

e. When two or more nouns joined by und denote a single idea:

Wir ſind mit Herz und Seele die ſeinigen. We are his with heart and soul.

2. The omission of the article, as in English, often gives the noun an adverbial signification; thus, er geht nach Hauſe, signifies, he is going *home;* while, er geht nach dem Hauſe, signifies, he is going to *the* (specified) house. This difference is illustrated by the phrases; to bed, to *the* bed; at table, at *the* table; etc.:

Um welche Zeit finden wir Sie zu Hauſe? (L. XXXVIII. 1. *c.*)	At what time shall we find you *at home?*
Wann gehen Sie nach Hauſe?	When do you go *home?*

3. When the dative of a noun, used in a general sense, is preceded by a preposition, the article is often omitted; frequently, however, when the preposition and the article can be contracted into one word, the article is retained:

Er iſt ein Mann von Ehre.	He is a man of honor.
Schicke ſie zur Ruhe.	Send her to rest.
Er war außer ſich vor Schmerz.	He was beside himself with pain.
Er ſagte es im Zorne.	He said it in anger.

4. Before the substantively used infinitive (L. XLIX. 4.), under the government of a preposition, the article is often omitted, as also before the cardinals, hundert, tauſend, etc.:

Mancher Menſch ſcheint nur an Eſſen und Trinken zu denken.	Many a man seems to think only of eating and drinking.

Digitized by Google

Sie beſchäf'tigen ſich mit Schreiben.	They busy themselves with writing.
Hundert Stimmen riefen ihm nach.	A hundred voices called after him.

5. The omission of the article was formerly more common than at present, and many phrases in which it occurs are still used:

Er richtete die Augen gen Himmel.	He directed his eyes toward heaven.
Dieſer entſchloſſene Ton machte Eindruck.—S.	This determined tone made (an) impression.

6. With zu, before the dative without the article are formed many idiomatic phrases; as, zu Grunde richten (*lit.*, to direct or turn to the ground or bottom) to ruin; zu Grunde gehen, to perish; etc.:

Der ruſſiſche Feldzug richtete die "Grande Armée" (wie man ſie zu nennen pflegte) zu Grunde.	The Russian campaign ruined the "Grand Army" (as it used to be called).
Bei dem ruſſiſchen Feldzuge ging die "Grande Armée" zu Grunde.	In the Russian campaign the Grand Army was destroyed.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Wir ſegelten nach Norden und ſie nach Weſten.	We sailed to the north, and they to the west.
In Deutſchland iſt es Sitte den Hut abzunehmen, wenn man Freunden begegnet.	In Germany it is the custom to take off one's hat when one meets friends.
Mein Bruder iſt zu Hauſe, und ich gehe nach Hauſe.	My brother is at home, and I am going home.
Kunſt iſt die rechte Hand der Natur'. Dieſe hat nur Geſchöpfe, jene den Menſchen gemacht'.—S.	Art is the right hand of Nature. The latter has made only creatures, the former (has made) man.
Tauſend warnende Beiſpiele ſollten uns klug gemacht' haben.	A thousand warning examples ought to have made us prudent.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Aehnlich, similar;
Die Aſche, –, ashes (L. XXVI. 10);
Blutig, bloody;
Die Chriſtenheit, –, Christendom;
Folgen, to follow;
Ganz, whole;
Der Geſang, –es, pl. Geſänge, song;
Die Geſund'heit, –, pl. –en, health;
Der Grund, –es, pl. Gründe, ground;
Der Norden, –s, the North;
Das Pilſen, –s, (the) Pilsen;
Die Reiſe, –, pl. –n, the journey, Richten, see 6;
Die Schlacht, –, pl. –en, the battle;
Der Süden, –s, the South;
Der Tanz, –es, pl. Tänze, the dance;
Trauern, to mourn;
Verlaſ'ſen, to leave, p. 350;
Wild, wild;
Ziehen, to migrate, go, p. 358

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 82. Aufgabe 82.

1. In welcher Jahreszeit ziehen die wilden Gänse nach Norden? 2. Wann ziehen sie nach Süden? 3. Um welche Zeit sind Sie morgen zu Hause? 4. Ich bin morgen den ganzen Tag zu Hause. 5. Warum geht der Knabe nicht nach Hause? 6. Er geht nicht nach Hause, weil er schon zu Hause ist. 7. Reisen zu Fuß sind oft angenehmer als Reisen zu Pferde oder zu Wagen. 8. Wir ziehen frech durch Feindes und Freundes Lande.—S. 9. Die Christenheit trauert in Sack und Asche.—S. 10. Ein Sprichwort sagt, "Uebung macht den Meister." 11. Auf blutige Schlachten folgt Gesang und Tanz (L. 36. 5.). 12. Wir verlassen Pilsen noch vor Abend.—S. 13. Der Maler hat bei diesen und ähnlichen Arbeiten seine Gesundheit zu Grunde gerichtet.

EXERCISE 83. Aufgabe 83.

1. Is your friend still at home? 2. No, but he will soon be at home. 3. At what time do the scholars go home? 4. They are already going home. 5. In what season of the year do the swallows migrate to the north? 6. These and similar labors have destroyed the health of this man. 7. Shall you leave the city before evening? 8. How do you say in German, "Practice makes perfect?" 9. We shall soon have cold weather, the wild geese are flying to the south. 10. The boys waited a whole day. 11. Did you make the journey on foot, or by water? 12. Have you not time to write your friends a letter? 13. At what time shall you be at home? 14. I am now at home, and my brother is coming home. 15. This is one of the hardest exercises we have had.

LESSON XLIV. Lection XLIV.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. **Der, die, das**, often supply, as demonstrative pronouns, the place of **dieser** and **jener**, and when used with nouns,

Digitized by Google

are distinguished from the article of like form, by a greater emphasis:

Ich lobe den Mann, nicht diesen.	I praise *that* man, not this one.
Ich lobe den Mann, nicht jenen.	I praise *this* man, not that one.
Das Buch habe ich schon gele'sen.	*This* book I have already read.
Wer ist der?*	Who is *that* (or *this*)?

2. When the demonstrative der is used with a noun, it has the declension of the *definite* article; used substantively, it follows the inflection of the *relative* der (L. 39. 2.):

Den Männern habe ich das Geld schon geschickt'.	To *those* men I have already sent the money.
Denen habe ich es schon geschickt'.	To those I have already sent it.
Jedermann wird euch loben, daß ihr denen (i. e. the rulers) von Nürnberg Fehd' angekündigt habt.—G.	Every body will praise you that you have declared war (feud) against those of Nuremberg.

3. The demonstrative der may often be best rendered by a personal pronoun; its genitive, like that of the *relative* der, always precedes the governing noun:

"Läßt euch der (that one) verfol'gen?"	Does *he* cause you to be pursued?
"Der schadet nicht mehr, ich hab' ihn erschla'gen."	He will do (L. 38. 1. *c.*) no more harm, I have slain him.
Er liebt seinen Bruder, aber nicht dessen Kinder.	He loves his brother, but not his (that's) children.
"Wessen Brod du issest, dessen Lied du singest."	Whose bread thou eatest, his song thou singest.

4. Der is used before the genitive, as the substitute of a noun previously expressed, in which position it is rendered *that* before the objective with *of;* or, frequently, the English possessive is used and its governing noun is not expressed:

Ich habe meinen Ball und den des Knaben.	I have my ball and *that* of the boy.
Er hat seine Feder und die seiner Schwester.	He has his pen and *that* of his sister.†

* When thus used, der is often made still more significant by a sign or gesture: Das (that at which I point) ist mein Buch, und das (that other one) ist seines, that is my book, and that (*yonder*) is his. Der ist es (L. 28. 8.), riefen Hundert Stimmen, der rettete die Königin, *he* is the one, cried (a) hundred voices, *he* rescued the queen.

† Or, I have my ball and the boy's (ball); *or*, he has his pen and his sister's (pen).

Digitized by Google

Sie haben Ihre Bücher und die Ihrer Brüder.	You have your books and *those* of your brothers.
Haben Sie die Federn Ihrer Brüder, oder die der meinigen?	Have you the pens of your brothers, or *those* of mine?

5. The genitives deſſen, deren are often used (like the French *en*), as a substitute for a noun previously expressed, and are sometimes rendered by *some*, *any*, and sometimes do not require translation (L. 39. 4.):

Er hat kein Geld mehr, aber ich habe deſſen noch.	He has no longer any money, but I still have *some* (of it).
Ich habe keine Bücher, du haſt deren zu viel.	I have no books; you have (of them) too many.

6. The old form of the genitive deß (for deſſen, as also weß, for weſſen) is still retained in several compounds, in the more elevated styles of composition, and in some proverbial phrases:

Er iſt deßwegen mein Feind.	He is therefore my enemy.
"Deß rühme der blut'ge Tyrann' ſich nicht."	Let not the bloody tyrant boast (himself) *of this*.
"Weß das Herz voll iſt, deß läuft der Mund über."	*Of what* the heart is full, *of that* the mouth runs over.

7. The neuter forms of the demonstrative pronouns (dieſes being often contracted into dies), as also welches in conjunction with the verb ſein (like the French *ce*), may refer to nouns of all genders, and in both numbers:

Dies ſind unſere Freunde.	These (this) are our friends.
Wer iſt das?	Who is that?
Welches ſind die längſten Nächte?	Which are the longest nights?
Sind das nicht Ungarn?	Are not those Hungarians?
Nein, es ſind Böhmen. (L. 28. 7.)	No, they are Bohemians.

8. With the demonstrative and determinative pronouns the adverb eben is often used:

Er iſt eben derſelbe.	He is the *very* same.
Eben dieſes Haus.	This *very* (this same) house.
Eben der und kein Anderer hat mich zu euch geſchickt'.	*Just* he (he himself) and nobody else has sent me to you.

Digitized by Google

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Das ſind die Folgen unglückſel'ger Thaten.—S.	Those are the results of unfortunate deeds.
Der Eine hat die, der Andere andere Gaben.—G.	The one has these, the other (has) other gifts.
"Dieſes Buch iſt mir lieb, wer es ſtiehlt, der iſt ein Dieb."	This book is dear to me, who steals it (he) is a thief.
Wer ſolch' ein Herz an ſeinen Buſen drückt, der kann für Herd und Hof mit Freuden fechten.—S.	Who presses to his bosom such a heart, can joyfully (with joy) fight for hearth and home

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Aermel, –s, pl. –, the sleeve;
Die Arbeit, –, pl. –en, the work;
Der Europäer, –s, pl. –, European;
Das Frankfurt, –s, (the) Frankfort;
Das Gemälde, –es, pl. –, painting;
Die Jacke, –, pl. –n, the jacket;
Der Kutſcher, –s, pl. –, coachman;
Der Officie'r, –s, pl. –e, the officer;
Pari'ſer, see L. 33. 5;
Der Richter, –s, pl. –, the judge;
Sammeln, to collect;
Segeln, to sail;
Das Siegel, –s, pl. –, the seal;
Das Siegellack, –es, pl. –e, the sealing-wax;
Spaniſch, Spanish;
Der Stall, –es, pl. Ställe, the stall, stable;
Der Stempel, –s, pl. –, the stamp, post-mark;
Die Tante, –, pl. –n, the aunt;
Das Unkraut, –es, pl. –kräuter, weed;
Die Wieſe, –, pl. –n, the meadow;
Die Zeitung, –, pl. –en, news paper.

Exercise 84.	Aufgabe 84.

1. Der iſt mein Feind, aber dieſer iſt mein Freund. 2. Der Tiſch des Lehrers iſt größer als der des Schülers. 3. Schreiben Sie mit meinem Bleiſtifte, oder mit dem meines Bruders? 4. Ich habe den Ihren und auch den Ihres Bruders. 5. Ich ſchreibe mit meiner Feder, und er ſchreibt mit der ſeines Freundes. 6. Wohnen Sie in den Häuſern der Bauern, oder in denen der Kaufleute? 7. Haben Sie die Zeitung Ihrer Tante, oder die der meinigen? 8. Weſſen Pferd iſt das in Ihrem Stalle, das Ihrige, oder das des Kutſchers? 9. Es iſt weder das meinige noch das ſeinige, ſondern das des Gärtners. 10. Dies ſind die Stiefel des Officiers, und das ſind die ſeines Dieners. 11. Haſt du deine Oblaten, oder die deines Bruders? 12. Ich habe mein Siegellack und das des Kaufmanns, (L. 9. 3.) mein Siegel und das des Gärtners. 13. Der Brief hat den Stempel von Frankfurt; und der hat den Pariſer Stempel. 14. Hat der Klempner ſein Faß, oder das des Arbeiters? 15. Meine

Digitized by Google

Arbeit iſt ſchwer, die meines Mitſchülers iſt leicht. 16. Das, was man uns heute von dem Kriege erzählt hat, iſt nicht wahr. 17. Man findet mehr Unkräuter auf den Wieſen und Feldern der Amerikaner, als auf denen der Deutſchen. 18. Man ſagt daß die Schiffe der Amerikaner ſchneller ſegeln, als die der Engländer. 19. Das ſind Ihre Knöpfe, und dies ſind die des Schneiders 20. Die Aermel dieſer Jacke ſind zu lang, die der anderen ſind zu kurz. 21. Das ſind meine Richter. 22. Er ſammelt Gemälde und hat deren ſchon viele gekauft.

EXERCISE 85. Aufgabe 85.

1. Have you the teacher's seal, or the physician's? 2. Have you the seal of the teacher, or that of the physician? 3. Does one find more weeds (are more weeds found) in the fields and meadows of the Americans than in those of the Germans? 4. Are those your wafers, or the officer's (those of the officer)? 5. Those are my brother's, and these are the officer's. 6. The servant has the coachman's boots, and the coachman has the servant's. 7. My mother has my vail, and I have my aunt's. 8. The tinman has the laborer's barrel, and the laborer has that of his friend, the cooper. 9. Your work is easier than that of your teacher. 10. The scholar's work is always easier than the teacher's. 11. I have been told that you speak Spanish. 12. Are the sleeves of this jacket longer than those of the other? 13. Whose horses are those in your stable, the officer's or the coachman's? 14. They are neither the officer's nor the coachman's, but the merchant's 15. I have your ball and that of your brother, your pen and that of my sister, my sealing-wax and that of the scholar, your books and those of your cousin. 16. Are you writing with our pencils, or with those of our scholars? 17. Is your vail larger than your mother's? 18. It is larger than my mother's, but much smaller than my aunt's or my cousin's. 19. What kind of books are these? 20. Those are Spanish books. 21. Has your news paper the post-mark of Frankfort or of Paris?

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLV. Lection XLV.

THE AUXILIARIES OF MODE

1. Are dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, ſollen, wollen, laſſen,* and with which the main verb is used without the particle zu (except with können, as given below; see 6).

2. CONJUGATION OF THE MODE AUXILIARIES.

Present Tense.

ich	darf,	kann,	mag,	muß,	ſoll,	will,	laſſe,
du	darfſt,	kannſt,	magſt,	mußt,	ſollſt,	willſt	läſſeſt,
er	darf,	kann,	mag,	muß,	ſoll,	will,	läßt.

Imperfect Tense.

ich	durfte,	konnte,	mochte,	mußte,	ſollte,	wollte,	ließ,
du	durfteſt,	konnteſt,	mochteſt,	mußteſt,	ſollteſt,	wollteſt,	ließeſt,
er	durfte,	konnte,	mochte,	mußte,	ſollte,	wollte,	ließ.
	(§ 83. 2.)	(§ 83. 3.)	(§ 83. 4.)	(§ 83. 5.)	(§ 83. 6.)	(§ 83. 8.)	

3. All the persons of the *plural* are formed as in *regular* verbs.

4. Dürfen indicates:

a. A possibility dependent on the will of another:

Der Bauer darf nicht fiſchen.	The peasant *can* not (legally) fish.
Wer des Herrn Joch nicht trägt, darf ſich mit ſeinem Kreuz nicht ſchmücken. —S.	He who wears not the Lord's yoke *must* not adorn himself with his cross.

b. Dürfen, in the subjunctive mode, often indicates a logical possibility:

Es dürfte jetzt zu ſpät ſein.	It *might* (may) now be too late.
Die Nachwelt dürfte Bedenken tragen dies Urtheil zu unterſchreiben.	Posterity *might* hesitate to subscribe to (approve) this verdict.

c. Dürfen (infinitive; see also können, L. 58. 1.) preceded by zu often requires no translation in English:

Er bat um Erlaubniß ſie beſuchen zu dürfen.	He asked (for) permission to (be at liberty to) visit them.

* For complete conjugations of these verbs, see § 83. 2, etc., (except of laſſen, which is not there because it is not of the *mixed* conjugation § 81). See list of irregular verbs, § 78.

Digitized by Google

5. Können indicates:

a. A possibility dependent on the capabilities of the subject

Der Vogel kann fliegen.	The bird *can* fly.
Sie können es leicht thun.	You *can* easily do it.

b A logical possibility:

Man kann es schon gethan haben.	It *may* have been done already.
Ich gehe nicht, es könnte regnen.	I am not going, it *might* rain.
Er kann Unrecht haben.	He *may* be wrong.

OBS.—Können is often used transitively in the sense of to understand, *to know by heart*:

Er kann viele hübsche Lieder.	He *knows* many pretty songs.
Sie kann englisch.	She *understands* English.
Er kann von Allem Etwas.	He *knows* a little of every thing.

Umhin WITH Können.

6. Umhin (literally *around thither*) is used only with können; and here, as an exception, the particle zu is employed with the infinitive which follows:

Ich konnte nicht umhin es ihm zu sagen.	I could not *avoid* ("*get round*") telling it to him.
Ich kann nicht umhin zu lachen.	I can not help laughing.

Können with dafür has likewise an idiomatic use:

Was kannst du denn dafür?	How can you help it? (*lit.*, what canst thou therefor?)

7. Mögen indicates:

a. A possibility dependent on the will of the speaker or the subject, and is frequently used transitively:

Du magst den Brief lesen.	You *may* read the letter.
Ich mag nicht hier bleiben.	I do not *wish* to remain here.
Ich mag den Wein nicht.	I do not *like* (wish for) the wine.
Sie mögen uns nicht sehen.	They do not *wish* to see us.

b. Mögen indicates a logical possibility as a concession on the part of the speaker:

Er mag ein treuer Freund sein.	He *may* be a true friend.
Sie mögen es gethan haben.	They *may* have done it.

8. Müssen is the equivalent of *must*:

Wir müssen Alle sterben.	We *must* all die.
Er mußte es thun	He *was obliged* to do it.

Digitized by Google

9. Sollen indicates:

a. A necessity dependent on the will of another, or on moral obligation:

Dieſe Furcht ſoll endigen; ihr Haupt ſoll fallen; ich will Friede haben.	This fear *shall* end; her head *shall* fall; I will have peace.
Ich ſoll in die Stadt gehen.	I *am* to go to the city.
Kinder ſollen lernen.	Children *should* (shall) learn.

b. Sollen indicates a logical necessity resting on report, and answers mainly to *it is said*, *reported*, *they say*, or to phrases of similar import:

Sie ſollen ſehr reich ſein.	They *are said* to be very rich.
Herzog Johann ſoll irren im Gebir'ge. —S.	Duke John *is reported* to be wandering in the mountains.

c. Sollen, with another verb expressed or understood, often answers in relative sentences to our infinitive preceded by *to:*

Er weiß nicht was er thun ſoll.	He does not know what *to do*.
Zeige mir wie ich es machen ſoll.	Show me how *to do* it.
Was ſoll ich hier?	What *am* I *to do* here?

10. Wollen indicates:

a. A necessity dependent on the will of the subject:

Es ſoll ſo ſein, ich will es ſo haben.	It shall be so, I *will* have it so.
Sie wollen nicht gehen.	They *will* not (do not wish to) go.
Ich wollte es ihm erklären, aber er wollte mich nicht hören.	I *was going* to explain it to him, but he *would* not hear me.

b. A logical necessity dependent on the assertion of the subject:

Er will es ſelbſt geſe'hen haben.	He *pretends* to have seen it himself.
Sie ſollen in der Stadt ſein; die Leute wollen ſie geſe'hen haben.	They are said to be in the city; the people *will have it* that they have seen them.

11. Laſſen signifies *to let*, *leave*, *permit*, *command;* also, *to get*, or *order* any thing done:

Laßt das Feuer ausgehen.	*Let* the fire go out.
Er hat das Buch fallen laſſen.	He has *dropped* (let fall) the book.
Er läßt das Fenſter offen.	He *leaves* the window open.
Warum' laſſen Sie ihn gehen?	Why do you *permit* him to go?

Digitized by Google

Ich laſſe mir einen Rock machen.	I *am getting* a coat made (for me).
Ich habe ihm (*or* für ihn) einen Rock machen laſſen. (L. 49. 5.)	I have *ordered* a coat (to be made) for him.
Er ließ das Regiment' anrücken.	He *commanded* the regiment to advance.

12. These verbs all have a complete conjugation. Hence where their English equivalents are found, in this respect, defective, other words of like meaning must be supplied:

Ich muß heute gehen.	I *must* go to-day.
Er wünſchte ihn gehen zu laſſen.	He *wished* to let him go.
Ich mußte geſtern gehen.	I was *obliged* to go yesterday.
Ich habe nicht gewollt', aber ich habe gemußt'.	I have not *wished* to, but I have been *obliged* to.
Er wird gehen können.	He will *be able* to go.
Sie werden ſpielen wollen.	They will *wish* to play.
Es iſt beſſer arbeiten zu wollen, als arbeiten zu müſſen.	It is better to *be willing* to work, than to *be obliged* to work.

13. The perfect and pluperfect of the above auxiliaries (namely, dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, ſollen, wollen and laſſen, § 74), as also of heißen (in the sense of *to command*), helfen, hören and ſehen, when used with other verbs, take the infinitive form, instead of the participle:

Ich habe ihn kommen heißen.	I have *commanded* him to come.
Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen.	I have *helped* him work.
Ich habe ihn ſprechen hören.	I have *heard* him speak.
Ich habe ihn gehen ſehen.	I have *seen* him go.
Ich habe nicht gehen können.	I have not been able to go.
Sie hat es nicht thun mögen.	She has not wished to do it.

14. When the infinitive form of the participle, as above, is employed, it is always placed at the *end* of the sentence; hence, the inversion usual in relative sentences does not take place:

Der Mann, welcher hat gehen müſſen (*not* gehen müſſen hat).	The man who has been obliged to go.
Ich weiß es daß er wird kommen können.	I know that he will be able to come.

15. After these auxiliaries the main verb (where the meaning is sufficiently obvious) is often omitted:

Ich kann nicht mehr.	I *can* (do) no more.
Sie müſſen gleich fort.	You *must* (go) away immediately.
Ein Jüngling wollte zur Stadt hinauf.	A youth *wished to go* (*or* get) up to the city

Digitized by Google

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Das Gericht' läßt den Verbrech'er enthaupten.	The court *causes* the criminal to be beheaded.
Er läßt ſeinen Freund im Stiche.	He *leaves* his friend in the lurch.
Er hoffte ſeinen Sohn aus der Gefa'hr reißen zu können.	He hoped to *be able* to wrest his son from the danger.
Es dürfte vielleicht wahr ſein.	It *might* perchance be true.
Er darf nicht in das Haus.	He *ventures* not into the house.
Was kann ich dafür?	How can I *help* it?
Ich mag es nicht thun.	I do not *like* to do it.
Was will er daß ich thun ſoll?	What *would* he have me do?
Ich wollte gern dahin gehen.	I *would* fain go thither.
Er will dich geſe'hen haben.	He *insists* that he has seen you.
Ich möchte frühſtücken, Herr Wirth.	I *would like* to breakfast, landlord.
Ich möchte es bezwei'feln (§ 83. 11).	I *might* (*am inclined to*) doubt it.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Beiſpiel, –es, pl. –e, example;
Bleiben, to remain, continue;
Bringen, to bring (p. 346.);
Daß (*conj.*), that;
Deßhalb, therefore;
Dürfen, see 4;
Eſſen, to eat (p. 348.);
Die Freude, –, pl. –n, joy, pleasure;
Die Geduld, –, the patience;
Genie'ßen, to enjoy (p. 350.);
Das Gewürz, –es, pl. –e, the spice;
Die Kanne, –, pl. –n, the can;
Können, see 5;
Lernen, to learn;
Mäßig, moderate, temperate;
Mögen, see 7;
Müſſen, see 8;
Obgleich', although;
Die Regel, –, pl. –n, the rule;
Schwierig, difficult;
Schlafen, to sleep (p. 354.);
Sollen, see 9;
Die Speiſe, –, pl. –n, the food;
Täglich, daily;
Tanzen, to dance;
Umhin, see 6;
Wenn, if, when;
Wollen, see 10.

Exercise 86. Aufgabe 86.

1. Er mag gehen. 2. Diejenigen, welche nichts wiſſen, ſollen etwas lernen. 3. Wer krank iſt, darf nicht arbeiten. 4. Wer geſund bleiben will, muß mäßig eſſen und trinken. 5. Wer gut ſchlafen will, muß fleißig arbeiten. 6. Wer nicht fleißig und aufmerkſam ſein will, kann nicht ſchnell lernen. 7. Wer einen Brief ſchreiben will, muß Papier, Tinte und Feder haben. 8. Die Freuden der Erde ſoll man wie Gewürze genießen und nicht wie tägliche Speiſen. 9. Können Sie mir ſagen wo der Arzt wohnt? 10. Ich will mit Ihnen zu ihm gehen. 11. Werden Sie morgen mit mir nach der Stadt gehen können? 12. Ich werde gehen können, aber ich werde nicht gehen wollen, denn ich werde übermorgen gehen müſſen. 13. Die deutſche

Digitized by Google

Sprache ſoll ſehr ſchwierig ſein, deßhalb muß der Schüler die Regeln und die Beiſpiele aufmerkſam leſen. 14. Wer dieſe Sprache lernen will, darf nicht faul oder nachläſſig ſein. 15. Mein Vater hat mich nie tanzen laſſen, er hat nie tanzen wollen, und ſeine Kinder haben nie tanzen dürfen. 16. Wir werden bald ſprechen können, wenn wir nur fleißig ſein wollen. 17. Was wollte der Kaufmann Ihnen verkaufen? 18. Ich konnte nichts bei ihm finden, was ich kaufen wollte. 19. Ein guter Lehrer muß Geduld haben. 20. Die Kinder wollen Aepfel und Kirſchen, aber ſie können keine kaufen, denn ſie haben kein Geld. 21. Kannſt du mir jene große Kanne bringen? 22. Wir können nicht umhin zu lachen, obgleich wir wiſſen, daß es unrecht iſt. 23. Ich kann nichts dafür, daß ich arm bin. 24. Können Sie deutſch, franzöſiſch und ſpaniſch?

EXERCISE 87. Aufgabe 87.

1. I wished to go with my friend, but I could not, for I was obliged to remain at home. 2. He who wishes to be rich or learned must be industrious. 3. Those who will not read can not learn. 4. I wished to buy good horses but could find none. 5. When shall you be able to write a letter to your friends? 6. I shall be able to write one to-day, but I shall not wish to write one. 7. Will your friends be obliged to stay in the house this evening? 8. They will not wish to go out of the house. 9. We have been able to go, but we have not wished to go. 10. Have you been obliged to remain here? 11. We have been at liberty to go, but we have wished to remain. 12. I can not read, for I am unwell. 13. You must be industrious if you wish to be healthy and happy. 14. These men are said to be very rich. 15. What shall I do with this money? 16. You may give it to your poor friends. 17. May I read your new books? 18. You may read them if you can. 19. You may go to your friend if you wish. 20. I do not wish to go to-day, but I shall wish to go to-morrow. 21. Those boys say they can not help laughing. 22. I shall probably be in the city to-morrow, what shall I buy for you? 23. I can not buy any thing, for I have no money. 24. It is said these children understand German and French.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLVI. Lection XLVI.

1. CONJUGATION OF Sein.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	*Perfect.*
ſein, to be.	geweſen ſein, to have been.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	*Perfect.*
ſeiend, being.	geweſen, been.

INDICATIVE.

Singular.	*Plural.*
PRESENT TENSE.	
ich bin, I am;	wir ſind, we are;
du biſt, thou art;	ihr ſeid, you are;
er iſt, he is;	ſie ſind, they are.
IMPERFECT TENSE.	
ich war, I was;	wir waren, we were;
du warſt, thou wast;	ihr waret, you were;
er war, he was;	ſie waren, they were.
PERFECT TENSE.	
ich bin geweſen, I have been;	wir ſind geweſen, we have been
du biſt geweſen, thou hast been;	ihr ſeid geweſen, you have been;
er iſt geweſen, he has been;	ſie ſind geweſen, they have been.
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
ich war geweſen, I had been;	wir waren geweſen, we had been;
du warſt geweſen, thou hadst been;	ihr waret geweſen, you had been;
er war geweſen, he had been;	ſie waren geweſen, they had been.
FIRST FUTURE TENSE.	
ich werde ſein, I shall be;	wir werden ſein, we shall be;
du wirſt ſein, thou wilt be;	ihr werdet ſein, you will be;
er wird ſein, he will be;	ſie werden ſein, they will be.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde du wirſt er wird	geweſen ſein,	I shall thou wilt he will	have been;	wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden	geweſen ſein,	we shall you will they will	have been.

IMPERATIVE.

ſei (du), be (thou).	ſeid (ihr), be (you).

Digitized by Google

Obs.—As an auxiliary in forming the perfect, pluperfect and second future tenses, ſein (§ 71. 3.) is often rendered by the auxiliary *have*:

Er iſt hier geweſen.	He has been here.
Ich war dort geblie'ben.	I had remained there.
Sie wird ſchon gegangen ſein.	She will already have gone.

2. IDIOMS WITH ſein.

An wem iſt die Reihe zu leſen?	Whose turn is it to read?
Sie iſt an mir.	It is mine.
Mir iſt ſehr kalt; ihm iſt zu warm.	I am very cold; he is too warm.
Mir iſt nicht wohl.	I do not feel well.
Was iſt dir?	What ails you?
Ich weiß nicht wie mir iſt.	I don't know what ails me.
Sei gutes Muthes.	Be of good cheer.
Mir iſt nicht wohl zu Muthe.	I do not feel well (mentally).
Es iſt ihm Ernſt damit.	He is in earnest about it.
Es iſt Schade, daß er ſeinem Gegner nicht gewachſen iſt.	It is a pity that he is not equal to his antagonist.
Das Pferd iſt mir nicht feil.	My horse is not for sale.
Wem ſind dieſe Kleider?	Whose clothes are these?
Sie iſt ihm einen Gulden ſchuldig.	She owes him a florin.
Biſt du im Stande es zu thun?	Are you able to do it?
Ich bin es nicht im Stande.	I am not able to do it,
Wer iſt Schuld daran, daß er noch nicht angekommen iſt?	Whose fault is it, that he has not yet arrived?
Du ſelbſt biſt Schuld daran.	It is your own fault.
Es iſt ein ſolches Geſetz vorhanden.	There is such a law in existence.
Es iſt ihm darum zu thun.	That is his object.
Wovon iſt die Rede?	What is being spoken of?
Das iſt mir recht.	I am satisfied with that.
Es iſt ihnen lieb.	They are glad of it.
Ich bin dir herzlich gut.	I love you heartily.
Laſſen Sie es gut ſein.	That's enough of it, (leave off).
Ich weiß wie du biſt.	I know you (your ways).
Es ſei nun, daß, u. ſ. w.	Supposing now, that, etc.
Was ſein ſoll, ſchickt ſich wohl.	Whatever is to be, is proper.
Es iſt mir ſo, als ob ich es gehört' hätte.	It seems to me as though I had heard it.
Ich will des Todes ſein, wenn es nicht wahr iſt.	I will (wish I may) die if it is not true.
Er iſt willens ſie zu beſuchen.	He is inclined (has the will) to visit them.
Er iſt mein geweſener Freund.	He is my former (has been my) friend.

Digitized by Google

Lesson for June 17. 1867.

3. CONJUGATION OF Werden.

INFINITIVE.

Present.	*Perfect.*
werden, to become,	geworden ſein, to have become.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	*Perfect.*
werdend, becoming.	geworden, become.

INDICATIVE.

Singular.	*Plural.*

PRESENT TENSE.

ich werde, I become;	wir werden, we become;
du wirſt, thou becomest;	ihr werdet, you become;
er wird, he becomes;	ſie werden, they become.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich wurde *or* ward, I became;	wir wurden, we became;
du wurdeſt *or* wardſt, thou becamest;	ihr wurdet, you became;
er wurde *or* ward, he became;	ſie wurden, they became.

PERFECT TENSE.

ich bin geworden, I have become;	wir ſind geworden, we have become
du biſt geworden, thou hast become;	ihr ſeid geworden, you have become;
er iſt geworden, he has become;	ſie ſind geworden, they have become.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich war geworden, I had become;	wir waren geworden, we had become;
du warſt geworden, thou hadst become;	ihr waret geworden, you had become;
er war geworden, he had become;	ſie waren geworden, they had become

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde werden, I shall become;	wir werden werden, we shall become;
du wirſt werden, thou wilt become;	ihr werdet werden, you will become;
er wird werden, he will become;	ſie werden werden, they will become.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde du wirſt er wird	geworden ſein,	I shall thou wilt he will	have become.	wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden	geworden ſein,	we shall you will they will	have become.

IMPERATIVE.

werde (du), become (thou).	werdet (ihr), become (you).

Digitized by Google

4. **Werden**, as an independent verb, answers mainly to *become*. It may, likewise, be variously rendered by *to grow*, *turn*, *be*, *obtain*, or by words of similar import:

Der Schnee wird tief.	The snow is *becoming* deep.
Sie werden reich.	They are becoming ("*getting*") rich.
Gott sprach, es werde Licht.	God said, Let there *be* light.
Wir werden alle alt.	We are all *growing* old.
Der Rabe wird sehr alt.	The raven *lives* to a great age.
Das Wasser wird eben zu Eis.	The water *is* just *turning* to ice.
Aus Nichts wird Nichts,	Out of nothing nothing *comes*.

OBS.—The dative governed by **werden** is often best rendered by our nominative, and the subject in German by our objective; werden being rendered by *have* or *receive*:

Meinen armen Unterthanen muß das Ihrige werden.—S.	My poor subjects must *have* (*receive*) their property (L. 35. 2.).

Beispiele.

Examples.

Die Werke Gottes sind mannigfaltig.	The works of God are manifold.
Friedrich der Große war König von Preußen.	Frederick the Great was king of Prussia.
Er wird sein Geld schneller los als er es verdiente.	He gets rid of his money faster than he earned it.
Sobald die Sonne untergeht wird es Nacht.	As soon as the sun goes down it is (becomes) night.
Die Stunden werden zu Tagen, die Tage zu Wochen, die Wochen zu Monaten und die Monate zu Jahren.	The hours (become) grow to days, the days to weeks, the weeks to months, and the months to years.
Die Sonne sank in das Meer und es ward Nacht.	The sun sank into the sea, and it was (became) night.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Als, as, when;
Da, there;
Das Deutschland, –s, (the) Germany;
Der Druck, –es, pl. –e, the pressure;
Eher, sooner;
Das Frankreich, –s, (the) France;
Das Heer, –es, pl. –e, the army;
Heiß, hot;
Der Kamerad', –en, pl. –en, comrade;
Der Krieger, –s, pl. –, the warrior;
Das Lager, –s, pl. –, couch, camp;
Los, free, rid;
Müde, weary, tired;
Die Reihe, –, pl. –n, the turn;
Der Reiter, –s, pl. –, the horseman
Die Republik', –, pl. –en, republic;
Schuldig, indebted, L. 61. 5,
Seufzen, to sigh, groan·
So, so, thus;
Sobald, as soon;
Der Speer, –es, pl. –e, the spear;
Der Taglöhner, –s, pl. –, day-laborer
Tausend, thousand;
Unbändig, unmanageable;
Das Ziel, –es, pl. –e, limit, mark;
Zu (adverb), too.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 88. Aufgabe 88.

1. Dieſer reiche Mann iſt ſehr arm geweſen. 2. Sind Sie auf jenem hohen (L. 32. 4.) Berge geweſen? 3. Sind Sie je in Rußland oder Deutſchland geweſen? 4. Wer war der geſchickteſte Reiter in dem Heere des franzöſiſchen Kaiſers? 5. Wann ſind Sie in Frankreich geweſen? 6. Wie lange ſind Sie in dieſem Lande? 7. Sind Sie nie unzufrieden und traurig geweſen? 8. Wann werden wir reich ſein? 9. Wir werden alt und älter und ſind eher am Ziele unſeres Lebens, als uns angenehm iſt. 10. Was wird aus dir werden, wenn du nicht fleißiger wirſt? 11. Ich werde fleißiger werden, ſobald als (L. 69. 3.) ich geſund werde. 12. Der iſt nicht gut, der nicht ſucht immer beſſer zu werden. 13. Frankreich wurde im Jahre eintauſend achthundert und acht und vierzig eine Republik. 14. Es wird ein heißer Tag werden, ſagte ein alter Krieger wenige Stunden vor der Schlacht zu ſeinem Kameraden. 15. Das Pferd wurde ganz wild und unbändig. 16. Der Kranke ſeufzt auf ſeinem Lager: "will es denn nie Tag werden?" und der Taglöhner unter dem Drucke ſeiner Arbeit: "wird es denn nicht bald Nacht werden?" 17. "Sohn, da haſt du meinen Speer! meinem Arm wird er zu ſchwer." 18. Die Reihe iſt an Ihnen, warum leſen Sie nicht? 19. Die Reihe zu reden iſt nicht an Ihnen.

EXERCISE 89. Aufgabe 89.

1. When were you in France? 2. Have those people ever been at your house? 3. Had they been in Germany before they were in Russia? 4. He will be in Russia before you will be in France. 5. The emperor of France was the "nephew of his uncle." 6. How long have you been in this city? 7 They have been rich, but have become very poor. 8. What has become of your friend? 9. The weather is becoming very cold. 10. You can become learned if you will be diligent. 11. The young sailor has become healthy again. 12. The weather is becoming warm, and the days are becoming long. 13. The scholars in this school have been very idle, but they are now becoming more industrious. 14. I was obliged to wait so long that I became very tired. 15. The son gets rid of his money

Digitized by Google

faster than his father earned it. 16. How much do I owe you? 17. Whose turn is it to read? 18. It is your fault if you do not know. 19. This man who is now so poor and wretched, has been a very rich merchant.

LESSON XLVII. Lection XLVII.

IRREGULAR VERBS, OR VERBS OF THE OLD CONJUGATION.

1. Irregular verbs are such as do not form their *imperfect tense* and *past participle* according to the rules in L. 37.

For complete alphabetical *list* of "IRREGULAR VERBS" see § 78; also, for further remarks on the same, § 77.

2. The infinitive of these, as of the regular verbs, ends in **en**. The imperfect changes the root vowel; and the past participle frequently differs from the infinitive only by the augment **ge**:

Infinitive.	*Imperfect.*	*Past Participle.*
geben, to give;	ich gab, I gave;	gegeben, given.
ſehen, to see;	ich ſah, I saw;	geſehen, seen.

3. In some verbs the root vowel is found to be different in each of the three parts:

ſingen, to sing; ich ſang, I sang; geſungen, sung.
ſpringen, to spring; ich ſprang, I sprang; geſprungen, sprung.

4. In other verbs the root vowel of the imperfect tense and the second participle is the same:

klimmen, to climb; ich klomm, I climbed; geklommen, climbed.

5. Some verbs change the radical vowel, and also add the terminations common to regular verbs:

bringen, to carry; ich brachte, I carried; gebracht, carried.
denken, to think; ich dachte, I thought; gedacht, thought.

6. The present tense forms the different persons like the regular verbs, except in the second and third persons singular of about sixty verbs, where the root vowel is changed, or if capable of it, assumes the Umlaut: (see List § 78. p. 346.)

Digitized by Google

ich gebe, I give:
du gibſt *or* giebſt, thou givest;
er gibt *or* giebt, he gives.

ich leſe, read,
du lieſeſt, thou
er lieſt, he read

ich falle, I fall;
du fällſt, thou fallest;
er fällt, he falls.

ich ſpreche, I spe
du ſprichſt, thou speakest;
er ſpricht, he speaks.

7. In the *imperfect*, the *second* and *third* persons are regularly formed from the *first*:

gehen.

ich ging, I went;
du gingſt, thou wentst;
er ging, he went;
wir gingen, we went;
ihr ginget, you went;
ſie gingen, they went.

geben.

ich gab, I gave;
du gabſt, thou gavest;
er gab, he gave;
wir gaben, we gave;
ihr gabet, you gave;
ſie gaben, they gave.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Der Roſt frißt das Eiſen.	Rust eats (corrodes) iron.
Die Sonne ſcheint und eine jede Knoſpe ſchwillt.	The sun shines, and each bud is swelling.
Er tritt meine Religion' in den Staub, und ſtreckt die Hand aus nach meiner Krone.—S.	He tramples my religion in the dust, and stretches out his hand for (after) my crown.
Die Seele empfängt' Eindrücke von Außen.	The soul receives impressions from without.
Er ſcheint ſeine ganze Kraft erſchöpf'en zu wollen.	He seems desirous to exhaust his entire strength.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Backen, to bake;
Befeh'len, to command;
Bergen, to conceal;
Blaſen, to blow;
Empfan'gen, to receive;
Empfih'len, to recommend
Fahren, to go in a carriage;
Flechten, to twist, braid;
Freſſen, to eat, devour;
Halten, to hold;
Hangen, to hang;
Meſſen, to measure;
Nehmen, to take;
Saufen, to drink (as a beast);
Schelten, to scold;
Schmelzen, to melt;
Stechen, to sting;
Stehlen, to steal;
Sterben, to die;
Tragen, to bear, wear;
Treffen, to hit;
Verder'ben, to perish, spoil;
Vergeſ'ſen, to forget;
Wachſen, to grow;
Werfen, to throw

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 90. Aufgabe 90.

1. Wer bäckt das Brod? 2. Der Soldat birgt sich vor dem Feinde. 3. Er bläst das Waldhorn. 4. Der Bauer bricht den Hanf und drischt den Weizen. 5. Was empfängt er? 6. Das Gute empfiehlt sich selbst. 7. Der Mann fährt auf dem Wagen. 8. Der Schnee fällt. 9. Der Knabe fängt die Vögel. 10. Der Soldat ficht. 11. Er flicht sich einen Hut. 12. Der Ochs frißt Heu und säuft Wasser. 13. Das Kind ißt Brod und trinkt Milch. 14. Er gibt mir das neue Buch. 15. Er gräbt sich ein Loch. 16. Er hält das Pferd. 17. Der Hut hängt an dem Nagel. 18. Er läuft und läßt die andern auch laufen. 19. Sie liest ihr Buch. 20. Sie mißt (or misset) das Tuch. 21. Er nimmt mein Buch. 22. Warum schilt er? 23. Der Hund schläft, der Knabe schlägt das Pferd. 24. Das Blei schmilzt. 25. Was siehst du? was spricht er? 26. Die Biene sticht, der Dieb stiehlt, der Kranke stirbt. 27. Er trägt schöne Kleider; er trifft immer das Ziel. 28. Warum ficht er? 29. Das Bier verdirbt. 30. Er vergißt was sie spricht. 31. Der Baum wächst. 32. Sie weiß nicht was sie will. 33. Er wirft den Ball. 34. Ich weiß was er mir verspricht.

EXERCISE 91. Aufgabe 91.

1. I do not know who is throwing the balls. 2. Does he speak German? 3. He does not forget what he reads. 4. The sun is melting the snow. 5. The thief steals the shoes that he wears. 6. The bee stings and dies. 7. The soldier is beating the dog. 8. The bird sleeps on the tree. 9. She scolds because he takes her book. 10. The carpenter is measuring the room. 11. The boy runs and lets the dog run too. 12. Who is holding my horse? 13. Where is the cloak hanging? 14. The man that is braiding hats gives us a book. 15. Who is digging this hole? 16. Why does the soldier fight? 17. What is this boy eating? 18. What animal eats grass? 19. What does the horse drink? 20. The tree is falling. 21. Who is catching the birds? 22. Does he receive any thing? 23. Who thrashes the wheat and breaks the hemp? 24. Why dost thou conceal thyself? 25. What does he command? 26. Who is riding on your wagon? 27. My friend recommends me to you.

Digitized by Google

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Er pries ſeine Waare und rieth uns ſie zu kaufen.	He praised his goods and advised us to buy them.
Deine Brüder fraß das Schwert, wo das Blut in Strömen floß.	The sword devoured thy brothers where the blood flowed in streams.
Der Strom ſchwoll, weil der Schnee ſchmolz.	The stream swelled because the snow melted.
Cäſar ſchrieb nach Rom: "ich kam, ſah und ſiegte."	Cæsar wrote to Rome: "I came, saw and conquered."

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Beißen, to bite;
Betrü'gen, to deceive;
Ertrin'ken, to be drowned;
Ergrei'fen, to seize;
Fliehen, to flee;
Fließen, to flow;
Gebie'ten, to command;
Gene'ſen, to recover;
Gießen, to pour;
Heben, to raise;
Heißen, to bid;
Helfen, to help, assist;
Kriechen, to creep;
Leiden, to suffer;
Reiten, to ride on horseback;
Scheinen, to appear;
Schließen, to shut, lock;
Schreien, to cry, shriek;
Schwellen, to swell;
Sinken, to sink;
Steigen, to ascend;
Streiten, to quarrel;
Treiben, to drive;
Treten, to tread, step
Verlie'ren, to lose;
Verſchwin'den, to disappear;
Waſchen, to wash;
Zwingen, to compel, force.

Exercise 92. Aufgabe 92.

1. Der Hund biß den Dieb. 2. Der Baum brach. 3. Er empfahl mich einem Manne, der mich ſehr freundlich empfing. 4. Ich blieb den ganzen Tag. 5. Sie ergriffen ſeine Hände. 6. Er fiel in das Waſſer und ertrank. 7. Sie aßen die Aepfel, die ſie ſtahlen. 8. Wir fuhren durch die Stadt. 9. Sie fingen die Vögel, welche aus den Neſtern flogen. 10. Die Soldaten fochten nicht tapfer, ſondern flohen. 11. Er gebot uns zu gehen. 12. Er gab mir das Geld und ging. 13. Er genaß langſam. 14. Wir genoſſen geſtern ſehr wenig. 15. Er gewann mehr als ich verlor. 16. Er goß den Wein in das Glas. 17. Sie gruben einen tiefen Graben. 18. Er hob ſeinen Stock und hieb nach mir. 19. Er hieß ſie kommen, aber ſie kamen nicht. 20. Er half uns, obgleich er uns nicht kannte. 21. Wir laſen das Buch, das er uns gab. 22. Das Kind kroch, der Hund lief. 23. Sie lagen auf ihren Betten und litten. 24. Sie

Digitized by Google

nahmen meinen Wagen und fuhren in die Stadt. 25. Er rief den armen Mann. 26. Er saß und schrieb den ganzen Tag. 27. Das Kind stand und schrie. 28. Der Schnee schmolz, der Strom schwoll. 29. Sie tranken und sangen; einer schwamm und der andere sank. 30. Sie schlugen ihn, während er schlief. 31. Er rief mich und schalt, weil ich auf seinem Pferde ritt. 32. Sie schien traurig. 33. Er ging hinaus und schloß die Thüre. 34. Er stieg auf den Berg. 35. Sie standen bis sie starben. 36. Er stritt mit ihnen und trieb sie aus dem Felde. 37. Sie traten in das Haus und verschwanden. 38. Er vergaß was er versprach. 39. Er traf das Ziel. 40. Es wuchs schnell. 41. Er wusch den Tisch. 42. Er wußte, daß ich den Speer warf. 43. Er zog sein Schwert und zwang sie zu gehen.

EXERCISE 93. Aufgabe 93.

1. The trees broke, and the boys fell. 2. The dogs bit the boys that stole the apples. 3. The man to whom you recommended me cheated me. 4. We did not remain long, for they did not receive us kindly. 5. The boy seized my hand. 6. We called him. 7. Did you ride on the wagon? 8. The soldiers ate bread and drank wine, and their horses ate hay and drank water. 9. Our soldiers fought gallantly, and those of our enemy fled. 10. The birds flew out of the cage, but the boys caught them again. 11. We did not remain long. 12. They commanded us to go to the city, but we did not go, for they gave us no money. 13. Did your friends recover? 14. We won less than our friends lost. 15. They poured the wine into the glasses. 16. They saw the horse, and raised their hands. 17. Why were they digging that ditch? 18. He came to us while we were reading the books which you gave us. 19. He struck at them because they drank so much and sang so loud. 20. We crept before we walked. 21 The boys shrieked, and the dogs ran. 22. We took the books that lay on the table. 23. Did you call him a thief? 24. We knew that they lied. 25. We sat around the table and wrote, and they stood around the stove. 26. He rode the horse and drove the oxen. 27. They called them friends. 28. Why did they seem so sad? 29. He scolded me because I slept so long. 30. They threw their spears

Digitized by Google

and drew their swords. 31. Did you forget what he promised you? 32. Did they hit the mark with the arrow? 33. Who washed the gloves? 34. Did the trees grow rapidly? 35. Did they lock the door? 36. Why did they quarrel with us?

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Ich habe nie ein ſolches Gefühl' empfun'den.	I have never experienced such a feeling.
Er hatte einen Kranz für ſie gewun'den.	He had wound a wreath for them.
Hatte ſein Freund nichts von der Sache gewußt'?	Had his friend known nothing of the affair?
Man hat den Verbrech'er ergriffen.	The criminal has been seized.
Wer hat das Lied geſun'gen?	Who has sung the song?
Haſt du auch wohl bedacht, was du mir räthſt?—S.	But have you well considered what you advise me?
Wann haben Sie an Ihren Bruder geſchrie'ben?	When have you written to your brother?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Mahlen, to grind;	Schwören, to swear;
Meiden, to avoid;	Spalten, to split:
Pfeifen, to whistle;	Spinnen, to spin;
Preiſen, to praise;	Thun, to do;
Scheren, to shear;	Verdrie'ßen, to offend;
Schießen, to shoot;	Verzei'hen, to pardon;
Schinden, to flay;	Weben, to weave;
Schleifen, to sharpen, grind;	Winden, to wind.

Exercise 94. Aufgabe 94.

1. Der Hund hat den Dieb gebiſſen. 2. Er hat uns betrogen. 3. Hat er Ihnen etwas gegeben? 4. Er hatte an uns gedacht. 5. Haſt du den Weizen gedroſchen? 6. Er hat uns freundlich empfangen, aber niemand hat uns ihm empfohlen. 7. Was hat er gefunden? 8. Man hat den Dieb ergriffen. 9. Er hat den Apfel gegeſſen; hat er den Vogel gefangen? 10. Ich habe ſie gefunden; ſie haben gefochten. 11. Der Hund hat das Fleiſch gefreſſen. 12. Er hat mir nichts gegeben. 13. Was hat er geſehen? 14. Wir haben nichts genoſſen. 15. Was hat er genommen? 16. Wer hat den Wein in das Glas gegoſſen? 17. Wer hat dieſes Loch gegraben? 18. Er hat das Pferd gehalten. 19. Was hat ſie geſungen? 20. Er hat uns gekannt. 21. Sie haben mir ein Buch gegeben und ich habe es geleſen. 22. Die Federn haben auf dem Tiſche gelegen.

Digitized by Google

23. Er hat nicht gelogen. 24. Der Müller hat das Getreide gemeſſen und gemahlen. 25. Er hat uns Diebe genannt, weil wir ſeine Bücher genommen haben. 26. Warum hat er gepfiffen? 27. Sie haben ihre Pferde geprieſen. 28. Er hat ſie gerufen. 29. Warum haſt du uns geſcholten? 30. Er hatte das Schaf geſchoren. 31. Er hat den Wolf geſchoſſen und geſchunden. 32. Sie hatten zu lange geſchlafen. 33. Haſt du die Meſſer geſchliffen? 34. Wir haben die Thüren geſchloſſen. 35. Hat er das Brod geſchnitten? 36. Ich hatte geſchrieben, und ſie hatten geſchrieen. 37. Sie hat es geſchworen. 38. Wir haben ihn geſehen. 39. Hat er das Lied ſchon geſungen? 40. Er hat eine Stunde geſeſſen. 41. Er hat das Holz geſpalten. 42. Haben ſie die Wolle geſponnen? 43. Was ſie geſprochen hat, hat ihn geſtochen. 44. Der Mann, der da geſtanden hatte, hat mein Pferd geſtohlen. 45. Sie haben lange genug geſtritten, was hat er gethan? 46. Er hat das Ziel getroffen. 47. Haſt du nie Wein getrunken? 48. Ich habe vergeſſen. 49. Was hat er verloren? 50. Es hat ihn verdroſſen. 51. Hat er uns verzogen? 52. Er hat das Tuch gewoben und gewaſchen; hat er einen Ball geworfen? 53. Nie habe ich ſie gemieden. 54. Was hat er gewunden?

Exercise 95. Aufgabe 95.

1. He has beaten the dog that has bitten him. 2. I have often thought of him. 3. Have you recommended this book to us? 4. Have you thrashed the wheat? 5. They have always received us kindly. 6. Who has ground your knife? 7. The boys have eaten the bread and drank the beer. 8. The dogs have eaten the meat and drank the water. 9. They have caught their horses. 10. What have you found? 11. Why have the soldiers fought? 12. I have shot a large bird. 13. Have you seen the books that I have read? 14. Into which glass have you poured the wine? 15. Why have they dug this hole? 16. Who has held my horse? 17. Who has seen us? 18. Have my books lain on your table? 19. Has any body lied? 20. Who has ground the wheat? 21. Have you measured the cloth? 22. Why has he avoided his friends? 23. Why have they called him a thief? 24. Who has taken my pen? 25.

Digitized by Google

He has called me, but he has not scolded me. 26. Who has sharpened my knife? 27. Have you locked the doors? 28. Who has cut the bread? 29. Had you written him a letter? 30. Have you ever sung this song? 31. Have you sat longer than they have stood? 32. I have spun the wool and he has split the wood. 33. The bees have stung the horse. 34. Has any body stolen any thing? 35. He had not spoken at all. 36. Why have they quarreled? 37. Who has worn the hat? 38 What have you lost? 39. Who has thrown the apples? 40. Why have they drawn their swords? 41. Have you washed the cloth that he has woven? 42. It vexes him that he has lost his money. 43. Have you forgotten what you have promised me? 44. Why have you slept so long? 45. Has any one compelled you to go? 46. Who has whistled? 47. What have they praised? 48. Have you ever known such a man? 49. He has written, and they have spoken.

LESSON XLVIII. Lection XLVIII.

USE OF THE AUXILIARIES Haben AND Sein.

1. Haben is used as the auxiliary of all transitive, reflexive [a] and impersonal [b] verbs; as also of the verbs of mode [c] and of all objective verbs that govern the genitive [d] and dative [e], except begegnen, folgen and weichen (see 2.).

2. Intransitive verbs indicating direction from or toward a place or an object, or a change from one condition to another, as also bleiben, to remain; begegnen, to meet; folgen, to follow, and weichen, to yield, retreat, are conjugated with the auxiliary ſein which is here rendered by *have* (§ 71. 5):

Sind ſie ſchon gegan'gen?	Have they already gone?
Der arme Knabe iſt gefal'len.	The poor boy has fallen.

3. The following verbs, when not expressing direction *from* or *toward* a given place, require the auxiliary haben; namely,

a. L. XXIX. 9; b. L. LVII: c. L. XLV; d. L. LXII; e. L. LXIV

Digitized by Google

eilen, to hasten; fließen, to flow; jagen, to chase, hunt; klettern, to climb; kriechen, to creep, crawl; landen, to land; laufen, to run; quellen, to spring; reiſen, to travel; reiten, to ride; rennen, to run; ſchiffen, to navigate, ſchwimmen, to swim; ſegeln, to sail; ſinken, to sink; ſpringen, to leap, spring; ſtoßen, to join; treiben, to drive; wandern, to wander, travel:

Warum' haſt du ſo geeilt'?	Why have you hastened so?
Haſt du nicht heute geritten?	Have you not ridden to-day?
Sie haben nicht viel gereiſt'.	They have not traveled much.

Some neuter verbs, as liegen, to lie; ſitzen, to sit; ſtehen, to stand, are sometimes used with the auxiliary ſein:

Höher war ſeine Macht nie geſtanden.	His power never had stood higher

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Iſt er denn noch nicht gekommen?	Has (is) he then not yet come?
Der Vogel iſt weggeflogen.	The bird has (is) flown away.
Sie ſind in das Feld gezogen.	They have marched into the field.
Er iſt nach Amerika gereiſt'.	He has (is) gone to America.
Er wird ſchon gegangen ſein.	He will already have (be) gone.
Er war nach der Stadt geeilt.	He had hastened to the city.
Warum' ſind ſie auf das Land geritten?	Why have they ridden into the country.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Begegnen, to meet;
Eilen, to hasten;
Entrinnen, to escape, p. 346;
Entſchlafen, to fall asleep;
Der Fels, –ens, pl. –en, the rock;
Der Fluß, –es, pl. Flüſſe, the river;
Gelingen, to succeed, p. 348;
Geſchehen, to happen, p. 358;
Klettern, to climb;
Mißlingen, to fail, p. 352;
Der Plan, –es, pl. Pläne, the plan;
Reifen, to ripen;
Schleichen, to glide, steal away
Das Schloß, –es, pl. Schlöſſer, castle
Die Schönheit, –, pl. –en, beauty;
Die Seele, –, pl. –n, the soul;
Der Stein, –es, pl. –e, the stone;
Der Strom, –es, pl. Ströme, stream
Der Ton, –es, pl. Töne, the tone;
Die Tugend, –, pl. –en, the virtue;
Das Unternehmen, –s, undertaking
Verſchallen, to die away, p. 356

Exercise 96. Aufgabe 96.

1. Iſt er entſchlafen? 2. Nein, er iſt uns entronnen. 3. Wie lange iſt er geblieben? 4. Sie ſind nach der Stadt gefahren. 5. Iſt der Mann gefallen? 6. Der Vogel iſt geflogen. 7. Iſt das

Digitized by Google

Waſſer über das Feld gefloſſen? 8. Der Plan iſt gelungen. 9. Der Knabe iſt geneſen. 10. Was iſt geſchehen? 11. Es iſt aus der Erde gekrochen. 12. Der Hund iſt nach dem Walde gelaufen. 13. Das Unternehmen iſt mißlungen. 14. Das Waſſer iſt aus dem Felſen gefloſſen. 15. Er iſt nach der Stadt geritten. 16. Er war in das Haus geſchlichen. 17. Er war über den Graben geſprungen. 18. Sie waren aus dem Schloſſe getreten. 19. Der letzte Ton war verſchollen. 20. Der Baum iſt ſehr ſchnell gewachſen. 21. Das Haus wird gefallen ſein. 22. Sie werden gekommen ſein. 23. Er war auf dem Maſt geklettert. 24. Der Knabe iſt über den Fluß geſchwommen. 25. Einer war uns gefolgt, und der Andere war uns begegnet. 26. Der Schnee iſt geſchmolzen und die Ströme ſind geſchwollen. 27. Das Obſt iſt ſchnell gereift. 28. Die Tugend iſt die Schönheit der Seele. 29. Er war nach der Stadt geeilt.

EXERCISE 97. Aufgabe 97.

1. Have you remained long enough? 2. Who has gone to the city? 3. Do you know what has happened? 4. The boy has sprung across the ditch. 5. Our plan has not succeeded. 6. The children had hastened into the houses. 7. Has the snow melted? 8. The hunters had climbed upon the trees. 9. Our soldiers had fled, and the enemy had come into our country. 10. He has ridden (on horseback) to the forest, and she has ridden (in a carriage) to the city. 11. The patient has recovered. 12. Has he fallen asleep? 13. How have they escaped us? 14. Our friend has fallen out of the wagon. 15. The young birds have flown out of the nest. 16. The worms have crawled out of the earth. 17. The horse has run out of the stable. 18. The apples had ripened. 19. The water will have flowed into the house. 20. Why have you followed us? 21. Have you met your friends? 22. He may already have gone 23. Where have they remained so long? 24. The child has crept out of the house.

Digitized by Google

LESSON XLIX. Lection XLIX.

INFINITIVE WITHOUT Zu.

1. When the infinitive is preceded by an auxiliary, or by one of the following verbs, the particle zu is omitted:

bleiben, to remain;	heißen, to command;	lernen, to learn;
fahren, to ride;	helfen, to help;	machen, to make;
führen, to conduct;	hören, to hear;	nennen, to call, name;
fühlen, to feel;	haben, to have;	sehen, to see;
finden, to find;	legen, to lay;	thun, to do;
gehen, to go;	lehren, to teach;	reiten, to ride.

The infinitive, when dependent on the above verbs, is frequently best rendered by our present participle:

Blieb er sitzen, stehen oder liegen?	Did he remain sitting, standing, or lying?
Heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich schweigen.	Do not bid me speak, bid me be silent.
Das nenne ich schlafen.	That I *call sleeping.*
Ich fühle den Puls schlagen.	I *feel* the pulse (beat) *beating.*
Ich half ihm arbeiten.	I *helped* him *work.*
Ich höre ihn kommen.	I *hear* him *coming.*
Er lehrte mich singen.	He *taught* me *to sing.*
Ich sah sie laufen.	I *saw* them *running.*
Ich lerne zeichnen.	I *am learning to draw.*
Er fand mich schlafen.	He *found* me *sleeping.*
Sie macht mich lachen.	She *is making* me *laugh.*

Obs.—Heißen, when used intransitively, often answers to the passive *of to name, call,* or to the noun *name,* with the verb *to be:*

Er heißt Carl.	He *is named* (or his *name is*) Charles.
Wie heißt das im Deutschen?	What *is* that *called* in German?
Heißt das arbeiten?	Do you *call* that (*is* that *called*) working?

Spaziren with Fahren, Führen, Reiten and Gehen.

2. Spaziren is used chiefly with fahren, führen, reiten and gehen, and implies *exercise* for the purpose of recreation or pleasure:

Ich gehe spaziren, Sie fahren spaziren, und er reitet spaziren.	I go *walking,* you *ride* (in a carriage), and he *rides* on horseback.
Ich gehe alle Tage spaziren.	I go *walking* every day.

Digitized by Google

Wir machten einen langen Spazir'gang.	We took (made) a long walk.
Er reitet oft, aber nie ſpaziren.	He *rides* often, but never for pleasure.

3. The infinitive (usually without zu) often stands as the subject or object of a verb:

Es iſt beſſer Unrecht leiden als Unrecht thun.	It is better to suffer wrong than to do wrong.
Seinen Feinden verzeihen iſt edel.	To forgive one's (his) enemies is noble.

4. The infinitive (commonly preceded by the article or a pronoun) is used as a neuter noun, and answers to the participial noun in English:

Das Lügen ſchadet dem Lügner am meiſten.	(The) lying injures the liar the most.
Das Leſen bei einem ſchwachen Lichte iſt den Augen ſchädlich.	Reading by a feeble light is injurious to the eyes.

5. The infinitive with zu follows anſtatt, ohne and um. Um, denoting mere purpose or design, may be rendered *in order*, or often wholly omitted in translation:

Er ſpielt anſtatt zu leſen.	He plays instead of reading.
Er iſt krank ohne es zu wiſſen.	He is sick without knowing it.
Er lieſt um zu lernen	He reads (in order) to learn.
Er war zu ſchwach um die Arbeit zu vollen'den.	He was too weak to finish the work.

6. The infinitive active is often used in a passive sense:

Dieſes Haus iſt zu vermiethen und jenes zu verkau'fen.	This house is to let, and that one is to be sold (to sell).
Er läßt das Brod holen.	He has the bread brought.
Er läßt ihn das Brod holen.	He has him go for the bread.

7. Wiſſen often has the signification of *to know how*, *to be able*, followed by an infinitive:

Er weiß ſich zu helfen.	He knows how to help himself.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Du Schwert an meiner Linken, was ſoll dein heitres Blinken?—Kr.	Thou sword upon my left, what means thy cheerful gleaming?
Sie hatte eine Wanduhr im Hauſe ſtehen.	She had a clock standing in the house

Digitized by Google

Es iſt keine Zeit zu verlie'ren.	There is no time to lose.
Er iſt nach Deutſchland gereiſt', um die Sprache zu lernen.	He has gone to Germany (in order) to learn the language.
Ich höre dich an, ohne dich zu unterbrech'en.	I listen to you, without interrupting you.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Albern, silly;
Anſtatt, instead of;
Behalten, to keep, retain, p. 350;
Das Bild, –es, pl. Bilder, the picture, image;
Fegen, to sweep;
Das Gefängniß, –es, pl. –e, prison;
Gehorch'en, to obey;
Gleich, immediately;
Holen, to fetch, see p. 485.
Das Holz, –es, pl. Hölzer, the wood
Lehren, to teach;
Die Luſt, –, pl. Lüſte, inclination;
Das Märchen, –s, pl. –, tale, story.
Spazi'ren, see 2;
Studi'ren, to study;
Unſchuldig, innocent;
Die Urſache, –, pl. –n, the cause;
Vermie'then, to let.

Exercise 98. Aufgabe 98.

1. Heißen Sie ihn gehen oder bleiben? 2. Einer lehrt mich franzöſiſch ſprechen, und der andere lernt es leſen. 3. Die Nachtigall wird ſich bald hören laſſen. 4. Dieſe Matroſen werden morgen oder übermorgen fiſchen gehen. 5. Der alte Bauer hat viel guten alten Wein im Keller liegen. 6. Befehlen iſt leicht, gehorchen ſchwer. 7. Ich liebe das Leſen, aber ich haſſe das Schreiben. 8. Wir ſind ſeines unhöflichen Betragens herzlich müde. 9. Sie iſt ganz unſchuldig, welche Urſache hat ſie denn traurig zu ſein? 10. Ich habe weder Zeit noch Luſt ſein Singen zu hören. 11. Jeder gute Schüler weiß wann die Reihe an ihm iſt zu leſen. 12. Ein ſo albernes Märchen iſt nicht zu glauben. 13. Sie laſſen ihren Bedienten ihr Zimmer fegen. 14. Der Richter ließ den Verbrecher ins Gefängniß werfen. 15. Lebe um zu lernen, und lerne um zu leben. 16. Er weiß zu leben und ſich das Leben angenehm zu machen. 17. Die Kinder ſind ſpaziren gefahren, und die Schüler ſind ſpaziren geritten. 18. Er iſt fiſchen gegangen, anſtatt zu ſtudiren. 19. Holen Sie den Thee? 20. Nein, ich laſſe ihn holen. 21. Er läßt mich das Bild noch behalten.

Exercise 99. Aufgabe 99.

1. Who taught you to speak German? 2. I learned to speak it in Germany. 3. This stupid boy remained sitting the whole

Digitized by Google

evening. 4. The man had a small table standing beside his bed. 5. We shall not have time to see our friends this evening. 6. My mother taught me to sing and my brother teaches me to play. 7. When shall you go a fishing, to-morrow, or day after to-morrow? 8. Why have our friends been to the city without visiting us? 9. They went to their cousins instead of coming to us. 10. I am tired of his singing. 11. They have books enough but not time to read them. 12. These houses are to be let. 13. This man has something to say to your friend. 14. The captain is getting a new coat made. 15. The general caused the innocent soldier to be thrown into prison. 16. This man's conduct is not to be praised. 17. This silly story is not to be believed. 18. Is it not your turn to read? 19. We must go immediately, there is no time to lose. 20. Why does he go for the wood?

LESSON L. Lection L.

PARTICIPLES AND IMPERATIVE.

1. Present participles attributively used have the same government as the verbs from which they are derived, and, when the object is expressed, precede it; when predicative, however, their character is simply that of an adjective:

Mein Gold ſuchender Freund.	My gold-seeking friend.
Der ihn lobende Lehrer.	The teacher who praises him.
Die Ausſicht war reizend.	The prospect was charming.
Die Hitze war drückend.	The heat was oppressive.

2. The perfect participle sometimes answers to our present participle; or, like many other words, it may often be varied or omitted in translation, according to the different idioms of the two languages:

Heulend kommt der Sturm geflo'gen.— S.	Howling comes the storm flying (flown).
Er kam die Straße hergezo'gen.	He came (moving) along the street.
Das Geld iſt verlo'ren gegan'gen.	The money is (gone) lost.

Digitized by Google

3. The past participle may be used as the imperative:

Nicht ſo laut geſproch'en.	Do not speak so loud.
Fleißig gearbeitet.	Labor diligently.

4. There is a third or future participle formed only from transitive verbs by adding d to the infinitive preceded by zu; it always has a passive signification, and implies necessity or obligation:

Die zu fürchtende Gefahr'.	The to-be-feared danger
Das zu bauende Haus.	The house (which is) to be built.

IMPERATIVE.

5. When the *second* person of the imperative is used, the subject is generally omitted; when, however, the *third* person is used, the subject is expressed:

Karl, bringe mir dein Buch.	Charles, bring me your book.
Kinder, geht in das Haus.	Children, go into the house.
Karl, bringen Sie mir Ihr Buch.	Charles, bring me your book.
Schicke er das Pferd morgen.	Send the horse to-morrow.
So ſei es, ſagte er.	So be it (so let it be), said he.

OBS.—The present indicative of the auxiliary ſollen is often best omitted in translation, and the main verb rendered by our imperative (see imperative L. 38.):

Du ſollſt es thun.	*Do* it yourself (you shall do it).
Der Johann ſoll kommen.	*Let* John *come* (*have* John *come*).

6. Dadurch, daß before a finite verb often answers to *by* before a present participle:

Man ſchadet euch dadurch, daß man euch zu ſehr lobt.	You are injured *by* being praised too much.
Literally, you are thereby injured, that you are too much praised.	

Beiſpiele.	EXAMPLES.
Hat er noch nicht die entſchiedene Antwort erhal'ten?	Has he not yet received the final (determinate) answer?
Setze dich zum wärmenden Feuer.	Seat thyself at the warming fire.
Kein Dorn verletze die eilenden Füße, und keine ſchleichende Schlange deine Ferſe.	May no thorn wound thy (the) hastening feet, and no secret serpent thy heel.

Digitized by Google

Roſen auf den Weg geſtreut und des Harms vergeſſen.—Hy.	Let roses on the path be strown, and sorrow be forgot.
Das auszugebende Geld iſt noch nicht erhal'ten.	The money to be spent has not yet been received.
Er ſchadet ſich dadurch, daß er zu viel ſchläft	He injures himself in sleep'ing too much.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Albrecht, –s, (the) Albert;
Die Anſtalt, –, pl. –en, preparation;
Behan'deln, to treat;
Beſtra'fen, to punish;
Blöken, to bleat;
Brennen, to burn, p. 346.
Brüllen, to low;
Dadurch, by this, thereby;
Erweck'en, to awaken;
Das Euro'pa, –s, (the) Europe;
Die Haſt, –, the haste;
Der Huf, –es, pl. –e, the hoof;
Keuchen, to gasp;
Die Knospe, –, pl. –n, the bud;
Kühn, bold;
Der Landmann, –es, pl. –leute, the peasant, husbandman;
Der Laut, –es, pl. –e, sound, voice;
Niemals, never;
Regie'ren, to govern;
Schäumen, to foam;
Der Schlag, –es, pl. Schläge, blow;
Schwanken, to stagger, reel;
Das Vieh, –es, pl. –e, the cattle;
Die Welle, –, pl. –n, the wave;
Zertre'ten, to tread down, p. 356.

Exercise 100. Aufgabe 100.

1. Der brauſende Wind treibt das ſchwankende Schiff durch die ſchäumenden Wellen. 2. "Dort kommt ein Mann in voller Haſt gelaufen." 3. Der alte Mann ſchrieb mit zitternder Hand. 4. Er reitet geſchwind, und hält in dem Arm das ſeufzende Kind. 5. So ſei es, ſpricht Albrecht mit donnerndem Laut. 6. Dieſer Mann iſt ein zu beſtrafender Verbrecher. 7. Der lächelnde Frühling erweckt die ſchlafenden Blumen. 8. Die brennende Sonne ſchmelzt den glänzenden Schnee. 9. Ihr Bruder iſt ein zu beneidender Menſch. 10. Der kühne Taucher wirft ſich in die brauſende Fluth. 11. Bringe mir meinen Mantel und meine Handſchuhe. 12. Schicken Sie Ihren Bedienten zu mir. 13. Ein ſchlafender Hund fängt keinen Haſen. 14. Und keuchend lag ich, wie ein Sterbender, zertreten unter ihrer Hufe Schlag. 15. Du übernimmſt die ſpaniſchen Regimenter, machſt immer Anſtalt und biſt niemals fertig, und treiben ſie dich gegen mich zu ziehen, ſo ſagſt du ja, und bleibſt gefeſſelt ſtehn (L. 38. *d*.).

Exercise 101. Aufgabe 101.

1. The falling snow covers the fallen tree. 2. The horse comes running, the bird comes flying. 3. Give the trembling

Digitized by Google

old man a coat. 4. My friend is a very learned man. 5. I hear the singing birds and the bleating sheep. 6. The smiling spring brings us beautiful flowers. 7. So be it, said the king smiling. 8. He has the weeping child in his arm. 9. The burning sun drives the lowing cattle into the forest. 10. The foaming wave flies over the trembling ship. 11. The snow melts before the burning sun. 12. A standing tree is more beautiful than a fallen one. 13. The hoping husbandman sees with joy the swelling buds. 14. Do not sing so loud. 15. Who is the most learned man in Europe? 16. These travelers call themselves traveling artists. 17. He governs them by treating them kindly.

LESSON LI. Lection LI.

COMPOUND VERBS SEPARABLE.

1. Any of the following particles may be compounded with a verb; and as they may stand apart from it, they are called separable particles *or* prefixes (§ 89); namely, ab, from, off, down; an, to, at, in, on, toward; auf, on, up; aus, out, out of, from; bei, by, near, with; da *or* dar, there, at; ein, in, into; empor', up, upward, on high; fort, onward, away, for ward; gegen, toward, against; heim, home, at home; her, hither, here; hin, thither, there, away; in, in, within; mit, with; nach, after; nieder, down, downward, under; ob, on, over, on account of; vor, before, from; weg, away, off; zu, to, toward; and zurück, back, backward (§ 89—91).

2. In compound tenses, formed from the infinitive and an auxiliary, and in subordinate sentences, the particle is placed before the verb:

Er wird bald ankommen.	He will soon arrive.
Wir müssen ausgehen (§ 93).	We must go out.

Obs.—In like manner are used with verbs several nouns (sometimes written with a capital and sometimes with a small initial) and adjectives; as, das Concert wird Statt finden (*or* stattfinden), the concert will take place; er wird ihm Trotz bieten (*or* trotzbieten), he will .. him defiance; er wird ihn todtschlagen, he will kill him.

Digitized by Google

3. Zu of the infinitive, when used, and the augment ge of the past participle, are placed between the particle and the verb:

Es ist Zeit auszugehen (*not* zu ausgehen).	It is time to go out.
Es ist Unrecht ihn aufzuhalten (*not* zu aufhalten).	It is wrong to detain him.
Er hat mich aufgehalten (*not* ge-aufhalten).	He has detained me.
Sie sind ausgegangen (*not* ge-ausgangen).	They have gone out.

Obs.—Verbs derived from compound nouns or adjectives, follow the conjugation of simple verbs, *i. e.* take the augment, and zu of the infinitive, before the entire word; as, er hat gefrühstückt, he has breakfasted; es ist schwer zu handhaben, it is difficult to manage; es hat gewetterleuchtet, it has lightened.

4. In principal sentences and simple tenses the particle is placed at the *end* of the sentence:

Die Gäste kommen eben an.	The guests are just arriving.
Warum' gehen Sie aus?	Why are you going out?
Er brach die Blume ab.	He broke off the flower.
Hielt er den Boten auf?	Did he detain the messenger?

5. When one of these particles is prefixed to a verb not accented on the first syllable, zu of the infinitive follows the prefix, and the augment ge is rejected:

Er ist zu stolz es an-zu-erkennen.	He is too proud to acknowledge it.
Er hat es an-erkannt.	He has acknowledged it.

6. These compounds generally take a signification different from, but often kindred to that of the components used separately:

Ich stehe meinem Freunde bei.	I assist (stand by) my friend.
Ich stehe bei meinem Freunde.	I stand by (near) my friend.
Er stellte sich mir vor.	He introduced himself to me.
Er stellte sich vor mich.	He placed himself before me.

Beispiele.	Examples.
Kann er den Stein aufheben?	Can he lift up the stone?
Er hebt den Stein auf.	He lifts the stone up.
Sie sollten ihn nicht aufhalten.	You should not detain him.
Er mag nicht einschlafen.	He does not wish to go to sleep.
Sie sind es, der mich aufhält.	It is you who detain me.
Er ist böse, weil Sie ausgehen.	He is angry because you go out.
Sie ist traurig, weil er die Blume abbrach.	She is sad because he broke off the flower.

Digitized by Google

Die glücklichſten Stunden ſeines Lebens bringt er unter den Blumen zu.—R.	The happiest hours of his life he spends among the flowers.
Der Weiſe zieht das Nützliche dem Angenehmen, und das Nothwendige dem Nützlichen vor.	The wise man prefers the useful to the agreeable, and the necessary to the useful.
Im Winter ruhet die Erde aus und ſammelt neue Kräfte.	In (the) winter the earth reposes and collects new powers.
Warum' iſt er ſchon ausgegangen, und warum wünſchen Sie auszugehen?	Why has he already gone out and why do you wish to go out?

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Abmatten, to weary;
Abſchreiben, to copy, p. 354;
Abſteigen, to descend, p. 356;
Aecht, genuine;
Anfangen, to begin, p. 348;
Anziehen, to put on, p. 358;
Aufgehen, to rise, p. 348;
Aufſchneiden, to cut open, p. 354;
Aufſpeichern, to store up;
Aufſteigen, to rise, p. 356;
Ausdreſchen, to thrash out, 346;
Ausgehen, to go out, p. 348;
Aushalten, to sustain, p. 350;
Ausſprechen, to pronounce, 356;
Die Belagerung, –, pl. –en, the siege;
Einſammeln, to gather;
Eitern, to fester;
Erfüll'en, to fill, fulfill, do;
Die Feldfrucht, –, pl. –früchte, the produce of the field;
Das Gebirge, –s, pl. –, the chain of mountains;
Das Geſchwür', –es, pl. –, the ulcer;
Das Heil, –es, the welfare;
Sanft, soft;
Schaffen, to create, produce;
Wegfliegen, to fly away, p. 348;
Weggehen, to go away, p. 348;
Weglaufen, to run away, 350;
Wegnehmen, to take away, 352.

Exercise 102. Aufgabe 102.

1. Haben Sie Ihre Bücher weggenommen? 2. Ja, ich nahm ſie weg als ich ausging. 3. Gehen Ihre Freunde heute aus? 4. Nein, ſie ſind ſchon ausgegangen. 5. Schreibt der Knabe den Brief ab? 6. Nein, er hat ihn ſchon geſtern abgeſchrieben. 7. Der fleißige Bauer hat ſeine Feldfrüchte eingeſammelt, ausgedroſchen und aufgeſpeichert. 8. Um welche Zeit geht die Sonne auf? 9. Sie iſt ſchon aufgegangen. 10. Der Mond ſteigt hinter dem Gebirge auf und erfüllt die Erde mit ſeinem ſanften Lichte. 11. Die tadelnde Wahrheit des ächten Freundes iſt das Meſſer des Wundarztes, das ein eiterndes Geſchwür aufſchneidet; es ſchaffet Schmerzen, aber zum Heile des Leidenden. 12. Der Vogel iſt weggeflogen und das Pferd iſt weggelaufen. 13. Ich habe meine Handſchuhe angezogen, und jetzt ziehe ich meine Ueberſchuhe an. 14. Die müden Reiter ſind von ihren abgematteten Pferden abgeſtiegen. 15. Sie ſprechen die deutſchen Wörter ſehr gut aus. 16. Sie halten die Belagerung noch aus.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 103. Aufgabe 103.

1. Who has taken away my gloves and your umbrella? 2. Your brother took away your gloves yesterday. 3. At what time do you go out this evening? 4. I shall not go out this evening, I went out this morning. 5. When will your friends go away? 6. They have already gone away. 7. Can you pronounce these words well? 8. I can pronounce them, but not very well. 9. Have you already begun to read German? 10. No, but I shall begin to-morrow, my friend began yesterday. 11. Does he pronounce well? 12. Yes, he pronounces very well. 13. Why don't you take away your table? 14. I have not time to take it away. 15. I am copying letters for my friend who went away yesterday. 16. He understands what you say, but he can not pronounce the German words well.

LESSON LII. Lection LII.

ADVERBS.

1. The adverbs da, there; dort, yonder; hier, here, and wo, where, are used with verbs of rest, or with those indicating action *within* specified limits:

Wer iſt da? Hier ſtehe ich.	Who is there? Here I stand.
Dort ſpielen die Kinder; wo ſind die Eltern?	*Yonder* the children are playing, *where* are the parents?

2. Her, *hither*, and hin, *thither*, when compounded with other words, as da, etc. (§ 91) still retain their distinctive meanings; her indicating motion or tendency *toward*, and hin, *from* the speaker. As, however, these particles in compounds have no precise equivalents in English, their force is often lost in translating:

Wer iſt da, und wer geht dahin'?	Who is *there*, and who goes *thither*?
Bleibe hier, er wird bald herher' kommen.	Remain *here*, he will soon come here (*hither*).
Wo iſt der Amtmann, und wohin' geht er?	*Where* is the magistrate, and where (*whither*) is he going?

Digitized by Google

Direction toward the speaker.

Er ſprang heraus'.	He sprang out (hither).
Er ſtieg herauf'.	He ascended (hither).
Er ſteigt herab'.	He descends (hither).
Er kam herun'ter.	He came down (hither).
Er ruderte zu uns herü'ber.	He rowed across (hither) to us.

Direction from the speaker.

Er ſprang hinaus'.	He sprang out (thither).
Er ſtieg hinauf'.	He ascended (thither).
Er ſteigt hinab'.	He descends (thither).
Er ging hinun'ter.	He went down (thither).
Er ruderte zu ihnen hinü'ber.	He rowed across (thither) to them.

3. Her and hin are often separated from wo, and placed at the end of the sentence. They are also sometimes used with verbs of rest; hin, in the signification of *past, gone;* and her, denoting proximity:

Wo gehen Sie hin?	*Whither* are you going?
Wo kommt er her?	*Whence* is he coming?
Der Sommer iſt ſchon hin.	The summer is already past.
Sie ſtanden um ihn her.	They stood round about him.

4. These compounds after the dative preceded by a preposition, or after the accusative, are usually rendered by a preposition before the objective:

Er flog zum Fenſter hinaus'.	He flew out of the window.
Sie kamen die Treppe herun'ter.	They came down the stairs.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

5. Adverbs are formed by the union of nouns with nouns, nouns with pronouns, nouns with adjectives, nouns with prepositions, adverbs with prepositions and prepositions with prepositions:

Schaarenweiſe,	in hordes;	(Schaar, horde; Weiſe, manner).
Glücklicherweiſe, *or* Glücklicher Weiſe,	fortunately;	(glücklich, fortunate; Weiſe, manner).
Meinerſeits,	for my part;	(mein, my; Seite, side).
Stromauf,	up stream;	(Strom, stream; auf, up).
Wodurch,	whereby;	(wo, where; durch, through)
Ueberaus,	exceedingly;	(über, above; aus, out of).

Digitized by Google

6. Adverbs are formed from various parts of speech by means of the suffixes lich, lings, wärts, s (§ 103—106):

täglich, daily; blindlings, blindly; aufwärts, upward;
flugs, suddenly; rechts, to the right; links, left (to the left);
morgens, in the morning; abends, in the evening; anders, otherwise.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Der Feldherr ſitzt auf dem Pferde und reitet ruhig längs den Reihen der Solda'ten hin und her.	The general sits upon the horse and rides calmly along the ranks of the soldiers to and fro.
Dieſe Einwanderer kommen aus Böhmen her.	These immigrants come here (hither) from Bohemia.
Das Leben des Menſchen ſchwankt wie ein Nachen, hinüber und herüber.	The life of man, like a skiff, wavers (vacillates) to and fro.
Und hinein' mit bedächtigem Schritt ein Löwe tritt.—S.	And thither (therein) with considerate step a lion strides.
Ein Thor ſucht blindlings Ruhm im Labyrinth der Schande.—H–n.	A fool blindly seeks renown in the labyrinth of infamy.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Dahin, thither, there;
Feindlich, hostile;
Die Gefahr', –, pl. –en, the danger;
Die Gewalt', –, pl. –en, the power;
Her, hither;
Heran', on, near;
Herü'ber, over, across;
Herun'ter, down;
Hierher, hither, here;
Hin, thither, away;
Hinab', down;
Hinauf', up;
Hinaus', out;
Hinü'ber, over, across;
Der Lauf, –es, pl. Läufe, the course;
Das Meer, –es, pl. –e, the sea;
Der Morgen, –s, pl. –, the morning;
Die Perle, –, pl. –n, the pearl;
Reiſen, to travel;
Der Sturm, –es, pl. Stürme, storm;
Tauchen, to dive;
Wohl, well, probably.

Exercise 104.	Aufgabe 104.

1. Wo iſt der Zimmermann? 2. Er iſt in Deutſchland, ſein Freund iſt auch da. 3. Reiſen Sie auch dahin? 4. Entweder reiſe ich dahin, oder er kommt hierher. 5. Wo gehen unſere Freunde hin? 6. Sie gehen nach dem Dorfe; ſollen wir auch dahin gehen? 7. Wir wollen heute hier bleiben und morgen dahin gehen. 8. Wollen Sie den Berg hinauf gehen? 9. Wo kommt ihr her und wo geht ihr hin? 10. Wir kommen aus Schwaben und gehen nach Preußen. 11. "Der Mann muß (L. 45. 15.) hinaus in's feindliche Leben." 12. Wir wiſſen wohl wo jene fleißigen Arbeiter hingegangen ſind.

Digitized by Google

13. Der Taucher taucht in das Meer hinab, um Perlen heraufzuholen. 14. Bei großen Stürmen ſind die Schiffe oft in Gefahr, denn die Wellen ſchlagen mit Gewalt heran, das Schiff ſchwankt hinüber und herüber. 15. Des Morgens ſchreibt er und des Abends lieſt er. 16. Hinab, hinauf geht unſer Lauf.

EXERCISE 105. Aufgabe 105.

1. Where are you going? 2. I am going to the village, will you go there too? 3. I shall go there the day after to-morrow, but not to-day. 4. The boy sprang down in the water. 5. Our friends are in Greece and we shall also go there. 6. Are your cousins coming here? 7. No, for they are already here. 8. Have you ever traveled from Germany to Russia? 9. The carpenter fell down from the roof. 10. The horse ran down the mountain. 11. The boys went up the street. 12. We must go to the forest, will you go there with us? 13. No, we must remain where we are. 14. I will go up if you will come down. 15. Have you ever been in Russia?

LESSON LIII. Lection LIII.

COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

WORDS REQUIRING THE VERBS AT THE END OF THE SENTENCE.

1. When the subordinate clause is introduced by either of the following words, the verb (as with the relative pronoun L. 39. 5.) is placed at the end of the sentence; namely:

Als, when, than; bevor, ehe, before; bis, till; da, since, damit, in order that; daß, that; falls, if, in case; indem, while, in that; inſofern, (with als implied) in so far; je (L. 32. 11.) nachdem, after that, when; ob, whether, if; ſeit, ſeitdem, since; ſo, thus, if; ohngeachtet *or* ungeachtet, notwithstanding; während, while; wann, when; warum, why; weil (dieweil) because; wenn, if; wie, as, when; wo where if.

Digitized by Google

COMPOUNDS UNDER THE SAME RULE

Are obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, *or* ob gleich, ob ſchon, ob wohl, wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn ſchon, ALTHOUGH, EVEN IF; dafern, wofern, if, in case that; auf daß, so that; als ob and als wenn, as if.

OBS.—Wenn auch, wenn gleich and wenn ſchon, though often rendered *although*, (like ob wohl, and the words preceding it) are more strongly concessive than the former, and usually best rendered by *even though*.

WORDS FOLLOWED BY THE CORRELATIVE So.

2. Da, obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, weil, wenn and wie are usually followed by the correlative ſo at the head of a succeeding clause:

Da ich einmal hier bin, ſo will ich auch bleiben.	Since I am (once) here I will (also) remain.
Weil er mein Freund iſt, ſo muß ich ihm beiſtehen.	Because he is my friend I must assist (stand by) him.
Wenn es Ihnen möglich iſt, ſo kommen Sie.	If it is possible (for you, then) come.

THE CORRELATIVE So FOLLOWED BY Doch OR Dennoch.

3. When obgleich, or either of the concessive conjunctions, stands at the head of the *first* sentence, the correlative ſo, of the next, is usually followed by doch *or* dennoch:

Wenn er auch nicht beſſer iſt, ſo iſt er doch nicht ſchlechter.	Although he is not better, he is nevertheless not worse.
Ob man es ihm gleich befahl, ſo unterließ er es dennoch.	Although it was commanded him, he neglected it nevertheless.
Obgleich er reich iſt, iſt er (*or* ſo iſt er) doch ein Knauſer.	Although he is rich, he is nevertheless a niggard.
Wenn er ſchon böſe ausſieht, ſo meint er es doch nicht ſo böſe.	Even though he seems ill-natured (bad) still he does not intend it so badly.

OBS.—Wenn, however, is often omitted and the verb placed *before* its subject:

Iſt es Ihnen möglich, ſo kommen Sie.	If it is possible (for you, then) come.

4. Aber, allein, denn, entweder, oder, nämlich, ſondern and und, do not change the natural order of the sentence:

Sie iſt nicht ſchön, aber ſie iſt liebenswürdig.	She is not beautiful, but she is amiable.

Digitized by Google

5. When a sentence begins with any other word than its subject, except as already specified, the main verb, or its auxiliary, usually precedes the subject. For the sake of special emphasis, the verb, followed by an adversative clause, may be placed at the head of the sentence:

Warum hat er nicht geleſen?	Why has he not read?
Geleſen hat er, aber nicht laut.	He *has* read, but not loud.
Denn ihn habe ich beleidigt.	For him have I offended.
Dieſen Mann kenne ich, aber jenen habe ich nie geſehen.	This man I know, but that one I never have seen.
Länger kann ich nicht warten.	Longer I can not wait.
Da liegt Ihr Buch.	Here lies your book.

OBS.—As the same word may be an adverb or a conjunction, it may require the construction of the relative sentence, or the inversion of subject and verb:

Da kommt Ihr Freund.	There comes your friend.
Da Ihr Freund kommt, ſo will ich warten.	As your friend is coming I will wait.
Damit bin ich zufrieden.	With that I am satisfied.
Damit ich nicht zu gehen brauche, geht er ſelbſt.	In order that I may not need to go he goes himself.

6. Sometimes a causal conjunction in a leading clause is best omitted in translating:

Er iſt deßhalb unzufrieden, weil ſein Freund nicht hier iſt.	He is (—) discontented because his friend is not here.

7. Adverbs (*except* genug) precede the adjectives and adverbs which they qualify:

Es iſt ſchon ziemlich kalt.	It is already pretty cold.
Der Hut iſt groß genug.	The hat is large enough.

8. Adverbs follow the verbs that they qualify (in compound tenses the *first* auxiliary); those of time preceding those of place:

Er war geſtern hier.	He was here yesterday.
Sie kommen oft zu uns.	They often come to our house.
Er wird morgen hier ſein.	He will be here to-morrow.
Wir beſu'chen ihn oft, aber er beſu'cht uns nie.	We often visit him, but he never visits us.
Er wird dieſen Abend nach der Stadt fahren.	He will drive to the city this afternoon.

Digitized by Google

9. Adverbs of time precede the object (except when it is a personal pronoun); while those of manner, referring exclusively to the verb, commonly follow the object:

Er machte geſtern ſeine Arbeit ſehr ſchlecht.	He did his work yesterday very badly.
Er hat geſtern ſeine Arbeit ſehr ſchlecht gemacht'.	He has done his work (yesterday) very badly. (See L. 38. 3.).
Er hat ſie heute beſſer gemacht'.	He has done it better to-day.
Er hat mir geſtern dieſe Mittheilung ſchriftlich gemacht'.	He made this communication to me yesterday in writing.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Es verdrießt' ihn, daß man ihn nicht holen ließ.	He is vexed that he was not sent for.
Je mehr man hat, je (*or* deſto) mehr will man haben.	The more one has the more one wants (wishes to have).
Man muß ſehen, ob er es thun wird.	One must see whether he will do it.
In der Tugend allein' findet der Weiſe Zufrie'denheit.	In (the) virtue alone the wise man finds contentment.
Nur mit dem Leben werden unſere Leiden aufhören.	Only with life will our sufferings cease.
Daß dieſe Sprache ſchwieriger als die engliſche iſt, haben Sie wohl ſchon eingeſehen.	That this language is more difficult than the English, you have probably already seen.
Nie habe ich ſie gemie'den und ſchwerlich werde ich ihnen (L. 63. 3.) ganz entgehen.—S.	Never have I avoided them, and hardly shall I entirely escape them.
Dem Friedlichen gewährt man gern den Frieden.—S.	To the peaceful man one willingly accords peace.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Ankommen, to arrive, p. 350;
Bis, till;
Der Bürger, –s, pl. –, the citizen;
Der Dampf, –es, pl. Dämpfe, steam, exhalation;
Doch, yet, however;
Der Dunſt, –es, pl. Dünſte, vapor;
Endlich, at last, finally;
Entſtehen, to arise, originate;
Gott, –es, God;
Je–deſto, L. 32. 11;
Je nachdem, according as;
Die Kraft, –, pl. Kräfte the force;
Der Nachen, –s, pl. –, the boat;
Der Nebel, –s, pl. –, the mist;
Ob, whether;
Der Regen, –s, the rain;
Seitdem, since;
Träge, idle;
Unglücklich, unhappy;
Unzählig, innumerable;
Verbin'den, to unite, p. 346;
Vertheidigen, to defend;
Die Waffen, pl. the arms, weapons;
Zeigen, to show.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 106. Aufgabe 106.

1. Endlich zeigten die Bürger ihre Waffen, und fingen an sich zu vertheidigen. 2. Ich hatte ihn gesehen, ehe seine Freunde angekommen waren. 3. Warten Sie bis ich den Brief gelesen habe. 4. Wir wissen, daß er übermorgen kommen wird. 5. Je mehr Gott dir gegeben hat, desto mehr sollst du den Armen geben. 6. Je nachdem man gehandelt hat, wird man glücklich oder unglücklich sein. 7. Ich weiß nicht, ob er da ist. 8. Seitdem sein Vater hier ist, ist er viel zufriedener. 9. Wir wissen, wie er das gethan hat und wo er hingegangen ist. 10. Aus Dämpfen und Dünsten entstehen Nebel und Regen. 11. Sie wissen nicht, warum ich das gesagt habe. 12. Alle seine Kräfte wollte er sammeln und sie mit dem Feinde verbinden. 13. Unser Schiff nennt er einen Nachen. 14. Obgleich er arm ist, so ist er doch glücklich. 15. Weil Sie krank sind, so können Sie nicht ausgehen. 16. Sie sind krank und können deßhalb nicht ausgehen. 17. Ueber uns sehen wir nur den Himmel und unzählige Sterne.

EXERCISE 107. Aufgabe 107.

1. He has written more books than he has bought. 2. They saw me before I saw them. 3. We will wait here till you can go with us. 4. You know that I have not seen him. 5. The longer a man lives the shorter time has he yet to live. 6. According as one is idle or industrious will one be unhappy or contented. 7. I do not know whether he will come or not. 8. I have seen him since I have been here. 9. Do you know how long he remained in the city? 10. No, I know that he has been there, but I do not know how long he remained. 11. We know him, but we do not know where he lives. 12. This boy is sad because his father is sick. 13. Because he has not much money he is discontented. 14. I am tired and can, therefore, write no longer. 15. They can not go out because they are sick. 16. Because he is sick he can not go out. 17. These books I have never read.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LIV. Lection LIV.

COMPOUND VERBS INSEPARABLE.

1. The unaccented particles be, emp, ent, er, ge, miß, ver, wi- der and zer, when prefixed to verbs, reject the augment (ge) in the *past* participle, and take before them zu of the infinitive:

Er hat ſein Haus verkauft.	He has sold his house.
Er hat ein Haus zu verkaufen.	He has a house to sell.
Wie hat man euch empfangen?	How were you received?
Das hat mir nie gehört'.	That has never belonged to me.
Du haſt den Spiegel zerbro'chen.	You have broken the mirror.

For a more complete survey of the above particles than could here be properly introduced, see § 95. and following.

2. Durch, through; hinter, behind; über, over; um, around; unter, under; voll, full; wider, against; wieder, again, back, when accented, are separable, and when unaccented, inseparable:

Er wiederho'lte was er gehört hatte.	He repeated what he had heard.
Er holte das Buch wieder.	He brought the book again.
Das Waſſer iſt durchgelaufen.	The water has run through.

3. The particle miß, in some words, takes the accent, and, in the infinitive and past participle, is treated like other separable particles:

Es hat miß'getönt; es ſcheint mißzu- tönen.	It has sounded wrong; it seems to sound wrong (mis-sound).

4. In some verbs the augment is used before the prefix miß (but is oftener wholly rejected):

Sie haben ihn gemiß'handelt (*or* miß- han'delt.	They have maltreated (abused) him.

Beiſpiele. Examples.

Er befahl' ihnen (L. 62. 3.) ihre Häu- ſer zu beleuchten.	He commanded them to illuminate their houses.
Ach, ich habe euren Jammer nur ver- grö'ßert.	Alas! I have only increased your grief
Er hat uns übergeſetzt.	He has taken (ferried) us over.
Er hat ein Trauerſpiel aus dem Deut- ſchen überſetzt'.	He has translated a tragedy from the German.

Digitized by Google

5. When a sentence begins with any other word than its subject, except as already specified, the main verb, or its auxiliary, usually precedes the subject. For the sake of special emphasis, the verb, followed by an adversative clause, may be placed at the head of the sentence:

Warum hat er nicht geleſen?	Why has he not read?
Geleſen hat er, aber nicht laut.	He *has* read, but not loud.
Denn ihn habe ich beleidigt.	For him have I offended.
Dieſen Mann kenne ich, aber jenen habe ich nie geſehen.	This man I know, but that one I never have seen.
Länger kann ich nicht warten.	Longer I can not wait.
Da liegt Ihr Buch.	Here lies your book.

Obs.—As the same word may be an adverb or a conjunction, it may require the construction of the relative sentence, or the inversion of subject and verb:

Da kommt Ihr Freund.	There comes your friend.
Da Ihr Freund kommt, ſo will ich warten.	As your friend is coming I will wait.
Damit bin ich zufrieden.	With that I am satisfied.
Damit ich nicht zu gehen brauche, geht er ſelbſt.	In order that I may not need to go he goes himself.

6. Sometimes a causal conjunction in a leading clause is best omitted in translating:

Er iſt deßhalb unzufrieden, weil ſein Freund nicht hier iſt.	He is (—) discontented because his friend is not here.

7. Adverbs (*except* genug) precede the adjectives and adverbs which they qualify:

Es iſt ſchon ziemlich kalt.	It is already pretty cold.
Der Hut iſt groß genug.	The hat is large enough.

8. Adverbs follow the verbs that they qualify (in compound tenses the *first* auxiliary); those of time preceding those of place:

Er war geſtern hier.	He was here yesterday.
Sie kommen oft zu uns.	They often come to our house.
Er wird morgen hier ſein.	He will be here to-morrow.
Wir beſu'chen ihn oft, aber er beſu'cht uns nie.	We often visit him, but he never visits us.
Er wird dieſen Abend nach der Stadt fahren.	He will drive to the city this afternoon.

Digitized by Google

9. Adverbs of time precede the object (except when it is a personal pronoun); while those of manner, referring exclusively to the verb, commonly follow the object:

Er machte geſtern ſeine Arbeit ſehr ſchlecht.	He did his work yesterday very badly.
Er hat geſtern ſeine Arbeit ſehr ſchlecht gemacht'.	He has done his work (yesterday) very badly. (See L. 38. 3.).
Er hat ſie heute beſſer gemacht'.	He has done it better to-day.
Er hat mir geſtern dieſe Mittheilung ſchriftlich gemacht'.	He made this communication to me yesterday in writing.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Es verdrießt' ihn, daß man ihn nicht holen ließ.	He is vexed that he was not sent for.
Je mehr man hat, je (*or* deſto) mehr will man haben.	The more one has the more one wants (wishes to have).
Man muß ſehen, ob er es thun wird.	One must see whether he will do it.
In der Tugend allein' findet der Weiſe Zufrie'denheit.	In (the) virtue alone the wise man finds contentment.
Nur mit dem Leben werden unſere Leiden aufhören.	Only with life will our sufferings cease.
Daß dieſe Sprache ſchwieriger als die engliſche iſt, haben Sie wohl ſchon eingeſehen.	That this language is more difficult than the English, you have probably already seen.
Nie habe ich ſie gemie'den und ſchwerlich werde ich ihnen (L. 63. 3.) ganz entgehen.—S.	Never have I avoided them, and hardly shall I entirely escape them.
Dem Friedlichen gewährt man gern den Frieden.—S.	To the peaceful man one willingly accords peace.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Ankommen, to arrive, p. 350;
Bis, till;
Der Bürger, –s, pl. –, the citizen;
Der Dampf, –es, pl. Dämpfe, steam, exhalation;
Doch, yet, however;
Der Dunſt, –es, pl. Dünſte, vapor;
Endlich, at last, finally;
Entſte'hen, to arise, originate;
Gott, –es, God;
Je–deſto, L. 32. 11;
Je nachdem, according as;
Die Kraft, –, pl. Kräfte the force;
Der Nachen, –s, pl. –, the boat;
Der Nebel, –s, pl. –, the mist;
Ob, whether;
Der Regen, –s, the rain;
Seitdem, since;
Träge, idle;
Unglücklich, unhappy;
Unzählig, innumerable;
Verbin'den, to unite, p. 346
Vertheidigen, to defend;
Die Waffen, pl. the arms, weapons;
Zeigen, to show.

Digitized by Google

Exercise 106. Aufgabe 106.

1. Endlich zeigten die Bürger ihre Waffen, und fingen an sich zu vertheidigen. 2. Ich hatte ihn gesehen, ehe seine Freunde angekommen waren. 3. Warten Sie bis ich den Brief gelesen habe. 4. Wir wissen, daß er übermorgen kommen wird. 5. Je mehr Gott dir gegeben hat, desto mehr sollst du den Armen geben. 6. Je nachdem man gehandelt hat, wird man glücklich oder unglücklich sein. 7. Ich weiß nicht, ob er da ist. 8. Seitdem sein Vater hier ist, ist er viel zufriedener. 9. Wir wissen, wie er das gethan hat und wo er hingegangen ist. 10. Aus Dämpfen und Dünsten entstehen Nebel und Regen. 11. Sie wissen nicht, warum ich das gesagt habe. 12. Alle seine Kräfte wollte er sammeln und sie mit dem Feinde verbinden. 13. Unser Schiff nennt er einen Nachen. 14. Obgleich er arm ist, so ist er doch glücklich. 15. Weil Sie krank sind, so können Sie nicht ausgehen. 16. Sie sind krank und können deßhalb nicht ausgehen. 17. Ueber uns sehen wir nur den Himmel und unzählige Sterne.

Exercise 107. Aufgabe 107.

1. He has written more books than he has bought. 2. They saw me before I saw them. 3. We will wait here till you can go with us. 4. You know that I have not seen him. 5. The longer a man lives the shorter time has he yet to live. 6. According as one is idle or industrious will one be unhappy or contented. 7. I do not know whether he will come or not. 8. I have seen him since I have been here. 9. Do you know how long he remained in the city? 10. No, I know that he has been there, but I do not know how long he remained. 11. We know him, but we do not know where he lives. 12. This boy is sad because his father is sick. 13. Because he has not much money he is discontented. 14. I am tired and can, therefore, write no longer. 15. They can not go out because they are sick. 16. Because he is sick he can not go out. 17. These books I have never read.

Digitized by Google

LESSON LIV. Lection LIV.

COMPOUND VERBS INSEPARABLE.

1. The unaccented particles be, emp, ent, er, ge, miß, ver, wider and zer, when prefixed to verbs, reject the augment (ge) in the *past* participle, and take before them zu of the infinitive:

Er hat ſein Haus verkauft.	He has sold his house.
Er hat ein Haus zu verkaufen.	He has a house to sell.
Wie hat man euch empfangen?	How were you received?
Das hat mir nie gehört'.	That has never belonged to me.
Du haſt den Spiegel zerbro'chen.	You have broken the mirror.

For a more complete survey of the above particles than could here be properly introduced, see § 95. and following.

2. Durch, through; hinter, behind; über, over; um, around; unter, under; voll, full; wider, against; wieder, again, back, when accented, are separable, and when unaccented, inseparable:

Er wiederho'lte was er gehört hatte.	He repeated what he had heard.
Er holte das Buch wieder.	He brought the book again.
Das Waſſer iſt durchgelaufen.	The water has run through.

3. The particle miß, in some words, takes the accent, and, in the infinitive and past participle, is treated like other separable particles:

Es hat miß'getönt; es ſcheint mißzutönen.	It has sounded wrong; it seems to sound wrong (mis-sound).

4. In some verbs the augment is used before the prefix miß (but is oftener wholly rejected):

Sie haben ihn gemiß'handelt (*or* miß-han'delt.	They have maltreated (abused) him.

Beiſpiele. Examples.

Er befahl' ihnen (L. 62. 3.) ihre Häuſer zu beleuchten.	He commanded them to illuminate their houses.
Ach, ich habe euren Jammer nur vergrö'ßert.	Alas! I have only increased your grief
Er hat uns übergeſetzt.	He has taken (ferried) us over.
Er hat ein Trauerſpiel aus dem Deutſchen überſetzt'.	He has translated a tragedy from the German.

Digitized by Google

Dieſer Kaufmann verſorgt' uns mit Kaffee, Thee, Zucker, ꝛc.	This merchant supplies us with coffee, tea, sugar, etc.
Dieſe Pflanzen müſſen alle Jahre verſetzt werden.	These plants must be transplanted every year.
Die Herrlichkeit der Welt verſchwi'ndet.	The glory of the world vanishes.
So vergeht alles Irdiſche.	Thus perishes every thing earthly.
Er hat Alles verlernt' was er wußte.	He has forgotten every thing that he knew.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Bege'hen, to commit, p. 348;
Beloh'nen, to reward;
Berau'ben, to rob;
Beſchrei'ben, to describe, p. 354;
Davon, of it;
Die Eltern, pl. the parents;
Erfin'den, to invent, p. 348;
Erhal'ten, to receive;
Ermor'den, to murder;
Erſe'tzen, to replace;
Die Güte, –, the goodness;
Die Jugend, –, the youth;
Die Kunſt, –, pl. Künſte, the art;
Die Liebe, the love;
Mißverſtehen, to misunderstand, p. 356;
Die Pflicht, –, pl. –en, the duty;
Poli'ren, to polish;
Der Spiegel, –s, pl. –, looking-glass;
Der Theil, –es, pl. –e, the part;
Das Verbrech'en, –s, pl. –, crime;
Verſu'chen, to try;
Vertrei'ben, to drive away, 356;
Zerbrech'en, to break, p. 346.

Exercise 108. Aufgabe 108.

1. Ich hoffe morgen einen Brief zu erhalten. 2. Hat der arme Mann ſein Geld erhalten, oder nur einen Theil davon? 3. Ich habe das Wort vergeſſen und das Papier verloren. 4. Die Deutſchen haben viele nützliche Künſte erfunden. 5. Meine Schüler haben ſich gut betragen. 6. Man hat mir dieſes Buch empfohlen. 7. Ich habe einen Brief von einem meiner Freunde erhalten, worin er ſeine Reiſe beſchrieben hat. 8. Einer erwartet Geld von ſeinem Vater, und der Andere verdient ſein Geld. 9. Wir mußten den alten Mann in das Meer begraben. 10. Der Bauer hat ſeinen Weizen verkauft. 11. Ihr Bruder hat mich mißverſtanden, ich habe ihm nichts verſprochen. 12. Er hat ſeinen Spiegel zerbrochen. 13. Unſere Freunde haben uns beſucht, ſie verſuchten deutſch zu ſprechen, aber wir konnten ſie nicht verſtehen. 14. Das tapfere Heer hat den Feind vertrieben. 15. Er hat ſeine Pflicht erfüllt und ſeine Freunde haben ihn belohnt. 16. Was für ein Verbrechen haben dieſe Leute begangen? 17. Sie haben einen Mann beraubt und ermordet. 18. Der Knabe hat ſeine Knöpfe polirt, anſtatt ſein Buch zu ſtudiren. 19. Dieſes Buch hat er in ſeiner Jugend geleſen.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 109. Aufgabe 109.

1. Have you received your books, or only a part of them? 2. I have not yet received them, but I expect them to-morrow. 3. Have you studied this book much? 4. I have not had much time to study it. 5. Have you understood all that you have studied? 6. I have understood it, but I have forgotten a part of it. 7. I earn the money that I receive. 8. Somebody has broken my knife. 9. We tried to speak German, but they could not understand us. 10. I can recommend this book to you, I studied it in my youth. 11. The poor man was obliged to sell his bed. 12. This man has committed no crime. 13. The thief has buried the murdered man in the forest. 14. He has robbed his friend. 15. Have you sold any thing to-day? 16. Yes, I have sold my horse. 17. What have you promised me? 18. I have not promised you any thing. 19. Either you have forgotten or I have misunderstood you. 20. Do your duty and I will reward you. 21. I have not yet received that which you promised me, but I have not forgotten it.

LESSON LV. Lection LV.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

CONJUGATION OF Sein, Haben AND Werden.

PRESENT TENSE.

I may be.	*I may have.*	*I may become.*
ich ſei,	ich habe,	ich werde,
du ſeieſt (*or* ſeiſt),	du habeſt,	du werdeſt,
er ſei,	er habe,	er werde,
wir ſeien (*or* ſein),	wir haben,	wir werden,
ihr ſeiet,	ihr habet,	ihr werdet,
ſie ſeien (*or* ſein).	ſie haben.	ſie werden.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I might be.	*I might have.*	*I might become.*
ich wäre,	ich hätte,	ich würde,
du wäreſt (*or* wärſt),	du hätteſt,	du würdeſt,
er wäre,	er hätte,	er würde,
wir wären,	wir hätten,	wir würden,
ihr wäret (*or* wärt),	ihr hättet,	ihr würdet,
ſie wären.	ſie hätten.	ſie würden.

Digitized by Google

PERFECT TENSE.

I may have been.	*I may have had.*	*I may have become.*
ich ſei du ſeieſt er ſei wir ſeien ihr ſeiet ſie ſeien } geweſen.	ich habe du habeſt er habe wir haben ihr habet ſie haben } gehabt.	ich ſei du ſeiſt er ſei wir ſeien ihr ſeiet ſie ſeien } geworden.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I might have been.	*I might have had.*	*I might have become.*
ich wäre du wäreſt er wäre wir wären ihr wäret ſie wären } geweſen.	ich hätte du hätteſt er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet ſie hätten } gehabt.	ich wäre du wäreſt er wäre wir wären ihr wäret ſie wären } geworden *or* worden.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

(*If*) *I shall be.*	(*If*) *I shall have.*	(*If*) *I shall become.*
ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } ſein.	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } haben.	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } werden.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

(*If*) *I shall have been.*	(*If*) *I shall have had.*	(*If*) *I shall have become.*
ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } geweſen ſein.	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } gehabt haben.	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } geworden *or* worden ſein.

1. The subjunctive is employed:

a. To indicate a wish or a result, in which use it answers to our potential:

Darum eben leiht er Keinem, damit er ſtets zu geben habe.—L. — For this very reason he lends to no one (viz.), that he may always have (something) to give.

Von Zeit zu Zeit bedarf der Weiſe, daß man ihm die Güter, die er beſitzt, im rechten Lichte zeige.—G. — From time to time the wise man needs that the endowments he possesses should be shown to him in the correct light.

b. It is used in citing a report or opinion, as also in indirect questions:

Digitized by Google

Ich hörte, daß er ſein Geld verloren habe (*subjunctive*).	I heard (as a report) that he had lost his money.

Here the allusion is to the report merely, without implying on the part of the speaker any opinion as to its truth. But if, on the contrary, the indicative is used, the report is assumed to be true;

Ich hörte daß er ſein Geld verloren hat.	I heard (the fact) that he has lost his money.

2. In this mode our *imperfect* and *pluperfect* are often rendered by the *present* and *perfect*:

Er ſagte, daß er kein Geld habe (*instead of* hätte).	He said that he had (*has*) no money.
Man glaubte, er habe das Geld geſtohlen.	It was thought he had (*has*) stolen the money.

EXAMPLES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND THE INDICATIVE.

Subjunctive.		*Indicative.*	
Ich hörte, daß er ſehr krank ſei.	I heard (a report) that he is very sick.	Ich hörte, daß er ſehr krank iſt.	I heard (the fact) that he is very sick.
Man ſagt, er habe viel Geld.	They say he has much money.	Ich weiß, daß er viel Geld hat.	I know that he has much money.
Man glaubt, daß er kommen werde.	It is thought that he will come.	Man weiß, daß er kommen wird.	It is known that he will come.
Meinſt du, daß ich dein Feind ſei?	Thinkest thou that I am thy enemy?	Weißt du, daß ich dein Feind bin?	Knowest thou that I am thy enemy?
Mir ſagt eine traurige Ahnung, daß du die Brücke ſein werdeſt, über welche die Spanier in das Land ſetzen werden.—S.		A sad presentiment tells me that you will be the bridge over which the Spaniards will come (get) into the country.	
Der aber ſagt, er ſei es müd', und wolle weiter nichts mehr mit dir zu ſchaffen haben.—S.		But he says he is tired of it, and will have nothing more (further) to do with you.	
Wer ſpricht ihm ab, daß er die Menſchen kenne, ſie zu gebrauchen wiſſe?—S.		Who denies (of him) that he knows men (understands human nature), knows how to use them?	

3. The subjunctive is often used, especially in the third person, and sometimes in the first person plural, in the signification of the imperative:

Digitized by Google

Der Menſch verſuche die Götter nicht.	Let not man tempt the gods.
Es ſei wie Ihr gewünſcht!	Be it (let it be) as you wished.
Jetzt gehe Jeder ſeines Weges.—S.	Now let each go his way.
Haben wir Geduld'! *or*	Let us be patient! *literally,*
Laßt uns Geduld haben!	Let us have patience!
Man bind ihn an die Linde dort!	Let him be bound to the linden yonder.

FORMATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

4. The present subjunctive of all verbs is formed by suffixing to the root, e for the first and third person singular, and eſt for the second; the first and third person plural add en, and the second et:

ich lob–e,	wir lob–en;	ich woll–e,	wir woll–en;
du lob–eſt,	ihr lob–et;	du woll–eſt,	ihr woll–et;
er lob–e,	ſie lob–en.	er woll–e,	ſie woll–en.

Imperfect Tense.

5. In regular verbs the imperfect of the subjunctive differs from that of the indicative in taking e before the endings te, teſt, ten and tet (L. 37. 7. 8.):

Indicative.		*Subjunctive.*	
ich lob–te,	wir lob–ten;	ich lob–e–te,	wir lob–e–ten;
du lob–teſt,	ihr lob–tet;	du lob–e–teſt,	ihr lob–e–tet;
er lob–te,	ſie lob–ten.	er lob–e–te,	ſie lob–e–ten.

6. Irregular verbs add e to the form of the indicative, and usually take the Umlaut, if capable of it:

Indicative.		*Subjunctive.*	
ich gab,	wir gaben;	ich gäbe,	wir gäben;
du gabſt,	ihr gabt;	du gäbeſt,	ihr gäbet;
er gab,	ſie gaben.	er gäbe,	ſie gäben.

The other tenses are formed by means of auxiliaries. For complete list of irregular verbs see p. 346; also, remarks § 77.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Wer nicht die Welt in ſeinen Freunden ſieht verdient nicht daß die Welt von ihm erfahr're.—G.	He who does not see the world in his friends does not deserve that the world should hear of him.

Digitized by Google

Daß man einen Vogel fangen kann, das weiß ich; aber daß man ihm seinen Käfig angenehmer als das freie Feld machen könne, das weiß ich nicht.—L.

That a bird can be caught (that) I know, but that his cage can be made more pleasant to him than the open field (that) I do not know.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Behaup'ten, to affirm;
Das Berlin, –s, (the) Berlin;
Bilden, to cultivate;
Binden, to bind, tie, p. 346;
Das Dresden, –s, (the) Dresden;
Fragen, to ask;
Die Handlung, –, pl. en, the action;
Der Herr, - n, pl. –en, lord, master;
Die Linde, –, pl. –n, linden-tree;
Meinen, to think;
Die Meinung, –, pl. –en, opinion;
Die Natur, –, pl. –en, the nature;
Das Nervenfieber, –s, pl. –, the nervous fever;
Das Rom, –s, (the) Rome;
Der Tyrann, –en, pl. –en, tyrant;
Umsonst', in vain;
Das Vene'dig, –s, (the) Venice;
Die Verstel'lung, –, pl. –en, the dissimulation;
Viermal, four times;
Die Welt, –, pl. –en, the world;
Wieder, again;
Das Wien, –s, (the) Vienna;
Zwar, indeed;
Zweimal, twice.

Exercise 110. Aufgabe 110.

1. Ich hörte, daß dieser Tyrann in Berlin gewesen, aber ich wußte nicht, ob es wahr sei. 2. Haben Sie auch gehört, ich sei vom Pferde gefallen? 3. Nein, ich hörte, Sie seien aus dem Wagen gefallen. 4. Die Franzosen behaupten sie seien die Gebildetsten in der Welt. 5. Ihre Schwester glaubte, Sie seien in der Stadt gewesen; ich meinte aber, daß Sie im Walde gewesen seien. 6. Die Engländer sind der Meinung, sie seien die Herren des Meeres. 7. Dieser Reisende erzählt, daß er zweimal in Rom und viermal in Venedig gewesen sei. 8. Er hofft, daß er in acht Tagen in Wien sein werde. 9. Ich glaube, daß viele Menschen hier auf Erden ihr Gutes gehabt haben werden. 10. Er sagte zwar, er sei krank, aber viele glauben, es sei Verstellung von ihm gewesen. 11. Ich hörte mit Bedauern, Sie hätten in Dresden das Nervenfieber gehabt. 12. Er fragte mich, ob ich etwas von dieser Handlung gehört hätte. 13. Er glaubt, er werde nie wieder glücklich sein. 14. Er meint, ich möchte es lesen, aber ich könnte nicht. 15. Man bind' ihn an die Linde dort. 16. Er sagte, er müsse gehen. 17. Ihr Freund meint, keine Schönheit der Natur sei umsonst geschaffen, und wir Menschen seien da, um sie zu genießen.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 111. Aufgabe 111.

1. I hope I shall see them to-morrow. 2. He has promised that he will go with us to-morrow to the city. 3. He made me believe that he was my friend. 4. We heard that you were unwell. 5. Why do you think that he is your enemy? 6. Because my friends told me that he hates me. 7. I have heard that my brother has lost his horse. 8. They say these people are very poor. 9. He says we were in his garden. 10. Did you hear that I had found my money? 11. I had not heard that you had lost your money. 12. This man says that he has been in Vienna. 13. It is said that the ship has arrived. 14. These people think that we are very rich. 15. A good scholar studies diligently that he may learn rapidly. 16. He thought I could not write. 17. They said that they must have the money. 18. My brother says that they have praised you.

LESSON LVI. Lection LVI.

CONDITIONAL.

CONDITIONAL OF Sein, Haben AND Werden.

FIRST CONDITIONAL.

I should be.		*I should have.*		*I should become.*	
ich würde	sein.	ich würde	haben.	ich würde	werden.
du würdeſt		du würdeſt		du würdeſt	
er würde		er würde		er würde	
wir würden		wir würden		wir würden	
ihr würdet		ihr würdet		ihr würdet	
ſie würden		ſie würden		ſie würden	

SECOND CONDITIONAL.

I should have been.		*I should have had.*		*I should have become.*	
ich würde	geweſen ſein.	ich würde	gehabt haben.	ich würde	geworden *or* worden ſein.
du würdeſt		du würdeſt		du würdeſt	
er würde		er würde		er würde	
wir würden		wir würden		wir würden	
ihr würdet		ihr würdet		ihr würdet	
ſie würden		ſie würden		ſie würden	

Digitized by Google

1. The conditional mode is employed where a condition is supposed which is regarded as doubtful or impossible:

Ich würde ſelbſt gehen, wenn ich nicht ſo alt wäre.	I would go myself, if I were not so old.
Was würden Sie gethan haben, wenn Sie es geſehen hätten?	What would you have done, if you had seen it?
Er würde es thun, wenn er könnte.	He would do it, if he could.
Sie würden es gethan haben, wenn ſie da geweſen wären.	They would have done it, if they had been there.

2. For the above forms of the conditional, the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive are often substituted; wenn being omitted, and the subject preceded by the verb:

Das wäre ſchöner, wäre es nicht ſo groß; *instead of*	That were more beautiful, were it not so large; *instead of*
Das würde ſchöner ſein, wenn es nicht ſo groß wäre.	That would be more beautiful, if it were not so large.
Ich hätte es nicht geglaubt, hätte ich es nicht geſehen; *instead of*	I had not believed it, had I not seen it; *instead of*
Ich würde es nicht geglaubt haben, wenn ich es nicht geſehen hätte.	I would not have believed it, if I had not seen it.
Wüßte er, wo ich bin, ſo käme er zu mir; *instead of*	*Here our idiom does not admit of a literal translation.*
Wenn er wüßte, wo ich bin, ſo würde er zu mir kommen.	If he knew where I am, he would come to me.

EXAMPLES OF THE CONDITIONAL AND THE INDICATIVE.

Conditional.		*Indicative.*	
Er würde kommen, wenn er dürfte.	He would come, if he were at liberty to.	Er konnte kommen, aber er wollte nicht.	He could come, but he would not.
Sie würde bleiben, wenn ſie nicht gehen müßte.	She would remain, if she were not obliged to go.	Sie wollte nicht bleiben, obgleich ſie nicht gehen mußte.	She would not remain, though she was not obliged to go.
Er würde es gehört haben, wenn er da geweſen wäre.	He would have heard it, if he had been there.	Er war da geweſen, aber er hatte es nicht gehört.	He had been there, but he had not heard it.

3. The conditional mode is employed:

a. Interrogatively to express surprise or dissent:

Du wäreſt Don Manuel?—S.	You are Don Manuel! (Do you say!)
Träume, Prinz? So wären es nur Träume geweſen?—S.	Dreams, Prince! Were they then only (*i. e.* they were *not*) dreams!

Digitized by Google

Mir hätte es einfallen ſollen dieſen Staat im Staate zu dulden?—S.	(Who pretends that) it occurred to me to tolerate this state within the state?

b. Sometimes the condition, or that on which it depends, is not expressed:

Frommer Stab! O hätt' ich nimmer mit dem Schwerte dich vertauſcht!	Peaceful staff! O, had I never changed thee for the sword!
Dies elende Werkzeug könnte mich retten, brächte mich ſchnell zu befreundeten Städten.—S.	This wretched vehicle (instrument) might save me—might soon convey me to friendly cities.
Den möcht' ich wiſſen, der der Treuſte mir von Allen iſt.—S.	I would like to know (the one) who is the most faithful of all to me.

c. To express an opinion with caution or diffidence:

Schwerlich möchte er des Feindes Kundſchaft hintergehn.—S.	He can (I think) scarcely escape the search of the enemy.
Alles könnte zuletzt nur falſches Spiel ſein.—S.	All might (may) finally be deception (false play).
Der Pöbel hätte mich faſt geſteinigt. —G.	The rabble almost (was likely to have) stoned me.

d. After a negative the conditional is used to give emphasis or intensity to the sentence:

Auch können wir über keine Neuerung Klage führen, welche in dieſer Zeit irgend wo gemacht worden wäre.—S.	Nor can we make complaint of any innovation that has been made any where during this time.
Ich bin in meinem Leben ſo glücklich nicht geweſen, daß ich das Vergnügen oft empfunden hätte.—L.	I have not been so fortunate in my life as often to have experienced the pleasure.

Obs.—To give additional prominence to what may be regarded as extraordinary, the imperfect of the indicative is sometimes substituted for the conditional:

„Hätte er in dieſem Augenblicke ſich entzünˈdet, ſo war (*for* wäre) der beſte Theil ſeiner Wirkung verloren.„	Had it ignited at this moment, the best part of its effect would have been (were) lost.

Beiſpiele.

Examples.

Hätteſt du von Menſchen beſſer ſtets gedacht, du hätteſt beſſer auch gehandelt.—S.	Hadst thou always thought better of men (mankind) thou wouldst also have acted better.
Gäbe es nichts Unerklärliches mehr, ſo möchte ich nicht mehr leben, weder hier noch dort.—R.	If there were no longer any thing inexplicable, I should no longer wish to live, neither here nor hereafter.

Digitized by Google

Eure Versöhnung war ein wenig zu schnell, als daß sie hätte dauerhaft sein sollen.—G.	Your reconciliation was a little too hasty to (allow that it might) be permanent.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Abreisen, to depart;
Das Ame'rika, –s, (the) America;
Anders, differently, otherwise;
Auswandern, to emigrate;
Beglei'ten, to accompany;
Die Ehre, –, pl. –n, the honor;
Der Fremde, –n, pl. –n, foreigner, stranger;
Die Gesell'schaft, –, pl. –en, the company;
Gewiß', sure, certain;
Gütig, kind;
Das Herz, –ens, pl. –en, the heart;
Das Leipzig, –s, (the) Leipsic;
Mißlich, perilous, dubious;
Recht, very, right;
Die Sache, –, pl. –n, the business, affair, cause;
Verfah'ren, to act, proceed;
Vernünf'tig, reasonable;
Verschwen'derisch, wasteful;
Das Wesen, –s, pl. –, the being.

Exercise 112. Aufgabe 112.

1. Das Beste, was diese ganze Gesellschaft thun könnte, wäre, gleich abzureisen. 2. Wer hätte geglaubt, daß er ein solches Herz zeigen würde? 3. Dieser Fremde hätte es gewiß nicht gethan, wenn wir ihn gütig behandelt hätten. 4. Kein vernünftiger Mensch würde so gehandelt haben. 5. Er könnte recht gut leben, wenn er nicht so verschwenderisch wäre. 6. Ich würde gleich zu ihm gehen, wenn ich nur wüßte, wo er ist. 7. Sie wäre gewiß von der Brücke hinab gefallen, wenn ihre Freundin sie nicht gehalten hätte. 8. Er würde elend sein, wenn er so leben müßte wie ich. 9. Wenn ich das gewußt hätte, so wäre ich ganz anders verfahren. 10. Ich würde mit Ihnen gehen, wenn ich nicht so viel zu thun hätte. 11. Wenn ich das Buch gesehen hätte, so würde ich es gekauft haben. 12. Wir würden schon sprechen können, wenn wir fleißig studirt hätten. 13. Wenn sie Zeit hätten würden sie uns gewiß begleiten. 14. Wenn ich englisch könnte, so würde ich gleich nach Amerika auswandern. 15. Ich glaube nicht, daß du lange dort bleiben würdest, wenn du auswandern solltest. 16. Ich würde das Holz kaufen, wenn es gut wäre. 17. Das wäre eine mißliche Sache. 18. Ohne Ehre würde der Mensch ein elendes Wesen sein.

Exercise 113. Aufgabe 113.

1. What would you do with this book if it were yours? 2. I would study and try to learn the language that it teaches.

Digitized by Google

3. What would you do if you were rich? 4. I would travel and study. 5. I should be satisfied if I could speak as well as you do. 6. If I had had a teacher I should have learned n uch faster. 7. Would you sell this house if it were yours? 8. No, I would live in it. 9. I do not believe you could sell it. 10. If the stranger had called, I should certainly have heard him. 11. You would have money enough if you were only industrious. 12. We could have bought the horses if we had had the money. 13. I would write you a German letter if I could. 14. We should have seen the company if we had been at home. 15. They would come if they had not so much to do. 16. If he were only here it would be quite a different affair. 17. It would not be the business of a month.

LESSON LVII. Lection LVII.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Besides the verbs denoting natural phenomena (as, es donnert, es regnet, etc.) which in both languages are alike impersonal (§ 88), there are many verbs in German impersonally used, for which the neuter or passive form is required in English:

Es hat ſtark geregnet.	It has rained hard.
Es hagelt und ſchneit.	It hails and snows.
Es nachtet ſchon.	It is already growing dark (night).
Es grauet mir vor ihm, davor.	I have a horror of him, of it.
Es gelüſtet ihm nach Allem was er ſieht.	He covets every thing that he sees
Es freut mich.	I am glad, *lit.* it rejoices me.
Es hungert und durſtet uns.	We are hungry and thirsty.
Es iſt mir mit dieſer Sache Ernſt.	I am in earnest in this matter.
Es gelang *or* glückte ihm es zu thun.	He succeeded in doing it.
Es thut uns Allen ſehr leid.	We are all very sorry.
Es ſchwindelt ihnen.	They feel dizzy.
Es hat ihm gewiß geträumt.	He has certainly been dreaming.
Um welche Zeit tagt es?	At what time does it dawn (grow light)?

Digitized by Google

2. Some impersonal verbs are sometimes preceded by the object; the pronoun es being omitted:

Mich hungert.	Mir ſchwindelt.
Ihnen hat geträumt.	Uns durſtet.

3. Däuchten, dünken impersonally used, take either the dative or accusative:

Mich dünkt ſie hatten recht.	Methinks they were right.
Das dünkt mir doch zu gräßlich.	That really seems to me too horrible.

4. Geben, impersonally used, indicates existence in a general and indefinite manner, and is rendered by *to be;* the *object* of geben standing as the subject of *to be:*

"Es gibt böſe Geiſter, die in des Menſchen Bruſt ſich ihren Wohnſitz nehmen."	There are (exist) evil spirts that take (to themselves) their abode in man's breast.
Gibt es heute was Neues?	Is there any thing new to-day?
Was gibt's, warum laufen Sie?	What's the matter, why do you run?

5. Fehlen, gebrechen and mangeln are often used impersonally, generally followed by the dative of a person, with the dative of a thing; the latter being governed by an:

Es fehlte ihm nicht an gutem Willen.	He was not lacking in good will.
"Dem Glücklichen kann es an Nichts gebrechen."	The happy man can be in want of nothing.
An Lebensmitteln mangelt es ihnen.	There is a lack (scarcity) of provisions with them.

6. Verbs, intransitive as well as transitive, are frequently used impersonally and reflexively, to denote an action in progress, or what is customary:

Es fragt ſich, ob er es wird thun können.	It is questionable whether he will be able to do it.
"Lebhaft träumt ſich's unter dieſem Baum."	One dreams briskly (much) under this tree.
Es fährt ſich gut auf dieſem Wagen.	This is a good wagon to ride in.
Es gebührt ſich nicht das zu thun.	It is not proper to do that.
Es gehört ſich unſere Eltern zu lieben und ehren.	It is our duty (becomes us) to love and honor our parents.
Es trägt ſich nicht ſelten zu, daß unter einem unſcheinbaren Kleide die ſchönſten Talente verborgen ſind.	It not unfrequently happens that under an unsightly garb the most splendid talents are concealed

Digitized by Google

7. **Gehen** impersonally used and governing the dative, may often be rendered by *to be;* the dative frequently being rendered by our nominative, or the objective after *with:*

Den Büchern geht es oft wie den Menſchen.	It is often with books as with men.
Wie geht es (*or* wie geht es Ihnen)?	How are you (how goes it)?
Es geht ihnen ſehr ſchlecht.	They get along very badly.
Wie geht's dir? Mir däucht wohl ganz recht.—B.	How is't with you? It seems to me (you get along) quite well.

Beiſpiele.

Examples.

"Es gibt eine Art von Menſchen, die man viele Jahre lang beobachten kann, ohne mit ſich einig zu werden, ob man ſie in die Klaſſe der ſchwachen oder der böſen Leute ſetzen ſoll."	There is a kind of men whom one may (L. 45. 5. *b*) observe for many years, without being able to come to a conclusion as to whether to place (locate) them in the class of weak or of wicked people.
"Es gibt Wörter welche Thaten ſind."	There are words which are deeds.
Die Frage, ob es Geſpenſter gebe, kann kein vernünftiger Menſch bejahen.	The question whether ghosts exist no reasonable man can answer affirmatively.
Es ſoll an mir nicht fehlen.—S.	I shall not be lacking (absent).
Wie Ring und Kette dir gefallen werden, die in Damaskus ich dir ausgeſucht, verlanget mich zu ſehen.—L.	How (the) ring and chain that I selected for you in Damascus will please you, I long to see.
Wenige haben es verſucht, und noch Wenigern iſt es gelungen.	Few have tried it, and still fewer have succeeded in it.
Er läßt es ſich an Nichts mangeln.	He denies himself in nothing (lets nothing lack to himself).

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Anhaltend, constant;
Blitzen, to lighten;
Durſten, to thirst; (see 1. & 2.)
Entzwei'en (ſich), to quarrel;
Ereig'nen (ſich), to happen;
Die Ernte, –, pl. –n, the harvest;
Fehlen, to fail, be deficient in;
Frieren, to be cold, freeze, 1. 2;
Giftig, venomous;
Heiligen, to hallow;
Hungern, to hunger; (s. 1. & 2.)
Die Inſel, –, pl. –n, the island;
Das Island, –es, (the) Iceland;
Leid thun, to be sorry;
Die Leute, pl. the people;
Das Malta, –s, (the) Malta;
Der Muth, –es, the courage;
Der Neid, –es, the envy;
Der Ort, –es, pl. –e, (Oerter) place;
Das Sardi'nien, –s, (the) Sardinia;
Die Schlange, –, pl. –n, the serpent;
Schneien, to snow;
Der Sonntag, –es, pl. –e, Sunday;
Ueberzeu'gen, to convince;
Verſtän'dig, sensible;
Zutragen, to happen, (see 6.)

Digitized by Google

Exercise 114. Aufgabe 114.

1. Es ist ihm endlich gelungen, seinen Freund zu überzeugen. 2. Sein Plan ist gelungen, und doch ist er unzufrieden. 3. Es fragt sich, ob wir morgen gehen können? 4. Es gehört sich, den Sonntag zu heiligen. 5. Es schickt sich, ältere Leute zu achten. 6. Es ereignet sich selten, daß gute, verständige Leute sich entzweien. 7. Es thut dem Knaben sehr leid, daß er so nachläßig gewesen ist. 8. Es würde mich sehr freuen, ihn wiederzusehen. 9. Dürstet Sie? 10. Nein, aber mich hungert und friert. 11. Es versteht sich, daß er heute nicht kommen wird, denn die Wege sind zu schlecht. 12. Es trägt sich zuweilen zu, daß anhaltender Regen die ganze Ernte verdirbt. 13. Auf der Insel Malta gibt es keine Schlangen; in Sardinien gibt es keine Wölfe; in Deutschland gibt es keine Krokodile; auf Island gibt es nichts Giftiges, aber in der ganzen Welt ist kein Ort, wo es keinen Neid gibt. 14. Ein Mann, welchem es an Muth fehlt, ist kein guter Soldat.

Exercise 115. Aufgabe 115.

1. I would be very glad to accompany you home, but I am afraid it will rain; do you not see how it lightens, and hear how it thunders? 2. I think it will snow to-morrow; it is questionable whether our friends will be able to come as they have promised. 3. The peasants have finally succeeded in selling their horses. 4. I am very sorry not to have seen them, but it was so cold while they were in the city that I could not go out. 5. It sometimes happens that lazy people are very rich, but never that they are wise, learned, useful or happy. 6. This man is not hungry, but he is very cold. 7. Of course you will visit us as soon as you can, will you not? 8. It is questionable whether he can do that. 9. Is there any thing more useful in the world than cold water? 10. They say they are very sorry that they did not succeed in convincing us that we were wrong. 11. What is the matter, why are all those people running into the house?

Digitized by Google

LESSON LVIII.

1. PARADIGM OF

Geliebt werden,

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	geliebt,	I am	loved.
	2	du wirſt		thou art	
	3	er wird		he is	
PLUR.	1	wir werden		we are	
	2	ihr werdet		you are	
	3	ſie werden		they are	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich wurde	geliebt,	I was	loved.
	2	du wurdeſt		thou wast	
	3	er wurde		he was	
PLUR.	1	wir wurden		we were	
	2	ihr wurdet		you were	
	3	ſie wurden		they were	

PERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich bin	geliebt worden,	I have	been loved.
	2	du biſt		thou hast	
	3	er iſt		he has	
PLUR.	1	wir ſind		we have	
	2	ihr ſeid		you have	
	3	ſie ſind		they have	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich war	geliebt worden,	I had	been loved.
	2	du warſt		thou had	
	3	er war		he had	
PLUR.	1	wir waren		we had	
	2	ihr waret		you had	
	3	ſie waren		they had	

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	geliebt werden,	I shall	be loved.
	2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
	3	er wird		he will	
PLUR.	1	wir werden		we shall	
	2	ihr werdet		you will	
	3	ſie werden		they will	

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	geliebt worden ſein,	I shall	have been l'd.
	2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
	3	er wird		he will	
PLUR.	1	wir werden		we shall	
	2	ihr werdet		you will	
	3	ſie werden		they will	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

ich werde	geliebt,	I may	be loved.
du werdeſt		thou mayst	
er werde		he may	
wir werden		we may	
ihr werdet		you may	
ſie werden		they may	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich würde	geliebt,	I might	be loved.
du würdeſt		thou mightst	
er würde		he might	
wir würden		we might	
ihr würdet		you might	
ſie würden		they might	

PERFECT TENSE.

ich ſei	geliebt worden,	I may	have been l'd.
du ſeieſt		thou mayst	
er ſei		he may	
wir ſeien		we may	
ihr ſeiet		you may	
ſie ſeien		they may	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich wäre	geliebt worden,	I might	have been l'd.
du wäreſt		thou mightst	
er wäre		he might	
wir wären		we might	
ihr wäret		you might	
ſie wären		they might	

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	geliebt werden,	(if) I shall	be loved.
du werdeſt		" thou wilt	
er werde		" he will	
wir werden		" we shall	
ihr werdet		" you will	
ſie werden		" they will	

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	gel't word. ſein,	(if) I shall	have been l'd.
du werdeſt		" thou wilt	
er werde		" he will	
wir werden		" we shall	
ihr werdet		" you will	
ſie werden		" they will	

Digitized by Google

Lection LVIII.

A PASSIVE VERB.

TO BE LOVED.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICI
PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT
	werde du werde er werden wir werdet ihr werden ſie } geliebt, be thou loved.	geliebt werden, to be loved.	
IMPERFECT TENSE.	IMPERF. TENSE.	IMPERF. TENSE.	IMPERFECT
PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		geliebt worden ſein, to have been loved.	geliebt, loved.
PLUPERFECT TENSE.	PLUPERF. TENSE.	PLUPERF. TENSE.	PLUPERF.
FIRST FUTURE.	FIRST FUTURE.	FIRST FUTURE.	1st. FUTURE
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } geliebt werden, I should be loved, etc.		werden geliebt werden, to be about to be loved.	
SECOND FUTURE.	SECOND FUTURE.	SECOND FUTURE.	2d. FUTURE
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } geliebt worden ſein, I should have been loved.			

Digitized by Google

2. The passive voice is formed by connecting the auxiliary werden, through all its modes and tenses, with the *past* participle of the *main* verb :

Das Pferd wird beſchlagen.	The horse is being (becoming) shod.
Das Pferd wurde beſchlagen.	The horse was (became) shod.
Das Pferd iſt beſchlagen worden.	The horse has been (become) shod.

3. The form of the perfect, with omission of werden, is used to indicate a *present* state or condition, as the *result* of a *previous* action ; as,

Das Pferd iſt beſchlagen, the horse is shod—is *now* in a state *resulting* from the act of shoeing (*i. e.* in a shod condition); das Pferd iſt beſchlagen worden, on the contrary, merely indicates a like previous act, while the *result* (namely, a present shod condition) may no longer exist.

4. Passive verbs are often used impersonally to denote an action or event in progress :

Es wird geſungen.	There is singing ("going on").
Es wurde bis ſpät in die Nacht gefoch'ten.	The fighting continued (it was fought) till late in the night.
Dort wurde alle Tage getanzt' und geſpielt'.	There was dancing and playing there every day.
Es wurde ihm von allen Seiten zu Hülfe geeilt'.	From all sides it was run to his assistance.—Milton.
Die Schönheit wird mit Wunder angeblickt, doch nur Gefäl'ligkeit entzückt. —W.	Beauty is looked at with admiration, but only kindness enchants.

Beiſpiele.

Das Glück der Geſellſchaft wird eben ſo ſehr durch Thorheit als durch Verbrech'en und Laſter geſtört.—S.

Den Schlaf, den Reichthum und die Geſund'heit genießt' man nur, wenn ſie unterbrochen worden (ſind).—R.

Der Genius wird nur vom Genius gefaßt', die edle Natur' nur von ihres Gleichen (L. 35. 4. 5.)—R.

Examples.

The happiness of society is interrupted quite as much by folly as by crimes and vices.

Sleep, wealth and health (L. 42. 1. *a.*) are enjoyed only when they have been interrupted.

Genius is comprehended only by genius, a (the) noble nature only by its peer.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Augenblick, –es, pl. –e, moment;
Ausfinden, to find out, p. 348;
Betrübt', afflicted;
Dereinſt', in the future;
Die Erbit'terung, –, pl. –en, the animosity;
Erklet'tern, to climb;
Ernſt, earnest, stern;

Digitized by Google

Erſchei'nen, to appear, p. 348;
Erſchie'ßen, to shoot, p. 354;
Fortſchleppen, to drag away;
Der Gemſenjäger, –s, pl. –, the chamois-hunter;
Das Gericht', –es, pl. –e, tribunal;
Günſtig, favorable, propitious;
Herbei'führen, to bring on;
Der Jupiter, –s, (the) Jupiter;
Melden, to announce;
Nachdem, after;
Der Prome'theus, (the) Prometheus;
Der Schmeichler, –s, pl. –, flatterer;
Schmieden, to chain;
Die Seite, –, pl. –n, the side;
Der Streit, –es, the combat;
Täuſchen, to deceive;
Das Unglück, –s, es, the misfortune
Verſam'meln, to assemble;
Vollen'den, to finish;
Zerſtö'ren, to destroy

Exercise 116. Aufgabe 116.

1. Der Fleißige wird gelobt, und der Träge wird getadelt. 2. Die ſteilſten Felſen werden von den Gemſenjägern erklettert. 3. Der günſtige Augenblick wird von dem Klugen ergriffen. 4. Es wurde mehr geſpielt als gearbeitet. 5. Der Streit wurde auf beiden Seiten mit großer Erbitterung geführt. 6. Das Buch iſt endlich vollendet worden und wird bald erſcheinen. 7. Endlich iſt es ausgefunden worden, wer der Dieb iſt. 8. Es wird dereinſt ein ernſtes Gericht gehalten werden, nachdem alle Völker werden verſammelt worden ſein. 9. Der Nachbar glaubt, daß der Vater von ſeinem Kinde getäuſcht werde. 10. Er meldet, daß die ganze Stadt zerſtört worden ſei. 11. Man ſagt, daß der arme Mann fortgeſchleppt worden ſei. 12. Der betrübte Vater glaubt, ſein Sohn werde von dem Feinde erſchoſſen worden ſein. 13. Die Freundin behauptete, daß das Unglück durch die Schuld des Nachbars herbeigeführt worden wäre 14. Prometheus war von Jupiter an einen Felſen geſchmiedet worden. 15. Das Haus wird von einem ſehr geſchickten Manne gebaut. 16. Dieſe Leute glauben, ſie ſeien von uns getäuſcht worden. 17. Wiſſen Sie von wem dieſe Bücher geſchrieben worden ſind?

Exercise 117. Aufgabe 117.

1. Do you know why you have been blamed by your friends? 2. I was blamed by them because the letter that has been promised by me had not been written before they arrived here. 3. I hope the enemy will be defeated and driven out of the country. 4. My letter will have been read before yours will have been written. 5. We are not often hated by those who are loved by us. 6. The bad will be punished and the good will

Digitized by Google

be rewarded. 7. Good men are often blamed while they live, and praised after they are dead. 8. The ring of the rich young traveler has been found by one of his servants. 9. These beautiful baskets are said (L. 45. 9. *b.*) to have been made by the blind man to whom the flute was sent yesterday. 10. Those indolent boys deserve to be punished. 11. There has been more done to day than yesterday. 12. We are often deceived by those who praise us, for we are often praised by flatterers. 13. The hunter says he has been bitten by a bear that had been shot by one of his friends. 14. Has it not yet been found out by whom the money was stolen?

LESSON LIX. Lection LIX.

PROPER AND COMMON NAMES.

1. The proper and common names of places and countries, as also of months, are placed in apposition:

Die Stadt München iſt die Hauptſtadt des Königreichs Baiern.	The city (of) Munich is the capital of the kingdom (of) Bavaria.
Der Monat März iſt ſtürmiſch und unangenehm.	The month of March is stormy and disagreeable.

2. The date of the month (without a preposition intervening) precedes its name:

Die Nacht zwiſchen dem vierten und fünften April war zu dieſem großen Unternehmen beſtimmt.—S.	The night between the fourth and fifth of April was designated for the execution of this great undertaking.

3. Nouns denoting weight, measure, quantity and kind usually stand in the same case as those that they limit. When followed by nouns in the plural, the feminine takes the plural form, while those of the masculine and neuter retain that of the singular:

Er kaufte eine Elle Tuch und zwei Ellen Seide, ein Pfund Kaffee und zwei Pfund Zucker.	He bought an ell of cloth and two ells of silk, one pound of coffee and two pounds of sugar.

Digitized by Google

Ich habe eine neue Art Papier.	I have a new kind of paper.
Er hat drei Stück Vieh.	He has three head of cattle.

4. When, however, the latter noun is qualified by some other word, it usually stands in the genitive; in a few phrases, also, the genitive occurs when not thus qualified:

Bringe mir ein Glas dieses klaren Wassers.	Bring me a glass of that clear water.
Eine unzählige Menge Volks war herbeigeströmt.—S.	A countless multitude of people had flocked together.

5. Mann, when referring to organized bodies of men, retains (like *sail*, *horse*, etc., in an analogous use) the singular form, with the plural signification:

Ein schwedischer General, der mit einem acht tausend Mann starken Heere an der Elbe zurückgeblieben war, hielt die Stadt Magdeburg auf's engste eingeschlossen.—S.	A Swedish general, who had remained on the Elbe with an army of eight thousand men strong, held the city of Magdeburg closely invested.

6. Ein Paar (*literally* a pair) often answers to *a few*, and is used, undeclined, before nouns in any case:

Warten Sie noch ein Paar Stunden.	Wait a few hours yet.

Beispiele.	Examples.
Und sammelten alle Speisen der sieben Jahre so im Lande Egypten waren. —Gen. xli, 48.	And he gathered up all the food of the seven years which were in the land of Egypt.
Die Unschuld hat eine Menge Annehmlichkeiten.—W.	(The) innocence has a multitude of graces.
Ein neues zwanzigtausend Mann starkes Heer entstand in Kurzem unter seinen Fahnen.—S.	A new army twenty thousand men strong soon came into existence under his banners.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Abfahren, to set out;
Der April', –s, (the) April;
Die Armee', –, pl. –n, the army;
Die Art, –, pl. –en, the kind;
Das Baiern, –s, (the) Bavaria;
Das Bremen, –s, (the) Bremen;
Die Elle, –, pl. –n, the ell;
Der Februar', –s, (the) February;
Die Frucht, –, pl. Früchte, the fruit;
Die Hauptstadt, –, pl. -städte, the capital, chief city;
Der Januar', –s, (the) January,
Der Juni, –s, (the) June;
Das Königreich, –s, pl. –e, kingdom
Neulich, recently;
Das Paar, –es, pl. –e, the pair,
Das Preußen, –s, (the) Prussia;
Das Sachsen, –s, (the) Saxony;
Sechs, six;
Das Stück, –es, pl. –e, piece, head;
Der Thaler, –s, pl. –, the thaler;
Der Viehhändler, –s, pl. –, drover

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 118. Aufgabe 118.

1. Am ersten Juni wird die Armee in die Stadt ziehen. 2. Der alte Viehhändler hat hundert Stück Vieh gekauft. 3. Er trinkt jeden Morgen zwei Glas Wasser. 4. Wollen Sie mir ein Stück Brod geben? 5. Ich will Ihnen zwei Stück Fleisch geben. 6. Wir fuhren am fünf und zwanzigsten Januar von der Stadt New-York ab, und kamen am achtzehnten Februar in der Stadt Bremen an. 7. Der Monat Mai ist viel angenehmer als der Monat April. 8. Die Stadt Berlin ist die Hauptstadt des Königreichs Preußen. 9. Das ist eine Art Frucht, die ich nie gesehen habe. 10. Er hat zwei Paar Handschuhe und sechs Ellen Tuch gekauft. 11. Der Dom in der Stadt Magdeburg ist sehr schön. 12. Das Königreich Sachsen ist sehr klein. 13. Er hat noch ein wenig Geld, denn ein guter Freund hat ihm neulich ein Paar Thaler aus Baiern geschickt.

EXERCISE 119. Aufgabe 119.

1. Here is a little piece of paper for you. 2. Our friends live in the city of Vienna. 3. The shoemaker has sent you a pair of shoes. 4. I have bought three barrels of flour and a hundred pounds of coffee. 5. The kingdom of Prussia is larger than the kingdoms of Saxony and Bavaria. 6. We were in the city of Dresden in the month of June. 7. The city of Dresden is rich and very beautiful. 8. This man says he has a new kind of paper. 9. Will you give me a glass of water? 10. Will you not take a glass of wine? 11. I have already drank a glass of wine. 12. We remained only a few days, and did not see much. 13. On the sixteenth of August we were in the city of Cologne.

LESSON LX. Lection LX.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE.

1. The following prepositions are construed with the genitive; namely,

Digitized by Google

Anſtatt *or* ſtatt, instead;
Außerhalb, outside of, without;
Dieſſeit (s), on this side;
Halb, halben *or* halber, on account (o');
Innerhalb, inside, within;
Jenſeit (s), beyond, on the other side;
Kraft, by virtue of;
Laut, according to;
Oberhalb, above;
Um—willen, for the sake of;
Ungeachtet, notwithstanding;
Unterhalb, below;
Unfern, unweit, not far from, near;
Vermittelſt, mittelſt, by means of;
Vermöge, by dint of;
Während, during;
Wegen, on account of;
Längs, along;
Trotz, in spite of;
Zufolge, according to.

In German grammars the list is sometimes found as follows

Unweit, mittelſt, kraft und während,
Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,
Oberhalb und unterhalb,
Innerhalb und außerhalb,
Diesſeit, jenſeit, halben, wegen,
Statt, auch längs, zufolge, trotz,
Stehen mit dem Genitiv,
Oder auf die Frage, weſſen?—
Doch iſt hier nicht zu vergeſſen,
Daß bei dieſen letzten Drei,
Auch der Dativ richtig ſei.

2. Längs and trotz may be used also with the dative·

Längs dem Geſtade (*or* des Geſtades) des Meeres.—B. Along the shore of the ocean.

Trotz meiner Aufſicht, meinem ſcharfen Suchen noch Koſtbarkeiten, noch geheime Schätze.—S. In spite of my inspection, my close scrutiny still valuables, still secret treasures (are concealed).

Zufolge preceding the noun, takes the genitive; following it the dative:

Zufolge des Befehls (dem Befehle zufolge) bleibe ich hier. In conformity to the order I shall (L. 38. 1. a.) remain here.

3. Entlang, before a noun, also requires the genitive, after a noun, the accusative:

Rauſche Fluß das Thal entlang.—G. Rustle river along the vale.

Wir hatten den ganzen Tag gejagt entlang des Waldgebirges.—S. We had hunted all day along the woody mountains.

4. Halb, halben *or* halber must follow the noun; ungeachtet and wegen may precede or follow it:

Nicht des Beiſpiels halben, ſondern der Pflicht wegen ſoll man in der Geſellſchaft höflich ſein. Not on account of the example, but on account of duty should one be polite in society.

Digitized by Google

5. The genitive is placed between um and willen:

Um ſeines Freundes willen hat er es gethan.	On his friend's account he has done it.

6. Halben, wegen and willen are often compounded with pronouns, t being substituted for the final r, or added after n:

Meinet wegen (*instead of* meiner wegen), for my sake;
Seinet halben (*instead of* ſeiner halben), for his sake;
Um deſſentwillen (*instead of* um deſſenwillen), for the sake of whom or which.

7. Anſtatt may be divided; ſtatt taking its original character as a noun:

Er dient an ſeines Vaters Statt (*or* anſtatt ſeines Vaters).	He serves in his father's stead (*or* instead of his father).

8. Wegen, preceded by von, was formerly employed as a substantive; hence certain expressions like the following still occur:

Von Rechts wegen.	On account of justice (right).
Gebt Rechenſchaft von wegen des vergoſſ'nen Blutes.—S.	Give account of (in reference to) the spilled blood.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Man muß die Tugend um ihrer ſelbſt willen lieben, oder ſie ganz aufgeben. —G.	One must love virtue for its own sake, or give it up (renounce it) entirely.
Indiens wegen hatte man die ſpaniſchen Länder entvölkert.—S.	For the sake of India the Spanish territories had been depopulated.
Mittelſt ſeines Beiſtandes ſetzte ich es durch.	By means of his assistance I accomplished it.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Anlangen, to arrive;
Ausführen, to accomplish;
Außerhalb, outside of;
Der Befehl', –es, pl. –e, command;
Begreif'fen, to comprehend, 350;
Dennoch, notwithstanding;
Dieſſeits, on this side;
Die Dunkelheit, –, the darkness;
Die Freundſchaft, –, pl. –en, friendship;
Halben, halber, on account of;
Innerhalb, within;
Jenſeits, on the other side,
Längs, along;
Oberhalb, above;
Die Peſt, –, pl. –en, the pestilence
Prächtig, magnificent;
Der Rhein, –es, the Rhine;
Trotz, in spite of;
Das Ufer, –s, pl. –, the shore;
Um-willen, for the sake of
Unfern, near, not far from
Ungeachtet, notwithstanding
Unterhalb, below

Digitized by Google

Unweit, near, not far from;
Vermittelſt, by means of;
Vermöge, by dint of;
Der Verſtand', –es, understanding;
Der Warmbrunnen, –s, pl. –, the warm-spring;
Die Warnung, –, pl. –en, warning;
Wegen, on account of;
Wüthen, to rage;
Zufolge, according to;
Zurück'kehren, to return.

EXERCISE 120. Aufgabe 120.

1. Anſtatt des Herrn kam der Diener. 2. Innerhalb der Stadt wüthete die Peſt, und außerhalb derſelben der Feind. 3. Was diesſeits des Rheines liegt gehört zu Deutſchland, was jenſeits liegt, zu Frankreich. 4. Geben Sie ihm das Geld, der Freundſchaft oder der Armuth halben? 5. Wir ſegelten längs des Ufers, bis wir an der Stadt anlangten. 6. Er erhielt die Belohnung kraft eines Befehles der Regierung. 7. Oberhalb der Brücke auf dem Berge ſteht ein prächtiges Schloß. 8. Trotz aller Warnungen vor den Gefahren wagte er es dennoch. 9. Um ſeiner Eltern willen kehrt er bald zurück. 10. Ungeachtet der Dunkelheit habe ich ihn erkannt. 11. Er wohnte unterhalb der Stadt, unweit des Fluſſes. 12. Unfern des Meeres lag das Schloß auf hohem Felſen. 13. Unweit der Stadt iſt der berühmte Warmbrunnen. 14. Er kann es vermittelſt ſeines Geldes ausführen. 15. Das kannſt du vermöge deines Verſtandes begreifen. 16. Dieſer Mann iſt während ſeines ganzen Lebens nie krank geweſen. 17. Wegen dieſes Unglücks iſt er ſehr betrübt. 18. Zufolge dieſes Befehles iſt er gleich abgereiſt.

EXERCISE 121. Aufgabe 121.

1. The servant came instead of my friend. 2. The pestilence raged within the entire state. 3. That which lies on this side of the river belongs to the rich merchants, and that which lies on the other side, to poor fishermen and day-laborers. 4. Do you visit him on account of his money or his poverty? 5. We walked along the shore of the river. 6. He received this reward by virtue of a command of the king. 7. We saw the black clouds above the city. 8. In spite of his promise he did it nevertheless. 9. For the sake of his poor mother he still remained in his native country. 10. Notwithstanding the deep snow and the cold weather he went. 11. The building stands below the city, near the stream. 12. The castle lay upon lofty

Digitized by Google

rocks, not far from the sea. 13. The celebrated Warm-spring in Germany is near the Giant-Mountains. 14. He can accomplish it by means of his friends. 15. He did it by means of his diligence. 16. He saw his friend during his journey. 17. He is so sad on account of the death of his friend. 18. According to the officer's command he remained.

LESSON LXI. Lection LXI.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.

1. The following adjectives are construed with, and usually follow, the genitive:

Bedürf'tig, in want, wanting;	Theilhaftig, participant, sharing;
Benöth'igt, necessitated, needing;	Ueberdrüßig, tired, disgusted;
Bewußt', conscious, aware;	Verdächtig, suspected, suspicious;
Eingedenk, mindful;	Verluſt'ig, deprived of, having lost;
Fähig, capable;	Würdig, worthy;
Froh, glad; (see 4.)	Gewahr', aware;
Gewärt'ig, expecting;	Gewohnt', accustomed;
Gewiß', sure, certain;	Los, free, rid;
Kundig, having knowledge;	Müde, tired, weary;
Ledig, free, single, void;	Satt, satiated;
Mächtig, powerful, master of;	Voll, full;
Quitt, clear, rid;	Werth, worthy.

Leute, die eine große Wohlthat gleich, ohne Bedenken, annehmen können, ſind der Wohlthat ſelten würdig.—L.	People who can at once, without hesitation accept a great kindness are seldom worthy of the kindness.
So biſt du deines Eides quitt.—Gen. xxiv, 8.	Thou shalt be clear from this thy oath,
Die meiſten Verluſte ſind eines Erſatzes fähig.—S.	Most losses are capable of a reparation.

2. The last *seven* adjectives of the above list are more commonly used with the accusative:

Den Künſtler wird man nicht gewahr.—S.	The artist is not perceived. (One does not become aware of, etc.)
Der Beutel iſt voll Geld.	The purse is full of money.

Digitized by Google

Das heutige Geſchlecht' wird dieſen Jammer nicht los.—G. — The present race will not get rid of this misfortune.

Der aber ſagt er ſei es müd'.—S. — He, however, says he is tired of it.

3. Voll, as employed by many writers, often takes, with the accusative, the ending er:

Sie war geiſtreich, voller Talente.-G. — She was witty, full of talent(s).

4. Froh is often followed by über with the accusative; gewiß, leer and voll by von, and fähig by zu:

Sie ſind zu allem Böſen fähig. — They are capable of every thing bad.

5. Schuldig with the genitive signifies *guilty;* with the accusative, *indebted:*

Er iſt gewiß keines Verbrechens ſchuldig. — He is certainly not guilty of any crime.

Wie viel iſt er uns wohl ſchuldig? — How much is he probably indebted to (does he probably owe) us?

6. Werth with the genitive answers to *worthy;* with the accusative it denotes the value of a thing, and is rendered by *worth:*

Er iſt aller Ehren werth. — He is worthy of all honor.

Es iſt keinen Groſchen werth. — It is not worth a groat.

In referring to one's wealth, reich, instead of werth, is employed:

Er iſt hundert tauſend Gulden reich. — He is worth a hundred thousand florins.

7. Formerly, in denoting the relation of magnitude, the genitive was used; and it is thus, in a few expressions, still retained:

Es iſt eines Daumes dick. — It is a thumb's thick(ness).

8. The genitive is often employed adverbially, in which case feminine nouns sometime take s:

Gehen Sie des Morgens? — Do you go in the morning?

Ich gehe Nachts um wie ein gequälter Geiſt. —S. — I go about at night as a tormented spirit (goes).

9. The genitive, denoting possession, frequently precedes the governing noun:

"Der Alten Rath, der Jungen That macht Krummes grad." — The advice of the old, the action of the young makes crooked straight.

Digitized by Google

Schön ist des Mondes mildere Klarheit unter der Sterne blitzendem Glanz; schön ist der Mutter liebliche Hoheit zwischen der Söhne feuriger Kraft.—S.

Beautiful is the moon's milder clearness amid the darting glow of the stars; beautiful is the mother's lovely majesty amid the fiery strength of her sons.

'Aller Leute Freund ist aller Leute Geck."

(To be) every body's friend is (to be) every body's fool.

10. The genitive of personal pronouns, when used partitively, precedes the governing word; as does also, frequently, that of nouns:

Der Arbeiter in dem Weinberge desjenigen, der den letzten Lohn ertheilt, sind Wenige.

The laborers in the vineyard of him who gives the last reward are few.

Unser Einer muß von allen Sorten Menschen leben.—L.

One of us (our race) must live upon all sorts of people.

Aller guten Dinge sind drei. Sprichwort.

All good things are three. Adage. ("Three is the charm.")

11. The genitive is often used partitively with omission of the governing word:

Sorgsam brachte die Mutter des klaren herrlichen Weines.—G.

The mother carefully brought (some of) the clear excellent wine.

Er trank des Baches.—1 Kings xvii. 6.

He drank of the brook.

12. Formerly the genitive was often used as the predicate after the verb sein, but now seldom occurs:

Die Erde ist des Herrn.—1 Cor. x. 26.

The earth is the Lord's.

Gebt dem Kaiser was des Kaisers ist.—Mark, xii. 17.

Render to Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's.

Beispiele.

Examples.

Dieser Mensch ist eines Diebstahls sehr verdächtig.

This man is strongly suspected of theft.

Er ist seines Ranges verlustig erklärt' worden.

His rank has been declared forfeited.

Der Arme, der einer Sache bedürftig ist, ist gewöhnlich auch einer andern benöthigt.

The poor (man) who is destitute of one thing is commonly also (needy) in want of another.

Des Fahrens gewohnt', bin ich bald des Gehens müde.

Accustomed to ride, I am soon tired of walking.

Die Welt ist voller Widerspruch.—G.

The world is full of contradiction(s).

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Das Amt, –es, pl. Aemter, the office;
Anvertrauen, to intrust;
Der Aufenthalt, –es, the sojourn;
Bändigen, to break, tame;
Bedürf'tig, in need of;
Benö'thigt, in want of;
Die Beſtim'mung, –, pl. –en, destiny;
Bewußt', conscious;
Der Erſatz', –es, the restitution;
Erwei'chen, to soften;
Ewig, eternal;
Fähig, capable;
Froh, glad;
Einer Sache froh werden, to enjoy a thing;
Gewahr', aware;
Das Glück, –es, s, the fortune;
Der Haber, –s, the quarrel;
Herrſchen, to rule;
Die Hülfe, –, pl. –n, the aid, help;
Kraft, by virtue of;
Die Krone, –, pl. –n, the crown;
Mächtig, master of;
Der Sinn, –es, pl. –e, the mind;
Das Stadtleben, –s, the city life;
Die Stärke, –, the strength;
Der Tell, –s, (the) Tell;
Ueberdrüßig, tired, weary,
Die Ueberei'lung, –, pl. –en, the precipitancy;
Uneingedenk, unmindful;
Ungewohnt, unaccustomed;
Untreu, faithless;
Verbrin'gen, to spend, p. 346;
Verdäch'tig, suspected;
Verhaf'ten, to arrest;
Der Verluſt', –es, pl. –e, the loss;
Der Verrath', –es, the treason;
Würdig, worthy.

Exercise 122. Aufgabe 122.

1. Wenn das Pferd ſeiner Stärke bewußt wäre, könnte Niemand es bändigen. 2. Ich bin viel Geld ſchuldig, aber ich bin keines Verbrechens ſchuldig. 3. Er würde dieſe Arbeit, deren er ganz ungewohnt iſt, nicht thun, wenn er nicht des Geldes benöthigt wäre. 4. Iſt dein Bruder deiner Hülfe bedürftig, ſo frage nicht, ob er derſelben würdig iſt. 5. Mancher Menſch verbringt ſein Leben uneingedenk ſeiner ewigen Beſtimmung. 6. Solche Verluſte ſind eines Erſatzes fähig. 7. Kein Geiziger kann ſeines Lebens froh werden. 8. Er iſt ſeiner Uebereilung gewahr geworden. 9. Ich bin des Lebens und Herrſchens müde. 10. Der tapfere Tell iſt frei und ſeines Armes mächtig. 11. Er hat meinen Hut anſtatt des ſeinigen genommen. 12. Während meines Aufenthalts in D. wurde ich des Stadtlebens ganz überdrüßig. 13. Kraft ſeines Amtes verhaftete er alle, die er des Verraths verdächtig hielt. 14. Um ſeines Vaters Willen bleibt er in dieſer Stelle, obgleich er einer beſſern würdig iſt. 15. "Der König und die Kaiſerin des langen Haders müde, erweichten ihren harten Sinn und machten endlich Friede." 16. Dieſer Tag war es, um deſſentwillen er Krone und Leben dem untreuen Glücke anvertraute.

Digitized by Google

EXERCISE 123. Aufgabe 123.

1. We live on the other side of the city. 2. During the cold weather we remained at home. 3. He has taken your hat instead of his cap. 4. Those people are destitute of money, and in want of help. 5. They are not tired of walking, but they are weary of the road. 6. This is a labor to which I am entirely unaccustomed, and I do it only because I am in want of money. 7. Men often become guilty of a crime because they owe much money. 8. I am sure of his innocence, for I know that he is not capable of such a crime. 9. Every industrious man who is mindful of his destiny does not become tired of his life. 10. Our friends live within the city. 11. During our sojourn in Berlin my friend became master of the language. 12. For his friend's sake he remains here, although he is tired of city life. 13. He is conscious of his strength, sure of his aim, and certain of his cause. 14. This scholar is in want of money, and in need of good books. 15. By virtue of his office he has at length arrested the criminal. 16. He is not conscious of his strength. 17. This young stranger is worthy of a better situation.

LESSON LXII. Lection LXII.

REFLEXIVE VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE.

1. The following reflexive verbs require the genitive after the accusative (*or* dative) which they govern; namely,

Anmaßen, to usurp;	Entblö'ben, to dare;	Getrö'ſten, to be assured;
Annehmen, to protect;	Entbrech'en, to forbear;	Rühmen, to boast of;
Bedie'nen, to avail;	Enthal'ten, to abstain;	Schämen, to be ashamed;
Befleiſ'ßen *or* befleiſ'ßigen, to endeavor;	Entſchla'gen, to get rid of;	Ueberheben, to boast;
	Entſin'nen, to remember;	Unterfangen, to attempt;
Bege'ben, to yield up;	Erbar'men, to pity;	Unterwinden, to venture;
Bemäch'tigen, to seize;	Erfrech'en, to presume;	Vermeſ'ſen, to vaunt;
Bemeiſ'tern, to master;	Erin'nern, to recollect;	Verſe'hen, to expect;
Beſchei'den, to concede;	Erküh'nen, to dare;	Wehren, to resist;
Beſin'nen, to consider;	Erweh'ren, to keep off;	Weigern, to decline;
Entäu'ßern, to abstain;	Freuen, to rejoice;	Wundern, to wonder at.

Digitized by Google

Enthalten is often followed by von; erbarmen, freuen, schämen and wundern by über; and besinnen and freuen by auf:

Deiner heiligen Zeichen, O Wahrheit, hat der Betrug sich angemaßt.—S.
Thy holy signs, O Truth, deception has usurped.

Ich denk' des Ausdrucks noch recht wohl deß einst du selber dich von ihm bedientest.—L.
I still very well remember the expression that you once used in reference to him.

Sie erinnert sich ihres Versprechens.
She remembers her promise.

Der Landmann rühme sich des Pflugs. —S.
Let the peasant boast of the plow.

Obs.—Behalten, when referring to a thing *learned*, answers to remember:

Ich kann die Namen nicht behalten.
I can not *remember* the names.

2. Es gelüstet (*or* es lüstet), es jammert, es reuet, es lohnt sich, also take a genitive after the accusative:

Lohnt sich's der Mühe zu hoffen und streben?—S.
Is it worth the trouble to hope and to strive?

Und da er das Volk sah jammerte ihn desselben.—Matt. ix, 36.
But when he saw the multitudes, he was moved with compassion on them.

Es gelüstet is sometimes followed by nach (L. 57. 2.):

Wenn dich so nach Kämpfen lüstete.
If you so longed for contests.

TRANSITIVE VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE.

3. The following transitive verbs govern the genitive of a thing, and the accusative of a person:

Anklagen, to accuse;
Beleh'ren, to instruct;
Berau'ben, to bereave;
Beschuld'igen, to accuse;
Enthe'ben, to exempt from;
Entle'digen, to set free
Mahnen, to warn;
Ueberhe'ben, to exempt;
Vertröst'en, to put off, feed with hope;
Würdigen, to deign;
Zeihen, to accuse;
(See 4. next page.)
Entbin'den, to release;
Entblö'ßen, to uncover;
Entklei'den, to divest;
Entla'den, to discharge;
Entlas'sen, to dismiss;
Entseh'en, to displace,
Entwöh'nen, to disuse;
Lossprechen, to acquit;
Ueberfüh'ren, to convict,
Ueberzeu'gen, to convince;
Versich'ern, to assure, ascertain.

Welch anderer Sünde klagt das Herz dich an?—S.
Of what other sin does your (the) heart accuse you?

Einer großen Furcht sind wir entledigt. —S.
Of a great fear we are relieved.

Digitized by Google

Nicht Kleinmuths zeiht Der Cäsarn wer ihn kennt.—S.	He who knows Don Cæsar does not accuse him of want of courage.
Er überzeugte sie seiner Unschuld.	He convinced them of his innocence.

4. The last *eleven* of the above list are often followed by von; mahnen by an, and vertrösten by auf:

Wir sind von seiner Unschuld überzeugt.	We are convinced of his innocence.
Der Tod entbin'det von erzwung'nen Pflichten.—S.	Death releases from compulsory (compelled) duties.
Dies Manifest spricht los das Heer von des Gehor'sams Pflichten.—S.	This manifesto releases the army from the duties of obedience.

VERBS WITH THE GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

5. The following verbs, though sometimes construed with the genitive, oftener take, except the last two, the accusative:

Bedür'fen, to need;	Erwäh'nen, to mention;	Vergeſ'ſen, to forget;
Begeh'ren, to desire;	Genie'ßen, to enjoy;	Wahren, to preserve;
Brauchen, to need;	Gewah'ren, to perceive;	Wahrnehmen, to perceive;
Entbeh'ren, to lack;	Pflegen, to take care of;	
Entrath'en, to dispense with;	Schonen, to spare;	Erman'geln, to lack.
	Verfeh'len, to miss;	

Er bedarf des Geldes (*or* das Geld).	He needs (is in need of) money.
Erwähnte er der (*or* die) Sache?	Did he mention the matter?
Schone den (*or* des) Armen.	Spare the poor man.
Er kann dieſe (*or* dieſer) Sachen leicht entbehren.	He can easily do without (lack) these things.

6. Achten and warten govern the genitive or accusative:

Ich achte ihn (*or* ſeiner).	I regard (esteem) him.

With auf, achten signifies to pay attention to, to observe; and warten, with auf, to wait for:

Ich achte auf das was er ſagt.	I attend to what he is saying.
Sie warten auf uns.	They are waiting for us.

7. Harren governs the genitive, or is followed by the accusative with auf:

Wir harren deiner (*or* auf dich).	We wait for (depend on) thee.

8. Gedenken (*or* denken) governs the genitive, or is followed by the accusative with an:

Gedenke meiner (*or* an mich).	Think of (remember) me.

Digitized by Google

9. Lachen, ſpotten and walten govern the genitive, or are followed by the accusative with über:

Ich ſpotte ihrer (*or* über ſie).	I mock (deride) them.
Es ſind nicht Alle frei, die ihrer Ketten ſpotten.—G.	They are not all free who deride their chains.

10. Many other verbs and adjectives were formerly followed by the genitive, some of which are still retained:

Sie ſterben Hungers.	They are dying of hunger.
Sie ſind des Preiſes einig.	They are agreed as to the price.
Hier iſt meines Bleibens nicht.	Here is not my abiding-place.
Man hat ihn des Landes verwieſen.	He has been banished from the country.

Verbs governing the genitive, when used passively, take the impersonal form:

Deiner wird noch gedacht.	You are still remembered.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Schäme dich nicht der Sparſamkeit.	Be not ashamed of frugality.
Mehr als je, hebt ihn das Glück, denkt ſeiner alten Freunde der Ehrenmann. —S.	More than ever, does the man of honor, if prosperity elevates him, think of (remember) his friends.
Der Freunde wird nicht mehr gedacht'. —S.	The (your) friends are no longer remembered.
Wir hätten ſeiner Geſell'ſchaft entbeh'ren können.	We could have dispensed with his company.
O ſchonet mein!—S.	O, spare me.
Genie'ße des Lebens, aber mit Ehren.	Enjoy (the) life, but with honor.
Wenn ich ſeines Betra'gens auch geſchwei'gen wollte, muß ich ſeine Reden tadeln.	Even if I would be silent concerning his behavior, I must blame his talk.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Berau'ben, to rob;
Die Erhal'tung, –, the preservation;
Erin'nern, to remind;
Erwäh'nen, to mention;
Geden'ken, to think of, p. 346;
Herb, harsh, bitter;
Der Kampf, –es, pl. Kämpfe, contest;
Kaum, scarcely;
Der Körper, –s, pl. –, the body;
Der Kummer, –s, the grief;
Pflegen, to take care of, nurse;
Schonen, to spare;
Die Seele, –, pl. –n, the soul;
Die Sorge, –, pl. –n, the care;
Sorgfältig, careful;
Die Sphäre, –, pl. –n, the sphere;
Spotten, to deride;
Der Tod, –es, the death;
Die Veredl'ung, –, pl. –en, the improvement, ennoblement;
Verfeh'len, to miss;
Der Wechſel, –s, pl. –, vicissitude;
Die Wiege, –, pl. –n, the cradle;
Die Würze, –, pl. –n, the seasoning.

Digitized by Google

Exercise 124. Aufgab 124.

1. Es (L. 28. 9.) ſchont der Krieg auch (§ 156. 2. *h.*) nicht des Kindleins in der Wiege. 2. Der Kranke vergaß ſeiner Schmerzen, der Trauernde ſeines Kummers, die Armuth ihrer Sorgen. 3. Mancher Menſch pflegt ſo ſorgfältig ſeines Körpers, daß er ſeiner Seele kaum gedenkt. 4. Ihr fürchtet der Sphäre zu verfehlen, die eures Geiſtes würdig iſt. 5. Genieße des Lebens, aber gedenke auch des Todes. 6. Die Freuden der Erde bedürfen der Würze des herben Wechſels zu ihrer Erhaltung und Veredlung. 7. Wer des Unglücklichen nicht ſchont, ſondern deſſelben ſpotten kann, der verdient, daß man auch ſeiner im Unglück vergeſſe. 8. Ihres Freundes wartet noch ein ſchwerer Kampf. 9. Des Königs wurde heute gar nicht erwähnt. 10. Er erinnert ſich der Güte dieſes Fremden.

Exercise 125. Aufgabe 125.

1. He often thinks of thee, but them he has forgotten. 2. Among others, he mentioned his cousin. 3. Do not forget the poor, while you are enjoying so many pleasures. 4. He who ridicules the poor shows a bad heart. 5. Never forget the love and kindness of those who instructed you in your youth. 6. Your friend does not need your assistance. 7. We should forget our sorrows and remember our joys. 8. He spares the guilty and punishes the innocent. 9. The matter was not mentioned. 10. He has taken care of his sick friend. 11. The good man does not forget his friends.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Anklagen, to accuse;
Anſchuldigen, to accuse;
Anweſend, present;
Augenblicklich, instantly;
Befleiß'en, to be studious of;
Bege'ben, to renounce, p. 348;
Behal'ten, to retain, remember;
Bereits', already;
Beſchul'digen, to accuse;
Bezüch'tigen, to convict;
Entblößt', destitute;
Enthe'ben, to exempt from, 350;
Entle'digen, to release;
Entſchla'gen, to divest, p. 354;
Erbar'men, to pity;
Erklä'ren, to declare;
Die Feſſel, –, pl. –n, the chain;
Die Freiſprechung, –, pl. –en, the acquittal;
Der Gedanke, –ns, pl. –n, thought;
Geſchwei'gen, to pass over in silence, p. 354;
Jedoch', however;
Der Kerker, –s, pl –, the prison;
Die Landſtraße, –, pl. –n, highway;
Das Mittel, –s, pl. –, the means;
Der Rath, –es, the counsel, advice;
Der Raub, –es, the robbery;

Digitized by Google

Der Räuber, –s, pl. –, the robber;
Rühmen, to boast of;
Schämen (ſich), to be ashamed;
Die That, –, pl. –en, the deed;
Ueberführ'en, to convict;
Vielmehr, rather;
Vorig, last;
Würdigen, to vouchsafe.

Exercise 126. Aufgabe 126.

1. Sie erinnern ſich wohl (§ 151.) noch des jungen Mannes, der im vorigen Jahre des Raubes angeklagt war. 2. Er war beſchuldigt einen reichen Viehhändler auf der Landſtraße ſeines Geldes beraubt zu haben. 3. Man konnte ihn jedoch dieſes Verbrechens nicht überführen. 4. Er hatte ſich bereits aller Hoffnung einer Freiſprechung begeben und ſich des Gedankens entſchlagen, als unſchuldig erklärt zu werden. 5. Der Richter jedoch enthob ihn aller Sorge. 6. Nachdem er den Angeklagten aufgefordert hatte, gutes Muthes zu ſein und ſich alles Kummers zu entſchlagen, erklärte er: Ich bin der vollen Meinung, daß man dieſen jungen Mann nicht des Raubes bezüchtigen kann. 7. Denn nicht Jeder, der ſich des Bettelns ſchämt und aller Mittel entblößt iſt, wird ein Räuber. 8. Ich will ſeines guten Betragens geſchweigen, denn er hat ſich immer eines ordentlichen Lebens befliſſen. 9. Ich erinnere euch aber der Thaten im letzten Kriege, deren er ſich mit Recht rühmen kann. 10. Freuet euch ſeiner Freiſprechung und würdiget ihn eurer Freundſchaft. 11. Spottet ſeiner nicht, weil er im Kerker war, ſondern erbarmet euch vielmehr ſeiner und gedenket ſeiner Leiden. 12. Jeder, der ſeiner lacht, ſchäme ſich ſeines eigenen Betragens. 13. Alle Anweſenden freuten ſich dieſer Rede, und man entledigte augenblicklich den Angeſchuldigten ſeiner Feſſeln. 14. Ich kann mich dieſer Leute erinnern, aber ich kann ihre Namen nicht behalten. 15. Er freute ſich des klugen Raths und ging hinaus und begab ſich an die Arbeit.

Exercise 127. Aufgabe 127.

1. The old soldier boasts of his valiant deeds. 2. Do you remember the promise that you gave me? 3. I do not remember that I gave you a promise. 4. Can you remember all the long words that you have found in this book? 5. Have you accused any one of this crime? 6. Who has robbed the traveler of his money? 7. He has been convinced of his error, but convicted of no crime. 8. The tyrant avails himself

Digitized by Google

9. An honest man would be ashamed of such an action. 10. Do you remember the old man whom we met in the city? 11. Do you remember the old gentleman with whom we traveled from Berlin to Bremen? 12. Yes, I still remember him. 13. It is difficult for those who have a bad memory to remember the rules of a language. 14. Are you of the opinion that he is guilty of this crime? 15. I remember the man who accused your servant of robbery. 16. We rejoice to leave the country of the tyrant. 17. Our enemies have robbed us of our money, but they can not rob us of our honor. 18. The happy parents greatly (ſehr) rejoiced to see their lost child again. 19. He remembers still the happy days when he went to school with these children.

LESSON LXIII. Lection LXIII.

ADJECTIVES WITH THE DATIVE.

1. The dative is governed by many adjectives, and is then usually rendered by our objective preceded by *to* or *for;* sometimes by other prepositions. The dative generally precedes the adjective by which it is governed:

Es iſt den Menſchen leichter zu ſchmeicheln als zu loben.—R.	It is easier for man to flatter than to praise.
Weh' Dem, der zu der Wahrheit geht durch Schuld; ſie wird ihm nimmermehr erfreulich ſein.—S.	Woe to him who comes to the truth through guilt, it can never be a source of pleasure to him.
Es iſt mir erinnerlich.	I can remember it.
Es iſt mir unvergeßlich.	I can not forget it.
"Weh dem armen Opfer, wenn derſelbe Mund der das Geſetz gab, auch das Urtheil ſpricht."	Woe to (woe is) the poor victim, if the same mouth that gave the law also pronounces the sentence.
Wohl Dem, der frei von Schuld und Fehle bewahrt die kindlich reine Seele.—S.	Happy he (well to him) who, free from guilt and error, preserves his soul pure as a child.

2. The dative is often substituted for a possessive pronoun, or for the genitive of a noun:

Digitized by Google

Mir roſten in der Halle Helm und Schild (*for* mein Helm ꝛc.).—S.	My helmet and my shield are rusting in the hall.
Der Gott des Sieges wandelt ihr zur Seite.—S.	The god of victory walks at her side.

3. The first and second persons of pronouns, in the dative, are often used to indicate, in an indefinite manner, some special participation or sympathy on the part of the individuals which they represent:

Es ſind Euch gar trotzige Kamera'den. —S.	They are right insolent fellows (for you).
"Damals waren wir dir ſehr vergnügt'."	At that time we were very joyous.

4. The dative, with bei, von and zu, often denotes one's place of residence or business, and is rendered by our possessive preceded by *at*, *from* or *to*:

Der Mantel iſt beim Schneider.	The cloak is *at* the tailor's.
Er geht zu ſeinem Oheim.	He is going *to* his uncle's.
Sie kommt von ihrer Tante.	She is coming *from* her aunt's.

The dative of the personal pronouns is used in the same manner; usually rendered by the possessive case of our pronoun followed by a noun:

Sie wohnen bei uns.	They live at our house.
Wir gehen heute zu ihm.	We are going to his house to-day.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Und erregt ihm den Grimm in der Seele.—S–ß.	And excites rage (anger) in his soul.
Er iſt bei ſeinem Freunde.	He is at his friend's.
Wohnen Sie bei ihnen?	Do you live at their house?
Sei deinen Freunden erge'ben und deinen Feinden gefäl'lig.	Be devoted to thy friends and obliging to thy enemies.
Jeder rechtliche Mann iſt dem Guten geneigt' und dem Böſen abgeneigt.	Every upright man is inclined to (the) good, and disinclined to (the) evil.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Charak'ter, –s, pl. –te're, the character;	Das Gegentheil, –s, the contrary,
Dankbar, thankful, grateful;	Gehor'ſam, obedient;
Die Falſchheit, –, pl. –en, falsehood;	Das Gemüth', –es, pl. –er, mind
Gefähr'lich, dangerous;	Gleich, like, equal;
	Gnädig, gracious·

Digitized by Google

Grundsatz, –es, pl. –sätze, the principle;
Die Heuchelei, –, pl. –en, hypocrisy;
Die Königin, –, pl. –nen, the queen;
Lasterhaft, wicked, vicious;
Lästig, burdensome, troublesome;
Ledig, free;
Lieb, dear, pleasant;
Das Lob, –es, the praise;
Die Neigung, –, pl. –en, inclination;
Der Rang, –es, pl. Ränge, the rank;
Schmeichelhaft, flattering;
Der Sonnenschein, –s, the sunshine;
Das Spanien, –s, (the) Spain;
Der Tadel, –s, the blame;
Ueberle'gen, superior;
Unerträglich, intolerable;
Unterthan (adj.), subject;
Unvergeßlich, memorable; es ist mir —, I can never forget;
Vereh'ren, to honor;
Verhaßt', hateful;
Das Wachsthum, –es, vegetation;
Werth, worth, dear;
Widrig, repugnant;

Exercise 128. Aufgabe 128.

1. Ein gutes Kind ist seinen Eltern gehorsam und dankbar. 2. Das Rauchen ist denen sehr unangenehm, die es nicht gewohnt sind. 3. Mir ist es lieb, daß ich dir in dieser Sache nützlich sein kann. 4. Das Wetter war uns gestern sehr günstig, aber heute ist es ganz das Gegentheil. 5. Gut zu werden ist dem Lasterhaften schwer, denn er bleibt gewöhnlich seinen Neigungen treu. 6. Dem Königreich Spanien ist Frankreich überlegen. 7. Was ihn euch widrig macht, macht ihn mir werth. 8. Ihr seid dieser Königin nicht unterthan. 9. Vieles, was uns nicht gefährlich ist, ist uns doch sehr lästig. 10. Im Range ist er seinem Bruder gleich, im Charakter seinem Vater ähnlich. 11. Nichts ist mir so sehr verhaßt als Falschheit und Heuchelei. 12. Du bist des Leibes ledig, Gott sei der Seele gnädig. 13. Warum ist dieses alte Buch unsern Freunden so lieb? 14. Es ist mir unvergeßlich, wie sehr ich dir verbunden bin. 15. Den Soldaten war das Lob ihres verehrten Feldherrn sehr schmeichelhaft. 16. Dieser Aufenthalt ist ihm fast unerträglich geworden. 17. Tadel und Lob sind dem Gemüthe des Menschen, was Sturm und Sonnenschein dem Wachsthum sind. 18. Ich wohne bei meinem Onkel.

Exercise 129. Aufgabe 129.

1. These things may be useful and agreeable to you, but they are very unpleasant to me, and injurious to my friends. 2. Every good man is grateful to his benefactors. 3. This weather is very unfavorable for us. 4. It is very unpleasant to me that I am obliged to remain here so long. 5. Every good citizen is obedient to the just laws of his country. 6.

Digitized by Google

Will this happy country ever be subject to a king? 7. What is more hateful to a good man than hypocrisy? 8. I am much obliged to you that you have been useful to my friends in this matter. 9. The soldiers were with blind obedience devoted to their leader. 10. This house is very similar to the one in which you live. 11. No country in the world is superior to ours. 12. The few friends that this man has are very dear to him. 13. Many things are burdensome which are not dangerous to us. 14. Those are to be called good, who remain true to their principles. 15. The praise of a good man is very flattering to us. 16. He is gracious to those who are obedient to him. 17. Is he at his brother's?

LESSON LXIV. Lection LXIV.

VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

1. The dative is governed:

a. By transitive verbs, which in addition to the direct object (in the accusative), require the object to be specified, for or in relation to which an action is performed. In this use, as also with gehören, ſcheinen and weichen, the dative is rendered by our objective with a preposition expressed or implied:

Er nahm es ihnen weg.	He took it away *from* them.
Dieſer Hut gehört mir.	This hat belongs *to* me.

b. Many German verbs are called intransitive, and govern the dative, whose English equivalents are transitive, and govern the *objective;* as, antworten, befehlen, begegnen, danken, dienen, drohen, fehlen, fluchen, folgen, fröhnen, frommen, gebühren gefallen, gehorchen, gereichen, gleichen, helfen, huldigen, lohnen, mangeln, nahen, nutzen, paſſen, rathen, ſchaden, ſchmeicheln, trauen, trotzen, wehren, ziemen:

Wer dir ſchmeichelt, ſchadet dir, wenn du ihm glaubſt.	He who flatters you injures you, if you believe him.

c. With the impersonally used verbs es ahnet, es däucht, es

Digitized by Google

dünkt, es ekelt, es graut, es ſchwindelt, es träumt, as also es wird es iſt, the dative is frequently rendered by our nominative:

Höret, was mir geträumt hat.—Gen. xxxvii. 6.	Hear what I have dreamed (hear, I pray you, this dream which I have dreamed).

d. Intransitive verbs, governing the dative, take, when used passively, the impersonal form; the logical subject being put in the dative, in which position (like the impersonal verbs, see *c.*) it is rendered by the nominative:

Es wurde ihm (*or* ihm wurde) geſchadet.	He was injured.
Dennoch wurde dem Adel mehr geſchmeichelt, als wirklicher Einfluß gegeben. —S.	Still, to the nobility, there was accorded more of flattery than of actual influence.

2. Some verbs govern the dative or the accusative, according to their signification:

Wir riefen ihnen, aber ſie hörten uns nicht.	We called them (to them) but they did not hear us.
Wir riefen ſie in das Haus.	We called them into the house.

3. Koſten is generally used with a dative and accusative; sometimes, however, with two accusatives:

"Es würde Freiheit mir und Leben koſten."	It would cost me freedom and life.

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Endlich gelang' es ihm ſeinem Freunde die Augen zu öffnen.	Finally he succeeded in opening his friend's eyes.
Traue nicht jedem Menſchen, und am allerwenigſten denjenigen, die dir ſchmeicheln.	Trust not every one, and least of all those who flatter thee.
Die Ermahnung eines Freundes gilt mir viel, und ich folge ihr gern.	The admonition of a friend is of much value to me, and I follow it gladly.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Abſagen, to renounce;	Beklag'en (ſich), to complain;
Anhangen, to adhere to;	Beiwohnen, to be present at, to take part in;
Angehören, to belong;	Danken, to thank;
Antworten, to answer;	Edelmüthig, noble;
Beikommen, to get at;	Eigenſinnig, obstinate;
Beiſtehen, to assist;	Die Feindſeligkeit, - pl. -en, hostility.
Beiſtimmen, to assent to;	

Digitized by Google

Gehor'chen, to obey;
Helfen, to help, avail;
Der Herzog, –es, pl. –e, the duke;
Das Intereſſ'e, –s, pl. –n, interest;
Der Löwe, –n, pl. –n, the lion;
Mächtig, powerful, mighty;
Der Miniſter, –s, pl. –, minister;
Oeffnen, to open;
Das Oeſterreich, –s, (the) Austria;
Paſſen, to fit;
Schaden, to injure;
Verpflich'ten, to bind (by oath),
Das Vorhaben, –s, the design;
Weh thun, to hurt;
Widerſprech'en, to contradict;
Zugehören, to belong to.

EXERCISE 130. Aufgabe 130.

1. Ich danke Ihnen, daß Sie mir geholfen haben. 2. Er würde mir gewiß ſchaden, wenn er mir beikommen könnte. 3. Dieſer Hut paßt mir beſſer als jener. 4. Was fehlt Ihnen, warum widerſprechen Sie Ihrem Freunde? 5. Es fehlt mir nichts; ob ihm etwas fehlen mag, weiß ich nicht. 6. Der Knabe hat ſich in den Finger geſchnitten. 7. Ganz Oeſterreich lag dem edelmüthigen Ungarn zu Füßen. 8. Dieſem eigenſinnigen Menſchen iſt gar nicht zu helfen. 9. Es thut mir ſehr leid, daß er ſich weh gethan hat. 10. Dem König, welcher ſich über dieſe Feindſeligkeit beklagte, wurde geantwortet, "der Kaiſer habe der Soldaten zu viel; er müſſe ſeinen guten Freunden damit helfen." 11. Endlich gelang es dem Miniſter, dem König über ſein wahres Intereſſe die Augen zu öffnen. 12. Wenn in alten Zeiten ein Mächtiger dem andern feind war, ſo ſagte er demſelben ab. 13. Aus allen Orten, die ihm angehörten, ſammelte dieſer mächtige Herr die Männer, die ihm anhingen. 14. Nachdem ſie ſeinem Vorhaben beigeſtimmt hatten, verpflichteten ſie ſich ihm beizuſtehen und dem Kriege beizuwohnen. 15. Solch ein mächtiger Herr war Heinrich der Löwe, Herzog von Baiern, welchem große Länder zugehörten und Tauſende von Kriegern gehorchten.

EXERCISE 131. Aufgabe 131.

1. Why do you not answer him? 2. I have answered him, but he has not answered me. 3. Do they wish to injure their friends? 4. They have assisted us, and we will assist them. 5. Will you not help this boy? he has hurt himself. 6. The soldiers that adhered to him, bound themselves to take part in the war. 7. He calls them obstinate, because they will not assent to his design. 8. Do you know what ails those people? 9. This hat fits me better than the other one. 10. He does

Digitized by Google

not contradict them, though he thinks that they are wrong. 11. How was the king answered when he complained of certain hostilities? 12. Is it my duty to obey such men, and to help them? 13. Have you succeeded in finding them? 14. Do you succeed in learning Spanish?

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Ein kleiner Mann, ein großes Pferd; ein kurzer Arm, ein langes Schwert, muß eins dem andern helfen.—U.	A small man, a large horse, a short arm, a long sword must help each other (*i. e.* ought to go together).
Eine Frau, der die Erfüllung ihrer Pflichten am Herzen liegt, zeigt ihre Liebe zum Schönen nicht in einem koſtbaren Anzuge, ſondern in der guten Einrichtung ihres Hausweſens. —W.	A woman who has at heart the fulfillment of her duties, shows her love of the beautiful, not in costly apparel, but in the appropriate arrangement of her household.

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Der Befehl, –es, pl. –e, the command, order;
Die Acht, –, pl. –en, the outlawry;
Drohen, to threaten;
Das Elend, –es, –s, the misery;
Erlie'gen, to succumb, p. 350;
Erwei'ſen, to show, render, 358;
Die Fami'lie, –, pl. –n, the family;
Fluchen, to curse;
Fügen (ſich), to submit;
Gebüh'ren, to be due;
Gefal'len, to please, p. 348;
Gleichen, to resemble, be like;
Genü'gen, to suffice, satisfy;
Der Herzogshut, –es, pl. –hüte, the ducal hat;
Der Kriegszug, –es, pl. –züge, campaign;
Mißlingen, to fail, miscarry;
Schweben, to wave;
Der Stolz, –es, the pride;
Trauen, to confide in;
Trotzen, to defy;
Uebel wollen, to bear a grudge;
Ueberzie'hen, to invade, p. 358;
Das Verlan'gen, –s, the demand;
Die Vernunft', –, the reason:
Widerſte'hen, to resist, p. 356;
Widerſtre'ben, to oppose, to struggle against;
Zürnen, to be angry;
Zuvor'kommen, to anticipate.

Exercise 132.	Aufgabe 132.

1. Doch die Krone eines Kaiſers ſchwebte ihm immer vor Augen. 2. Der Herzogshut genügte ihm nicht. 3. Er traute ſeiner eignen Kraft und trotzte dem Kaiſer. 4. Der Kaiſer forderte ihn auf ſich ſeinen Befehlen zu fügen, und drohte ihm mit der Acht. 5. Doch dem Herzoge, der einem Löwen glich, galt weder Vernunft noch guter Rath. 6. Ihm gefiel nur ſeine eigne Meinung, und er widerſtrebte dem Verlangen, dem Kaiſer eine Ehre zu erweiſen, die demſelben

Digitized by Google

gebührte. 7. Der Kaiſer, der dem Herzoge ſchon ſeit langer Zeit übel wollte und ihm wegen ſeines Stolzes zürnte, kam ihm zuvor und überzog ihn mit Krieg. 8. Der Kriegszug mißlang dem Kaiſer nicht. 9. Der Herzog konnte der feindlichen Macht nicht widerſtehen und erlag dem Kaiſer in der Schlacht. 10. Er mußte nach England fliehen und nur ſeine Familie und einige Freunde folgten ihm. 11. Hier entſagte er jeder Hoffnung und fluchte dem Stolze, als der Urſache ſeines Elends.

EXERCISE 133. Aufgabe 133.

1. Threaten them as you will, they will never succumb to you. 2. Will no one render them this service? 3. These men will not submit to his commands. 4. What does not please them is of no value to them. 5. All that he has heard and seen does not satisfy him. 6. They will not be able to resist so powerful an enemy. 7. The laws of nature are opposed in vain, there no resistance avails. 8. Why do you defy him? 9. He is angry at his friends. 10. Those people will injure you if you confide in them. 11. He anticipated us in every thing. 12. So great an honor is due to no man. 13. These children resemble their parents. 14. He struggled against the demand, but could not resist his enemy. 15. Your advice is of no value to him, for he can not renounce his evil company.

LESSON LXV. Lection LXV.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

1. Ander, with words denoting time, signifies *next, following* and never refers, like *other*, to indefinite past time:

Er geht übermorgen und wir den andern Tag.	He goes the day after to-morrow and we the next day.
Der Mann, der vor einigen Tagen hier war, iſt krank.	The man that was here the other day (a few days ago) is sick.

a. Instead of ander, as the equivalent of *other*, in denoting something additional, the adverb noch is employed:

Nimm noch einen Mantel, einer iſt nicht genug.	Take another cloak (in addition to this), one is not enough.

Digitized by Google

Nimm einen andern Mantel, dieser ist zu dünn.	Take another cloak (instead of this), this is too thin.

b. The adverb anders, *otherwise*, *differently*, *else*, sometimes occurs in the signification of *namely*, *that is*:

Wer einen Zweck will, muß auch die Mittel wollen, wenn er anders verständig ist.—Gel.	He who wishes a result must also wish for the means, *that is*, if (provided) he is judicious.

2. Beide, unlike *both*, may refer to objects taken separately; with nicht or kein, beide often answers to *neither*, *not either*:

Sorge für die Gesundheit deines Leibes und deiner Seele, aber verzärtle beide nicht.—Ke.	Take care of the health of (thy) body and soul, but do not pamper either.
Welches von den beiden Pferden wird er kaufen?	Which one of the two (both) horses will he buy?
Er wird keines von beiden kaufen.	He will buy neither of them.

3. In referring to two things, different in kind, the neuter form singular, beides, is often employed:

Er hatte den Ring und die Feder, aber er hat beides verloren.	He had the ring and the pen, but he has lost both.
Sie irren sich, denn beides liegt auf seinem Tische.	You mistake (yourself), for both are (each is) lying on his table.

4. Etwas is sometimes used before nouns in the singular, and before adjectives, in the signification of *a little*, *somewhat*:

Sie brachten ihm etwas Milch.	They brought him a little milk.
Die Tage werden etwas länger.	The days are getting somewhat longer.

5. So Etwas signifies *such a thing*, *something of the kind*:

Ich hatte schon so Etwas gehört, ehe er ankam.	I had (already) heard something of the kind before he arrived.

6. Irgend denotes great indefiniteness; it is often followed by the indefinite article, and generally rendered *any*, *some*, *whatever*:

Er hatte immer irgend eine unangenehme Wahrheit auf der Lippe.—Kbe.	He always had some disagreeable truth on his lips (lip).

7. Viel and wenig, in referring to a quantity, or to a number taken collectively, are not usually inflected, except when preceded by the definite article, or an adjective pronoun:

Der Jüngling hat sein vieles Geld und seine vielen Freunde verloren.	The youth has lost his large sum of money and his many friends.
Wie viel Uhr ist es?	What o'clock is it?

In the last example the phrase, in German as in English, is abbre-

Digitized by Google

viated; the full form being, wie viel auf der Uhr iſt es? how much of the clock (o'clock) is it? The time may be reckoned either from a preceding or a following hour:

Es iſt ein Viertel nach drei; *or*	It is a quarter past three; *or*
Es iſt ein Viertel auf vier.	It is a quarter on (*or* toward) four.
Es fehlt ein Viertel an (*or* bis) acht.	It lacks a quarter to eight; *or*
Es iſt drei Viertel auf acht.	It is ¾ toward 8 (*i. e.*, it lacks ¼ of 8).

After halb, auf is omitted; as, es iſt halb acht, it is half (toward) ight; *i. e.*, half past seven.

8. Viel and wenig are declined, when they refer to a number taken as *individuals;* or *substantively* to persons; and, often, when preceded in the singular by prepositions:

Viele Menſchen trinken keinen Wein.	Many men drink no wine.
Wenige Menſchen ſind ganz zufrieden.	Few men are perfectly contented.

9. When declined in the singular, except as above specified, viel and wenig signify many or few *kinds:*

Er trinkt viel Wein, aber nicht vielen Wein.	He drinks much wine, but not many kinds of wine.

10. The superlative of viel (meiſt) is often preceded by the definite article, or a possessive pronoun:

Unſere meiſten Leiden ſind die Folge unſerer eignen Fehler.	Most of our sufferings are the consequence of our own errors.

11. Alle, all, in some phrases, is equivalent to *all gone, spent, wasted;* with beide it does not require translation:

Sein Geld iſt alle.	His money is *all gone.*
Alle Beide waren krank.	Both (of them) were sick.

12. The plural of all, applied to divisions of time, answers to *every.* The English *all,* in such phrases as *all day, all the week,* etc., is rendered by ganz:

Er geht alle Tage.	He goes *every* day (all days).
Er war den ganzen Tag hier.	He was here *all* (the whole) day

Beiſpiele.	Examples.
Die Wahrheit und die Roſe ſind ſehr ſchön, aber beide haben Dornen.	(The) truth and the rose are very beautiful, but both have thorns.
Ich habe ihn nie mit irgend einem Worte beleidigt.	I have never offended him by a single word.
Zuweilen eſſen die Rennthiere nichts anderes als Moos.	Sometimes the reindeer ea. nothing but (else than) moss.
Erin'nere dich der vielen Wohlthaten die ich dir erwies.	Remember the many good deeds (favors) that I showed you.
Auf ſolche Art will ich nicht reich werden.	I do not wish to become rich in such a manner.
Unſer Alles iſt auf dem Spiel.	Our all is at stake

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES.

Allerbeſt, very best;
Ausgeben, to spend, p. 348;
Beide, both;
Der Bekann'te, –n, pl. –n, the acquaintance;
Einiger, some (§ 52. 3);
Einſtellen, to appear;
Der Empö'rer, –s, pl. –, the rebel;
Erben, to inherit;
Die Flaſche, –, pl. –n, flask, bottle;
Die Folge, –, pl. –n, consequence;
Der Geizhals, –ſes, pl. –hälſe, the miser;
Das Mainz, (the) Mayence;
Das Mannheim, –s, (the) Manheim,
Schlimm, bad, sad;
Der Ueberrock, –es, pl. –röcke, the overcoat;
Das Vergnü'gen, –s, the pleasure;
Vorſetzen, to place before.

Exercise 134. Aufgabe 134.

1. Er heißt alles [a] Feinde und Empörer, was nicht mit ihm iſt. 2. Verſtehſt du alles, was ich dir ſage? 3. Wir alle [a] wollen mit dir gehen. 4. Der Bauer ſetzte uns den allerbeſten [d] Wein vor. 5. Er will noch Aepfel und eine andere Flaſche Wein. 6. Wollen Sie Bücher kaufen? 7. Ich habe ſchon welche [b] gekauft, aber ich will noch einige kaufen. 8. Beides ereignete ſich und die ſchlimmen Folgen von Beidem ſtellten ſich ein. 9. Das Wetter iſt ſchon etwas (or ein wenig) kälter geworden. 10. Wer hätte ſo etwas geglaubt? 11. Kennſt du irgend Jemanden, der ſo etwas thun würde? 12. Ein Jeder [c] von ſeinen Freunden hat ihn verlaſſen. 13. Er hat viel Wein getrunken und viel Geld dafür ausgegeben. 14. Das viele Geld, das er erbte, hat er ausgegeben für den vielen Wein, den er getrunken hat. 15. Lerne nicht auf einmal Vieles, ſondern viel. 16. Jeden Tag, den Sie zu uns kommen wollen, wollen wir Alle mit Ihnen ſpazieren gehen. 17. Dieſer Ueberrock iſt zu klein, nehmen Sie ihn weg und bringen Sie mir einen andern (see 1. *a.*).

Exercise 135. Aufgabe 135.

1. The weather is so cold that I must have two overcoats, bring me another one (see 1. *a.*). 2. As soon as my money was all gone I had no longer any friends. 3. Which of these carriages shall you buy? 4. I shall not buy either of them, for neither of them pleases me. 5. If you wait another day we will all go with you. 6. Do you wish to buy any thing more?

a. § 53. 3; *b.* L. 39. 4; *c.* L. 43. 3; *d.* L. 32. 7.

Digitized by Google

7. I have a little money and he has a great deal. 8. Many of my acquaintances reside in this city. 9. The few friends that he has are more powerful than his many enemies. 10. Who has more enemies and fewer friends, more trouble and less pleasure than the miser? 11. I understand all that you say and can read all the letters that you have written. 12. I would like to buy a few pears and a few more apples. 13. To-morrow I shall go to Manheim, and the next day to Mayence. 14. Every book that I have is in this room. 15. Do you wish to buy some more horses? 16. The weather is becoming somewhat warmer.

LESSON LXVI. Lection LXVI.

PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE DATIVE.

1. Aus, § 112.

Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinne.	*Out of* sight, *out of* mind.
Er ist aus Berlin.	He is *from* Berlin.
Ich that es aus Gehorsam gegen Sie.	I did it *through* obedience to you.
Aus bloßem Verdacht soll man nicht so handeln.	*On* mere suspicion one should not act thus.
Das sieht man aus dem Briefe.	One sees that *by* the letter.
Aus diesem Grunde bleibt er.	*For* this reason he remains.
Er lief aus allen Kräften.	He ran *with* all his might.
Was ist aus ihm geworden?	What has become *of* him?
Aus Freunden werden oft Feinde, seltener Freunde aus Feinden.	Friends often become enemies, enemies less frequently friends.
Er that es aus freien Stücken.	He did it of his own accord.
Sie wissen weder aus noch ein.	They are entirely at a loss.
Er hat sich aus dem Staube gemacht.	He has run away ("cut sticks").
Es ist aus mit ihm.	It is all over with him.
Er schrieb seinem Bruder von München aus.	He wrote *to* his brother *from* Munich.

2. Außer, § 112. 2.

Nichts ist so sehr unser eigen, als unsere Gedanken; alles Andere ist außer uns.—W.	Nothing is so much (so completely) our own as our thoughts; all else is *without* (*exterior to*) us.
Wer nichts lieben will als sein Ebenbild, hat außer sich nichts zu lieben.—R.	He who will love nothing but his own image, has *except* (beside) himself, nothing to love.
Er war außer sich vor Wuth.	He was *beside* himself with rage.
Ich bin ganz außer Athem.	I am entirely *out of* breath.
Von dieser Gewohnheit geht er nicht ab außer wenn Fremde bei ihm sind.	From this custom he varies not, *except* when strangers are with him

Digitized by Google

3. Bei, § 112. 3.

Ich habe kein Geld bei mir.	I have no money *with* (*about*) me.
Sie ſtanden bei mir.	They stood *near* (*by*) me.
Ich leſe nicht gern bei der Lampe.	I do not like to read *by* the lamp.
Bei dieſer Arbeit gewinnt man nicht viel.	One earns (gains) but little *at* this work.
Es iſt nicht Sitte bei uns.	It is not the custom *among* (*with*) us.
Er iſt nicht bei Sinnen.	He is not *in* his senses.
Bei aller ſeiner Klugheit läßt er ſich zur Thorheit verleiten.	*With* all his prudence he allows himself to be seduced into folly.
Bei dem ſtarken Winde griff das Feuer ſchnell um ſich.	*In consequence* of the high wind the fire spread rapidly.
Er verbot es bei Lebensſtrafe.	He forbade it *on* pain of death.
Wir ſprachen bei ihm ein.	We called *on* him.
Ich ließ mich bei ihm anmelden.	I had myself announced *to* him.
Wenn Jemand beſcheiden bleibt, nicht beim Lobe, ſondern beim Tadel, iſt er es.—R.	If one remains modest, not *under* praise, but *under* censure, then he (really) is so.

4. Entgegen, § 112. 5.

Es iſt klug und kühn dem unvermeidlichen Uebel entgegen zu gehen.—G.	It is prudent and bold to go *toward* (*to meet*) unavoidable evil.
Dem alten Manne, der in zwanzig Schlachten dem Tod für Sie entgegen ging, fällt es doch hart ſich ſo entfernt zu ſehen.—S.	But, to the old man who in twenty battles *encountered* (*went to meet*) death for you, it seems hard to find himself thus removed.

5. Gegenüber, § 112. 6.

Die Kirche ſteht dem alten Schloſſe gegenüber.	The church stands *opposite to* (*over against*) the old castle.

Sometimes gegen *precedes, and* über *follows the dative:*

Es ſteht gegen dem Schloſſe über.	It stands *opposite* the castle.

6. Mit, 112. 7.

Er ſpielt mit den Kindern.	He plays *with* the children.
Sie ſchreibt mit der Feder.	She writes *with* the pen.
Er nahm es mit Gewalt.	He took it *by* force.
Mit Gott wollen wir Thaten thun. Ps. lx. 12.	*Through* God we shall do valiantly.
Mit Tagesanbruch reiſte er ab.	*At* the break of the day he set out.
Dieſes Bild hat große Aehnlichkeit mit dem Fremden.	This picture has (bears) a great resemblance *to* the stranger.
Er arbeitete mit mir.	He worked (in company) *with* me.
Er blieb bei mir.	He remained *with* (*by* or *near*) me.
Er wachte mit mir bei dem Kranken.	He watched *with* me (helped me watch) *with* the sick man.
Ich lernte mit ihm.	I learned *with* him (when he did)

7. *After* mit *compounded with verbs, a pronoun is often required to be supplied in translation:*

Bringe ihn mit wenn du kommſt.	Bring him *with you*, if you come.
Wenn Sie gehen, gehe ich mit.	If you go, I will go *with you*.

Digitized by Google

Wenn er geht, gehe ich mit.	If he goes I shall go *with him*.
Wollen Sie uns nicht mitnehmen?	Will you not take us along?
Das geht nicht zu mit rechten Dingen.	There is some witchcraft in it.
Ich will es mit ihm aufnehmen.	I do not fear him.
Er fiel mit Fleiß nieder.	He fell down intentionally.
Mit nichten.	*By* no means.
Sie macht alle Moden mit.	She follows all the fashions.
"Eile mit Weile."	"Slow and sure" (hasten slowly).

8. Nach, § 112. 8.

Er ist der Erste nach Ihnen.	He is the first *after* you.
Sie schickten nach dem Arzte.	They sent *for* (*after*) the physician.
Sie dürstet nach Ruhm.	She thirsts *for* fame.
Er erkundigte sich nach ihnen.	He enquired *after* (*for, about*) them.
Als ihn des Amtes Pflichten bald darauf nach Frankreich riefen, sandte er mich nach Rheims.—S.	As the duties of his office soon afterward called him *to* France, he sent me *to* Rheims.
Sie schossen nach ihm.	They shot *at* him.
Wie schielt er nach den Händen!—L.	How he looks (peers) *at* my hands!
Nach der Beschreibung muß es sehr schön sein.	*According* to the description it must be very beautiful.
Er handelt nach seiner Ueberzeugung.	He acts *in accordance with* his conviction.
Sie spielt nicht nach Noten.	She does not play *by* note(s).
Sie zeichnet nach der Natur.	She draws *from* nature.
Das Fleisch schmeckt nach Zwiebeln.	The meat tastes *of* onions.

9. Nach *frequently follows the word that it governs:*

Seiner Meinung nach haben wir ganz recht.	*According to* his opinion we are perfectly right.
Ich kenne sie nur dem Namen nach.	I only know them *by* name.

10. Ob *is generally construed with the dative; sometimes with the genitive:*

Es ist mein Geist der ungesehen ob deinem Scheitel schwebt.—P.	It is my spirit that, unseen, hovers over (the crown of) thy head.
Sie ehrten ihn ob seines Muthes.	They honored him on account of his courage.

11. Seit.

Seit dem Tage, da ich die Kinder Israel aus Aegypten führte.	*Since* the time that I brought up the children of Israel out of Egypt.
Er ist seit einem Jahre krank.	He has been sick *for* (*since*) a year.
Ich habe ihn seit zehn Jahren nicht gesehen.	I have not seen him *for* (*these*) ten years.

12. Von.

Er nahm das Buch von dem Tische.	He took the book *from* the table.
Vom Herrn kommt, was die Zunge reden soll.—Ps. xvi. 1.	The answer of the tongue is *from* the Lord.
Man kommt von einem Orte worauf (wo man), und aus einem Orte worin man sich befindet.	One comes *from* a place in (at which, and *out* of a place *in* which one is.

Digitized by Google

Er kommt von dem Markte.	He comes *from* the market.
Ich komme aus der Oper.	I come *from* (*out of*) the opera.
Was sagt man von ihm?	What is said *of* him?
Sie singen von Lenz und Liebe.—U.	They sing *of* spring-time and love.
Dieser Tisch ist von Ebenholz.	This table is (made) *of* ebony.
Und ließen sich taufen von ihm.	And were baptized *of* (*by*) him.
Er ist ein Schwede von Geburt.	He is a Swede *by* birth.
Von wem ist dieses Gemälde?	*By* whom is this painting?
Er war von Wonne trunken.	He was intoxicated *with* delight.
Er ist klein von Person.	He is small *in* stature.
Du sollst Gott, deinen Herrn, lieben von ganzem Herzen.	Thou shalt love the Lord thy God, *with* all thy heart.
Er lebt von seinen Einkünften.	He lives *on* his income.
Es ging gut von Statten	It went *off* (succeeded) well.
Er that es von freien Stücken.	He did it *of* his own accord.
Blau von Augen, weiß von Stirne.	Blue-eyed (blue *of*), white-browed.
Der Ein' in goldnen Locken, der Andre grau von Haar.—U.	The one in golden locks, the other gray-haired.

13. Zu.

Er geht zu Markte, zu Tische.	He is going *to* market, *to* table.
Sie betteln von Haus zu Haus.	They beg from house *to* house.
Es gereicht ihm zur Ehre.	It redounds *to* his honor.
Sie ziehen ihn zur Verantwortung.	They call him *to* account.
Ich gehe zu meinem Bruder.	I am going *to* my brother's.
Er saß noch zu Tisch.	He was still sitting *at* table.
Sie lagen ihm zu Füßen.	They lay *at* his feet.
Sie stand ihm zur Seite.	She stood *at* his side.
Er sah ein Treffen zur See.	He saw an engagement *at* sea.
Wir kamen zur rechten Zeit.	We came *at* the right time.
Er dient zu Hofe.	He serves *at* court.
Sie ist noch zu Hause. L. 43. 2.	She is still *at* home.
Er kauft Tuch zu einem Rock.	He buys cloth *for* a coat.
Das kann zum Beweise dienen.	That may serve *for* (*as*) a proof.
Es ist dir zum Besten geschehen.	It was done *for* your good.
Du hast ihn zum letzten Mal gesehen.	You have seen him *for* the last time.
Sie starben zu Tausenden.	They died *by* thousands.
Man fängt sie zu Haufen.	They are caught *by* (*in*) multitudes.
Er reist zu Wasser, ich zu Lande.	He travels *by* water, I *by* land.
Sie reisen zu Pferde, ich zu Fuß.	They travel *on* horseback, I *on* foot.

14. Zu *often occurs after a noun preceded by* auf *or* nach.

Er ging auf den Fremden zu.	He went up to the stranger.

15. *The dative with* zu *in connection with* werden, *is often rendered by our nominative; after* machen, *by our objective:*

Von Natur besitzen wir keinen Fehler, der nicht zur Tugend, keine Tugend, die nicht zum Fehler werden könnte. —G.	By nature we possess no fault that might not become a virtue, (and) no virtue that might not become a fault.
Vierzig Jahre dauerte ein Krieg, der den Besitzer des goldreichen Peru zum armen Manne machte.—S.	Forty years a war continued, which made the possessor of gold yielding Peru a poor man.

Digitized by Google

16. *Idioms with* zu *and* nach.

Man hat es endlich zu Stande gebracht.	It has finally been accomplished.
Er machte ſich den Umſtand zu Nutze.	He profited by the circumstance.
Dieſe Leute halten das Ihrige zu Rath.	These people take care of their own.
Er will zur Ader laſſen.	He wishes to be bled.
Ich habe ihn zu Geſichte bekommen.	I have got a sight at (of) him.
Er konnte nicht zu Worte kommen.	He could not make himself heard.
Es kam ihm ſehr zu Statten.	It was very favorable to him.
Die Haare ſtanden ihm zu Berge.	His hair stood on end.
Er konnte vor Lachen kaum zu Athem kommen.	He could scarcely get his breath for laughing.
Mir iſt nicht wohl zu Muthe.	I feel ill-at-ease.
Das iſt wirklich beinahe zum toll werden.	That is really almost enough to make one mad.
Die Fremden logirten im Wirthshaus zum Adler.	The strangers lodged at the Eagle Hotel.
Die Thür iſt zu, das Fenſter auf.	The door is shut, the window open.
Er hat zu viel zu thun.	He has too much to do.
Nur immer zu!	Keep on! go on!
Schwermuth und Traurigkeit machen die Seele nach und nach ſchlaff und weichmüthig.—W.	Melancholy and sadness gradually (by degrees) make the soul remiss and effeminate.

LESSON LXVII. Lection LXVII.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. Durch.

Er ging durch den Wald.	He went *through* the woods.
Wir ſind noch nicht durch.	We are not yet *through*.
Arm an Genuß und noch ärmer durch den Genuß, was haben wir anders als Hoffnungen?—K.	Poor in enjoyment, and still poorer *through* enjoyment, what have we but hope(s)?
Er meint, er könne es durch Geld ausrichten.	He thinks he can accomplish it *by* (*means of*) money.
Durch nichts bezeichnen die Menſchen mehr ihren Charakter als durch das, was ſie lächerlich finden.—G.	*In* nothing do men more (perfectly) indicate their character, than in that which they call ridiculous.

2. Für.

Wer nur für ſich und nicht auch für Andere lebt, iſt nie glücklich.	He who lives only *for* himself, and not *for* others also is never happy
Ich fühle weder Liebe noch Haß für ihn.	I feel neither love nor hate *for* (*toward*) him.
Ich ſehe ihn Tag für Tag.	I see him day *after* (*by*) day.
Er hat ein Zimmer für ſich.	He has a room *by* (*to*) himself.
Ich halte es für meine Pflicht.	I consider it (regard it *as*) my duty
Du biſt unſere Zuflucht für und für. —Ps. xc. 1.	Thou hast been (art) our dwelling place in all generations.

Digitized by Google

Er kaufte für einen Gulden Kaffee	He bought a florin's worth *of* coffee
Ich habe es für mein Leben gern.	I am extravagantly fond *of* it.
Ich bin nicht dafür.	I am not in favor *of* it.

3. Gegen.

Er ist höflich gegen sie.	He is polite *to* (*toward*) them.
Er verließ uns gegen Abend.	He left us *toward* evening.
Sie sind verbunden gegen mich.	They are united *against* me.
Weiß man kein Mittel gegen den Biß eines tollen Hundes?	Is no remedy known *for* (*against*) the bite of a mad dog?
Er verkauft es nur gegen Geld.	He sells it only *for* money.
Das Leben gleicht gegen die Ewigkeit, dem schnellen Hauch der dem Sterbenden entflieht.—K.	Life compared *with* eternity resembles the fleeting breath that escapes the dying man.
Wenn ich mich gegen sie verpflichten soll, so müssen sie's auch gegen mich.—S.	If I am to pledge myself *to* them, they must also do it *to* me.

4. Ohne

Nichts Werthvolles ist ohne Arbeit zu erlangen.	Nothing valuable is to be obtained *without* labor.
Ohne ihn wäre ich glücklich.	*But for* him I should be happy.

Ohne *is sometimes substituted for* als:

Es ist kein Erbe ohne (als) du und ich nach dir.—Ruth. iv. 4.	There is none to redeem it *but* thee, and I after thee.

5. Um.

Des ganzen Gaues Bauern stehen um den Ort geschaart.—U.	The peasants of the whole province stand gathered *round* the place.
Weiß er um die Sache?	Does he know *about* (*of*) the affair?
Der Engel des Herrn lagert sich um die her, die ihn fürchten.	The angel of the Lord encampeth *round about* them that fear him.
Er kommt um fünf Uhr.	He is coming *at* five o'clock.
Um wieviel Uhr (welche Zeit) geht die Sonne auf?	*At* what time (what o'clock) does the sun rise?
Verdiene ich das um dich?	Do I deserve that *from* you?
Wie steht es um ihn?	How stands (is) it *with* him?
Er ist um zehn Jahre älter.	He is older *by* ten years.
Trauer war noch in Zamorra um den Tod des großen Königs.—H.	There still was mourning in Zamora *for* the great king's death.
Er fiel seinem Freunde um den Hals.	He fell *upon* his friend's neck.
Um so (um desto) besser für uns.	So much the better for us.
Die Zeit ist um.	The time is *up* (*past*).
Er kommt einen Tag um den andern.	He comes every other day.
Sie kommen einer um den andern.	They come on alternate days.
Er hat sich um das Vaterland verdient gemacht.	He has earned the gratitude of his country.
Er spricht wie es ihm um's Herz ist.	He speaks as he thinks (feels).
Es handelt sich nicht um Kleinigkeiten.	It is not a trifle that is under consideration.
Sie laufen um die Wette.	They are running *for* a (the) wager.

Um die Wette is often equivalent to eifrig *zealously*, with all one's might.

Digitized by Google

6. Um in compounds frequently marks loss or privation:

Er kam um sein Geld.	He lost his money.
Mann brachte ihn um.	He was destroyed.
Die ganze Mannschaft kam um.	The whole crew perished.

7. The accusative with um is sometimes best rendered by our nominative:

Es ist ein köstliches Ding um die Gesundheit.	The health is a precious thing (as to the health it is, etc.).

LESSON LXVIII. Lection LXVIII.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

1. An.

Er steht am Fenster, an der Thür.	He stands *at* the window, *at* the door.
Er sagt er sei krank am Herzen (L. 20.4).	He says he is sick *at* (the) heart.
Er lehnte sich an die Wand.	He leaned *against* the wall.
Der Tisch stand an der Wand.	The table stood *against* the wall.
Ich erkannte ihn an der Stimme.	I recognized him *by* his voice.
Er nahm sie an der Hand.	He took her *by* the hand.
Er leidet an Kopfweh.	He suffers *from* headache.
Am Tage sieht man ihn nie.	*During* the day one never sees him.
Er ist reich an Hoffnung.	He is rich *in* hope.
Ich thue es an seiner Statt.	I do it *in* his stead.
Er starb an einer Wunde.	He died *of* a wound.
An ihn dachte ich nicht.	I did not think *of* him.
Die Stadt liegt an dem Flusse.	The city lies *on* the river.
Der Hut hängt an dem Nagel.	The hat hangs *on* the nail.
Er geht an die Thüre.	He is going *to* the door.
Schreiben Sie an ihn?	Are you writing *to* him?
Gaben Sie es an ihn ab?	Did you deliver it *to* him?
Er ist an zehn Jahre alt.	He is *about* ten years old.

2. *Idioms with* an.

Er ist noch am Leben.	He is still alive.
Er hat es so an der Art.	It is his way (custom).
Mir liegt nichts an der Sache.	I care nothing about the matter.
An der Sache ist nichts.	The affair is of no consequence.
Er hat Ekel an Allem.	He is disgusted *with* every thing.
Der Hund liegt an der Kette.	The dog is chained.
Die Reihe kommt morgen an mich.	It will come my turn to-morrow.
Die Reihe ist an Ihnen; nein, sie ist an mir.	It is your turn; no, it is mine. L. 46. 2.
Das ist nicht an dem.	That is not true (is nothing in it).
Es ist an dem, daß ich gehen muß.	It is time for me to go.
Er ging ihnen an die Hand.	He assisted them.
Er hat es an den Mann gebracht.	He has found a customer.
Von jetzt an werde ich fleißig sein.	From now *on* I will be diligent.
Er steht oben an.	He stands *at* the head.
Sie wohnen neben an.	They live next door

Digitized by Google

3. Auf.

Er beſteht darauf.	He insists *upon* it.
Sie ſpielt auf dem Flügel.	She plays *on* the piano.
Ich verlaſſe mich auf Sie.	I depend *upon* you.
Er geht auf den (ſteht auf dem) Hügel.	He goes *on* (stands on) the hill.
Er iſt auf der Hochzeit.	He is *at* the wedding.
Was fanden Sie auf der Poſt?	What did you find *at* the post-office?
War er auf dem Ball?	Was he *at* the ball?
Er iſt böſe auf uns.	He is angry *at* us.
Ich höre auf das was er ſagt.	I listen *to* what he says.
Sie gehen auf der Wieſe.	They are walking *in* the meadow.
Er wohnt auf dem Schloß.	He lives *in* the castle.
Sind ſie auf dem Lande?	Are they *in* the country.
Auf dieſe Weiſe geht es nicht.	*In* this way it will not succeed.
Er kleidet ſich auf engliſche Art.	He dresses *in* the English fashion.
Er wartete auf mich.	He waited *for* me.
Leihen Sie es mir auf einige Tage.	Lend it to me *for* a few days.
Geht er auf den Markt?	Is he going *to* market?
Er treibt das Vieh auf die Weide.	He drives the cattle *to* the pasture.
Er iſt ſtolz auf ſein Geld, und eiferſüchtig auf ſeine Nachbarn.	He is proud *of* his money, and jealous *of* his neighbors.
Er hält viel (große Stücke) auf ſie.	He thinks a great deal *of* them.
Es koſtet auf vierzig Gulden.	It costs about forty florins.
Es liegt auf dem (er legt es auf den) Tiſch.	It lies (he lies it) *on* the table.

4. In.

Er iſt in dem Garten.	He is *in* the garden.
Was hat er jetzt im Sinne?	What has he *in* mind (on foot) now?
Er geht in den Garten.	He is going *into* the garden.
Sie ſind in dem Conzert.	They are *at* the concert.
Sein Vermögen beſteht in Grundſtücken.	His property consists *of* real estate.
Er that es in dieſer Abſicht.	He did it *with* this intention.
Sie gehen in das Conzert.	They go *to* the concert.
Er jagte ſie in die Flucht.	He put them *to* flight.
Er ſprang in die Höhe.	He sprang up.
Er klatſchte in die Hände.	He clapped his hands.
Das fällt in die Augen.	That attracts attention.
Ich habe ihn in Verdacht.	I suspect him.
Er lebt in den Tag hinein.	He lives extravagantly.
Er ſchlug die Arme in einander.	He folded his arms.
Sie drangen in ihn ſich zu erklären.	They pressed him to declare himself.
Das kann ich in den Tod nicht leiden.	To that I have a mortal aversion.
Sie kamen in's Gedränge, aber er legte ſich für ſie in's Mittel.	They were *in* a dilemma, but he interposed *in* their behalf.
Er faßte ſie in's Auge.	He looked sharply *at* them.
Er liegt in den letzten Zügen.	He lies *at* the point of death.
Sie liegen ſich in den Haaren.	They are together *by* the ears.
Sie redete in einem fort.	She spoke without cessation.
Er reiſte in aller Frühe ab.	He started very early.
Er iſt noch nicht im Reinen darüber.	He has not yet decided (is not clear) in reference to it.
Er ſagt, ſie habe ſich in ihn verliebt.	He says she has fallen *in* love with him.

Digitized by Google

Sie werden in den ersten Tagen abreisen.	They will depart *in* a very few days.
Er ist in der letzten Zeit sehr traurig gewesen.	*For* some time past he has been very sad.
Sechs Wörtlein nehmen mich in Anspruch jeden Tag.—Rt.	Six words claim my attention every day.
Sie haben ihn in Schutz genommen.	They have taken him *under* their protection.

5. Ueber.

Die Lampe hängt über dem Tische.	The lamp hangs *over* the table.
Er saß über mir am Tische.	He sat *above* me at the table.
Sie geht über die Brücke.	She is going *across* the bridge.
Das ist über Menschen Vermögen.	That is *beyond* (*above*) human power
Er bekommt Brief über Brief.	He receives letter *after* (*over*) letter.
Lasset die Sonne über euren Zorn nicht untergehen.—Eph. iv. 26.	Let not the sun go down *upon* your wrath.
Hier über hat er nicht nachgedacht.	*On* this he has not reflected.
Und wollen, daß mein Volk meines Namens vergesse über ihren Träumen, gleichwie ihre Väter meines Namens vergaßen über den Baal.—Jer. 23.	Which think to cause my people to forget my name *by* their dreams, as their fathers have forgotten my name *for* Baal.
Ueber diese langweilige Rede schlief er ein.	*Under* (during) this tedious speech he fell asleep.
Ueber das Säumniß haben euch die Spanier das Netz über die Ohren gezogen.—G.	*During* the delay the Spaniards have drawn the net *over* your ears.
Moses aber floh über diese Rede.	Then fled Moses *at* this saying.
Sie ist böse über mein Lachen.	She is angry *at* my laughing.
So wir heute werden gerichtet über dieser Wohlthat.	If we this day be examined *of* this good deed.—Acts, iv. 9.
Man hat ihn über der That ertappt.	He has been caught *in* the act.
Er hatte sich getröstet über Amnon.—2. Sam. xiii. 39.	He was comforted *concerning* Amnon.
Heute über acht Tage kommt er.	A week *from* to-day he is coming.
Reisen Sie über Bremen?	Do you go *by way of* Bremen?
Ueber den Sommer wohnt er auf dem Lande.	*During* (*through*) the summer he lives in the country.
Ueber kurz oder lang kommt er an den Galgen.	Sooner or later he will come to the gallows.
Bei ihm geht die Redlichkeit über Alles.	With him honesty is prized *above* every thing else.
Er konnte es nicht über das Herz bringen.	He could not find it *in* his heart (make up his mind to it).
Sie sind über Feld gegangen.	They have walked *into* the country.
Ueber den faulen Kerl!	O, the lazy fellow!
O, über die Blinden, die nicht sehen wollen!—L.	(O,) shame on the blind that will not see!

6. Unter.

Wir saßen unter dem Baum.	We sat *under* the tree.
Er saß unter mir am Tische.	He sat *below* me at the table.
Das ist unter seiner Würde.	That is *beneath* his dignity.
Unter dieser Bedingung thue ich es.	*On* this condition I will do it.

Digitized by Google

Unter seinen Söhnen habe ich mir einen König erwählt.	I have provided me a king *among* his sons.—1 Sam. xvi. 1.
Er bestieg unter dem Schalle der Drommeten das Roß.	*Amid* the clangor of trumpets he mounted the steed.
So lange der Erbe ein Kind ist, so ist unter ihm und einem Knechte kein Unterschied.—Gal. iv. 1	As long as the heir is a child there is no difference *between* him and a servant (*Literal*).
Man kennt ihn nur unter diesem Namen.	He is known only *by* (*under*) this name.
Komme mir nie wieder unter die Augen.	Never come *before* my eyes again.
Er ist unter der Arbeit eingeschlafen.	He has fallen asleep *at* his work.
Das Buch ist unter der Presse.	The book is *in* press.
Es ist unmöglich alle Köpfe unter einen Hut zu bringen.	It is impossible to make all men of one opinion.
Er bat um eine Unterredung unter vier Augen.	He sought a private (secret) interview.
Er ging unter die Soldaten.	He became a soldier.
Es liegt Alles unter einander.	Every thing lies in confusion.
Er steckt unter einer Decke mit ihnen.	He is in collusion (under one cover) with them.

7. Vor.

Sie steht vor der Thür.	She is standing *before* the door.
Sie weinten vor Freude.	They wept *for* (*with*) joy.
Er starb vor Hunger.	He died *of* hunger.
Er war außer sich vor Zorn.	He was beside himself *with* anger.
Jetzt sind wir sicher vor ihm.	Now we are safe *from* him.
Fand er Schutz vor ihm?	Did he find protection *against* him?
Das Schiff liegt vor Anker.	The ship lies *at* anchor.
Ich sah ihn vor einer Stunde.	I saw him an hour *ago*.
Das ist vor der Hand hinreichend.	That, *for* the present, is sufficient.
Die Hinrichtung wird bald vor sich gehen.	The execution will soon take place.

LESSON LXIX. Lection LXIX.

ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Aber.

Es ist gut, aber nicht schön.	It is good, *but* not beautiful.
Er, aber, wollte nicht gehen.	He, *however*, would not go.
Sie kann es thun; will sie aber?	She can do it; will she *though*?
Und aber erklang die Drommete.	And *again* the trumpet resounded.
Er ist höchst aber-(*i. e.* über)gläubig.	He is exceedingly superstitious.

2. Allein.

Sie sind zwar reich, allein sie nutzen ihren Reichthum nicht.	They are, it is true, wealthy, *but* they do not use their wealth.
Er ist nicht allein reich, sondern auch wohlthätig.	He is not *only* (*alone*) rich, but also beneficent.

Digitized by Google

3. Als.

Der Max bleibt uns als Geißel.—S.	Max remains (to us) *as* (a) hostage.
Er ſieht aus, als ob er krank wäre.	He looks *as* though he were sick.
Süßer iſt nichts, als Liebe; Honig iſt Galle zu ihr.—H.	Sweeter *than* love is nothing; honey is gall (compared) to it.
Er hat nichts als das Leben.	He has naught *but* (else *than*) life.
Niemand als er kann es thun.	None *but* him can do it.
Ich ſpreche ſo viel(—)ich kann.	I speak as much *as* I can.

NOTE.—After ſo, as in the above example, als is often omitted.

4. Alſo.

Ich mußte alſo handeln.	I was obliged to act *thus* (so).
Er hat es verſprochen, alſo muß er es thun.	He has promised it, *consequently* (*hence*) he must do it.
Sie kennen ihn alſo?	You know him *then?*

5. Auch.

Der Schüler iſt auch hier geweſen.	The scholar also has been here.
Sie kennen ihn, ich kenne ihn auch.	You know him, I know him *too.*
Sie kennen ihn nicht, ich kenne ihn auch nicht.	You do not know him, neither (L. 21. 8.) do I (L. 38. 7.).
Schrecklich immer, auch in gerechter Sache iſt Gewalt.—S.	Dreadful always, *even* in a just cause, is violence.
Es iſt brav und löblich einen Böſewicht, wo er auch ſtehe, furchtlos anzugreifen.—S.	It is noble and praiseworthy fearlessly to attack a villain, wherever he may stand.
Das Wahre, Gute und Vortreffliche iſt einfach und ſich immer gleich, wie es auch erſcheine.—G.	The true, good and excellent is simple and always alike, however it may appear.

6. Bald.

Er wird bald ankommen.	He will *soon* arrive.
Er wird bald böſe.	He is *easily* provoked.
Er wäre bald gefallen.	He *almost* fell (was likely to fall)
Es iſt bald vier Uhr.	It is *nearly* four o'clock.
Bald hört man es hier, bald dort.	*Now* it is heard here, *now* there.

7. Bis.

Warte bis ich zurückkomme.	Wait *till* I return.
Er ging bis an die Brücke.	He went *as far as* (to) the bridge.
Sie gingen bis an den Hals in das Waſſer.	They went in to the water *up to* their necks.
Er iſt bis zum Sterben krank.	He is sick *even unto* death (dying).
Ich habe ihn bis auf den letzten Pfennig bezahlt.	I have paid him *to* the last farthing.
Er hatte das Geld bis auf einige Groſchen erhalten.	He had received the money *within* (except) a few groats.
Alle bis auf Sie ſind zufrieden.	All *but* (except) you are satisfied.
Eher nicht erfolgt des Kampfes Ende, als bis der letzte Mann gefallen iſt.—S.	The end of the contest did not come *until* the last man fell (had fallen)

Digitized by Google

8. Da.

Da er nicht geht, so gehe ich. — *As* (*since*) he does not go, I go.
Da noch Alles lag in weiter Ferne... — *As* (*when* or *while*) all yet lay in the distance, (*then*) you had resolution and courage, and now *that* the result is secured (*now*) you begin to despair.
Da hattest Du Entschluß und Muth— und jetzt,
...Da der Erfolg versichert ist da fängst Du an zu zagen.—S.
Du standest hier, ich stand da. — You stood *here*, I stood there.
Da bin ich schon wieder. — *Here* I am again already.
Selig sind, die da Leid tragen. — Blessed are they that mourn.

9. Daß.

Sagte er, daß er heute gehe? — Did he say *that* he goes to-day?
Wie lange ist es, daß er hier war? — How long is it *since* he was here?
Warte bis daß er kommt. — Wait till (*that*) he comes.
Daß ich ihn nur sehen könnte! — *That* I might only see him!
Daß du nicht von der Stelle gehst. — Do not move from the spot.
Daß ich es nicht wüßte! — *As though* I did not know it!
Auf daß er es bald vergesse. — In order *that* he may soon forget it.

10. Denn.

Warum geht er denn nicht mit uns? — Why does he not go with us *then*?
Ich muß ihn achten, denn er ist ein aufrichtiger Mann. — I must respect him, *for* he is an upright man.
Sie essen nichts denn Brod. — They eat nothing *but* bread.
Er steht höher als Krieger, denn als Staatsmann. — He stands higher as a warrior *than* as a statesman.
Der Mensch kann nicht wahrhaft glücklich sein, es sei denn, daß er tugendhaft sei. — Man can not be truly happy (*i. e. unconditionally*), be it then (*as the condition*), that he be virtuous; *or*, Man can not be truly happy *unless* he is virtuous.

11. Doch.

Das ist doch sonderbar. — That is *really* singular.
Ich möchte doch wissen, warum er dahin geht. — *Why*, I should like to know, why he goes there.
Gehen Sie doch mit mir. — Do (*pray do*) go with us.
Ja, doch! Nein, doch! — Yes, *indeed!* No, *indeed!*
Du kennst sie nicht. / Er hat kein Buch. } doch (*or* o doch.) — You do not know them. O yes I do / He has no book. Yes he has.

12. Eben.

Sie ist eben so alt wie er. — She is *just* as old as he.
Wir gehen eben (*or* so eben) aus. — We are *just* going out.
Das dachte ich eben nicht. — That is not *exactly* what I thought.
Eben darum will ich nicht mehr schreiben. — For that *very* reason I will not write any longer.

13. Ehe.

Ich sah ihn, ehe er mich sah. — I saw him *before* he saw me.
Ich mochte eher (lieber) sterben, als so leben. — I would *rather* die than to live thus.
Er ging nicht eher, als bis er sie alle gesehen hatte. — He did not go *till* (*before*) he had seen them all.

Digitized by Google

14. Erſt.

Erſt bete, dann arbeite.	*First* pray, then work.
Sie iſt erſt zehn Jahre alt.	She is *only* ten years old.
Er hat erſt angefangen.	He has *only just* begun.
Wir werden erſt morgen gehen.	We shall *not* go *till* to-morrow.

15. Etwa.

Er iſt etwa fünfzig Jahre alt.	He is *about* fifty years old.
Habe ich Sie etwa beleidigt?	Have I (*perhaps*) offended you?

16. Gar.

Es iſt nicht ſo gar lange her.	It is not so *very* long since.
Ich weiß es nur gar zu wohl.	I know it *but* (altogether) too well.
Es iſt gar zu ſchön.	It is very (too) beautiful.
Es iſt ſchädlich, wenn nicht gar gefährlich.	It is injurious, if not *even* dangerous.
Es dürſtete ſie gar ſehr.	They were exceedingly thirsty.
Ei, warum nicht gar?	Hey, why not then (indeed)?
Ich ſehe es gar nicht. (L. 19. 3.)	I do not see it all.

17. Gern, *fain, gladly*, comparative lieber, *rather*, often answers to *like, be fond of*, etc.

Die Kinder, ſie hören es gerne.—G.	The children (L. 28.) *like* to hear it.
Ich trinke gern Kaffe.	I am *fond* of coffee.
Möchten Sie gern Deutſch lernen?	Would you *like* to learn German?
Er hat ſie ſehr gern.	He *likes* them very much.
Dieſe Pflanze hat gern einen ſandigen Boden.	This plant *likes* (flourishes best in) a sandy soil.
Es möchte gern regnen.	It "is trying" to (looks like) rain.
Dies Pferd ſchlägt gern.	This horse is *inclined* to kick.
Stille Waſſer ſind gern tief.	Still waters are (*apt* to be) deep.

18. Gleich is often equivalent to obgleich (L. 53).

Iſt es gleich nicht ſchön, ſo iſt es doch gut.	*Although* it is not beautiful, it is (nevertheless) good.
Iſt gleich der Birnamwald auf Dunſinan herangerückt. —S.	*Though* Birnam wood be come to Dunsinane.—Shak.

19. Immer.

So ſei es immer.	Thus be it ever (*or* always).
Sie ſind noch immer hier.	They are still (—) here.
Es iſt immer ein gewagtes Unternehmen.	It is a hazardous undertaking, at any rate.
So ſchlimm es immer (*or* auch) iſt.	However bad (bad as) it is.
Sie mögen immer wiſſen, daß ich nichts mehr habe.—L.	It is a matter of indifference to me that they should know I no longer have any thing.
Er kann es immer glauben.	He may (for aught I care) believe it.
Er ſage, was er immer wolle.	Let him say what he pleases.
Sie werden immer ſtolzer.	They grow prouder and prouder.

Digitized by Google

20. Ja.

Bleiben Sie ja zu Hause.	Remain, *by all means*, at home.
Thun Sie es ja nicht,	Do not, *by any means*, do it.
Ich kann ja nicht lesen, noch rechnen und schreiben.—B.	Why, I can not read, nor cipher nor write.
Wenn ich ja länger ausbleiben sollte, so warte nicht auf mich.	But if I should remain longer do not wait for me.

21. Je.

Sie ist je und je traurig.	She is *always* (*ever* and *ever*) sad.
Ist er je hier gewesen?	Has he *ever* been here?
Das hat von je her die Erfahrung bewiesen.	Experience has *always* (from the first) proved that.
Sie gingen je zwei und zwei.	They went two by two.
Es neckt je einer den andern.	Each teases the other.
Je nachdem er gehandelt hat, wird sein Loos sein.	According as he has acted will his lot be.
Je länger hier, je (desto) später dort.	The longer here the later there.

22. Kein.

Es ist kein Schnee.—G	It is not (is no) snow.
Und nirgends kein Dank.—S.	And nowhere any (no) gratitude.
Wie elend wäre nicht der Mensch ohne Hoffnung.	How miserable would (not) man be without (but for) hope.

NOTE.—Where two negatives occur, as above, only one should be translated.

23. Noch.

Er wohnt noch hier.	He *still* lives here.
Es ist weder schön noch nützlich,	It is *neither* beautiful *nor* useful.
Ich habe ihn noch nicht gesehen.	I have not *yet* seen him (L. 21. 7).
Singen Sie es noch einmal.	Sing it *again* (yet once).
Nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel.	Take *another* apple (L. 65. 1. a,).
Beendige eine Sache, wenn sie auch noch so klein scheint, ehe du eine andere anfängst.	Finish one thing, even if it seems ever (never) so small, before you begin another.

24. Nun.

Was ist nun zu thun?	What is to be done *now*?
Nun, was ist zu thun?	*Well*, what is to be done?
Welchen Entschluß nun sie faßten, er hatte seinen Zweck erreicht.	Whatever resolution they adopted he had gained his end.
Und nun dies Blatt uns für die Truppen bürgt.—S.	And since (now that) this sheet secures to us the troops.

25. Nur.

Das weiß er nur zu gut.	That he knows *but* too well.
Er hat nur einen Freund.	He has *only* (*but*) one friend.
"Wohin ich nur sehe."	Wherever I look.
Laß ihn nur kommen.	*Just* let him come.
Wie ich es nur immer verlangen mag.	However I may demand it.

Digitized by Google

26. Schon.

Sie kommen schon.	They are *already* coming.
Sie werden schon kommen.	They will come at the right time.
Das ist ihm schon recht.	He is perfectly satisfied wit that.
Habe ich schon wenig (obschon ich wenig habe) so habe ich doch genug.	*Although* I have but little, still I have enough,

27. So.

Er ist eben so alt wie ich.	He is just *as* old as I am.
So ein Buch sieht man selten.	*Such* a book one seldom sees.
Wie kann er so etwas glauben?	How can he believe *such* a thing!
So ihr bleiben werdet an meiner Rede, so seid ihr meine rechten Jünger.	If ye (will) continue in my word, then are ye my disciples indeed.
Ich bin euch ein Dorn in den Augen, so klein ich bin.—G.	I am a thorn in your eyes, small as (however small) I am.
Nicht so bald war einer fort, als ein anderer kam.	No sooner was one gone than another came.
So gehen Sie schon?	Ah (indeed), are you already going?
So groß ihre Furcht vor dem Feinde war, so angenehm war ihre Ueberraschung über seine Mäßigung.	Great *as* was their fear of the enemy, *so* agreeable was their surprise at his moderation.

28. Sonst.

Thue es nicht, sonst wirst du bestraft werden.	Do not do it, *otherwise* you will be punished.
Sie müssen es thun, sonst geht er weg.	You must do it, *or else* he will go away.
Er hat sie sonst wo gesehen.	He has seen them *somewhere else.*
Sonst dachte und handelte er ganz anders.	*Formerly* he thought and acted entirely otherwise.
Sie könnten es thun, wenn sie es sonst wollten.	You could do it, that is, if you would (if you only would).

29. Und.

Der Mensch ist frei geschaffen, ist frei, Und würd er in Ketten geboren.—S.	Man is created free, is free *even* (and) were he born in chains.

30. Vielleicht.

Sie kennen ihn vielleicht.	*Perhaps* you know him.
Kennen Sie ihn vielleicht?	Do you know him (*perhaps*)?
Können Sie mir vielleicht sagen, wo er wohnt?	Can you (perhaps) tell me where he lives?

31. Wie.

Wissen Sie, wie er singt?	Do you know *how* he sings?
Er spricht, wie er denkt.	He speaks *as* he thinks.
Sie wohnen noch hier, wie ich höre.	They still leave here, *as* I hear.
Er heult wie ein Wolf.	He howls like a wolf.
Der Menschen Thaten und Gedanken, wißt, sind nicht wie Meeres wild bewegte Wellen.—S.	Men's thoughts and deeds, know (ye), are not *like* (not *as* are) ocean's wildly agitated waves.

Digitized by Google

32. Als wie sometimes occurs in the signification of wie:

Der See liegt ruhig da, als wie ein ebener Spiegel.—S.	The lake lies quiet there (so as) like a smooth mirror.

33. Wie (*or* als wie) sometimes follows an adjective in the comparative, and answers to *than*:

Weniger reich wie sie scheint ist unsere Sprache.—K.	Less rich than it seems is our language.

34. Wohl.

Er befindet sich wohl.	He is (finds himself L. 28. 9.) well.
Ich bin nicht so recht wohl.	I am not so very (right) *well*.
Mir ist nicht wohl.	I do not feel *well* (L. 57. 2.).
Es thut Einem wohl.	It is *pleasant* (grateful) to one.

35. Wohl often denotes a doubt, a supposition, or a probability.

Sie hat uns wohl noch nicht gesehen.	She has *probably* not seen us yet.
Der Bauer wagt' sein Leben dran; doch that er's wohl um Goldes Klang? —B.	The peasant risked his life at it, but did he do it *probably* for the clink of gold?
Es sind wohl Hundert Jahre her.	It is *perhaps* a hundred years since.
Wie kann der Mensch sich kennen lernen? Durch Betrachten niemals, wohl aber durch Handeln.—G.	How can man become acquainted with himself? by reflection never, but he can by acting.
Wohl ist sie schön, die Welt.—G.	The world is *indeed* beautiful.

LESSON LXX. Lection LXX.

1. Herr, Frau and Fräulein, placed before proper names, answer to *Mr.*, *Mrs.* and *Miss*. In address, when the name is omitted, Mein Herr answers to *Sir*, and Mein Fräulein, to *Miss*; Meine Herren, to *Gentlemen*, and meine Fräulein, to *Ladies*. Madam' (singular), and meine Damen (plural), are addressed to married ladies.

2. Herr, Frau and Fräulein are used before words denoting relationship (except in reference to one's own relatives); and the first two before titles:

Ich habe heute Herrn N., Frau N. und Fräulein N. gesehen.	I have to-day seen Mr. N., Mrs. N. and Miss. N.
Guten Morgen, mein Herr, wie befindet sich Ihr Herr Vater?	Good morning Sir, how is your father?
Guten Abend, mein Fräulein, wie befinden sich Ihre Frau Mutter und Ihre Fräulein Schwestern?	Good evening Miss, how are your mother and your sisters?
Können Sie mir sagen, wo der Herr Secretär L. wohnt?	Can you tell me where Mr. Secretary L. resides?
Ich habe Ihre Herren Brüder und Ihre Fräulein Schwestern gesehen.	I have seen your brothers and your sisters.
Guten Abend meine Herren, wie befinden Sie sich?	Good evening Gentlemen, how do you do?
Ist der Herr Professor zu Hause?	Is the Professor at home?

Digitized by Google

ABBREVIATIONS. Abkürzungen.

a. a. O.	am angeführten Orte,	at the place mentioned.
Abſchn.	Abſchnitt,	section.
Anm. *or* Anmerk.	Anmerkung,	observation.
Antw.	Antwort	answer.
a. St	alten Styls,	old style.
A. T	Altes Teſtament,	Old Testament.
Aufl.	Auflage	edition.
ausg.	ausgenommen,	except.
B.	Buch, Band,	book; volume.
C., Cap. *or* Kap.	Capitel *or* Kapitel,	chapter.
Centn., Ct *or* Ctr.	Centner,	hundred weight.
D, Dr. *or* Doct.	Doctor,	Doctor.
Dem. *or* Demoiſ.	Demoiſelle,	maiden, lady, miss.
d. h.	das heißt,	that means.
d. i.	das iſt,	i. e., viz.
d. J.	dieſes Jahr,	this year.
d. M.	dieſes Monats,	of this month.
d. V.	der Verfaſſer,	the author.
Ev.	Evangelium,	Gospel.
Ew.	Euer, Eure	your.
f. *or* folg.	folgend, (*sing.*)	the following.
ff.	folgende, (*plur.*)	
Fr.	Frau,	lady, wife.
Frhr.	Freiherr,	baronet, baron.
geb.	geboren,	born.
geſt.	geſtorben,	died.
Hr., Hrn.	Herr, Herrn,	Mr., Sir, Sirs, Messrs
h. S.	heilige Schrift,	Holy Scriptures.
J. C.	Jeſus Chriſtus,	Jesus Christ.
Kaiſ. *or* kaiſerl.	kaiſerlich,	imperial.
Kön. *or* königl.	königlich,	royal.
l.	lies,	read.
Mad.	Madam,	Madam
Maj.	Majeſtät,	Majesty.
Mlle.	Mademoiſelle,	Mad moiselle, Miss.
Mſcr. *or* Mſcrpt.	Manuſcript,	manuscript.
N. *or* N. N.	Name *or* Namen,	name *or* names.
N.	Norden,	north.
N. S.	Nachſchrift	postscript
N. St	neuen Styls,	new style.
N. T.	Neues Teſtament,	New Testament.

Digitized by Google

O.	Osten,	East.
od.	oder,	or.
Pf. *or* Pfd.	Pfund,	pound.
Prof.	Professor,	professor.
Rec.	Recensent,	reviewer, critic,
Rthlr.	Reichsthaler,	Rixdollar.
S.	Seite; Süden,	page; South.
S. *or* ſ.	ſiehe,	see, vide.
ſel.	ſelig,	late, deceased.
St. *or* Sct.	Sanct,	Saint.
Stb.	Stunde,	hour.
Th.	Theil,	volume, part.
Thlr.	Thaler,	dollar.
u.	und,	and.
u. a. m.	und andere mehr	&c., farther.
u. dgl. m.	und dergleichen mehr,	and similar instar ces
u. ſ. f.	und ſo fort, *or* ferner,	etc.
u. ſ. m.	und ſo mehr,	etc.
u. ſ. w. *or* ꝛc.	und ſo weiter	etc.
u. v. A.	und viele Andere,	and many others.
V.	Vers,	verse.
v.	von	of, from.
Verf. *or* Vf.	Verfaſſer,	author.
vergl. *or* vgl.	vergleiche,	compare.
v. o.	von oben,	from above.
Vorr.	Vorrede,	preface.
v. u.	von unten,	from below.
W.	Weſten,	West.
Z.	Zeile,	line.
z. B. *or* z. E.	zum Beiſpiel, zum Exempel	for example.

Digitized by Google

§ 1. ETYMOLOGY.

Etymology regards words as *individuals;* discloses their origin and formation; classifies them according to signification; and shows the various modifications, which they undergo in the course of declension and conjugation. *

§ 2. Derivation and composition.

(1) In respect to derivation, all German words are divisible into three classes: *Primitives, Derivatives* and *Compounds.*

(2) The Primitives, which are also called *roots* or *radicals,* are all *verbs;* forming the basis of what are now generally called the irregular verbs, and of about fifty, or sixty others, which *were* once irregular in conjugation, but are so no longer. They are also all *monosyllables;* and are seen in the crude form, (so to speak,) by merely dropping the suffix (en) of the Infinitive mood: thus, binb(en,) to bind; ſchließ(en,) to close; fang(en,) to catch.

(3) From the primitives, sometimes *with,* sometimes *without,* any change in, or addition to the crude form, comes a numerous train of derivatives: chiefly *nouns* and *adjectives.*

Thus, from binb(en,) to bind, we get der Band, the volume, and der Bund, the league, where the derivatives are produced by a mere *vowel* change. The derivative is, also, often distinguished by a mere euphonic, or orthographic termination: changing the *form* indeed, but in no wise affecting the *sense.* The terminations employed, in this way, are er, el, en, e, de, te and et; thus, from ſprech(en,) to speak, comes die Sprache, speech; language. In some cases, moreover, in forming derivatives, the syllable ge (*without meaning*) is prefixed; as, gewiß, sure; certain; der Geſang, the song.

* The inflection of all parts of speech, except the Verb, is, in Grammar, called *declension:* the regular arrangement of the moods, tenses, numbers, persons, and participles of a verb, is called *Conjugation:* in a *general* way, however, *all* words capable of inflection are said to be *declinable.* The *indeclinable* parts of speech are often called *Particles.*

Digitized by Google

(4) But there is another and a most extensive class of derivatives, sometimes called *secondary* derivatives formed by the union of radical * words with suffixes, that are *significant*: thus, from heilig, (*holy, sacred;*) we get by adding e n, the verb heiligen, to *make* holy; to consecrate. The suffixes of this class (the *significant* ones) are, however, most of them, used in forming nouns and adjectives. They will be found explained under those heads respectively. Several of them are the same in *form* exactly as the terminations mentioned above, as being often added to *primary* derivatives. From these, that is, from the merely orthographic endings, the significant suffixes are to be carefully distinguished.

(5) Among the secondary derivatives must, also, be included those formed by means of *prefixes* as well as suffixes. These are mainly verbs, and are treated somewhat at large under the head of Compound Verbs.

(6) In respect to COMPOUNDS, properly so called, that is, words formed by the union, not of prefixes and suffixes with radicals, but of radicals, or other independent words, one with another, the German is peculiarly rich. Not only is it rich in the abundance of such compounds already in use; but it possesses a rare facility of forming them, as occasions arise, out of its own resources.

(7) In forming these compounds, the two components are often merely joined together as one word; as Uhrmacher, (from Uhr, a clock or watch, and Macher, a maker.) But in numerous cases, the union is marked by the insertion of certain letters, which may be called *letters of union:* thus,

Die Tod e s noth, (from Tod, death and Noth, need, agony;) the death-agony;

Das Himmel s licht, (from Himmel, heaven and Licht, light;) the light of heaven;

Die Herz e n s güte, (from Herz, heart, and Güte, goodness;) the goodness of heart;

* The word *radical*, however, in *this* place, is designed to indicate *any* word capable of assuming a suffix. In this looser sense, the word is often employed for the sake of convenience.

Digitized by Google

Der Pferd e arzt, (from Pferd, horse, and Arzt, doctor;) the horse-doctor;

Das Hirt e n leben, (from Hirt, shepherd, and Leben, life;) the pastoral-life;

Der Ei e r kuchen, (from Ei, egg, and Kuchen, cake;) the omelet.

(8) Some of these letters of union are nothing more than the signs of the genitive case of the first component: others are mere euphonic additions.

(9) In some instances, the union of the parts of a compound is characterized by the *omission* of some letters; as, der Sonntag, (Sonn e, the Sun, and Tag, day;) Sunday; denk-würdig, (denk e n, to think, and würdig, worthy;) worthy of thought.

(10) In all compounds, finally, the main accent falls upon the *first* component which, also, always qualifies or defines the second, as containing the fundamental idea.

§ 3. Parts of speech.

(1) The parts of speech in German are usually reckoned ten:

Articles,	Verbs,
Nouns, or Substantives,	Adverbs,
Adjectives,	Prepositions,
Numerals,	Conjunctions,
Pronouns,	Interjections.

(2) Of these, *six*, namely, Articles, Nouns, Adjectives, Numerals, Pronouns and Verbs, are capable of *inflection*; that is, admit of various changes of termination by which various modifications of meaning are expressed: the other *four*, namely, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections, are in form *invariable*.

(3) All parts of speech capable of inflection have two numbers: the SINGULAR, which denotes but one, and the PLURAL, which denotes more than one.

(4) All parts of speech capable of inflection, except the verb, have four CASES; namely the NOMINATIVE, GENITIVE,

Digitized by Google

DATIVE and ACCUSATIVE: also, three GENDERS; namely, the MASCULINE, the FEMININE and the NEUTER.

(5) Cases are variations made in the form of a word, to indicate its several relations to other words: the nominative being that form which denotes the *subject* of a verb; the genitive that which is chiefly used in signifying *source* or *possession*; the dative that which indicates the person or thing *for* or *to* whom or which any thing is directed; and the accusative that which points to the *immediate* or *direct* object of an action.

The cases in German correspond well to those in the Latin language. The *Vocative*, however, is never counted, because it is the same exactly in form with the nominative; while the *Ablative* (as in Greek,) is wholly wanting: its place being generally supplied by the Dative (with a suitable preposition).

§ 4. THE ARTICLE.

(1) There are two articles in German: the Definite, **der**, *the;* and the Indefinite, **ein**, *a*, or *an*. They are inflected thus.

	Singular.				*Plural.*
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*		*For all genders.*
Nom.	Der,	die,	das,	the;	Die, the;
Gen.	Des,	der,	des,	of the;	Der, of the;
Dat.	Dem,	der,	dem,	to, or for the;	Den, to, or for the;
Acc.	Den,	die,	das,	the.	Die, the.

	Singular.				*Plural.*	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*For all genders.*	
Nom.	Ein,	eine,	ein,	an, or a;	N.	Wanting.
Gen.	Eines,	einer,	eines,	of an, or a;	G.	
Dat.	Einem,	einer,	einem,	to, or for an, or a;	D.	
Acc.	Einen,	eine,	ein,	an, or a.	A.	

(2) In familiar style, certain prepositions are frequently contracted with the dative and accusative of the definite article into one word.

EXAMPLES.

D. am,	for an dem,	as, am Feuer, at the fire;
A ans,	for an das,	as, ans Licht, to the light;

Digitized by Google

D. aufm,	for auf dem,	as, aufm Thurm, on the tower;
A. aufs,	for auf das,	as, aufs Haus, upon the house;
D. beim,	for bei dem,	as, beim Vater, with the father;
A. durchs,	for durch das,	as, durchs Waſſer, through the water;
A. fürs,	for für das,	as, fürs Geld, for the money;
D. hinterm,	for hinter dem,	as, hinterm Hauſe, behind the house;
D. im,	for in dem,	as, im Himmel, in (the) heaven;
A. ins,	for in das,	as, ins Haus, into the house;
D. vom,	for von dem,	as, vom Uebel, from (the) evil;
A. vors,	for vor das,	as, vors Fenſter, before the window;
D. vorm,	for vor dem,	as, vorm Thore, before the door;
D. überm,	for über dem,	as, überm Feuer, upon the fire;
A. übers,	for über das,	as, übers Land, over (the) land;
D. unterm,	for unter dem,	as, unterm Waſſer, under (the) water;
D. zum,	for zu dem,	as, zum Fluſſe, to the river;
D. zur,	for zu der,	as, zur Ehre, to the honor.

§ 5. Nouns.

(1) In German, as in English, the nouns, that is, the *names* of persons and things, are divided into two great classes: viz: *Common nouns*, which designate sorts, kinds, or classes of objects; and *Proper nouns*, which are peculiar to individuals.

(2) Under the head of common nouns * are commonly

* I. In German all *Nouns*, as also all parts of speech when used as nouns begin with a capital letter. Ex.: 1. Der Sohn, the son; die Tochter, the daughter. 2. Der Gute, the good (man); die Gute, the good (woman). 3. Das Singen, the singing.

II. *The Indefinite Pronouns.* Ex.: Jemand, (any body, somebody). Jedermann, (every body). Etwas, (anything, something), and Nichts, (nothing).

Note, that when Etwas and Nichts are connected with a noun, or with an adjective used as a noun they do *not* begin with a capital. Ex.: Er hat etwas Brod, he has *some* bread; er hat nichts Gutes, he has *nothing* good.

III. *The absolute Possessive Pronouns* (when used substantively. L 35. 2.) Ex.: Die Meinigen, (my family); das Meinige, (my property).

IV. *The Indefinite Numerals*, when used without a substantive. Ex.: Alles, Alle, (all.; Einige, (some); Mancher, (many a); Viele, (many).

Digitized by Google

included several subdivisions; as *Collective nouns*, which are the names of a *plurality* of individuals considered as *unity*; and *abstract nouns*, which are the names of certain qualities, or attributes regarded as separate from any given substance.

(3) The nouns, both common and proper, as before said, are regularly inflected: exhibiting thus by means of terminations the several modifications of gender, number, and case. The numbers and cases will be made sufficiently clear under the head of declension of nouns. We here introduce the subject of

§ 6. GENDER.

(1) Strictly speaking, the masculine gender belongs exclusively to words denoting males; the feminine to those denoting females; and the neuter to such only as, are neither male, nor female. And in English, accordingly, with very little exception, this is found to be actually the case.

(2) Not so, however, in German; for there the names of many things *without* life, from their real, or supposed possession of *qualities* pertaining to things *with* life, are considered and treated as masculine, or feminine. Often, moreover, words indicating things without life, are deemed masculine or feminine merely from some resemblance in *form* to those designating things properly male or female. Hence arises, in Grammar, the distinction between the *natural* and the *grammatical* gender of words.

(3) Were the natural gender alone regarded, it would be necessary only to know the MEANING of a word, to know its gender; but since this is not the case, we are often obliged to determine gender chiefly by the FORM. We give below, therefore, the principal Rules for determining the gender in

V. *The Personal Pronouns*, Du, Ihr, (thou, you), &c., when we would distinguish thereby the person addressed.

VI. Ein, when an adjective, and likewise, when pronoun as distinguished from the article. Ex.: Ich habe nur Einen Freund, I have only *one* friend. Das Eine Pferd iſt blind, das andere iſt lahm, the *one* horse is blind, the other is lame.

VII. Adjectives derived from names of persons. Ex: Das Schillerſche Haus. OBSERVE that adjectives derived from the names of countries do *not* begin with a capital. Ex.: Der deutſche Bund, the German confederacy. Die franzöſiſche Sprache, the French language.

Digitized by Google

either way: suggesting only, as the best mode of learning the *exceptions* (which are numerous and here purposely omitted,) the custom of constantly and carefully noting them in reading and speaking.

§ 7. Rules for determining gender

by the meaning;	by the form.
(1) To the masculine belong names of	(1) To the masculine belong
male beings; * as, der Mann; der Löwe; &c.	
days; as, der Montag; der Dienſtag; &c.	
months; as, der Januar; der Februar; &c.	*a.* Those primary derivatives (See § 2. 3.) ending in e r, e l, e n; (*without meaning*;) and those also that are without affixes of any kind.
seasons; as, der Frühling; der Sommer; &c.	
winds; as, der Nordwind; der Südwind; &c.	
points of the compass; as, der Nord; der Süd; &c.	
mountains; as, der Harz, der Atlas; &c.	*b.* Those secondary derivatives formed by means of the (*significant*) suffixes, e r, e l, e n, i n g, and l i n g.
stones; as, der Diamant; der Rubin; &c.	
fruit-trees; as, der Birnbaum; der Apfelbaum; &c.	
(2) To the feminine belong the names of	(2) To the feminine belong
female beings; * as, die Frau; die Tochter; &c.	*a.* Those primary derivatives ending in e, b e, t e, or ſ t:
rivers; as, die Weſer; die Themſe; &c.	*b.* Those secondary derivatives formed by means of the suffixes e, e i, i n, h e i t, k e i t, ſ c h a f t, u n g.
fruits; as, die Birne; die Nuß; &c.	
trees; † as, die Birke, die Erle; &c.	

* Under the name of *male beings* must be included that of the Almighty as also those of angels and other superior powers; those of mythological deities and of human beings; those of beasts, birds, reptiles, and fishes. The term *female beings* must have a like latitude of signification

† This includes also plants and flowers.

Digitized by Google

(3) To the NEUTER belong the names of

places; as, Berlin; &c.
metals; as, das Silber; &c.
materials; as, das Holz; &c.
letters; as, das A; das B; &c.
infinitives used as nouns; as, das Leben; das Reiten; &c.
many individuals taken together; (i. e. *collective* nouns;) as, das Heer; &c.
adjectives used as nouns; (in an abstract, and indefinite way;) as, das Gute, das Schöne; &c.

(3) To the NEUTER belong

a. Those secondary derivatives formed by means of the suffixes, chen lein sal, sel, niß, thum.

b. Those nouns having the augment ge.

§ 8. GENDER OF COMPOUNDS AND FOREIGN WORDS

(1) Compounds in general adopt the gender of their last component: as,

die Hofkirche, { (from Hof, court, or yard, and Kirche, church;) } court church;
der Kirchhof, the church yard;
der Eichbaum, (from die Eiche, the oak, and der Baum, tree;) the oak-tree;
die Windmühle, (from der Wind, the wind, and die Mühle; mill;) the windmill;
das Rathhaus, (from der Rath, council, and das Haus; house;) the council-house.

(2) Foreign words, for the most part, when taken into the German language, retain their original gender. Those, however, that have become fairly *Germanized*, often take a different gender as they take a different form: thus, *Corpus*, (the body,) which, in Latin, is *neuter*, becomes, in German, der Körper, which is *masculine*.

§ 9. DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

(1) To what has been already said (§ 2. (3.)) concerning the derivation of nouns, we add here, before entering upon the subject of Declension, a brief view of those (the *secondary*

Digitized by Google

~~derivatives~~) that are made by *significant* suffixes. And that the matter may have the most practical shape, we subjoin a list of the leading suffixes of this class: putting in brackets the equivalent *English* terminations, explaining severally their force and use, and illustrating the whole by suitable examples.

§ 10. SUFFIXES USED IN FORMING NOUNS.

SUFFIXES.	*English equivalents.*	
er	[*er, ier, or, yer, zen ;*]	designates (*male*) *persons*, also, *agents*, or *instruments ;*
ing, or ling	[*ling, aster ,*]	denotes (often *contemptuously*) *persons, animals and things ;*
in or inn	[*ess, ix ;*]	designates (*female*) *persons ;*
ei	[*y, ry, ary, ery, ory ;*]	indicates the *act, practice,* or *place of business ;*
ung	[*ing, ure, ion ;*]	signifies the *act*, or the *continuing to act ;*
e heit keit	[*ness, ity, th ;*] [*ness, ity, th ;*] [*ness, ity, th ;*]	denote *qualities*, or *attributes ;*
ſchaft thum	[*ship, hood, ity ;*] [*dom, hood, ity ;*]	express *rank, grade, office ;* also, a *number* of *things taken collectively ;* often, merely the *quality ;*
ſal ſel niß	[*ude, cy ;*] [*ude, cy ;*] [*ness, cy ;*]	denote the *state*, or *condition ;* also, the *quality ;* sometimes the *result ;*
chen lein	[*kin, ule, et, let ;*] [*kin, ule, et, let ;*]	indicate *diminutiveness.*

§ 11. EXAMPLES.

er	Sänger,	a singer ;
	Bürger,	a citizen ;
	Säger,	a sawyer
	Schneider,	a tailor ;
	Römer, *	a Roman ;
	Leipziger, †	a resident of Leipzig ;
	Wiener,	a Viennese ;

* Appellatives derived from the names of people often have the termination e ; as, der Heſſe, the Hessian ; der Türke, the Turk ; &c.

† Nouns derived from the name of a city or town, are often used indeclinably as adjectives. Ex.: Das Leipziger Bier, the Leipzic beer. Gen. Des Leipziger Biers.

Digitized by Google

ling	Häuptling,	a captain;
	Flüchtling,	a fugitive;
	Miethling,	a hireling;
	Dichterling,	a poetaster;
	Hänfling,	a linnet;
	Schößling,	a shoot, or sprig
in or inn	Gräfin,	a countess;
	Heldin,	a heroine;
	Königin,	a queen;
	Professorin,	a professor's wife;
	Löwin,	a lioness;
ei	Dieberei,	thievery;
	Heuchelei,	hypocrisy;
	Fischerei,	fishery;
	Brauerei,	brewery;
ung	Belehrung,	teaching, i.e. the *act* of teaching;
	Erbauung,	the building, or erecting;
	Krönung,	the crowning, or coronation;
	Sitzung,	the sitting, or session;
e	Güte,	goodness;
	Stärke,	strength;
heit	Krankheit,	sickness;
	Dummheit,	stupidity;
keit	Heiligkeit,	holiness;
	Feuchtigkeit,	humidity;
schaft	Freundschaft,	friendship;
	Priesterschaft,	priesthood, that is, the *body* of the priests;
	Bereitschaft,	readiness;
thum	Heidenthum,	heathendom; heathenism;
	Christenthum,	Christendom; Christianity;
	Eigenthum,	property;
sal	Mühsal,	the *state* of being in trouble; distress;
sel	Häcksel,	that which has *resulted* from hacking and cutting; i. e. cuttings;
niß	Bedürfniß	the *state* of being in want; necessity;
	Gleichniß,	*quality*, or *state* of being like; likeness;
lein	Büchlein,	a *little* book.
	Knäblein,	a *little* boy;
chen	Stühlchen,	a *little* stool;
	Eichen,	a *little* egg.

Digitized by Google

(1) It should be observed, in forming derivatives of the order illustrated above, that when a, o, or u, is contained in the radical part, it is modified into ä, ö, or ü, upon receiving any one of the suffixes er, ling, in, chen, lein, e, niß and ſal; as, in the case of Länger, (from Lang,) Bürger, (from Burg,) and others of the like kind.

(2) Often, moreover, in forming secondary derivatives certain *euphonic* letters are inserted between the suffix and the word to which it is added; as, ig in Feuchtigkeit, humidity. Other letters employed in this way, are en, n and t. These euphonic parts are easily distinguished from those having an influence on the meaning, by merely resolving the derivative into its elements.

(3) Here, too, may be noted the particle ge, which being prefixed to certain primary words, forms a class of nouns denoting either *frequency* of action, or a *collection* of things. These words, also, most commonly suffix the letter e; Gerede, constant talk; Geheul, frequent crying; Gebirge, a range of hills, are examples.

§ 12. Declension of common nouns.

(1) In German there are two declensions, distinguished as the *Old* and the *New*. The characteristic of each is the termination of the genitive singular. In the former, the genitive is formed from the nominative by adding es or s; when otherwise formed, the noun is of the new declension.

(2) To the old declension belong almost all masculine and neuter nouns; that is, by far the greater part of all the nouns in the language.

(3) In both declensions, the nominative, genitive and accusative plural are, in form, alike; while the dative terminates always in the letter n. Unless, therefore, the word under declension already ends in that letter, it is, in the dative, uniformly assumed.

(4) All *feminine* nouns are invariable in the singular; in the plural, they are, for the most part, inflected according to the new declension.

Digitized by Google

(5) In compounds, the *last* word only is subjected to the variations of declension.

§ 13. OLD DECLENSION.

TERMINATIONS.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
NOMINATIVE	——	——e (5; —ä).
GENITIVE	——es *or* s, (see 3).	——e.
DATIVE	——e *or* like nom.	——en (9).
ACCUSATIVE	——	——e.

SINGULRR NUMBER.

(1) *Feminine* nouns in the singular number are *not* inflected; those of the *other* genders *ending* in e, el, en, er, chen and lein, add s in the *genitive;* the dative and accusative being like the nominative:

N. der Spaten,	the spade;	das Büchlein,	the book;
G. des Spaten–s,	of the spade;	des Büchlein–s,	of the book;
D. dem Spaten,	to the spade;	dem Büchlein,	to the book;
A. den Spaten,	the spade;	das Büchlein,	(L. XXIV. 1)

(2) Nouns of the *old* declension which do *not* end in e, el, en, er, chen and lein, add es (see 3) in the *genitive*, and e (see 3) in the dative; the accusative remaining like the nominative:

N. das Jahr,	the year;	der Baum,	the tree;
G. des Jahr–es,	of the year;	des Baum–es,	of the tree;
D. dem Jahr–e,	to, for the year;	dem Baum–e,	to, for the tree;
A. das Jahr,	the year;	den Baum,	the tree.

N. das Pult,	the desk;	der Stahl,	the steel;
G. des Pult–es,	of the desk;	des Stahl–es,	of the steel;
D. dem Pult–e,	to, for the desk;	dem Stahl–e,	to, for the steel;
A. das Pult,	the desk;	den Stahl,	the steel.

(3) The e of the *genitive* and *dative* is often omitted in words *not* ending in el, en, er, chen, lein. Its omission or retention is to be determined by euphony alone. In nouns of

Digitized by Google

two or more syllables, unless the last one be under the full accent, e is commonly omitted in the genitive, and sometimes also in the dative; as, des Königs, dem König, instead of des Königes, dem Könige.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL.

(4) Nouns ending in e, el, en, er, chen and lein, have the same form in the plural as in the singular:

Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural,*
der Spaten,	die Spaten;	das Büchlein,	die Büchlein;
der Schloſſer,	die Schloſſer;	das Mittel,	die Mittel.

Exceptions. a. The following take the umlaut (L. 2. II):

Apfel, Hammel, Handel, Mangel, Mantel, Nabel, Nagel, Sattel, Schnabel, Vogel, Faden, Garten, Graben, Hafen, Ofen, Schaden, Acker, Bruder, Hammer, Schwager, Vater, Kloſter; as, der Apfel, the apple; die Aepfel, the apples etc.

b. Kragen, Magen and Wagen, also, sometimes take the umlaut in the plural.

(5) *Neuter* nouns *not* ending in e, el, en, er, chen, lein, form their *plural* by adding e:

das Jahr,	die Jahr–e;	das Stück,	die Stück–e;
das Pult,	die Pult–e;	das Schaf,	die Schaf–e.

Exceptions. a. Floß and Rohr take the umlaut; Boot has the regular form Boote, or Böte.

b. The following neuter nouns add er in the plural, and those capable of it take the umlaut:

Aas, Amt, Bad, Bild, Blatt, Buch, Dach, Dorf, Ei, Fach, Faß, Feld, Geld, Gemüth, Geſchlecht, Geſpenſt, Glas, Glied, Grab, Gras, Gut, Haupt, Haus, Hoſpital, Huhn, Kalb, Kamiſol, Kind, Kleid, Korn, Kraut, Lamm, Lied, Loch, Maul, Neſt, Parlament, Pfand, Rad, Regiment, Reis, Rind, Schloß, Schwert, Spital, Thal, Volk, Weib; as, das Amt, the office; die Aemter, the offices. etc.

All nouns, also, ending in thum, *masculine* as well as neuter, add er and take the umlaut; as, der Reichthum, die Reichthümer ꝛc.

(6) Masculine nouns *not* ending in e, el, en, er, form their *plural* by adding e, and taking the umlaut, if capable of it:

Digitized by Google

der Baum,	die Bäume;	der Stuhl,	die Stühle;
der Koch,	die Köche;	der Ball,	die Bälle.

Exceptions. *a.* The following add er:

Böſewicht, Dorn, Geiſt, Gott, Leib, Mann, Ort, Rand Vormund, Wald, Wurm; as, der Dorn, the thorn; die Dörner, the thorns etc.

b. The following reject the umlaut:

Aal, Aar, Abend, Amboß, Anwalt, Arm, Docht, Dolch, Dorſch, Eidam, Gemahl, Grad, Habicht, Halm, Hauch, Herzog, Huf, Hund, Kapaun, Kobold, Kork, Kranich, Laut, Leichnam, Luchs, Molch, Monat, Mond, Mord, Pfad, Propf, Puls, Punkt, Salm, Schaft, Schuh, Staar, Stoff, Tag, Trunkenbold, Unhold, Vielfraß, Wiedehopf, Zoll (inch); as, der Aal, the eel; die Aale, the eels; etc.

(7) Feminine nouns ending in kunſt and niß, as also those of the following list, form their plural by adding e, and taking the umlaut, if capable of it:

Angſt, Ausflucht, Art, Bank, Braut, Bruſt, Fauſt, Frucht, Gans, Gruft, Geſchwulſt, Hand, Haut, Kluft, Kraft, Kuh, Kunſt, Laus, Luft, Luſt, Macht, Magd, Maus, Nacht, Naht, Noth, Nuß, Sau, Schnur, Stadt, Wand, Welt, Wurſt, Zunft, Zuſammenkunft.

(8) The two nouns Mutter and Tochter form their plural by taking the umlaut.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS IN THE PLURAL.

(9) Nouns whose plural ends in en, have all cases in this number alike; those of other terminations have the genitive and accusative like the nominative, and add n in the dative:

N. die Spaten,	the spades;	die Büchlein,	the books, L. 24;
G. der Spaten,	of the spades;	der Büchlein,	of the books;
D. den Spaten,	to the spades;	den Büchlein,	to the books;
A. die Spaten,	the spades;	die Büchlein,	the books.

N. die Bäume,	the trees;	die Pulte,	the desks,
G. der Bäume,	of the trees;	der Pulte,	of the desks;
D. den Bäume–n,	to the trees;	den Pulte–n,	to the desks;
A. die Bäume,	the trees;	die Pulte,	the desks.

Digitized by Google

§ 14. The new declension.

TERMINATIONS.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	——.	——en or n.
Gen.	——en or n. *	——en or n.
Dat.	——en or n.	——en or n.
Acc.	——en or n.	——en or n.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	der Graf, the count;	die Grafen, the counts;
G.	des Grafen, of the count;	der Grafen, of the counts;
D.	dem Grafen, to the count;	den Grafen, to or for the counts;
A.	den Grafen, the count.	die Grafen, the counts.
N.	der Falke, the falcon;	die Falken, the falcons;
G.	des Falken, of the falcon;	der Falken, of the falcons;
D.	dem Falken, to the falcon;	den Falken, to the falcons;
A.	den Falken, the falcon.	die Falken, the falcons.

(1) Feminine nouns which are indeclinable in the singular, are, for the most part, of this declension. † Those ending in the suffix in, in the singular, double the n in the plural. These last are, also, often written with the double n in the singular: as, Heldinn, a heroine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	die Schuld, ‡ the debt;	die Schulden, the debts;
G.	der Schuld, of the debt;	der Schulden, of the debts;
D.	der Schuld, to the debt;	den Schulden, to the debts;
A.	die Schuld, the debt.	die Schulden, the debts.

* When the singular ends in e, el, ar or er, the plural takes n only.

† Mutter, *mother*, and Tochter, *daughter*, are the only feminine nouns that have the terminations of the Nom., Gen. and Acc. plural like the singular. They add n to the dative.

‡ Feminine nouns, it will be remembered, have no variations of declension in the *singular*. As exceptions to this rule, however, some examples remain (vestiges of the ancient mode of declension), in which the Gen. and Dat. appear under the government of a preposition and varied by terminations. Thus: mit or in Ehren, with or in respect or honor: Ehren, from Ehre; auf Erden, on earth: Erden, from Erde; mit Freuden, with joy: Freuden, from Freude; von or auf Seiten, on the part of: Seiten, from Seite.

The ending of the Genitive is sometimes, also, retained, when the word is under the government of a noun succeeding. Thus, Dies iſt meiner Frauen Schweſter, this is my wife's sister.

Digitized by Google

N.	die Hirtin, the shepherdess;	die Hirtinnen, the sheperdesses;
G.	der Hirtin, of the shepherdess;	der Hirtinnen, of the shepherdesses;
D.	der Hirtin, to the shepherdess;	den Hirtinnen, to the shepherdesses;
A.	die Hirtin, the shepherdess.	die Hirtinnen, the shepherdesses.

§ 15. OBSERVATIONS ON THE DECLENSION OF COMMON NOUNS

(1) Some have NO SINGULAR: as,

Aeltern (Eltern), parents.	Koſten and Unkoſten, costs.
Ahnen, ancestors.	Kriegsläufte, events of war.
Alpen, alps.	Leute,* people, folks.
Annaten, first fruits.	Maſern and Rötheln, measles.
Beinkleider, small clothes.	Molken, whey.
Blattern, small-pox.	Oſtern, Easter.
Briefſchaften, letters, papers.	Pfingſten, Whitsuntide.
Einkünfte, revenue.	Ränke, tricks.
Faſten, Lent, fasts.	Repreſſalien, reprisals.
Ferien, Holidays.	Schranken, bounds.
Fußſtapfen, footsteps.	Speſen, expenses.
Gebrüder, brothers.	Sporteln, fees.
Gefälle, rents.	Spolien, spoils.
Geſchwiſter, brothers and sisters.	Studien, studies.
Gliedmaßen, the limbs.	Träber or Treber, husks, lees.
Händel, quarrels.	Trümmer, ruins.
Hefen, dregs, yeast.	Truppen, troops.
Hoſen, trowsers.	Weihnachten, Christmas.
Inſignien, marks, badges.	Zeitläufte, events of the times.
Kaldaunen, entrails.	Zinſen, interest of money.

* Leute merely expresses plurality of persons. In this it differs from Menſchen, (*human beings*) which has regard to the kind or species, as also from Männer (*men*) which denotes particularly the sex. Those compounds, however, of which, in the singular, Mann forms the last part, take generally, in the plural, Leute instead of Männer; thus,

Singular.	*Plural.*
Arbeitsmann, workman;	Arbeitsleute, workpeople.
Edelmann, nobleman;	Edelleute, noblemen.
Kaufmann, merchant;	Kaufleute, merchants.
Landmann, countryman;	Landleute, countrypeople.

The distinctive difference between Leute and Männer may be forcibly shown by reference to the words Eheleute and Ehemänner: Eheleute means married *people*; Ehemänner signifies married *men*, i. e. husbands.

Digitized by Google

(2) Some have NO PLURAL.

These are,

a. Generic names of material substances; as, das Gold, gold; Silber, silver; Eisen, iron; &c.

b. General terms and those expressive of abstract ideas; as, Raub, pillage; Ruhm, glory; das Vieh, cattle; Vernunft, reason; Stolz, pride; Kälte, cold; &c.

c. Some names of plants; as, der Kohl, the cabbage; Hopfen, hops; Kresse, cresses; &c.

d. All infinitives employed as nouns, as also all neuter adjectives so employed; as, Leben, life; Verlangen, wish; das Weiß, white; &c.

e. Nouns, for the most part, denoting quantity, number, weight or measure; * as, Bund, bundle; Dutzend, dozen; Grad degree; Pfund, pound; Zoll, an inch; &c.

(3) Some, in the plural, have TWO FORMS; conveying, however, in general, different, though kindred significations; as,

Singular.		*Plurals.*
der Band,	Bande, bonds, fetters;	Bänder, † ribbons.
die Bank,	Bänke, benches;	Banken, banks (of commerce).
der Bogen,	Bogen, sheets of paper;	Bögen, arches, bows.
das Ding,	Dinge, things in general;	Dinger, little creatures.
der Dorn,	Dornen, kinds of thorn;	Dörner, thorns (more than one).
der Fuß,	Füße, feet;	Fuße, feet (as measures).
das Gesicht,	Gesichte, visions, sights;	Gesichter, faces.
das Horn,	Horne, sorts of horn;	Hörner, horns (more than one).
das Holz,	Holze, sorts of wood;	Hölzer, pieces of wood

* It should be noted that words expressing quantity, number, weight or measure, even if qualified by numerals signifying *more than one*, are rarely found in the plural. Thus, in German, we say, neun Klafter, *nine fathoms*; hundert Grad, *a hundred degrees*; &c., where, though the numeral expresses more than one, the noun of measure is still in the singular number.

Note, however, that feminines ending in e and words denoting periods of time, as also the names of coins, are, in general, excepted from the rule given in the note preceding.

† The singular of this is das (*neuter*) Band. From der Band, we have another form: Bände, volumes.

Digitized by Google

der Laden,	Laden, shutters;	Läden, shops.
das Land,	Lande, regions;	Länder, states.
das Mahl,	Mahle, marks, seasons;	Mähler, meals.
der Mann,	Männer, men;	Mannen, vassals.
der Mond,	Monden, months;	Monde, planets.
der Ort,	Orte, places (any);	Oerter, places (particular).
die Sau,	Sauen, wild boars;	Säue, swine.
der Schild,	Schilde, shields;	Schilder, * sign-boards.
die Schnur,	Schnüre, tapes;	Schnuren, daughters-in-law.
der Strauß,	Sträuße, nosegays;	Straußen, ostriches.
das Wort,	Wörter, words (more than one);	Worte, words (in construction)
der Zoll,	Zolle, inches;	Zölle, tolls.

§ 16. Foreign nouns.

(1) Some nouns introduced into the German from foreign languages, retain their original terminations unaltered: as, der Medicus, a physician; plur. Medici, physicians; Factum, deed; Facta, deeds.

(2) Some masculines and neuters from the French and the English, merely affix s to the genitive singular, which is retained in all the cases of the plural; as, der Lord, gen. des Lords; plur. die Lords; der Chef; gen. des Chefs; plur. die Chefs.

(3) But foreign nouns, for the most part, drop the terminations peculiar to the language whence they come, and substitute those characteristic of the German. Some, accordingly, are found to be declined after the old declension, some after the new, and others, again, partly after the one and partly after the other.

§ 17. Foreign nouns of the old declension.

(1) Foreign nouns of the neuter gender, as also most of the masculines, are of the old declension.

* In the singular, das Schild.

Digitized by Google

(2) Among the masculines must be noted those appellations of persons ending in

al; as, Kardinal, cardinal.
ar; as, Notar, notary.
an; as, Kaſtellan, castellan.
aner; as, Dominikaner dominican.
iner; as, Benediktiner, benedictine.

To which add Abt, Propſt, Papſt, Biſchof, Mayor, Spion, Patron, Offizier.

(3) Some have, in the plural, the form er (e + r); as, Hospital, Spital, Kamiſol, Regiment, Parlament; plur. Hospitäler, Spitäler, &c.

(4) Some, in the plural, soften the radical vowels; as, Abt, Altar, Biſchof, Chor, Choral, Hospital, Spital, Kanal, Caplan, Kardinal, Kloſter, Marſch, Moraſt, Palaſt, Papſt, Propſt; plur Aebte, Altäre, Biſchöfe, &c.

§ 18. Foreign nouns of the new declension.

(1) To the new declension belong all foreign nouns of the feminine gender, and nearly all masculines which are the appellations of *persons*. These latter are chiefly those ending in

at; as, Advocat, advocate.
ant; as, Adjutant, adjutant.
ent; as, Student, student.
ik; as, Katholik, Catholic.
aſt; as, Phantaſt, humorist.
iſt; as, Juriſt, lawyer.
oſt; as, Staroſt, Polish magistrate.
et; as, Poet, poet.
it; as, Jeſuit, Jesuit.
ot; as, Idiot, idiot.
e; as, Eleve, pupil.
log; as, Theolog, theologian.
ſoph; as, Philoſoph, philosopher.
nom; as, Aſtronom, astronomer.

(2) To these are to be added some other foreign masculines; as, der Elephant, the elephant; der Dukat, the ducat; der

Digitized by Google

Komet, the comet; der Planet, the planet; der Konſonant, the consonant; der Prinz, the prince; der Tyrann, the tyrant.

§ 19. FOREIGN NOUNS PARTLY OF THE OLD AND PARTLY OF THE NEW DECLENSION.

(1) These are, *first*, neuters ending in ſiv; as, das Paſſiv, gen. Paſſivs; plur. Paſſiven; — *secondly*, titles of males in or, as, Doctor; gen. Doctors; plur. Doctoren; — *thirdly*, neuters ending in al, il and um, which, also, often have i before the en of the plural; as, Kapital, plur. Kapitalien; Foſſil, plur. Foſſilien; Studium, plur. Studien; — *fourthly*, the following masculines, Aſterisk, Diamant, Faſan, Kapaun, Import, Konſul, Muskel, Pantoffel, Präfekt, Pſalm, Rubin, Staat, Thor, Traktat, Zins; to which add Inſekt, Atom, Pronom, Statut and Verb which are neuters.

§ 20. DECLENSION OF PROPER NOUNS, *in the singular number.*

(1) Names of males and females, except when the latter terminate in e, take s to form the genitive, which is their only variation; * as,

N.	Heinrich,	Eliſabeth,
G.	Heinrichs,	Eliſabeths,
D.	Heinrich,	Eliſabeth,
A.	Heinrich.	Eliſabeth.

(2) Names of females ending in e, as also of males ending in s, ß, ſch, x, or z, form the genitive in ens; † as,

N.	Luiſe,	Leibnitz,	Voß,
G.	Luiſens,	Leibnitzens,	Voſſens, ‡
D.	Luiſe,	Leibnitz,	Voß,
A.	Luiſe,	Leibnitz,	Voß.

* It is customary with some writers to affix en to the dative and accusative of proper names; but a better usage distinguishes these cases by prefixing the article; as, Leſſing; gen. Leſſings; dat. dem Leſſing (instead of Leſſingen); acc. den Leſſing (instead of Leſſingen).

† The genitive, dative and accusative of names ending in a, are sometimes formed by adding respectively ens and en, after dropping the a; as, Diana; gen. Dianens; dat. Dianen; acc. Dianen.

‡ The termination ens sometimes suffers contraction; as, Voß's, Leibnitz's.

Digitized by Google

(3) Names whether of males or females, when preceded by an article, are indeclinable; as,

N.	der Schiller,	die Luise;
G.	des Schiller,	der Luise;
D.	dem Schiller,	der Luise;
A.	den Schiller,	die Luise.

(4) Foreign names, also, having the unaccented terminations a s, e s, i s, u s, admit no variations of form, either in the singular or the plural. When, therefore, their case and number are not otherwise sufficiently indicated, an article or a preposition is used to point them out.

§ 21. Proper nouns in the plural.

(1) Proper nouns, when employed in the plural, conform, for the most part, to the rules for the declension of common nouns: the masculines being varied according to the old declension, and the feminines according to the new. *

(2) Their inflection is in no wise affected by the presence of the article, nor do the radical vowels a, o, u, au, ever assume the Umlaut.

Examples.

N.	die Leibnitze,	Schlegel,	Luisen,	Annen;
G.	der Leibnitze,	Schlegel,	Luisen,	Annen;
D.	den Leibnitzen,	Schlegeln,	Luisen,	Annen;
A.	die Leibnitze,	Schlegel,	Luisen,	Annen.

§ 22. Proper names of countries, cities, &c.

(1) Proper names of places admit no changes of form for the purposes of declension, beyond the mere addition of s to the genitive singular; as, Berlin; gen. Berlins.

(2) If, however, the word end in a sound not easily admitting an s after it, the case is distinguished by placing be-

* Sometimes the plural is made by the addition of s to the singular; as, die Schillers, die Herders; the Schillers, the Herders. Those ending in o add or the plural ne or nen; as, Cato; nom. plur. Catone or Catonen, &c.

Digitized by Google

fore it a noun preceded by the article; or it is expressed by the prep. von. *Example:* die Stadt Mainz, the city Mayence. Der König von Preußen. Die Einwohner von Paris.

§ 23. Observations.

(1) When several proper names belonging to the same person, and they NOT *preceded by the article*, come together, the *last* one only is declined; as, Johann Christoph Adelungs Sprachlehre; John Christopher Adelung's grammar: — if, however, *the article precede*, none of them undergo change; as, die Werke des Johann Gottlob Herder; the works of John Gottlob Herder.

(2) When a common and a proper name of the same person, *preceded by the article*, concur, the *common* noun alone is inflected; as, der Tod des Königs Ludwig; the death of king Louis: — *if no article precede*, the *proper* noun is declined; * as, König Ludwigs Tod; king Louis' death.

(3) When a Christian name is separated from a family name by a preposition (specially von), the *Christian* name only admits of declension; as, die Gedichte Friedrichs von Schiller; the poems of Frederick of Schiller: — if, however, the genitive *precede* the governing noun, the *family* name only takes the sign of declension; as, Friedrich von Schillers Werke; Frederick of Schiller's works.

§ 24. Adjectives.

(1) Adjectives are, in German, generally so varied in termination, as to indicate thereby the gender, number and case of the words with which they are joined. Before treating of their inflection, however, we shall present and explain those significant suffixes, which are most commonly employed in forming adjectives from other words.

(2) Here, as was done in the case of derivative nouns (§ 10. § 11.), each suffix is given with its corresponding English equivalent; its meaning explained; and its use further illustrated by a series of examples.

* When the word Herr is used with a proper noun, it is declined; as, Herrn Schlegels Gedichte, *not* Herr Schlegels Gedichte.

Digitized by Google

§ 25. Suffixes used in forming adjectives.

Suffixes.	*English equivalents.*	
bar	[*able, ible, ile;*]	implies *ability;* sometimes, *disposition.*
en	[*en;*]	points to something *made of* that expressed by the radical.
haft	[*ive, ish;*]	denotes *tendency,* or *inclination;* also *resemblance.*
ig	[*y, ful;*]	represents a thing as being *full of* that denoted by the radical.
icht	[*y, ous, ish;*]	marks *similarity of nature,* or *character.*
lich	[*ly, ish, able;*]	implies *likeness* or *sameness* either of manner or degree; also, *ability.*
iſch	[*ish, some, al;*]	represents something as *pertaining,* or *belonging to.*
ſam	[*some, able;*]	expresses *inclination;* sometimes *ability.*

§ 26. Examples.

bar	Dienſtbar;	serviceable; tributary.
	Sichtbar;	that *can be* seen; visible.
en	Golden;	*made of* gold.
	Blei(er)n; *	leaden.
haft	Tugendhaft;	*inclined* to virtue; virtuous.
	Meiſterhaft;	*resembling* a master; masterly.
ig	Blumig;	*full of* flowers; *abounding in* flowers.
	Blumicht;	flowery, that is, *like* flowers.
icht	Waldig;	woody, i. e. *abounding in* woods.
	Salzicht;	saltish; somewhat *like* salt.
lich	Brüderlich;	brotherly, or like a brother.
	Kränklich;	sickly.
	Süßlich;	sweetish; somewhat sweet.
	Beweglich;	movable.

* The letters er in this word are simply *euphonic;* while the e of en is dropped, also, for euphony (§ 2. (8).)

Digitized by Google

ifch	Irdiſch;	earthly; *belonging to* earth.
	Poetiſch;	poetical.
	Zänkiſch; *	quarrelsome.
ſam	Arbeitſam;	*inclined* to work; diligent.
	Folgſam;	inclined to follow (orders), i. e. obedient.

§ 27. Declension of adjectives.

(1) Whether an adjective is to be inflected at all or not, depends wholly upon the way in which it is used; for, when employed as a predicate, it is *never* declined; † when as an attributive, almost *always*. Be the noun, therefore, masculine, feminine or neuter; be it singular or plural; if the adjective, to which it is applied, be used as a *predicate* (L. 14. Note.), its form remains unchanged: thus,

Der Mann iſt gut; the man is good.
Die Frau iſt gut; the woman is good.
Das Kind iſt gut; the child is good.
Die Männer ſind gut; the men are good.
Die Frauen ſind gut; the women are good.
Ich nenne das Kind ſchön; I call the child beautiful.
Ich nenne die Kinder ſchön; I call the children beautiful.
Der Knabe, klug und artig; ‡ the boy prudent and polite.

(2) The following adjectives (and a few others) are never used otherwise than as predicates, and are, of course, indeclinable:

abhold, averse.	feind, hostile.
angſt, anxious.	gehaßt, hating, hated.
anheiſchig, bound by promise.	gar, done; cooked enough.
bereit, ready.	gäng und gebe, current; usual
brach, fallow.	eingedenk, mindful.

* This is the ending commonly added to names of places pointing to things belonging to them; as, engliſch, ſchwediſch (§ 5. Note VII.), &c. If however, a name be a compound, the suffix er is used in place of iſch; as, das Merſeburger Bier; the Merseburg beer.

† For the form of the adjective substantively employed after nichts or etwas, see Lesson 14. 6.

‡ In this last example, the *predicative* use of the adjectives may be made more obvious, by completing the structure, thus, der Knabe, welcher klug und artig iſt; the boy who *is* prudent and polite; so also, Cäſar, klug und tapfer.

Digitized by Google

getroſt, cheerful.
gewärtig, aware.
gram, grudge-bearing.
habhaft, possessing, or possessed of.
handgemein, skirmishing.
irre, wrong; erring.
kund, known.
leid, distressing; sorry.
noth, needful.
nütze, useful.
quer, crosswise.
quitt, rid of.
theilhaft, sharing.
unpaß, ill; sick.
verluſtig, forfeiting.

§ 28. Declinable adjectives.

(1) There are two declensions of adjectives, as there are two declensions of nouns: the Old and the New. In either of these, according to circumstances, are *attributive* adjectives declined. The following are the terminations of

THE OLD DECLENSION.

	Singular.			*Plural*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
Nom.	er. *	e.	es. †	Nom. e.
Gen.	es (en ‡).	er.	es (en ‡).	Gen. er.
Dat.	em.	er.	em.	Dat. en.
Acc.	en.	e.	es. †	Acc. e.

§ 29. Rule.

When the adjective stands either entirely *alone* before its substantive, or preceded and restricted by a word that is un-

* Adjectives ending in el, en, er, commonly drop the e upon receiving a suffix; as,

edel, noble; edler (not edeler) Mann;
eben, even; ebner (not ebener) Weg;
lauter, pure; lautres (not lauteres) Gold.

Upon adding en, the e of the termination (en) is dropped, while that of the root is retained; as, den heitern (instead of heitren) Morgen; the serene morning.

† In these two places (*nom. and acc. neut.*) the termination es is often omitted, when the adjective is under no special emphasis; as, kalt (for kaltes) Waſſer; cold water.

‡ Note that here (gen. sing. masc. and neut.) it is now the common custom to adopt the *new*, instead of the *old form*; en, for the sake of euphony, being substituted for es; as, ein Stück friſch en (not es) Brodes; a piece of fresh bread. In a few adverbial phrases, however, the *old* form is still generally used; as, gutes Muths; of good courage.

Digitized by Google

declinable (see L. XIV. 3) it follows the Old form of declension: thus,

	Masc. Sing.	*Fem. Sing.*	*Neut. Sing.*
N.	guter Vater,	gute Mutter,	gutes Geld,
G.	gutes (en) Vaters,	guter Mutter	gutes (en) Geldes,
D.	gutem Vater,	guter Mutter,	gutem Gelde,
A.	guten Vater.	gute Mutter.	gutes Geld.
	Plural.	*Plural.*	*Plural.*
N.	gute Väter,	gute Mütter,	gute Gelder,
G.	guter Väter,	guter Mütter,	guter Gelder,
D	guten Vätern,	guten Müttern,	guten Geldern.
A.	gute Väter.	gute Mütter.	gute Gelder.

(1) The following are examples, in which the adjective in each instance is preceded by a word, either undeclined or indeclinable (§ 33):

Etwas guter Wein,	some good wine.
Viel frische Milch,	much fresh milk.
Wenig kaltes Wasser	a little cold water.
Sehr gute Menschen,	very good men.
Genug rother Wein,	enough red wine.
Fünf lange Jahre,	five long years.
Allerlei süße Frucht,	all kinds of sweet fruit.

§ 30. THE NEW DECLENSION.

TERMINATIONS.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
Nom.	e.	e.	e.	en.
Gen.	en.	en.	en.	en.
Dat.	en.	en.	en.	en.
Acc.	en.	e.	e.	en.

§ 31. RULE.

(1) When immediately preceded and restricted by the definite *article*, by a relative or demonstrative *pronoun*, or by an

Digitized by Google

ndefinite *numeral* (*declined after the ancient form* *), the adjective follows the new form of declension: thus,

	Masc. Sing.	*Fem. Sing.*	*Neut. Sing.*
N.	der gute Mann,	die gute Frau,	das gute Kind,
G.	des guten Mannes,	der guten Frau,	des guten Kindes,
D.	dem guten Manne,	der guten Frau,	dem guten Kinde,
A.	den guten Mann.	die gute Frau.	das gute Kind.
	Plural.	*Plural.*	*Plural.*
N.	die guten Männer,	die guten Frauen,	die guten Kinder,
G.	der guten Männer,	der guten Frauen,	der guten Kinder,
D.	den guten Männern,	den guten Frauen,	den guten Kindern,
A.	die guten Männer.	die guten Frauen.	die guten Kinder.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
	Masculine.	
N.	dieſer ſchöne Garten,	dieſe ſchönen Gärten.
G.	dieſes ſchönen Gartens,	dieſer ſchönen Gärten
D.	dieſem ſchönen Garten,	dieſen ſchönen Gärten.
A.	dieſen ſchönen Garten,	dieſe ſchönen Gärten.
	Feminine.	
N.	welche ſchöne Blume,	welche ſchönen † Blumen.
G.	welcher ſchönen Blume,	welcher ſchönen Blumen.
D.	welcher ſchönen Blume,	welchen ſchönen Blumen.
A.	welche ſchöne Blume,	welche ſchönen † Blumen.

* Das, however, the *neuter* of the definite article, differs from the old form, in having the ending as, instead of es; so also in compounds; as, dasſelbe, the same; dasjenige, that. The other words referred to in the rule, are

dieſer, this.	aller, every; all.
jener, that.	einiger, some; several.
welcher, who; which.	etlicher, some; several.
ſolcher, such.	mancher, many a.
jeder, jeglicher, each.	

Three of these, it may further be noticed, viz. welcher, welche, welches, which; solcher, solche, solches, such; and mancher, manche, manches, many a; sometimes appear without the terminations of declension: in which case the adjective assumes the suffixes denoting gender, &c. Thus, manch ſchönes Bild, many a beautiful picture.

† With many authors it is the custom to reject the final n of the nom. and acc. plural of adjectives preceded by einige, etliche, mehrere, manche, viele, alle welche, ſolche and wenige: as, einige deutſche Kaiſer; some German emperors.

Digitized by Google

	Singular.	*Plural.*
	Neuter.	
N.	manches ſchöne Feld,	manche ſchönen Felder.
G.	manches ſchönen Feldes,	mancher ſchönen Felder.
D.	manchem ſchönen Felde,	manchen ſchönen Feldern.
A.	manches ſchöne Feld,	manche ſchönen Felder.

§ 32. MIXED DECLENSION.

(1) We have seen that an adjective, when standing *alone* before its noun, is varied according to the ancient declension; and this, because the gender, number and case of the noun being very imperfectly indicated by the form of the noun itself, the terminations of the old declension, which, in this respect, are more complete, seem necessary in order the more fully to point out these particulars: thus, guter Mann, good man; gute Frau, good woman; gutes Feld, good field.

(2) When, however, as often happens, it is *itself* preceded by some restrictive word (such as der, die, das, the; dieſer, dieſe, dieſes, this, &c.), declined after the ancient form, and, therefore, by its endings, sufficiently showing the gender, number and case of the noun, the adjective passes into the less distinctive form, called the new declension: thus, dieſer gute Mann, this good man; dieſe gute Frau, this good woman; dieſes gute Feld, this good field.

(3) But there are some restrictive words which, though, in the main, inflected according to the more complete form of the ancient declension, are, in *three leading places* (nom. sing. masc. and nom. and acc. sing. neuter), entirely destitute of significant terminations. These words are,

ein, a.	ſein, his; its.
kein, no; none.	ihr, her; your; their.
mein, my.	unſer, our.
dein, thy.	euer, your.

(4) Hence it happens, that, while in every other case, the words just cited, follow the old form, and consequently require the subsequent adjective to adopt the new one, the adjective is itself made to supply the deficiency, in the three places

Digitized by Google

named above, by assuming therein the terminations proper to the ancient form. In this way, is produced a sort of *mixed* declension, which, in books generally, is set down as the Third Declension. Thus, then, will stand the

Terminations of the Mixed Declension.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		*Plural.*
N.	er (old form).	e.	es (old form).	N.	en.*
G.	en.	en.	en.	G.	en.
D.	en.	en.	en.	D.	en.
A.	en.	e.	es (old form).	A.	en.*

(5) It must be added, also, that the personal pronouns, ich, I; du, thou; er, he; ſie, she; es, it; wir, we; ihr, ye or you; ſie, they; cause the adjective before which they stand, to take this mixed form of declension. Hence the

§ 33. RULE.

(1) When the adjective is immediatly preceded and restricted by the *indefinite article*, by a *personal* or *possessive pronoun*, or by the word kein, it assumes the endings characteristic of the mixed declension: thus,

	Singular.	*Plural.*
	Masculine.	
N.	ein guter Bruder,	
G.	eines guten Bruders,	
D.	einem guten Bruder,	
A.	einen guten Bruder.	
	Feminine.	
N.	meine gute Schweſter,	meine guten Schweſtern.
G.	meiner guten Schweſter,	meiner guten Schweſtern.
D.	meiner guten Schweſter,	meinen guten Schweſtern.
A.	meine gute Schweſter,	meine guten Schweſtern.
	Neuter.	
N.	unſer gutes Haus,	unſre guten Häuſer.
G.	unſers guten Hauſes,	unſrer guten Häuſer.
D.	unſerm guten Hauſe,	unſern guten Häuſern.
A.	unſer gutes Haus,	unſre guten Häuſer.

* See note page 105, also 2d note, page 289.

Digitized by Google

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	du gute Mutter,	ihr guten Mütter.
G.	deiner (der*) guten Mutter,	euer guten Mütter.
D.	dir guten Mutter,	euch guten Müttern.
A.	dich gute Mutter,	euch guten Mütter.

§ 34. FURTHER OBSERVATIONS ON ADJECTIVES.

(1) When several consecutive adjectives come before and qualify the same noun, each has the same form, which according to the preceding rules, it would have, if standing alone; as, guter, rother, lauterer Wein, good, red, pure wine; die reife, ſchöne, gute Frucht, the ripe, beautiful, good fruit.

(2) But when of two adjectives which relate to the same noun, the *second* forms with the noun an expression for a single idea, which the *first* qualifies as a whole, the second adjective takes (except in the nom. sing. and in nom. and acc. plural) the new form of declension; as, mit trockn em weiß en Sand, with dry white sand; where *white sand*, that is, sand which is white, is said also to be *dry*.

(3) When two or more adjectives terminating alike, precede and qualify the same noun, the ending of the former is occasionally omitted; such omission being marked by a hyphen; as, ein roth- (for rothes) und weißes Geſicht, a red and white face; die ſchwarz-roth-goldene Fahne, the black red golden banner.

(4) Participles are declined after the manner of adjectives: thus, der geliebte Bruder, the beloved brother; gen. des geliebten Bruders, &c.

(5) Adjectives, in German, as in other languages, are, by ellipsis, often made to serve in place of nouns. They then begin with a capital letter, and, excepting that they retain the forms of declension peculiar to adjectives, are in all respects treated as nouns. Their gender is made apparent either by their terminations or by the presence of an article or other definitive; as, ein Deutſcher, a German; dieſer Deutſche, this Ger-

* Note that after the personal pronouns, in the *genitive case*, the article must be used; as, deiner, der guten Mutter; of thee, the good mother.

Digitized by Google

man; die Deutſche, the German woman; das Schöne, the beautiful; das Gute, the good; that is, *that which is beautiful; that which is good.* So, also, das Weiß, the white; das Grün, the green; das Roth, the red; &c.

(6) When of two adjectives preceding a noun, the first is employed as an *adverb* to qualify the second, the former is not declined: thus, ein ganz neues Haus, a house *entirely* new: not ein ganzes neues Haus, which would mean, *an entire, new house.*

§ 35. Comparison of Adjectives.

(1) In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are commonly expressed by means of the suffixes er and eſt: thus,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
wild, wild;	wilder, wilder;	wildeſt, wildest.
feſt, firm;	feſter, firmer;	feſteſt, firmest.
dreiſt, bold;	dreiſter, bolder;	dreiſteſt, boldest.
los, loose;	loſer, looser;	loſeſt, loosest.
naß, wet;	naſſer, wetter;	naſſeſt, wettest.
raſch, quick;	raſcher, quicker;	raſcheſt, quickest.
ſtolz, proud;	ſtolzer, prouder;	ſtolzeſt, proudest.

§ 36. Euphonic Changes.

(1) When the positive does not end in d, t, ſt, s, ß, ſch, or z, the e of the superlative suffix (eſt) is omitted; as,

blank, bright;	blanker, brighter;	blankſt, brightest.
klar, clear;	klarer, clearer;	klarſt, clearest.
rein, pure;	reiner, purer;	reinſt, purest.
ſchön, fine;	ſchöner, finer;	ſchönſt, finest.

(2) When the positive ends in e, the e of the comparative suffix (er) is dropped; as,

weiſe, wise;	weiſer, wiser;	weiſeſt, wisest.
müde, weary;	müder, more weary;	müdeſt, most weary.

Digitized by Google

(3) When the positive ends in el, en or er, the e of these terminations is commonly omitted, upon adding the comparative or superlative suffix (er or ſt); as,

edel, noble; edler (not edeler), nobler; edelſt, noblest.
trocken, dry; trockner (not trockener), drier; trockenſt, driest.
tapfer, brave; tapfrer (not tapferer), braver; tapferſt, bravest.

(4) When the positive is a monosyllable, the vowel (if it be capable of it) commonly takes the Umlaut, in the comparative and superlative; as,

alt, old; ält er, older; ält eſt, oldest.
grob, coarse; gröber, coarser; gröbſt, coarsest.
klug, wise; klüger, wiser; klügſt, wisest.

(5) EXCEPTIONS. From this last rule, however, must be excepted nearly all those adjectives containing the diphthong au: as, laut (loud), lauter, lauteſt; rauh (rough), rauher, rauheſt. So, also, the following:

bunt, variegated.	knapp, tight.	ſatt, satisfied.
fade, insipid.	lahm, lame.	ſchlaff, loose.
fahl, fallow.	laß, weary.	ſchlank, slender.
falb, fallow.	los, loose.	ſchroff, rugged.
flach, flat.	matt, tired.	ſtarr, stiff.
froh, glad.	nackt, naked.	ſtolz, proud.
gerade, straight.	platt, flat.	ſtraff, stiff; tight.
glatt, smooth.	plump, clumsy.	ſtumm, dumb.
hohl, hollow.	roh, raw.	ſtumpf, blunt.
hold, amiable.	rund, round.	toll, mad.
kahl, bald.	ſacht, slow.	voll, full.
karg, stingy.	ſanft, gentle.	zahm, tame.

§ 37. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

(1) Comparatives and superlatives are subject to the same laws of declension, that regulate adjectives in the positive. Thus, after adding to ſchön, *fair*, the suffix (er), we get the comparative form ſchöner, *fairer*; which is inflected in the three ways: thus,

Digitized by Google

a. OLD FORM.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	ſchöner e r,	e,	e s,	ſchöner e.
G.	ſchöner e s (en),	e r,	e s (en),	ſchöner e r.
D.	ſchöner e m,	e r,	e m,	ſchöner e n.
A.	ſchöner e n,	e,	e s,	ſchöner e.

b. NEW FORM.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders*
N.	der ſchöner e,	(die) –e,	(das) –e,	die ſchöner e n.
G.	des ſchöner e n,	(der) –e n,	(des) –e n,	der ſchöner e n.
D.	dem ſchöner e n,	(der) –e n,	(dem) –e n,	den ſchöner e n.
A.	den ſchöner e n,	(die) –e,	(das) –e,	die ſchöner e n.

c. MIXED FORM.

	Masc. Sing.	*Fem. Sing.*	*Neut. Sing.*
N.	unſer * ſchöner e r,	(unſere) –e,	(unſer) –e s.
G.	unſeres ſchöner e n,	(unſerer) –e n,	(unſeres) –e n.
D.	unſerem ſchöner e n,	(unſerer) –e n,	(unſerem) –e n.
A.	unſeren ſchöner e n,	(unſere) –e,	(unſer) –e s.

Plural for all genders.

N. unſer e ſchöner e n.
G. unſer e r ſchöner e n.
D. unſer e n ſchöner e n.
A. unſer e ſchöner e n.

(2) So likewise the superlative. In the superlative of the *old* form, however, the *vocative* case only is used. Thus we have in the

a. OLD FORM.

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
N.			Wanting.
G.			
D.			
A.			
V. liebſt e r Vater! †	theuerſt e Schweſter!	ſchönſt e s Kind!	

* Sometimes the e in the endings of pronouns and comparatives, is omitted, or transposed: thus instead of unſer e s ſchöner e n, we may say unſer s ſchöner n, or unſres, ſchönern.

† Heretofore the vocative has not been set down in the paradigms, because it is, in form, always like the nominative.

Digitized by Google

	Plural.	*Plural.*	*Plural.*
N.			Wanting.
G.			
D.			
A.			
V.	liebſte Väter!	theuerſte Schweſtern!	ſchönſte Kinder!

b. NEW FORM.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	der ſchönſte,	(die) –e,	(das) –e,	die ſchönſten.
G.	des ſchönſten,	(der) –en,	(des) –en,	der ſchönſten.
D.	dem ſchönſten,	(der) –en,	(dem) –en,	den ſchönſten.
A.	den ſchönſten,	(die) –e,	(das) –e,	die ſchönſten.

c. MIXED FORM.

	Masc. Sing.	*Fem. Sing.*	*Neut. Sing.*
N.	unſer ſchönſter,	(unſere) –e,	(unſer) –es.
G.	unſeres ſchönſten,	(unſerer) –en,	(unſeres) –en
D.	unſerem ſchönſten,	(unſerer) –en,	(unſerem) –en.
A.	unſeren ſchönſten,	(unſere) –e,	(unſer) –es.

Plural for all genders.

N. unſere ſchönſten.
G. unſerer ſchönſten.
D. unſeren ſchönſten.
A. unſere ſchönſten

§ 38. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) In place of the regular form of the superlative, preceded by the article and agreeing with the noun in gender, number and case, we often find a circumlocution employed; which consists in the dative case singular of the new form preceded by the particle am: thus, die Tage ſind im Winter am kürzeſten, the days are shortest in the winter. The explanation is easy: am, compounded of an (*at*), and dem, the dative of der (*the*), signifies *at the*. Translated literally, therefore, the sentence above will be: The days in winter are *at the* shortest; that is, at the shortest (*limit*): where, in the German, kürze-

Digitized by Google

ſten agrees with some noun in the dative understood, which is governed by a n. But the phrase is used and treated just as any regular superlative form would be under the same circumstances. In like manner, auf (*upon*) and zu (*to*) combined respectively with the article (a u f d a s and z u d e m), and producing the forms aufs and zum, are employed with adjectives in the superlative: thus, aufs ſchönſte eingerichtet, arranged upon the finest (*plan*); zum ſchönſten, to, or according to the finest (*manner*). These latter forms, however, are chiefly employed to denote *eminence*, rather than to express *comparison*. Freely rendered, therefore, aufs ſchönſte and zum ſchönſten will be: *very finely, most beautifully* or the like.

(2) Sometimes aller (*of all*) is found prefixed to superlatives to give intensity of meaning; as, der allerbeſte, the best of all, i. e. the *very* best; die allerſchönſte, the handsomest of all, i. e. the *very* handsomest.

(3) When mere *eminence*, and not *comparison*, is to be expressed, the words äußerſt (*extremely*) and höchſt (*highest*) are employed: as, dies iſt eine äußerſt ſchöne Blume, this is a very beautiful flower.

§ 39. Irregular and defective forms.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
gut, good;	beſſer, better;	beſt or am beſten, best.
hoch, high;	höher, higher;	höchſt or am höchſten, highest.
nahe, near;	näher, nearer;	nächſt or am nächſten, nearest.
viel, much;	mehr, more;	meiſt or am meiſten, most.
wenig, little;	minder, less;	mindeſt or am mindeſten, least.
groß, great;	größer, greater;	größt or am größten, greatest
bald, early;	eher, earlier;	erſt or am erſten, earliest.
wanting.	*wanting.*	letzt or am letzten, latest.
„	äußere, *outer;*	äußerſt, uttermost.
„	inner, inner;	innerſt, innermost.
„	vorder, fore;	vorderſt, foremost.
„	hinter, hinder;	hinterſt, hindermost.
„	ober, upper;	oberſt, uppermost.
„	unter, under;	unterſt, undermost.

Digitized by Google

§ 40. Observations.

(1) Note that hoch (*high*), in the *comparative, drops*, while nah (*near*), in the *superlative, assumes* the letter c: thus, hoch, comp. höher; nah, comp. näher, sup. nächſt.

(2) That mehr (*more*), the comparative of viel, has two forms in the plural, mehre or mehrere; and that the latter (mehrere) is the more common one. It has the use and meaning of the English word *several*: as, Ich ſah mehrere Soldaten, I saw several soldiers.

(3) That the superlative of groß (*great*) is contracted into größt.

(4) That erſt, the superlative of eher (*earlier*), is a contraction for eheſt.

(5) That from der erſte (*the earliest or first*) and der letzte (*the latest or last*), are formed the correlative terms erſterer, *the former*, and letzterer, *the latter*.

(6) That the last six words in the list (§ 39) are formed from adverbs, and are comparatives in *form* rather than in *fact*.

§ 41. Adjectives compared by means of adverbs.

(1) When the degrees of comparison are not expressed by suffixes, the adverbs mehr (*more*) and am meiſten (*most*) are employed for that purpose: thus,

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
angſt, *anxious;*	mehr angſt;	am meiſten angſt.
bereit, *ready;*	mehr bereit;	am meiſten bereit.
eingedenk, *mindful;*	mehr eingedenk;	am meiſten eingedenk.
feind, *hostile;*	mehr feind;	am meiſten feind.
gäng und gebe, *current;*	mehr gäng und gebe;	am meiſten gäng und gebe.
gar, *done; cooked;*	mehr gar;	am meiſten gar.
gram, *averse;*	mehr gram;	am meiſten gram.
irre, *astray;*	mehr irre;	am meiſten irre.
kund, *public;*	mehr kund;	am meiſten kund.

Digitized by Google

leid, *sorry;*	mehr leid;	am meiſten leid.
nutz, *useful;*	mehr nutz;	am meiſten nutz.
recht, *right;*	mehr recht;	am meiſten recht.
theilhaft, *partaking;*	mehr theilhaft;	am meiſten theilhaft.

§ 42. Observations.

The above method of comparison, which is commonly called the *compound form*, is chiefly used in cases:

(1) Where a comparison is instituted between two different qualities of the same person or thing: as, er iſt mehr luſtig als traurig, he is more merry than sad; er war mehr glücklich als tapfer, he was more fortunate than brave.

(2) Where the adjectives, like those in the list above, are never used otherwise than as predicates.

(3) Where the addition of the suffixes of comparison would offend against *euphony*, as in the superlative of adjectives ending in iſch; thus, barbariſch.

§ 43. THE NUMERALS.

In German, as in other languages, the numerals are classified according to their signification. Among the classes thus produced, the first, in order, is

§ 44. The cardinal numbers.

The cardinal numbers, whence all the others are derived, are those answering definitely to the question: "*How many?*" They are

Eins (ein, eine, ein)	1.	zehn	10.
zwei	2.	elf	11.
drei	3.	zwölf	12.
vier	4.	dreizehn	13.
fünf	5.	vierzehn	14.
ſechs	6.	fünfzehn	15.
ſieben	7.	ſechzehn	16.
acht	8.	ſiebenzehn or ſiebzehn	17.
neun	9.	achtzehn	18.

Digitized by Google

neunzehn	19.	hundert	100.
zwanzig	20.	hundert und eins	101.
ein und zwanzig	21.	hundert und zwei	102.
zwei und zwanzig ꝛc.	22.	hundert und drei ꝛc.	103.
dreißig	30.	zwei hundert	200.
ein und dreißig	31.	drei hundert	300.
zwei und dreißig ꝛc.	32.	tausend	1000.
vierzig	40.	zwei tausend	2000.
fünfzig	50.	drei tausend	3000.
sechzig (not sechszig)	60.	zehn tausend	10,000.
siebenzig or siebzig	70.	hundert tausend	100,000.
achtzig	80.	eine Million	1,000,000.
neunzig	90.	zwei Millionen	2,000,000.

(1) Observe that the cardinals are, for the most part, *indeclinable*.

(2) Ein, (*one*) however, is declined throughout like the indefinite article. It *is*, in fact, the same word with a different use; and is distinguished from it, in speaking and writing, only by a stronger emphasis and by being usually written with a capital initial. This is the form which it has, when immediately before a noun, or before an adjective qualifying a noun. Thus:

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
N.	Ein Mann,	Eine Frau,	Ein Kind.
	Ein guter Mann,	Eine gute Frau,	Ein gutes Kind.
G.	Eines Mannes,	Einer Frau,	Eines Kindes.
	Eines guten Mannes,	Einer guten Frau,	Eines guten Kindes; &c.

(3) In other situations, ein follows the ordinary rules of declension: thus in the

a. Old Form.

N.	einer,	eine,	eines,	one.
G.	eines,	einer,	eines,	of one, &c.

b. New Form.

N.	der eine,	die eine,	das eine,	the one.
G.	des einen,	der einen,	des einen,	of the one, &c.

Digitized by Google

c. Mixed Form.

N	mein einer,	meine eine,	mein eines,	my one. *
G.	meines einen,	meiner einen,	meines einen,	of my one, &c

(4) Zwei (*two*) and drei (*three*), when the cases are not sufficiently pointed out by other words in the context, are declined: thus,

N.	Zwei, †	two,	drei,	three.
G.	Zweier,	of two,	dreier,	of three.
D.	Zweien,	to or for two,	dreien,	to or for three.
A.	Zwei,	two,	drei,	three.

(5) All the rest of the cardinals, when employed *substantively*, take en in the *dative*: except such as already end in these letters; as, ich habe es Fünfen gesagt, I have told it to five (persons).

(6) Hundert and Tausend are often employed as collective (neuter) nouns, and regularly inflected; as, nom. das Hundert, gen. des Hunderts, plural (nom.) die Hunderte. Million is, in like manner, made a noun (feminine,) and is, in the singular always preceded by the *article*; as, Eine Million, a million.

(7) In speaking of the cardinals, *merely as figures or characters*, they are all regarded as being in the *feminine* gender: as, die Eins, the one, die Zwei, the two, die Drei, the three; where, in each case, the word, Zahl, (*number*) is supposed to be understood: thus die (Zahl) drei, the (number) three.

§ 45. Ordinal Numbers.

(1) The ordinal numbers are those, which answer to the question: "*Which one of the series?*" They are given below,

* In relation to the numeral ein note, further, these three things:
1. That in merely counting, it has the termination of the neuter, with s, however, omitted; as eins, zwei, drei, one, two, three, &c.
2. That ein may be used in the *plural*, when the design is to distinguish classes of individuals; as, die Einen, *the ones*, der Einen, *of the ones*, &c. just as, in English, we say, *the ones, the others*.
3. That ein, unlike the English *one*, cannot be employed in a sappletory way, to fill the place of a noun: thus, we cannot say, in German, a new *one*, a good *one*, &c. In such cases the adjective stands alone.

† In place of Zwei, beide (*both*) which is declined like an adjective in the plural, is often employed; as beide Augen, both eyes; die beiden Brüder, both the brothers. The neuter beides never refers to *persons*.

Digitized by Google

for the purposes of comparison, side by side with the cardinals, and in the form required, by the definite article preceding · for the ordinal numbers are regularly inflected according to the rules already given for the declension of adjectives.

CARDINALS.		ORDINALS.
Eins (ein, eine, ein)	1.	der erſte (not der einte), the first.
zwei	2.	„ zweite (also der andere), the second.
drei	3.	„ dritte (not dreite), the third.
vier	4.	„ vierte, the fourth.
fünf	5.	„ fünfte, the fifth.
ſechs	6.	„ ſechſte, the sixth.
ſieben	7.	„ ſiebente, the seventh.
acht	8.	„ achte (not achte), the eighth
neun	9.	„ neunte, the ninth.
zehn	10.	„ zehnte, the tenth.
elf	11.	„ elfte, the eleventh.
zwölf	12.	„ zwölfte, the twelfth.
dreizehn	13.	„ dreizehnte, the thirteenth.
vierzehn	14.	„ vierzehnte, the fourteenth.
fünfzehn	15.	„ fünfzehnte, the fifteenth.
ſechzehn	16.	„ ſechzehnte, the sixteenth; &c.
ſiebenzehn or ſiebzehn	17.	„ ſiebenzehnte or ſiebzehnte.
achtzehn	18.	„ achtzehnte.
neunzehn	19.	„ neunzehnte.
zwanzig	20.	„ zwanzigſte.
ein und zwanzig	21.	„ ein und zwanzigſte.
zwei und zwanzig ꝛc.	22.	„ zwei und zwanzigſte ꝛc.
dreißig	30.	„ dreißigſte.
ein und dreißig	31.	„ ein und dreißigſte.
zwei und dreißig ꝛc.	32.	„ zwei und dreißigſte ꝛc.
vierzig	40.	„ vierzigſte.
fünfzig	50.	„ fünfzigſte.
ſechzig (not ſechszig)	60.	„ ſechzigſte.
ſiebenzig or ſiebzig	70.	„ ſiebenzigſte or ſiebzigſte.
achtzig	80.	„ achtzigſte.
neunzig	90.	„ neunzigſte.

Digitized by Google

hundert	100.	der hundertſte.
hundert und eins	101.	„ hundert und erſte.
hundert und zwei	102.	„ hundert und zweite.
hundert und drei ꝛc.	103.	„ hundert und dritte.
zwei hundert	200.	„ zweihundertſte.
drei hundert	300.	„ dreihundertſte.
tauſend	1000.	„ tauſendſte.
zwei tauſend	2000.	„ zweitauſendſte.
drei tauſend	3000.	„ dreitauſendſte.
zehn tauſend	10,000.	„ zehntauſendſte.
hundert tauſend	100,000.	„ hunderttauſendſte ꝛc.

(2) Observe that, in the formation of the ordinals from the cardinals, a certain law is observed: viz. from zwei (*two*) to neunzehn (*nineteen*) the corresponding ordinal, in each case (dritte and achte excepted), is made by adding the letters te; as, zwei, *two*; zweite, *second*; vier, *four*; viertе, *fourth*, &c. Beyond that number (nineteen), the same effect is produced by adding ſte; as, zwanzig, *twenty*; zwanzigſte, *twentieth*; &c. Erſte is from eher (*before*).

(3) Note, also, that der andere (*the other*) is often used in place of der zweite; but only in cases where two objects only are referred to.

(4) In compound numbers, it must be observed that the last one only, as in English, bears the suffix (te or ſte); but in this case, the units usually precede the tens: thus, der vier und zwanzigſte, the four and twentieth.

(5) We have, also, a sort of interrogative ordinal, formed from wie (*how*) and viel (*much*), which is used when we wish to put the question: *Which of the number?* as, der wievielſte iſt heute? what day of the month is to-day? Das wievielſte iſt es? how many does that make?

§ 46. Distributive Numerals.

The distributives, which answer to the question: "*How many at a time?*" are formed, as in English, by coupling cardinals by the conjunction und; or by using before them the particle je (*ever; at a time*); thus,

Digitized by Google

zwei und zwei, *two and two*, or je zwei, *two at a time;*
drei und drei, *three and three*, or je drei, *three at a time*, &c.

§ 47. Multiplicative Numerals.

The multiplicatives, which answer to the question: "*How many fold?*" are formed from the cardinals by adding the suffix fach (*fold*) or fältig (*having folds*); thus,

einfach or einfältig,* onefold or single;
zweifach or zweifältig, twofold or having two folds;
dreifach or dreifältig, threefold or treble;
vierfach or vierfältig, fourfold or having four folds, &c.

§ 48. Variative Numerals.

Variatives, which answer to the question; "*Of how many kinds?*" are formed from the cardinals by affixing l e i (*a sort* or *kind*), the syllable e r being inserted for the sake of euphony; thus,

einerlei, of one kind;	viererlei, of four kinds;
zweierlei, of two kinds;	fünferlei, of five kinds;
dreierlei, of three kinds;	mancherlei, of many kinds; &c.

§ 49. Dimidiative Numerals.

The dimidiatives, which answer to the question: "*Which* (i. e. which of the numbers) *is but a half?*" are formed from the ordinals by annexing the word halb (*half*); thus,

zweitehalb,† *the second a half*, that is, one *whole and* a half; 1½.
drittehalb, *third a half*, i. e. two *wholes and* a half; 2½.
viertehalb, *the fourth a half*, i. e. three *wholes and* a half; 3½; &c.

* Einfältig is applied to what is *simple, artless* or *silly*.

† Instead of zweitehalb, the word in common use is anderthalb: the par a n d e r t being from d e r a n d e r e, the second. The word *would* be an d e r e halb; but the final e is exchanged for a t, probably, for the sake of assimilating it, in *form*, to the rest of the words of this class.

Digitized by Google

§ 50. Iterative Numerals.

The iteratives, which answer to the question: "*How often* or *how many times?*" are formed from cardinals and from indefinite numerals, by the addition of the word mal * (*time*); thus,

einmal, one time; once;	viermal, four times;
fünfmal, five times;	zweimal, two times; twice;
dreimal, three times;	sechsmal, six times;
jedesmal, each time;	vielmal, many times; &c.

§ 51. Distinctives.

(1) The name, distinctives, has been applied to a class of ordinal adverbs, which answer to the question: "*In what place in the series?*" and which are formed by affixing ens to the ordinal numbers: thus,

erstens, first or in the first place;	fünftens, fifthly;
zweitens, secondly;	sechstens, sixthly;
drittens, thirdly;	siebtens, seventhly;
viertens, fourthly;	achtens, eighthly; &c.

(2) Under the name, distinctives, may, also, be set down a class of numeral nouns, formed from the cardinals by the addition of the suffixes er, in and ling, which are used to designate one arrived at, belonging to, or valued at a certain number: thus,

Sechziger, *sixtier*, i. e. a man sixty years of age, or one of a company of sixty;
Dreier, *one valued at three*, i. e. a coin of 3 pfennigs Prussian;
Elfer, *eleven-er*, i. e. wine of the year 1811;
Zwilling, *two-ling*, i. e. a twin, &c.

* Mal is sometimes separated from the numerals, and is then regularly declined as a neuter noun.

Digitized by Google

§ 52. Partitives or Fractionals.

Under this name (partitives) are embraced a class of neuter nouns, answering to the question: "*What part?*" which are formed by affixing to the ordinals the suffix **tel** † (*part*): thus,

Drittel, a third;	**Siebentel**, a seventh,
Viertel, a fourth;	**Achtel**, an eight;
Fünftel, a fifth;	**Neuntel**, a ninth;
Sechstel, a sixth;	**Zehntel**, a tenth; &c.

§ 53. Indefinite Numerals.

(1) The indefinite numerals, which are, for the most part, used and inflected as adjectives, are commonly divided into such as serve to indicate NUMBER, such as merely denote QUANTITY, and such, finally, as are employed to express BOTH. Those denoting number only, are

jeder, **jede**, **jedes**, *each, every*;
jeglicher, —**e**, —**es**, „ „ } old and unusual forms of
jedweder, —**e**, —**es**, „ „ } **jeder**.
mancher, **manche**, **manches**, *many a*; *many* (in the plural).
mehrere, *several*; plural of **mehr**, *more*.

(2) Those denoting *quantity* only, are

etwas, *some*; which is indeclinable.

ganz, *the whole*, as opposed to a *part*; declined generally like an adjective; *in*declinable, however, when placed before neuter names of places and *not* preceded by an article or pronoun; as, **ganz Deutschland**, all Germany; (with the article or pronoun preceding) **das ganze Deutschland**, the whole of Germany; **sein ganzer Reichthum**, his whole riches.

halb, *half*, follows the same law, in declension, as the word **ganz** above.

† **Tel** is simply a contracted form of the word **Theil**, a part. From 20 upwards, note that **stel** (instead of **tel**) is added; as, **zwanzigstel**, the twentieth, &c.

Digitized by Google

(3) Those denoting number and quantity *both*, are

aller, alle, alles, *all;* applied to quantity, in the *singular* only; as, aller Reichthum, all riches; alle Macht, all power; alles Gold, all gold; dieſes alles (not alle) will ich geben, all this will I give; welches alles, all which. Placed *before* a pronoun, which latter is followed by a noun, the terminations of declension are often omitted; as, all (for alles) dieſes Geld, all this money; all (for aller) dieſer Wein, all this wine. In the neuter of the singular, it often denotes an indefinite number or amount; as, alles, was reiſen kann, reiſet, all that can travel, do travel; er ſcheint alles zu wiſſen, he seems to know everything. In the *plural*, the word denotes *number;* as, alle Menſchen, all men; an allen Orten, in all places: — it is never used in the sense of *whole*, which is expressed by ganz; as, der ganze Tag, the whole day; nor is it followed, as in English, by the definite article; as, alles Geld (not alles das Geld), all the money; — finally, the phrases "*all of us*," "*all of you*," &c., are in German: wir alle, *we all*, &c. The plural is used like our word *every;* as, ich gehe alle Tage, I go every day.

einiger, einige, einiges, *some; few;* applied to number in the *plural* only.

etlicher, —e, —es, *some;* synonymous with einiger.

kein, keine, kein, *no; none;* declined like ein, eine, ein; as, kein Vater, keine Mutter, kein Kind; when employed as a noun, it takes the old form of declension; as, keiner der alten Verehrer, *none* of the ancient worshippers.

ſämmtlicher, —e, —es, *entire;* } regularly declined like
geſammter, —e, —es, „ } adjectives.

viel, *much;* (in the plural) *many;* when it expresses quantity or number, taken *collectively*, and is not preceded by an article or a pronoun, it is not declined: as, viel Gold, much gold; but, das viele Gold, the quantity of gold; — when applied to a number as *individuals*, it is regularly declined: as, vieler, viele, vieles, &c.; thus, viele Männer

Digitized by Google

ſind träge, many men are indolent; er hat ſehr viele Freunde und ich habe auch viele, he has a great many friends and I have also a great many.

wenig, *little;* (in the plural) *few;* follows the same rules of inflection as viel above.

mehr, *more;* } are indeclinable; for the plural of mehr,
weniger, *less;* } however, see above.

genug, *enough; sufficient;* never declined; Geld genug, money enough.

lauter, *merely; only;* never declined; lauter Kupfer, copper only or nothing but copper.

nichts, *nothing.*

§ 54. PRONOUNS.

In German, as in other languages, will be found a number of those words, which, for the sake of convenience, are employed as the direct representatives of nouns. These are the pronouns. They are divided, according to the particular offices which they perform, into six different classes: viz.: Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Determinative, Relative and Interrogative.

§ 55. TABLE OF THE PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns.				*Possessive Pronouns.*			
Singular.		*Plural.*		*Singular.*		*Plural.*	
Ich,	I.	Wir,	We.	Mein,	My.	Unſer,	Our.
Du,	Thou.	Ihr,	Ye.	Dein,	Thy.	Euer,	Your.
Er,	He.	Sie,	They.	Sein,	His.	Ihr,	Their.
Sie,	She.	Sie,	They.	Ihr,	Her.		
Es,	It.	Sie,	They.	Sein,	Its.		

Indefinite Pronouns.		*Reflexive and Reciprocal Pronouns.*	
Man,	one; a certain one.	Sich,	Himself, Herself, Itself, Themselves
Jemand,	some one; somebody.	Einander,	one another.
Niemand,	no one; nobody.		
Jedermann,	every one; everybody.		

Digitized by Google

Demonstrative Pronouns.		*Determinative Pronouns.*	
Dieſer,	This.	Der,	That, That one, *He.*
Jener	That.	Derjenige,	That, That person
Der,	This or That.	Derſelbe,	The same.
		Selbiger,	The same.
		Solcher,	Such.

Relative Pronouns.		*Interrogative Pronouns.*	
Welcher,	Who, Which.	Wer,	Who? was? What?
Der,	That.	Welcher,	Who? Which?
Wer,	Who, He or she, who or that.	Was für,	What sort of?

§ 56. Personal pronouns.

There are five personal pronouns; namely, ich, (*I*) which represents the *speaker* and is, therefore, of the *first* person; du, (*thou*) which represents the *hearer* or person addressed, and is therefore, of the *second* person; and er, (*he*) ſie, (*she*) and es, (*it*) representing the person or thing merely *spoken of*, and, therefore, of the *third* person. They are declined thus

Singular.		*Plural.*
	First person.	
N.	ich, I.	wir, we.
G.	meiner, mein, of me.	unſer, of us.
D.	mir, to me.	uns, to us.
A.	mich, me.	uns, us.
	Second person.	
N.	du, thou.	ihr, ye or you.
G.	deiner, dein of thee.	euer, of you.
D.	dir, to thee.	euch, to you.
A.	dich, thee.	euch, you.
	Third person, Masc.	
N.	er, he.	ſie, they.
G.	ſeiner, ſein, of him.	ihrer, of them.
D.	ihm, to him.	ihnen, to them
A.	ihn, him	ſie, them.

Digitized by Google

	Singular.	*Plural.*
	Third person, Fem.	
N.	ſie, she.	ſie, they.
G.	ihrer, of her.	ihrer, of them.
D.	ihr, to her.	ihnen, to them.
A.	ſie, her.	ſie, them.
	Third person, Neut.	
N.	es, it.	ſie, they.
G.	ſeiner, of it.	ihrer, of them.
D.	ihm, to it.	ihnen, to them.
A.	es, it.	ſie, them.

§ 57. Remarks on the Personal Pronouns.

(1) The genitives, mein, dein, ſein, are the earlier forms. The others (meiner, deiner, ſeiner) are the ones now commonly used.

(2) When construed with the prepositions halben, wegen, and um-willen, (signifying *for the sake of, on account of*) these genitives are united with the preposition by the euphonic letters, et, or (in case of unſer and euer) simply t. Thus: meinetwegen, *on account of me*; um unſertwillen, *on account of us, &c.*

(3) The personal pronouns of the third person, when they represent things *without life*, are seldom, if ever, used in the dative, and never in the genitive. In such instances, the corresponding case of the demonstrative der, die, das, is employed: thus, deſſen, (*of this,*) instead of ſeiner; and deren, (*of these,*) instead of ihrer.

(4) The word ſelbſt or ſelber (*self, selves*) may, also, for the greater clearness or emphasis, be added not only to the pronouns, but even to nouns. Thus; Ich ſelbſt, *I myself*; die Leute ſelbſt, the people *themselves*.

(5) Here, too, observe, that the personal pronouns have, also in the plural, a reciprocal force. Thus: ſie lieben ſich, they love *one another*. But as ſie lieben ſich, for example, might

Digitized by Google

signify, they love *themselves*, the Germans, also, use the word einander, (*one another*) about which there can be no mistake: as, ſie lieben einander (§ 60.)

(6) In polite conversation, the Germans use the *third person plural*, where we use the *second*. Thus: Ich habe Sie geſehen, I have seen you. To prevent misconception, the pronouns thus used are written with a capital letter; as, ich danke Ihnen, I thank (*them*) you. A similar sacrifice of Grammar to (supposed) courtesy, may be found in our own language. For we constantly use the *plural* for the singular; thus: "How are *you*?" instead of "How art *thou?*" The Germans proceed just one step beyond this, and besides taking the plural for the singular, take the *third* person for the second. With them, our familiar salutation "How do *you* do?" would be, "How do *they* do?"

(7) It must be observed, however, that the *second* person singular, Du, is always as in English, used in addressing the Supreme Being. It is, also, the proper mode of address among warm friends and near relatives. But it is, also, used in angry disputes, where little regard is paid to points of politeness. The *second person* plural is employed by superiors to their inferiors. The third person *singular* er, ſie, is used in the like manner, that is; by masters to servants, &c.

(8) The neuter pronoun (es) of the third person singular, like the words *it* and *there* in English, is often employed, as a nominative, both before and after verbs, singular and plural, as a mere *expletive*; that is, more for the purpose of aiding the *sound* than the *sense* of the sentence. In this use, moreover, it is construed with words of all genders. Thus: Es iſt der Mann, *it* is the man; Es iſt die Frau, *it* is the woman; Es ſind Männer, *they* are men; Es donnert; *it* thunders; Es folgten viele, *there* followed many, &c. &c.

When Es is thus used with a personal pronoun, the arrangement of the words is precisely the reverse of the English. Ex.: Ich bin es, It is I. Du biſt es, It is thou. Sie ſind es, It is they, &c.

Digitized by Google

§ 58. Possessive Pronouns.

(1) The possessive pronouns are derived, each respectively, from the genitive case of the personal pronouns; thus,

1st pers.	mein, *my:*	from	meiner,	gen.	*sing.*	of	Ich.
2d "	dein, *thy:*	"	deiner,	"	"	"	Du.
3d "	ſein, *his:*	"	ſeiner,	"	"	"	Er.
3d "	ihr, * *her:*	"	ihrer,	"	"	"	Sie.
3d "	ſein, *its:*	"	ſeiner,	"	"	"	Es.
1st "	unſer, † *our:*	"	unſer,	"	*plur.*	"	Ich.
2d "	euer, † *your:*	"	euer,	"	"	"	Du.
3d "	ihr, *their:*	"	ihrer,	"	"	"	Er, Sie or Es.

(2) By their *forms*, therefore, these pronouns indicate the person and number of the nouns which they represent; that is, the person and number of the *possessors*. As, moreover, they may be declined like adjectives, they, also, make known by their *terminations*, the gender, number and case of the nouns with which they stand connected: for, in respect to inflection, a possessive pronoun agrees in gender, number and case, not with the *possessor*, but with the name of the thing *possessed*.

(3) The possessive pronouns, when *conjunctive*, that is, when joined with a noun, are inflected after the old form of declension; except in three places (nom. sing. *masc.* and nom. and acc. *neuter*), in which the terminations are wholly omitted; thus, —

* Formerly, in ceremonious addresses, the words Dero (old gen. plural of der, that person) and Ihro (old gen. plural of er, he), were used instead of Euer (*your*) and Ihr (*her*); as, Ihro Majeſtät, her majesty, &c.

Euer was formerly written ewer, and the syllable Ew. as an abbreviation is used in address to persons of high rank, with the verb in the plural. Ex. Ew. Majeſtät haben befohlen, your majesty has ordered.

† Note that in declining unſer and euer, the e, before r, is often struck out: thus,

unſrer (for unſerer), unſre (for unſere), unſres (for unſeres), &c
eurer (for euerer), eure (for euere), eures (for eueres), &c.

Digitized by Google

	Singular.			*Plural*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders*
N.	mein,	meine,	mein;	meine.
G.	meines,	meiner,	meines;	meiner.
D.	meinem,	meiner,	meinem;	meinen.
A.	meinen,	meine,	mein;	meine.

(4) When, however, these pronouns are *absolute*, that is, when they stand alone, agreeing with a noun understood and demanding a special emphasis, the terminations proper to the three places noted above, are of course affixed: thus, dieſer Hut iſt mein e r, nicht dein e r, this hat is *mine*, not *thine*; dieſes Buch iſt mein e s, this book is *mine*.

(5) But when a possessive pronoun *absolute* is preceded by the definite article, it then follows the New form of declension: thus,

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	der meine,	die meine,	das meine;	die meinen.
G.	des meinen,	der meinen,	des meinen;	der meinen.
D.	dem meinen,	der meinen,	dem meinen;	den meinen.
A.	den meinen,	die meine,	das meine;	die meinen.

(6) Often, too, in this case, the syllable i g is inserted, but without any change of meaning: thus,

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	der meinige,	die meinige,	das meinige;	die meinigen.
G.	des meinigen,	der meinigen,	des meinigen;	der meinigen.
D.	dem meinigen,	der meinigen,	dem meinigen;	den meinigen.
A.	den meinigen,	die meinige,	das meinige;	die meinigen.

(7) When, finally, a possessive pronoun is employed as a predicate, and merely denotes possession, without special emphasis, it is not inflected at all; thus, der Garten iſt mein, the garden is mine; die Stube iſt dein, the room is thine; das Haus iſt ſein, the house is his.

Digitized by Google

(8) It should be added that the Germans, when no obscurity is likely to grow out of it, often omit the possessive pronoun, where in English it would be used: the definite article seeming sufficiently to supply its place; as, Ich habe es in den Händen, I have it in *the* hands; that is, I have it in *my* hands Er nahm es auf die Schultern, he took it upon the (his) shoulders; Er hat den Arm gebrochen, he has broken (the) an arm or his arm.

§ 59. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

(1) Pronouns employed to represent persons and things in a general way, without reference to particular individuals, are called indefinite pronouns. Such are these,

Man, one; a certain one.
Jemand, some one; somebody.
Niemand, no one; nobody.
Jedermann, * every one; everybody.

(2) The German man (like the French *on*) is used to indicate persons in the most general manner: thus, man sagt, *one* says; that is, *they* say, *people* say, *it* is said, &c. It is indeclinable, and is found only in the nominative; when, therefore, any other case would be called for, the corresponding oblique case of ein is employed: thus, er will einen nie hören, he will never listen to one, i. e. to *any one*.

(3) Jemand and Niemand are declined in the following manner:

Singular.

N.	Jemand, *somebody*.	Niemand, *nobody*.
G.	Jemands or Jemandes.	Niemands or Niemandes.
D.	Jemand or Jemandem.	Niemand or Niemandem.
A.	Jemand or Jemanden.	Niemand or Niemanden.

* The following, which also belong to this list of indefinites, have already been treated of under the head of indefinite numerals: viz.

Etwas, something.	Jeglicher, each; every one.
Nichts, nothing.	Einige, somewhat; some.
Keiner, no one; none.	Etliche, some; many.
Einer, one; some one.	Aller, every one; all.
Jeder, each; every one.	Mancher, many a; many; several.
Jedweder each; every one	

Digitized by Google

Jedermann is declined thus:

N. Jedermann, everybody.
G. Jedermanns, of everybody.
D. Jedermann, to everybody.
A. Jedermann, everybody.

(4) Note that the second form of the dative (Jemandem, Niemandem) is seldom employed except when the other form would leave the meaning ambiguous. Thus, es iſt Niemandem nützlich, it is useful to nobody; where, were „Niemand" used, the sense might be, nobody is useful. This remark applies, also, to the accusative: as, ſie liebt Niemanden, she loves nobody: in which instance, were the other form (Niemand) substituted, it might mean, nobody loves her.

§ 60. Reflexive and Reciprocal Pronouns.

(1) When the subject and the object of a verb are identical, the latter being a personal pronoun, the pronoun is said to be *reflexive;* because the action is thereby represented as reverting upon the actor: thus, er rühmt ſich, he praises *himself.*

(2) When, however, in such case, the design is to represent the individuals constituting a plural subject as acting one upon another, the pronoun is said to be *reciprocal:* thus, ſie beſchimpfen ſich, they disgrace *one another.*

(3) But, as (for example) ſie beſchimpfen ſich may equally mean, they disgrace *themselves,* the reciprocal word einander (one another) is added to or substituted for ſich, wherever there is danger of mistake; as, ſie verſtehen ſich einander, or ſie verſtehen einander, they understand one another.

(4) In the dative and accusative (singular and plural) the German affords a special form for the reflexives; viz. ſich, *himself, herself, itself, themselves.* The personal pronouns, therefore, in all the oblique * cases, are used in a reflexive sense; except in the dative and accusative (*third* person), where, instead of ihm, ihn, ihr ꝛc., the word ſich is employed. Re-

* All cases, except the nominative, are called oblique cases

Digitized by Google

garded as *reflexives*, the personal pronouns are declined thus:

	Singular.	*Plural*
	First person.	
N.	*None.*	*None.*
G.	meiner, of myself	unſer, of ourselves.
D.	mir, to myself.	uns, to ourselves
A.	mich, myself.	uns, ourselves.
	Second person.	
N.	*None.*	*None.*
G.	deiner, of thyself.	euer, of yourselves.
D.	dir, to thyself.	euch, to yourselves.
A	dich, thyself.	euch, yourselves.
	Third person masc.	
N.	*None.*	*None.*
G.	ſeiner, of himself.	ihrer, of themselves.
D.	ſich, to himself.	ſich, to themselves.
A.	ſich, himself.	ſich, themselves.
	Third person fem.	
N.	*None.*	*None.*
G.	ihrer, of herself.	ihrer, of themselves.
D.	ſich, to herself.	ſich, to themselves.
A.	ſich, herself.	ſich, themselves
	Third person neuter.	
N.	*None.*	*None.*
G.	ſeiner, of itself.	ihrer, of themselves.
D.	ſich, to itself.	ſich, to themselves.
A.	ſich, itself.	ſich, themselves.

§ 61. Demonstrative Pronouns.

(1) The peculiar office of a demonstrative pronoun is to point out the relative *position* of the object to which it refers Of these there are three:

dieſer, this (pointing to something *near at hand*);
jener, that (indicating something *remote*);
der, this or that (referring to things in either position).

Digitized by Google

(2) Dieſer and jener are declined after the Old form of adjectives: thus,

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	dieſer,	dieſe,	dieſes (dies), this;	dieſe, these.
G.	dieſes,	dieſer,	dieſes, of this;	dieſer, of these.
D.	dieſem,	dieſer,	dieſem, to this;	dieſen, to these.
A.	dieſen,	dieſe,	dieſes (dies), this;	dieſe, these.

(3) Der, when used in connection with a noun, is inflected (like the definite article) thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	der,	die,	das, this or that;	die, these or those.
G.	des,	der,	des, of this or that;	der, of these or those
D.	dem,	der,	dem, to this or that;	den, to these or those.
A.	den,	die,	das, this or that;	die, these or those.

(4) When used absolutely, that is, to represent a substantive, it stands thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	der,	die,	das;	die.
G.	deſſen (deß),	deren (der),	deſſen (deß);	deren.
D.	dem,	der,	dem;	denen.
A.	den,	die,	das;	die.

§ 62. Observations on the demonstratives.

(1) The neuters dieſes (contract form dies), jenes and das, are, like es (§ 134. 1.) employed with verbs, without distinction of gender or number: thus, dies iſt ein Mann, this is a man; dies ſind Menſchen, these are men; jenes iſt eine Frau, that is a woman; &c.

(2) Dieſer, when denoting immediate proximity, signifies "*this;*" as, in dieſer Welt iſt alles vergänglich, in this world all is transitory. More generally, however, it answers in use to "*that.*" Jener always denotes greater remoteness than dieſer,

Digitized by Google

and signifies "*that*," "*yon*," "*yonder*;" as, jener Stern iſt kaum ſichtbar, that (or yonder) star is hardly visible.

Jener and dieſer, when employed to express contrast or comparison, often find their equivalents in the English expressions "*the former*"—"*the latter*;" "that, that one"—"this, this one."

(3) The demonstrative der, die, das, is distinguishable from the article, with which it is identical in form, by being uttered with greater emphasis, as in the following example: der Mann hat es geſagt, nicht jener, *this* man has said it, not that one.

(4) The form deß is chiefly found in compounds; as, deßwegen, on this account.

(5) Sometimes der is, for the sake of greater clearness, employed in place of a possessive: as, er malte ſeinen Vetter und deſſen Sohn, he painted his cousin and *his* son; *literally*, and the *son of this* one, i. e. the cousin's son.

(6) The pronouns, both demonstrative and determinative, are frequently made more *intensive* by the particle eben, *even; very*: eben dieſe Blume, this *very* flower; eben das Kind, that *same* child; eben derſelbe, the *very* same.

§ 63. Determinative Pronouns.

(1) The pronouns of this class are commonly set down among the demonstratives. Their *distinctive* feature, however, is that of being used where an antecedent is to be limited by a relative clause succeeding, and so rendered more or less prominent or emphatic: thus, der, welcher klug handelt, verdient Lob, *he* (*that* man) who acts wisely, deserves praise. From this use they derive the name *determinative*. They are

der, that; that one; *he*;
derjenige, that; that person (*strongly determinative*);
derſelbe,* the same (denoting *identity*);
ſelbiger, the same (seldom used);
ſolcher, such (marking *similarity* of kind or nature).

(2) Der, when used in connection with a noun, is declined like the demonstrative der; that is, like the definite article:

* Where two words precede, either of which *might* be taken for the ante-

Digitized by Google

when used *absolutely*, it differs from the demonstrative der only in the genitive plural: taking derer instead of deren.

(3) Derjenige and derſelbe are compounded of der and the parts jenige and ſelbe respectively. In declining, both parts of each must be inflected; der, like the article, and jenige and ſelbe after the New form of adjectives: thus,

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	derjenige,	diejenige,	dasjenige;	diejenigen.
G.	desjenigen,	derjenigen,	desjenigen;	derjenigen
D	demjenigen,	derjenigen,	demjenigen;	denjenigen.
A.	denjenigen,	diejenige,	dasjenige;	diejenigen.

(4) Selbiger, Selbige, Selbiges and Solcher, Solche, Solches, are declined after the Old form of adjectives; the latter, however, when the indefinite article (ein, eine, ein) precedes, takes the *Mixed* form:* thus,

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	
N.	ein ſolcher, †	eine ſolche,	ein ſolches,	such a.
G.	eines ſolchen,	einer ſolchen,	eines ſolchen,	of such a.
D.	einem ſolchen,	einer ſolchen,	einem ſolchen,	to such a.
A.	einen ſolchen,	eine ſolche,	ein ſolches,	such a.

§ 64. Relative Pronouns.

(1) The proper office of a relative pronoun is to represent an antecedent word or phrase; but, while so doing, it serves also to connect the different clauses of a sentence. The Relatives in German are these:

cedent of a personal pronoun of the third person, derſelbe is used to prevent doubt: thus, der Vater ſchrieb ſeinem Sohne, derſelbe müſſe nach London reiſen, the father wrote the son, that *he* (derſelbe, the *last* one named, i. e. the son) must set out for London.

* When ein comes *after* ſolcher, the latter is not inflected at all; as, ſolch ein Mann, such a man.

† Nearly synonymous with Solcher are the words, desgleichen, dergleichen, ſeinesgleichen, ihresgleichen, all which are indeclinable; as, ich habe keinen Umgang mit dergleichen Leuten, I have no intercourse with such people. Wer unter euch iſt ſeinesgleichen? Who among you is his equal?

Digitized by Google

Welcher, who, which.
Der, that.
Wer, who, he who, or that, or she who.
So, * which, (nearly obsolete, and indeclinable.)

(2) Welcher is declined after the Old form; thus,

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	welcher,	welche,	welches;	welche, who, which.
G.	welches,	welcher,	welches;	welcher, of whom, whose.
D.	welchem,	welcher,	welchem;	welchen, to whom, to which
A.	welchen,	welche,	welches;	welche, whom, which.

(3) Der is declined, thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	der,	die,	das;	die, that, who, which.
G.	deſſen,	deren,	deſſen;	deren, of whom, or which, whose.
D.	dem,	der,	dem;	denen, to whom, or which.
A.	den,	die,	das;	die, that, who, which.

(4) Wer stands thus:

	Singular.			*Plural.*	
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*		
N.	wer, †	wer,	was;	N.	*Wanting.*
G.	weſſen (or weß,)	weſſen (or weß,)	weß;	G.	
D.	wem,	wem,	*wanting* ‡	D.	
A.	wen,	wen,	was;	A.	

§ 65. Observations on the Relatives.

(1) Of the pronouns declined above, welcher, welche, welches, is the only one that can be used in conjunction with a noun, after the manner of an adjective: thus, welcher Mann,

* So is really an adverb used as a relative.

† Wer has no plural, but like "es," is sometimes used before plural verbs Example: Wer ſind dieſe Leute? Who are this people?

‡ This dative is supplied by an adverbial compound; as, wozu, (wo + zu, *whereto*, or *to which*. Womit, where-with, with what, wovon, whereof, of what, &c.

Digitized by Google

which man; (not wer Mann;) and, except when so joined with a noun, the genitive (both Sing. and Plural) of welcher is never used, but, in place of it, the corresponding parts of der; that is, deſſen, deren, deſſen, for the Singular, and deren, for the plural; as, der Mann, deſſen (not welches) Freund ich bin, the man, whose friend I am; die Bäume, deren (not welcher) Blüthen abgefallen ſind, the trees whose blossoms have fallen off.

(2) Der, die, das, as a relative, like the English word *that*, is used as a sort of substitute for the regular relative. Thus (See obs. next above) its genitive is employed in place of that of welcher, because the genitive of the latter, (welches, welcher, welches,) being the same in form as the nominative masc. and neuter, might occasion mistake. So after the pronouns of the first and second person, (and of *the third, when used for the second,*) welcher is never employed, but der, thus:

Ich,	der	ich*	ihn ſah,	I, who saw him.
Du,	der	du*	uns ſegneſt,	thou, who blessest us.
Wir,	die	wir*	hier verſammelt ſind,	we, who are here assembled.
Ihr,	die	ihr*	euer Vaterland liebt,	ye, who love your country.
Sie,	die	Sie*	mir beiſtimmten,	ye, who agreed with me.

Der, die, das, after ſolcher, is equivalent to the English "*as*": thus, ſolche, die an Bäumen wächſt, such as grows on trees.

(3) Wer, was, is an indefinite relative employed whereever any uncertainty exists about the antecedent: thus, können Sie mir ſagen, wer dieſes gethan hat? Can you tell me, *who* has done this? Ich weiß nicht, was er ſagte, I do not know, *what* he said.

(4) Often wer, was, has at once the force of both a relative and an antecedent; as, wer auf dem Wege der Tugend wan-

* In each case, it will be noted, the personal pronoun is *repeated* after the relative. In translating, of course the pronoun repeated, is to be omitted; or the order of the words being reversed (ich der, instead of der ich) the rendering may be: I, I who saw, &c. It must be added, that, when the pronoun is not repeated, the verb will be in the *third* person and in agreement with the relative: as, du warſt es, der es mir ſagte, thou wast the one, that told me so

Digitized by Google

delt, iſt glücklich, *he that* walks in the path of virtue, is happy; was gerecht iſt, verdient Lob, *what*, or *that which* is right, deserves praise.

(5) Wer always begins a clause or sentence and never comes *after* the word which it represents; was may, or may *not* begin a clause, and may or may *not* come after its proper *antecedent*: thus, wer nicht hören will, der muß fühlen, he who will not hear, must feel; ich ſage, was ich weiß, I say what I know; alles, was ich geſehen habe, all that I have seen; was gerecht iſt, verdient Lob, what is right, deserves praise.

The form weß occurs in the compounds weßwegen, weßhalb, on which or what account.

(6) Welcher, –e, –es, is often employed as an indefinite adjective pronoun. See Lesson 39. 4.

§ 66. Interrogative Pronouns.

(1) The interrogative pronouns, that is, those used in asking questions, are

wer, was? who? what?
welcher? who? which?
was für ein? what sort of a?

(2) They are the same in form, as the relatives; or rather the relatives themselves employed in a different way. Wer, was, and welcher, welche, welches, are declined just as when they are relatives, except that welcher, –e, –es, when interrogative never adopts the genitive of der.

(3) Wer and was (*who? what?*) can never be joined with a noun. They are used when the question is put in a manner general and indefinite. Welcher, welche, welches, on the other hand, has a more definite reference, and may be employed adjectively: thus, welcher Mann? which man? &c.

(4) Was für ein (literally, *what for a?*) is a form used in inquiring as to the *kind, quality* or *species* of a thing: as, was für ein Mann? what sort of a man? was für eine Frau? what sort of a woman? was für ein Kind? what kind of a child?

(5) The only part of was für ein, capable of inflection, is ein; which, when the thing referred to in the question, is ex-

Digitized by Google

pressed, takes the form of the indefinite article: when it is left *understood,* ein is inflected like an adjective of the Old form. The plural, in both cases, omits the article, and stands simply thus, was für.

(6) Was für ein, *with* a substantive.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders.*
N.	was für ein,	eine,	ein;	was für, what sort of?
G.	was für eines,	einer,	eines;	was für, of what sort of?
D.	was für einem,	einer,	einem;	was für, to what sort of?
A.	was für einen,	eine,	ein;	was für, what sort of?

(7) Was für ein *without* a substantive.

	Singular.			*Plural.*
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*For all genders*
N.	was für einer,	eine,	eines;	was für
G.	was für eines,	einer,	eines;	was für.
D.	was für einem,	einer,	einem;	was für.
A.	was für einen,	eine,	eines;	was für.

§ 67. Observations.

(1) Observe further that ein, in was für ein, is sometimes omitted in the *singular,* especially before words denoting materials as, was für Zeug, what sort of stuff? was für Wein, what kind of wine?

(2) That was für ein, and also welch (that is, welcher, without the terminations of declension) are occasionally employed in expressions of surprise or wonder; as, was für ein Mann, or, welch ein Mann! what a man!

(3) That was is sometimes used for warum: thus, was schlägst du mich? why strikest thou me?

§ 68. VERBS.

(1) A verb is that part of speech which defines the *condition* of a subject; that is, shows whether it *acts,* is *acted upon* or merely *exists.*

Digitized by Google

(2) In respect to *form*, verbs are either regular or irregular; simple or compound; all which will be more fully explained hereafter.

(3) In respect to *meaning*, verbs are active transitive, active intransitive, passive, neuter, reflexive, or impersonal. These terms have in German the same general signification which they have in English. Their application will, however, more largely appear in subsequent sections.

(4) The German, like the English verb, has its moods, tenses, numbers, persons and participles.

(5) There are *five* moods: viz: the Indicative, the Subjunctive, the Conditional *, the Imperative and the Infinitive.

(6) There are *six* tenses: viz: the Present, the Imperfect, the Perfect, the Pluperfect, the first Future and the second Future.

(7) These names (the names both of the moods and tenses) designate in German, just the same things as do the corresponding ones in English. For their general signification, see the paradigms on the pages following; for more particular explanation of their uses, see the Syntax.

§ 69. PARTICIPLES.

(1) There are *three* Participles: viz: the *Present*, which terminates in end and answers in signification to the English participle in *ing;* as, lobend, prais*ing*.

(2) The *Perfect*, which, besides prefixing in most cases the augment ge ends in verbs of the Old Form, in en or n, and in those of the New Form, in et or t; and has a meaning correspondent to our participle in *ed;* as, getragen (ge+trag+en) carri*ed;* gelobet (ge+lob+et) prais*ed*.

* This (the *Conditional*) is made up of the Imperfect Subjunctive of the auxiliary verb werden, (which see) and the Present and Perfect Infinitive of another verb. It is used to denote what is, also often denoted by the Subjunctive, (Imperfect and Pluperfect) namely, a *supposed condition* of things, i. e. *possibility* without *actuality*. By some it is treated as a distinct *mood:* by others, it is made to consist of two *tenses:* its *use* (which see more at large in the Syntax) is the same in both views.

Digitized by Google

(3) The *Future*, which is produced by prefixing the particle zu (*to*) to the form of the Present Participle, (lobend) thus, zu lobend, which means *to-be-praised*, that is *praiseworthy*.

(4) The Particle Ge mentioned above, as being generally prefixed to the perfect participle, was originally designed, it would seem, to indicate *completed* action. It is commonly accounted merely *euphonic*, or at most *intensive*. The instances in which it is altogether *omitted*, are these:

First: in the case of all verbs compounded with *inseparable* prefixes; (See § 94.) as, belehrt, (not gebelehrt) informed:

Second: in the case of verbs from foreign languages, which make the infinitive in iren or ieren: as, ſtudirt, (from ſtudiren), studied; instead of geſtudirt:

Third: in the case of the verb werden, when joined as an auxiliary to another verb: as, ich bin gelobt worden, (not geworden) I have been praised.

§ 70. Auxiliary Verbs.

(1) In German the auxiliary verbs are usually divided into two classes.

(2) The first class consists of three verbs, without which no complete conjugation can be formed. They are haben, *to have*, ſein, *to be*, and werden, *to become*. These verbs, though chiefly employed as auxiliaries, are often themselves in the condition of *principal* verbs. In that case, they *aid one another* in the formation of the compound tenses. A glance at the paradigms will show, how this is done.

(3) As auxiliaries, these three verbs enter into the composition of the compound tenses, active and passive, of all classes of verbs.

(4) Haben is used in forming the perfect, pluperfect and second future tenses in the active voice: thus, from loben, to praise, we have

Perf.	ich habe gelobt,	I *have* praised.
Plup.	ich hatte gelobt,	I *had* praised.
2. Fut.	ich werde gelobt haben,	I shall *have* praised.

Digitized by Google

(5) Sein is used in forming the perfect, pluperfect and second future tenses, both in the active and passive; thus, from loben, to praise and wachſen, to grow.

	Active.	*Passive.*
Perf.	ich bin gewachſen, I *have* * grown.	ich bin gelobt worden, I *have* * been praised.
Plup.	ich war gewachſen, I *had* grown.	ich war gelobt worden, I *had* been praised.
2. Fut.	ich werde gewachſen ſein, I shall *have* grown.	ich werde gelobt worden ſein, I shall *have* been praised.

(6) Werden is used in forming the future tenses and the conditionals †: thus, from loben, to praise, we have

	Futures.	*Conditionals.*
1.	ich werde loben, I *shall* praise.	ich würde loben, I *would* praise.
2.	ich werde gelobt haben, I *shall* have praised.	ich würde gelobt haben, I *should* have praised.

§ 71. Remarks on the use of haben and ſein.

(1) As the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses of verbs must be conjugated, sometimes with haben and sometimes with ſein, it becomes important to know *when* to use the one and when the other. The determination of this question depends chiefly upon the *signification* of the main verb. The general rules are these:

(2) Haben is to be used in conjugating all *active transitive verbs*, all *reflective verbs*, all *impersonal verbs*, all the auxiliaries

* It will be noticed here, that wherever, in the formation of these tenses, any part of ſein occurs, it is *Englished* by the corresponding part of the verb haben: thus, ich bin gewachſen, I *have* grown, &c. This grows out of the necessity of suiting the translation to our language, which in these places requires the verb *have*.

† It is, also, employed with the perfect participle of a principal verb, to form the Passive voice; (See § 84). Note, also, above that werde and würde are rendered by their equivalents (*shall and should*) in the conjugation of the English verb.

Digitized by Google

of the second class (viz. dürfen, können, mögen, wollen, ſollen, müſſen and laſſen), and *many intransitives.*

(3) Sein is to be used in conjugating all *intransitives*, signifying a change of the condition of the subject; as, gedeihen, to prosper; geneſen, to recover; reifen, to ripen; ſchwinden, to dwindle; ſterben, to die; all those indicating motion towards or from a place; eilen, to hasten; gehen, to go; reiten, to ride; ſinken, to sink; and, also, all verbs in the passive voice.

(4) Some verbs take, in the formation of these tenses, either haben or ſein, according as they are employed in one sense or in another. This, however, will be best understood by practice in reading and speaking. The following are examples:

Er iſt in ſeinem neuen Wagen fortgefahren.	He has driven off in his new carriage.
Mein Bruder hat fortgefahren deutſch zu leſen.	My brother has proceeded to read German.
Das Waſſer iſt gefroren.	The water is (has) frozen.
Den armen Mann hat es in dem kalten Zimmer gefroren.	It has chilled the poor man in the cold room.
Die Thränen ſind über die Wangen geronnen.	The tears have flowed over the cheeks.
Das Gefäß hat geronnen.	The vessel has leaked.
Das Schiff iſt auf einen Felſen geſtoßen.	The ship has struck upon a rock.
Das Volk hat den König vom Throne geſtoßen.	The people have thrust the king from the throne.
Das Schiff iſt ans Ufer getrieben.	The ship has been driven upon the shore.
Der Baum hat neue Zweige getrieben	The tree has shot forth new branches.

Digitized by Google

§ 72. PARADIGMS OF THE AUX

(1) Haben,

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE		**PRESENT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich habe,	I have.	ich habe,	I may have.
	2	du haſt,	thou hast.	du habeſt,	thou mayst have.
	3	er hat,	he has.	er habe,	he may have.
PLUR.	1	wir haben,	we have.	wir haben,	we may have.
	2	ihr habet,	you have.	ihr habet,	you may have.
	3	ſie haben,	they have.	ſie haben,	they may have.
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		**IMPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich hatte,	I had.	ich hätte,	I might have.
	2	du hatteſt,	thou hadst.	du hätteſt,	thou mightst have.
	3	er hatte,	he had.	er hätte,	he might have.
PLUR.	1	wir hatten,	we had.	wir hätten,	we might have.
	2	ihr hattet,	you had.	ihr hättet,	you might have.
	3	ſie hatten,	they had.	ſie hätten,	they might have.
		PERFECT TENSE.		**PERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich habe	I have had.	ich habe	I may have had,
	2	du haſt	thou hast had.	du habeſt	&c.
	3	er hat } gehabt,	he has had.	er habe } gehabt,	
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have had.	wir haben	
	2	ihr habet	you have had.	ihr habet	
	3	ſie haben	they have had.	ſie haben	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.		**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich hatte	I had had.	ich hätte	I might have had,
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst had.	du hätteſt	&c.
	3	er hatte } gehabt,	he had had.	er hätte } gehabt,	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had had.	wir hätten	
	2	ihr hattet	you had had.	ihr hättet	
	3	ſie hatten	they had had.	ſie hätten	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		**FIRST FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall have.	ich werde	(if) I shall have,
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt have.	du werdeſt	&c.
	3	er wird } haben,	he will have.	er werde } haben,	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall have.	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you shall have.	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will have.	ſie werden	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		**SECOND FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	ich werde	(if) I shall have
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	had &c.
	3	er wird } gehabt haben,	he will } have had.	er werde } gehabt haben,	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we will	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	

Digitized by Google

ILIARIES OF THE FIRST CLASS.

to have.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting*. 2. habe du, have thou. 3. habe er, let him have. 1. haben wir, let us have. 2. habet ihr, have ye or you. 3. haben ſie, let them have.	haben, to have.	habend, having.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gehabt haben, to have had.	gehabt, had.
FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } haben, I should have, &c.		FIRST FUTURE. haben werden, to be about to have.	
SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } gehabt haben, I should have had, &c.			

Digitized by Google

(2) Sein,

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich bin,	I am.
	2	du biſt,	thou art.
	3	er iſt,	he is.
PLUR.	1	wir ſind,	we are.
	2	ihr ſeid,	you are.
	3	ſie ſind,	they are.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich war,	I was.
	2	du warſt,	thou wast.
	3	er war,	he was.
PLUR.	1	wir waren,	we were.
	2	ihr waret,	you were.
	3	ſie waren,	they were.

PERFECT TENSE.

PLUR. SING.	1	ich bin	geweſen,	I have been.
	2	du biſt		thou hast been.
	3	er iſt		he has been.
	1	wir ſind		we have been.
	2	ihr ſeid		you have been.
	3	ſie ſind		they have been.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

PLUR. SING.	1	ich war	geweſen,	I had been.
	2	du warſt		thou hadst been.
	3	er war		he had been.
	1	wir waren		we had been.
	2	ihr waret		you had been.
	3	ſie waren		they had been.

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

PLUR. SING.	1	ich werde	ſein,	I shall be.
	2	du wirſt		thou wilt be.
	3	er wird		he will be.
	1	wir werden		we shall be.
	2	ihr werdet		you will be.
	3	ſie werden		they will be.

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

PLUR. SING.	1	ich werde	geweſen ſein,	I shall	have been.
	2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
	3	er wird		he will	
	1	wir werden		we shall	
	2	ihr werdet		you will	
	3	ſie werden		they will	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

ich ſei,	I may be.	
du ſeieſt,	thou mayst be.	
er ſei,	he may be.	
wir ſeien,	we may be.	
ihr ſeiet,	you may be.	
ſie ſeien,	they may be.	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich wäre,	I might be.
du wäreſt,	thou mightst be.
er wäre,	he might be.
wir wären,	we might be.
ihr wäret,	you might be.
ſie wären,	they might be.

PERFECT TENSE.

ich ſei	geweſen,	I may have been, &c.
du ſeiſt		
er ſei		
wir ſeien		
ihr ſeiet		
ſie ſeien		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich wäre	geweſen,	I might have been &c.
du wäreſt		
er wäre		
wir wären		
ihr wäret		
ſie wären		

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	ſein,	(if) I shall be, &c
du werdeſt		
er werde		
wir werden		
ihr werdet		
ſie werden		

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	geweſen ſein,	(if) I should have been, &c.
du werdeſt		
er werde		
wir werden		
ihr werdet		
ſie werden		

Digitized by Google

to be.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting* 2. ſei du, be thou. 3. ſei er, let him be. 1. ſeien wir, let us be. 2. ſeid ihr, be ye. 3. ſeien ſie, let them be.	ſein, to be.	ſeiend, being.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		geweſen ſein, to have been.	geweſen.
FIRST FUTURE.		FIRST FUTURE.	
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } ſein, I should be, &c.		ſein werden, to be about to be.	
SECOND FUTURE.			
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } geweſen ſein, I should have been, &c.			

Digitized by Google

(3) Werden,

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE.		**PRESENT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde,	I become.	ich werde,	I may become.
	2	du wirſt,	thou becomest.	du werdeſt,	thou mayst become.
	3	er wird,	he becomes.	er werde,	he may become.
PLUR.	1	wir werden,	we become.	wir werden,	we may become.
	2	ihr werdet,	you become.	ihr werdet,	you may become.
	3	ſie werden,	they become.	ſie werden,	they may become.
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		**IMPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich wurde,*	I became.	ich würde,	I might become.
	2	du wurdeſt,	thou becamest	du würdeſt,	thou mightst become
	3	er wurde,	he became.	er würde,	he might become.
PLUR.	1	wir wurden,	we became.	wir würden,	we might become.
	2	ihr wurdet,	you became.	ihr würdet,	you might become.
	3	ſie wurden,	they became	ſie würden,	they might become.
		PERFECT TENSE.		**PERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich bin	I have become.	ich ſei	I may have be come, &c.
	2	du biſt	thou hast become.	du ſeiſt	
	3	er iſt	he has become.	er ſei	
PLUR.	1	wir ſind	we have become.	wir ſeien	
	2	ihr ſeid	you have become.	ihr ſeiet	
	3	ſie ſind	they have become.	ſie ſeien	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.		**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich war	I had	ich wäre	I might have be come, &c.
	2	du warſt	thou hadst	du wäreſt	
	3	er war	he had	er wäre	
PLUR.	1	wir waren	we had	wir wären	
	2	ihr waret	you had	ihr wäret	
	3	ſie waren	they had	ſie wären	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		**FIRST FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	ich werde	(if) I shall become &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will	er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		**SECOND FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	ich werde	(if) I shal have becon e, &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will	er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	

werden, geworden, become. — geworden ſein, have become.

* Or ward, L. 46 3.

Digitized by Google

to become.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting.* 2. werde du, become thou. 3. werde er, let him become. 1. werden wir, let us become. 2. werdet ihr, become ye. 3. werden ſie, let them become.	werden, to become.	werdend, becoming.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		geworden ſein, to have become.	geworden, become
FIRST FUTURE.		FIRST FUTURE.	
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden — werden, I should become, &c.		werden werden, to be about to become.	
SECOND FUTURE.			
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden — geworden ſein, I should have become, &c.			

Digitized by Google

§ 73. SYNOPTICAL VIEW OF THE THREE TENSE AUXILIARIES

Sein, *to be.*	haben, *to have.*	werden, *to become.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

am,	*I have,*	*I become.*
ich bin	ich habe	ich werde
du bist	du hast	du wirst
er ist	er hat	er wird
wir sind	wir haben	wir werden
ihr seid	ihr habet or habt	ihr werdet
sie sind.	sie haben.	sie werden.

Imperfect Tense.

I was,	*I had,*	*I became.*
ich war	ich hatte	ich wurde
du wareſt (or warſt)	du hatteſt	du wurdeſt
er war	er hatte	er wurde
wir waren	wir hatten	wir wurden
ihr waret (or wart)	ihr hattet	ihr wurdet
ſie waren.	ſie hatten.	ſie wurden.

Perfect Tense.

I have been,	*I have had,*	*I have become.*
ich bin du bist er ist wir sind ihr seid sie sind } gewesen.	ich habe du hast er hat wir haben ihr habet sie haben } gehabt.	ich bin du bist er ist wir sind ihr seid sie sind. } geworden or worden.

Pluperfect Tense.

I had been,	*I had had,*	*I had become.*
ich war du wareſt er war wir waren ihr waret ſie waren } gewesen	ich hatte du hatteſt er hatte wir hatten ihr hattet ſie hatten } gehabt.	ich war du wareſt er war wir waren ihr waret ſie waren } geworden or worden.

First Future Tense.

I shall be,	*I shall have,*	*I shall become.*
ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } ſein	ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } haben.	ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden. } werden

Digitized by Google

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

I shall have been,	*I shall have had.*	*I shall have become.*
ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } geweſen ſein.	ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } gehabt haben	ich werde du wirſt er wird wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } geworden or worden ſein.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

may be,	*I may have,*	*I may become.*
ich ſei	ich habe	ich werde
du ſeieſt (or ſeiſt)	du habeſt	du werdeſt
er ſei	er habe	er werde
wir ſeien (or ſein)	wir haben	wir werden
ihr ſeiet	ihr habet	ihr werdet
ſie ſeien (or ſein.)	ſie haben.	ſie werden.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

I might be,	*I might have,*	*I might become.*
ich wäre	ich hätte	ich würde
du wäreſt (or wärſt)	du hätteſt	du würdeſt
er wäre	er hätte	er würde
wir wären	wir hätten	wir würden
ihr wäret (or wärt)	ihr hättet	ihr würdet
ſie wären.	ſie hätten.	ſie würden.

PERFECT TENSE.

I may have been,	*I may have had,*	*I may have become.*
ich ſei du ſeiſt er ſei wir ſeien ihr ſeiet ſie ſeien } geweſen.	ich habe du habeſt er habe wir haben ihr habet ſie haben } gehabt.	ich ſei du ſeiſt er ſei wir ſeien ihr ſeiet ſie ſeien } geworden, or worden.

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

I might have been	*I might have had,*	*I might have become.*
ich wäre du wäreſt er wäre wir wären ihr wäret ſie wären } geweſen.	ich hätte du hätteſt er hätte wir hätten ihr hättet ſie hätten } gehabt	ich wäre du wäreſt er wäre wir wären ihr wäret ſie wären } geworden, (worden.)

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

(*If*) *I shall be*	(*If*) *I shall have,*	(*If*) *I shall become.*
ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } ſein.	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden } haben.	ich werde du werdeſt er werde wir werden ihr werdet ſie werden. } werden

Digitized by Google

Second Future Tense.

(If) I shall have been,	*(If) I shall have had,*	*(If) I shall have become.*
ich werde	ich werde	ich werde
du werdeſt	du werdeſt	du werdeſt
er werde gewesen	er werde gehabt	er werde geworden
wir werden ſein.	wir werden haben.	wir werden (worden
ihr werdet	ihr werdet	ihr werdet ſein.
ſie werden	ſie werden	ſie werden

CONDITIONAL.

First Conditional.

I should be,	*I should have,*	*I should become.*
ich würde	ich würde	ich würde
du würdeſt	du würdeſt	du würdeſt
er würde	er würde	er würde
wir würden ſein.	wir würden haben.	wir würden werden.
ihr würdet	ihr würdet	ihr würdet
ſie würden	ſie würden	ſie würden

Second Conditional.

I should have been,	*I should have had,*	*I should have become.*
ich würde	ich würde	ich würde
du würdeſt	du würdeſt	du würdeſt
er würde	er würde	er würde
wir würden geweſen	wir würden gehabt ha-	wir würden geworden
ihr würdet ſein.	ihr würdet ben.	ihr würdet (worden
ſie würden	ſie würden	ſie würden ſein.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Be thou,	*Have thou,*	*Become thou.*
wanting,	*wanting,*	*wanting.*
ſei du	habe du	werde du
ſei, er, ſie or es	habe er, ſie or es	werde er, ſie or es
ſeien wir	haben wir	werden wir
ſeid ihr	habet ihr	werdet ihr
ſeien ſie.	haben ſie.	werden ſie

INFINITIVE MOOD

Present Tense.

to be,	*to have,*	*to become.*
ſein.	haben.	werden.

Perfect Tense.

to have been,	*to have had,*	*to have become.*
geweſen ſein.	gehabt haben.	geworden ſein.

Future Tense.

to be about to be,	*to be about to have,*	*to be about to become*
ſein werden.	haben werden.	werden werden.

Digitized by Google

PARTICIPLES.

Present.		
being	*having,*	*becoming,*
ſeiend.	habend.	werdend.

Perfect.		
been,	*had,*	*become,*
geweſen.	gehabt.	geworden.

§ 74. Auxiliaries of the second class.

(1) The second Class of auxiliaries embraces the following:

Ich mag, I am allowed; (*may*;) Ich darf, I am permitted; I dare.
Ich will, I will; (*purpose*;) Ich muß, I am obliged; (must.)
Ich ſoll, I am obliged; (*shall*;) Ich laſſe, I let.
Ich kann, I am able; (*can*;)

(2) These verbs are, for the most part, very irregular in conjugation, and serve simply the purpose of modifying with the ideas of *liberty*, *possibility*, or *necessity*, other verbs; which latter are in that case required to be in the infinitive mood; thus er mag lachen, he *may* (has permission to) laugh; ich kann ſchreiben, I *can* (am able to) write; where lachen and ſchreiben are both in the infinitive, governed respectively by mag and kann.

(3) In the perfect and pluperfect tenses, however, the past participle of these verbs is used only, when the principal verb is not expressed. Its place is supplied, in such cases, by the infinitive, the translation of course being the same in either case, as:

Ich habe ihn ſehen können (instead of gekonnt);
I have been able to see him.

Er hat warten müſſen (instead of gemußt);
he was obliged to wait.

Man hätte über ihn lachen mögen (instead of gemocht);
one might have laughed at him.

Er hat dem Befehle nicht gehorchen wollen (instead of gewollt);
he has not been willing to obey the command.

Ich habe ſein Geheimniß wiſſen dürfen (instead of gedurft);
I have been allowed to know his secret.

Sie hätte es thun ſollen (instead of geſollt);
she ought to have done it.

Digitized by Google

Sie haben ihn gehen laſſen (instead of gelaſſen);
they have suffered him to go.

For a full display of the forms of these verbs* and for further remarks on their uses, see the Section on the *Mixed* Conjugation § 83.

§ 75. Conjugation of Verbs.

(1) There are two conjugations of verbs: the *Old* and the *New*. The difference between them lies mainly in the mode of forming the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle.

(2) The verbs of the Old form are commonly denominated "*Irregular Verbs.*" But, as nearly all the primitive verbs in the language are conjugated in this way, and few, except the derivative verbs (now the larger class), ever assume the other form, it is the custom of the best German grammarians to adopt the classification which we have given. This will occasion no confusion or inconvenience to those who prefer the common classification: since it is only necessary to remember that the *things* are the same, though the *names* have been changed.

(3) In order to afford the ready means of comparing the *terminational* differences between the Old and the New forms of conjugation, we subjoin the following tabular view of the *simple tenses and participles*, in which alone differences of this kind can exist.

(4) In the compound tenses, the *auxiliary* alone being subjected to terminational variation, the mode of inflecting these tenses becomes of course perfectly uniform in all classes of verbs. Hence to secure a complete acquaintance with the forms of the compound tenses, little more is necessary than a bare inspection of the paradigms.

* Except laſſen (*to let*) which is not there, because it does not belong to the Mixed conjugation. This verb is used either in *permitting* or *commanding*: as, ich habe ihn gehen laſſen, I have *allowed* him to go; ich habe ihn kommen laſſen, I have *ordered* him to come, which two meanings are near akin. When used with a reciprocal pronoun, it has its equivalent in such phrases as, *is to, ought to, may*; as, das läßt ſich nicht thun, that is not to be done; literally, *does not allow itself* to be done. The infinitive active after laſſen, must often be translated passively.

Digitized by Google

§ 76. TERMINATIONS OF THE SIMPLE TENSES.

Old Conjugation. *New Conjugation.*

			INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNC.			INDICATIVE.				SUBJUNCTIVE.			
			NUMB. & PERS.	ROOT.	TENSE-SIGN.	PERS. ENDING.	ROOT.	TENSE-SIGN.	PERS. ENDING.	NUMB. & PERS.	ROOT.	TENSE-SIGN.	PERS. ENDING.	ROOT.	TENSE-SIGN.	PERS. ENDING.
Present.	SING.	1	—		wanting.	e	—	wanting.	e	1	—	wanting.	e	—	wanting.	e
		2	—			est, st	—		est	2	—		est, t	—		est
		3	—			et, t	—		e	3	—		et, t	—		e
	PLUR.	1	—			en, n	—		en	1	—		en, n	—		en
		2	—			et, t	—		et	2	—		et, t	—		et
		3	—			en, n	—		en	3	—		en, n	—		en
Imperfect.	SING.	1	—		wanting.	—	—	wanting.	e	1	—	t or et	+ e	—	t or et	+ e
		2	—			est, st	—		est	2	—	t or et	+ est	—	t or et	+ est
		3	—			—	—		e	3	—	t or et	+ e	—	t or et	+ e
	PLUR.	1	—			en	—		en	1	—	t or et	+ en	—	t or et	+ en
		2	—			et	—		et	2	—	t or et	+ et	—	t or et	+ et
		3	—			en	—		en	3	—	t or et	+ en	—	t or et	+ en

			IMPERATIVE.			INFINIT.		IMPERATIVE.				INFINITIVE.	
			NUMB. & PERS.	ROOT.	TENSE-SIGN.	PERS. ENDING.	ROOT. ENDING.	NUMB. & PERS.	ROOT.	TENSE-SIGN.	PERS. ENDING.	ROOT.	ENDING.
Present.	SING.	1	—		wanting.	—	— en	1	—	wanting.	—	—	en
		2	—			e		2	—		e		
		3	—			e		3	—		e		
	PLUR.	1	—			en		1	—		en		
		2	—			et, t		2	—		et, t		
		3	—			en		3	—		en		

PARTICIPLES.		PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Perfect.	Present.	Perfect.
—end	ge—en	—end	ge—et or t

REMARK. The sign + in the table above is used as in Arithmetic, i. e. to indicate that the parts et + t are to be united; as, t+t.

Digitized by Google

OBSERVATIONS ON THE PRECEDING TABLE.

(1) OBSERVE, in the table above, that the terminations in all places, except the Imperfect of the New form, are to be added *directly* to the root. In the place excepted (*Imperfect of the New form*), there comes between the root and the personal ending, a sort of *tense-sign* (et or t), which is not necessary to verbs of the Old form: because in *them* the Imperfect is made by means of a change in the radical vowel.

(2) It may, also, be noticed that a characteristic difference in *form*, between the Indicative and the Subjunctive (3d person sing.) is that the former ends in et or t, the latter always in e; and that the *personal ending* in the first and third person sing. of the Imperfect of the *Old form*, is wholly omitted.

(3) It may further be observed, that the e in the terminations eſt and et, of the Indicative, is retained or omitted just according to what is demanded by euphony. In the *Subjunctive*, for the most part, the full termination is preserved.

(4) For the same reason, also, that is, for the sake of euphony, when the root of a verb ends in el or er, the vowel e of any termination beginning with that letter, is commonly omitted; as, hämmern (not hämmer e n), to hammer; ſammeln (not ſammel e n), to collect. Sometimes, however, the e of the *root* is rejected: as, ich ſammle (not ſamm e le), I collect.

§ 77. VERBS OF THE OLD CONJUGATION (*commonly called irregular verbs*).

(1) In the Old Conjugation, the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle are distinguished from the Present, chiefly by a change of the radical vowels. Thus, in some verbs, a different radical vowel is found in each of these three parts:

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Perfect Participle.*
Bitten, beg.	Bat,* begged.	Gebeten, begged.
Helfen, help.	Half, helped.	Geholfen, helped.
Sinnen, reflect.	Sann, reflected.	Geſonnen, reflected.
Trinken, drink.	Trank, drank.	Getrunken, drunk.

* When in the course of the changes noted in the text above, a long vowel or diphthong becomes *short*, the final consonant of the root is doubled, as:

Reiten, to ride.	Ritt, rode.	Geritten, ridden.
Leiden, to suffer.	Litt, suffered.	Gelitten, suffered.

In the case of Leiden, note also, that d is changed into its cognate t.

Digitized by Google

(2) In some, the vowel or diphthong in the Imperfect and the Participle, is the same, but is different from that in the present: as,

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Perfect Participle.*
Glimmen, glimmer.	Glomm, glimmered.	Geglommen, glimmered.
Heben, lift.	Hob, lifted.	Gehoben, lifted.
Klimmen, climb.	Klomm, climbed.	Geklommen, climbed.
Küren (führen), choose.	Kor, chose.	Gekoren, chosen.
Leiden, suffer.	Litt,* suffered.	Gelitten, suffered.
Saugen, suck.	Sog, sucked.	Gesogen, sucked.
Schieben, shove.	Schob, shoved.	Geschoben, shoved.
Schleichen, sneak.	Schlich, sneaked.	Geschlichen, sneaked.
Schnauben, snort.	Schnob, snorted.	Geschnoben, snorted.
Schreiben, write.	Schrieb, wrote.	Geschrieben, written.
Stieben, scatter.	Stob, scattered.	Gestoben, scattered.
Treiben, drive.	Trieb, drove.	Getrieben, driven.
Trügen, betray.	Trog, betrayed.	Getrogen, betrayed.
Weben, weave.	Wob, wove.	Gewoben, woven.

(3) In others, the vowel or diphthong of the Present is changed in the Imperfect, but resumed in the participle: as,

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Perfect Participle.*
Blasen, blow, (sound)	Blies, blew.	Geblasen, blown.
Fallen, fall.	Fiel, fell.	Gefallen, fallen.
Fangen, catch.	Fing, caught.	Gefangen, caught.
Geben, give.	Gab, gave.	Gegeben, given.
Hangen, hang.	Hing, hung.	Gehangen, hung.
Kommen, come.	Kam, came.	Gekommen, come.
Laufen, run.	Lief, run.	Gelaufen, run.
Schaffen, create.	Schuf, created.	Geschaffen, created.
Schlagen, beat.	Schlug, beat.	Geschlagen, beaten.
Sehen, see.	Sah, saw.	Gesehen, seen.
Stoßen, push.	Stieß, pushed.	Gestoßen, pushed.
Treten, tread.	Trat, trod.	Getreten, trodden.

When, on the other hand, a short vowel is thus made *long*, the second of two radical consonants is ommitted: as,

Bitten, to beg;	Bat, begged;	Gebeten, begged.
Kommen, to come;	Kam, came;	Gekommen, come.

* See the Note above.

Digitized by Google

(4) Besides the vowel changes indicated above, verbs of the ancient Conjugation have the following characteristics:

a. The Perfect participle ends in e n or n, and is thereby distinguished from that of the New Form, which terminates in e t, or t, thus:

Old Form.	*New Form.*
Geholfen, helped; from Helfen.	Gelobet (gelobt), praised; from Loben.
Gefallen, fallen; from Fallen.	Geliebet (geliebt), loved; from Lieben.
Getragen, borne; from Tragen.	Gelabet (gelabt), quickened; from Laben.
Gebotten, bidden; from Bieten.	Getauschet (getauscht), exchanged, from Tauschen.

b. Those having a in the *first* person singular of the Present Indicative, assume the Umlaut in the *second* and *third* persons; thus,

Indicative.	Indicative.
	Present.
ich fange, I catch,	ich schlage, I strike.
du fängst, thou catchest,	du schlägst, thou strikest.
er fängt, he catches,	er schlägt, he strikes.
wir fangen, we catch,	wir schlagen, we strike.
ihr fangt, you catch,	ihr schlagt, you strike.
sie fangen, they catch,	sie schlagen, they strike.

c. Those having e (long) in the *first* person singular of the Present Indicative, take, in the *second* and *third* persons, ie; those, in like manner, having e (short,) take in the same places, the vowel i; and in both instances, the Imperative (*second person singular*) adopts the vowel-form of the second person of the Indicative, thus:

Indicative.	Imperative.
Present.	
ich lese, I read,	*wanting.*
du liesest, thou readst,	lies du (for liese).*
er liest, he reads,	lese er, let him read.*

* The verbs that thus adopt the vowel-form of the 2. pers. of the Indic. lose also the characteristic e final: giving, as above, lies, for liese; hilf for hilfe, &c. It should be noted, further, that the unaccented e final, is, in other instances, also sometimes omitted.

Digitized by Google

INDICATIVE.	IMPERATIVE.
Present.	
wir leſen, we read,	leſen wir, let us read.
ihr leſet, you read,	leſet ihr, read ye or you.
ſie leſen, they read.	leſen ſie, let them read.
ich helfe, I help,	*wanting*,
du hilfſt, thou helpest,	hilf du (for hilfe),* help thou.
er hilft, he helps,	helfe er, let him help.
wir helfen, we help,	helfen wir, let us help.
ihr helfet, you help,	helfet ihr, help ye or you.
ſie helfen, they help.	helfen ſie, let them help.

d. The final e, of the *first* and *third* persons singular of the Imperfect Indicative, is always omitted, and in this tense the radical vowel, if it be capable of it assumes the Umlaut in the Subjunctive thus:

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
Imperfect.	
ich ſprach, (for ſprache,) I spoke,	ich ſpräche, I might speak.
du ſprachſt, thou didst speak,	du ſprächeſt, thou mightst speak.
er ſprach, (for ſprache,) he spoke,	er ſpräche, he might speak.
wir ſprachen, we spoke,	wir ſprächen, we might speak.
ihr ſprachet, you spoke,	ihr ſprächet, you might speak.
ſie ſprachen, they spoke,	ſie ſprächen, they might speak.
ich ſchlug, I struck,	ich ſchlüge, I might strike.
du ſchlugſt, thou didst strike,	du ſchlügeſt, thou mightst strike.
er ſchlug, he struck,	er ſchlüge, he might strike.
wir ſchlugen, we struck,	wir ſchlügen, we might strike
ihr ſchluget, you struck,	ihr ſchlüget, you might strike.
ſie ſchlugen, they struck,	ſie ſchlügen, they might strike.

* See Note page 342.

Digitized by Google

§ 78. PARADIGM OF A

Schlagen,

		INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE.			**PRESENT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich ſchlage,	I strike.		ich ſchlage,	I may strike.
	2	du ſchlägſt	thou strikest.		du ſchlageſt,	thou mayst strike
	3	er ſchlägt,	he strikes.		er ſchlage,	he may strike.
PLUR.	1	wir ſchlagen,	we strike.		wir ſchlagen,	we may strike.
	2	ihr ſchlaget,	you strike.		ihr ſchlaget,	you may strike.
	3	ſie ſchlagen,	they strike.		ſie ſchlagen,	they may strike.
		IMPERFECT TENSE.			**IMPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich ſchlug,	I struck.		ich ſchlüge,	I might strike.
	2	du ſchlugſt,	thou didst strike.		du ſchlugeſt,	thou mightst strike.
	3	er ſchlug,	he struck.		er ſchlüge,	he might strike.
PLUR.	1	wir ſchlugen,	we struck.		wir ſchlügen,	we might strike.
	2	ihr ſchluget,	you struck.		ihr ſchlüget,	you might strike.
	3	ſie ſchlugen,	they struck.		ſie ſchlügen,	they might strike.
		PERFECT TENSE.			**PERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich habe	I have	struck.	ich habe	I may have struck, &c.
	2	du haſt	thou hast		du habeſt	
	3	er hat	he has		er habe	
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have		wir haben	
	2	ihr habet	you have		ihr habet	
	3	ſie haben	they have		ſie haben	
		geſchlagen,			geſchlagen,	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.			**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich hatte	I had	struck.	ich hätte	I might have struck, &c.
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst		du hätteſt	
	3	er hatte	he had		er hätte	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had		wir hätten	
	2	ihr hattet	you had		ihr hättet	
	3	ſie hatten	they had		ſie hätten	
		geſchlagen,			geſchlagen,	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.			**FIRST FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	strike.	ich werde	(if) I shall strike, &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will		er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden	
		ſchlagen,			ſchlagen,	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.			**SECOND FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	have struck.	ich werde	(if) I shall have struck, &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will		er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden	
		geſchlagen haben,			geſchlagen haben,	

Digitized by Google

VERB OF THE OLD FORM.

to strike.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting*. 2. ſchlage du, strike thou. 3. ſchlage er, let him strike. 1. ſchlagen wir, let us strike. 2. ſchlaget ihr, strike ye. 3. ſchlagen ſie, let them strike.	ſchlagen, to strike.	ſchlagend, striking.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT
		geſchlagen haben, to have struck.	geſchlagen struck.
FIRST FUTURE.		FIRST FUTURE.	
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } ſchlagen. I should strike, &c.		ſchlagen werden, to be about to strike.	
SECOND FUTURE.			
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } ge—en haben. I should have struck, &c.			

Digitized by Google

(1) ALPHABETICAL LIST OF

(commonly called

Note that in the following list many *compound* forms are not set down

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Backen *a*), *o* bake,	ich backe, du bäckſt, er bäckt,	ich buk
Bedingen *b*), to bargain,	ich bedinge, ꝛc.	ich bedung
Bedürfen, to need,	ich bedarf, du bedarfſt, er bedarf; wir bedürfen, ꝛc.	ich bedurfte
Befehlen, to command,	ich befehle, du befiehlſt, er befiehlt.	ich befahl
Befleißen (ſich) *c*), to apply one's self.	ich befleiße, ꝛc.	ich befliß
Beginnen *d*), to begin,	ich beginne, ꝛc.	ich begann
Beißen, to bite,	ich beiße, du beißeſt, er beißt,	ich biß
Beklemmen *e*), to pinch, press (by anxiety),	ich beklemme, ꝛc.	ich beklemmte
Bergen, to conceal,	ich berge, du birgſt, er birgt	ich barg
Berſten, to burst,	ich berſte, ꝛc.	ich borſt or barſt
Beſinnen (ſich), to think of,	ich beſinne, ꝛc.	ich beſann
Beſitzen, to possess,	ich beſitze, ꝛc.	ich beſaß
Betrügen, to deceive,	ich betrüge, ꝛc.	ich betrog
Bewegen *f*), to induce, move,	ich bewege, ꝛc.	ich bewog
Biegen, to bend,	ich biege, ꝛc.	ich bog
Bieten *g*), to offer, to bid,	ich biete, ꝛc.	ich bot
Binden, to bind,	ich binde, ꝛc.	ich band
Bitten, to entreat, to beg,	ich bitte, ꝛc.	ich bat
Blaſen, to blow,	ich blaſe, du bläſeſt, er bläſt	ich blies
Bleiben, to remain,	ich bleibe, ꝛc.	ich blieb
Bleichen *h*), to fade,	ich bleiche, ꝛc.	ich blich
Braten, to roast,	ich brate, du brateſt or brätſt, er bratet or brät	ich briet
Brechen, to break,	ich breche, du brichſt, er bricht	ich brach
Brennen *i*), to burn,	ich brenne, ꝛc.	ich brannte
Bringen, to bring,	ich bringe, ꝛc.	ich brachte
Denken, to think,	ich denke, ꝛc.	ich dachte
Dingen *k*), to bargain	ich dinge, ꝛc.	ich dung
Dreſchen, to thresh,	ich dreſche, du driſcheſt, er driſcht	ich draſch or droſch
Dringen *l*), to press, to urge,	ich dringe, ꝛc.	ich drang
Dürfen, to be able,	ich darf, du darfſt, er darf; wir dürfen, ꝛc.	ich durfte
Empfangen, to receive,	ich empfange, du empfängſt, er empfängt	ich empfing
Empfehlen, to recommend,	ich empfehle, du empfiehlſt, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl
Empfinden, to feel,	ich empfinde, ꝛc.	ich empfand
Entrinnen, to escape,	ich entrinne, ꝛc.	ich entrann
Entſchlafen, to fall asleep,	ich entſchlafe, ꝛc.	ich entſchlief

Digitized by Google

VERBS OF THE OLD FORM

irregular verbs).

In such case, the student has only to look for the verb in its *simple* form.

IMP. SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich büke	backe	gebacken.	*a*) Regular when active; as, er backte Brod; das Brod buk.
ich bedünge	bedinge	bedungen.	*b*) Regular when it means, to add a condition, to modify. Bedingt, conditional, is regular.
ich bedürfte		bedurft.	
ich befföhle	befiehl	befohlen.	
ich befliffe	befleiß	befliffen.	*c*) Befleißigen (ſich), to apply one's self, is regular.
ich begänne	beginne	begonnen.	*d*) In the Imperf. subj. begönne is also used.
ich biſſe	beiß or beiße	gebiſſen.	
ich beklemmete	beklemme	beklommen or beklemmt.	*e*) Beklemmt is not frequently used, and is employed, only in the sense of compressed
ich bärge	birg	geborgen.	
ich bärſte	berſte or birſt	geborſten.	
ich beſänne	beſinne	beſonnen.	
ich beſäße	beſitze	beſeſſen.	
ich betröge	betrüge	betrogen.	
ich bewöge	bewege	bewogen.	
ich böge	biege	gebogen.	*f*) Irregular when it means, to induce; regular when it means, to move a *body* or affect the *sensibilities*.
ich böte	biete	geboten.	*g*) Beutſt and beut, in the present, are poetical.
ich bände	binde	gebunden.	
ich bäte	bitte	gebeten.	
ich bliefe	blaſe	geblaſen.	
ich bliebe	bleibe or bleib	geblieben.	
ich bliche	bleiche	geblichen.	*h*) Bleichen, to bleach in the sun, active, is regular.
ich briete	brate	gebraten.	
ich bräche	brich	gebrochen.	
ich brennete	brenne	gebrannt.	*i*) Often regular when active: Ich brennte Holz, weil es beſſer brannte als Torf.
ich brächte	bringe	gebracht.	
ich dächte	denke	gedacht.	
ich dünge	dinge	gedungen.	*k*) Dingte is sometimes used in the imperfect, in the sense of hire.
ich dröſche or dröſche	driſch	gedroſchen.	
ich dränge	dringe	gedrungen.	*l*) For drang, drung was formerly in use.
ich dürfte	—	gedurft.	
ich empfinge	empfange	empfangen.	
ich empföhle	empfiehl	empfohlen.	
ich empfände	empfinde	empfunden.	
ich entränne	entrinne	entronnen.	
ich entſchliefe	entſchlafe or entſchlaf	entſchlafen.	

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Entſprechen, to answer,	ich entſpreche, ꝛc.	ich entſprach
Erbleichen m), to turn pale,	ich erbleiche, ꝛc.	ich erblich
Erfrieren, to freeze,	ich erfriere, ꝛc.	ich erfror
Ergreifen, to seize, to catch,	ich ergreife, ꝛc.	ich ergriff
Erkieſen n), to select,	ich erkieſe, ꝛc.	ich erkieſte
Erkühren o), to choose,	ich erkühre (erküre), ꝛc.	ich erkohr (erkor)
Erlöſchen p), to extinguish,		
Erſaufen, to be drowned,	ich erſaufe, du erſäufeſt, er erſäuft	ich erſoff
Erſchallen, to resound,	ich erſchalle, ꝛc.	ich erſcholl
Erſcheinen, to appear,	ich erſcheine, ꝛc.	ich erſchien
Erſchrecken q), to be frightened,	ich erſchrecke, du erſchrickſt, er erſchrickt	ich erſchrak
Ertrinken, to be drowned,	ich ertrinke, ꝛc.	ich ertrank
Erwägen r), to consider,	ich erwäge, ꝛc.	ich erwog
Eſſen, to eat,	ich eſſe, du iſſeſt, er iſſet or ißt	ich aß
Fahen s), (obsolete,) to catch,	ich fahe, du faheſt, er fahet	—
Fahren t), to drive a carriage,	ich fahre, du fährſt, er fährt	ich fuhr
Fallen, to fall,	ich falle, du fällſt, er fällt	ich fiel
Falten u), to fold	ich falte, ꝛc.	ich faltete
Fangen v), to catch,	ich fange, du fängſt, er fängt	ich fing
Fechten, to fight,	ich fechte, du fichtſt, er ficht	ich focht
Finden, to find,	ich finde, ꝛc.	ich fand
Flechten, to twist,	ich flechte, du flichtſt, er flicht	ich flocht
Fliegen w), to fly,	ich fliege, du fliegſt, er fliegt	ich flog
Fliehen x), to flee,	ich fliehe, ꝛc.	ich floh
Fließen y), to flow,	ich fließe, ꝛc.	ich floß
Fragen, to ask,	ich frage, du frägſt, er frägt	ich frug
Freſſen, to devour,	ich freſſe, du friſſeſt or frißt	ich fraß
Frieren, to freeze,	ich friere, ꝛc.	ich fror
Gähren z), to ferment,	ich gähre, ꝛc.	ich gohr
Gebären, to bring forth,	ich gebäre, du gebärſt (gebierſt) er gebärt (gebiert)	ich gebar
Geben a), to give,	ich gebe, du gibſt, er gibt	ich gab
Gebieten b), to command.	ich gebiete, ꝛc.	ich gebot
Gedeihen c), to prosper,	ich gedeihe, ꝛc.	ich gedieh
Gefallen, to please,	ich gefalle, du gefällſt, er gefällt	ich gefiel
Gehen d), to go,	ich gehe, ꝛc.	ich ging
Gelingen, to succeed,	es gelingt	es gelang
Gelten e), to be worth, valid,	ich gelte, du giltſt, er gilt	ich galt
Geneſen, to recover,	ich geneſe, ꝛc	ich genas

Digitized by Google

IMP. SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich entſpräche	entſprich	entſprochen.	
ich erbliche	erbleiche	erblichen.	*m*) Derived from bleichen, to whiten, as in the sun, which is regular.
ich erfröre	erfriere	erfroren.	
ich ergriffe	ergreife or ergreif	ergriffen.	
ich erkieſete	erkieſe	erkoſen.	*n*) It is used in sublime style and in poetry.
ich erkühre (erküre)	erkühre (erküre)	erkohren (erkoren)	*o*) This verb is very seldom used.
ich erlöſche	erlaufe	erloſſen.	*p*) Like verlöſchen and auslöſchen, irregular only when intransitive. Löſchen is always transitive and regular.
ich erſchölle	erſchalle	erſchollen.	
ich erſchiene	erſcheine	erſchienen.	
ich erſchräke	erſchrick	erſchrocken.	*q*) Irregular always as an intransitive verb, but regular when transitive.
ich ertränke	ertrink	ertrunken.	
ich erwöge	erwäge	erwogen.	*r*) More often used as a regular verb.
ich äße	iß	gegeſſen.	
—	fahe	gefahen.	*s*) This poetical word is rarely used, and in the imperfect not at all.
ich führe	fahre	gefahren.	*t*) All the compounds of fahren are irregular except willfahren.
ich fiele	falle	gefallen.	
ich faltete	falte	gefalten.	*u*) Irregular only in the participle now, for which gefaltet is often used.
ich finge	fange	gefangen.	*v*) The forms fieng and fienge are obsolete. So also empfieng and empfienge.
ich föchte	ficht	gefochten.	
ich fände	finde	gefunden.	
ich flöchte	flicht	geflochten.	
ich flöge	fliege	geflogen.	*w*) Fleugſt and fleugt in the present, and fleug in the imperative are forms used only in poetry.
ich flöhe	fliehe or flieh	geflohen.	*x*) Fleuchſt, fleucht and fleuch, poetical.
ich flöſſe	fließe	gefloſſen.	*y*) Fleußeſt, fleußt and fleuß, poetical.
ich früge	frage	gefragt.	
ich fräße	friß	gefreſſen.	
ich fröre	friere	gefroren.	
ich göhre	gähre	gegohren	*z*) Sometimes regular, gährte.
ich gebäre (geböre)	gebäre (gebier)	geboren.	
ich gäbe	gib	gegeben.	*a*) Some writers prefer giebſt, giebt, gieb, to gibſt, gibt, gib.
ich geböte	gebiete	geboten.	*b*) Gebeutſt, gebeut, poetical.
ich gediehe	gedeih	gediehen.	*c*) Gediegen is but a strengthened adjective form of the past participle.
ich gefiele	gefalle	gefallen.	
ich ginge	gehe or geh	gegangen.	*d*) Gieng for ging is antiquated.
es gelänge	gelinge	gelungen.	
ich gälte	gilt	gegolten.	*e*) Formerly golt, gölte, were used in the imperf. indic. and subj.
ich genäſe	geneſe	geneſen.	

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Genießen *f*), to enjoy,	ich genieße, ꝛc.	ich genoß
Gerathen, to hit upon,	ich gerathe, du geräthſt, er geräth	ich gerieth
Geſchehen, to happen	es geſchieht	es geſchah, geſchahe
Gewinnen, to gain, to win,	ich gewinne, ꝛc.	ich gewann
Gießen *g*), to pour,	ich gieße, ꝛc.	ich goß
Gleichen *h*), to resemble,	ich gleiche, ꝛc.	ich glich
Gleiten *i*), to glide,	ich gleite, ꝛc.	ich glitt
Glimmen *k*), to shine	ich glimme, ꝛc.	ich glomm
Graben, to dig,	ich grabe, du gräbſt, er gräbt	ich grub
Greifen, to seize,	ich greife, ꝛc.	ich griff
Haben *l*), to have,	ich habe, du haſt, er hat	ich hatte
Halten, to hold,	ich halte, du hältſt, er hält	ich hielt
Hangen *m*), to hang,	ich hange, du hängſt, er hängt	ich hing
Hauen *n*), to hew,	ich haue, ꝛc.	ich hieb
Heben, to heave,	ich hebe, ꝛc.	ich hob or huh
Heißen, to be named,	ich heiße, du heißeſt, er heißt	ich hieß
Helfen, to help,	ich helfe, du hilfſt, er hilft	ich half
Keifen *o*), to chide,	ich keife, ꝛc.	ich kiff
Kennen, to know,	ich kenne, ꝛc.	ich kannte
Klieben, to cleave,	ich kliebe, ꝛc.	ich klob
Klimmen *p*), to climb	ich klimme, ꝛc.	ich klomm
Klingen, to sound,	ich klinge, ꝛc.	ich klang
Kneifen, or Kneipen *q*), to pinch,	ich kneife, or kneipe, ꝛc.	ich kniff or knipp
Kommen, to come,	ich komme, du kommſt, er kommt, or du kömmſt, er kömmt	ich kam
Können, to be able,	ich kann, du kannſt, er kann	ich konnte
Kriechen *r*), to creep	ich krieche, ꝛc.	ich kroch
Kühren *s*), to choose	ich kühre, ꝛc.	ich kohr
Laden, to load,	ich lade, du ladeſt or ladſt, er ladet or ladt	ich lud
Laſſen *t*), to let,	ich laſſe, du läſſeſt, er läſſet (läßt),	ich ließ
Laufen, to run,	ich laufe, du läufſt, er läuft	ich lief
Leiden *u*), to suffer,	ich leide, ꝛc.	ich litt
Leihen, to lend,	ich leihe, ꝛc.	ich lieh
Leſen, to read,	ich leſe, du lieſeſt, er lieſet (lieſt),	ich las
Liegen, to lie down,	ich liege, ꝛc.	ich lag
Lügen, to lie,	ich lüge, ꝛc.	ich log

Digitized by Google

IMP. SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich genöſſe	genieße	genoſſen.	*f*) Geneußeſt, geneußt, and imperative geneuß, poetical, seldom used.
ich geriethe	gerathe	gerathen.	
es geſchähe	geſchehe	geſchehen.	
ich gewänne (gewönne)	gewinne	gewonnen.	
ich göſſe	gieße	gegoſſen.	*g*) Geußeſt, geußt, and imperative geuß. See genießen.
ich gliche	gleiche	geglichen.	*h*) Regular as an active verb, to make similar, to compare. Vergleichen, although active is irregular.
ich glitte	gleite	geglitten.	*i*) Geleiten and begleiten are not derived from gleiten, but from leiten, and therefore regular
ich glömme	glimme	geglommen.	*k*) Now more frequently regular
ich grübe	grabe	gegraben.	
ich griffe	greife	gegriffen.	
ich hätte	habe	gehabt.	*l*) Handhaben is regular.
ich hielte	halte	gehalten.	
ich hinge	hange	gehangen.	*m*) Hieng, hienge are old forms This verb must not be mistaken for hängen, to suspend, which is active and regular.
ich hiebe	haue or hau	gehauen.	*n*) Haute (regular) is used when *cutting wood, carving stone,* &c., are meant.
ich höbe	hebe	gehoben.	
ich hieße	heiße or heiß	geheißen.	
ich hülfe or hälfe	hilf	geholfen.	
ich kiffe	keife or keif	gekiffen.	*o*) This verb is sometimes used as a regular verb.
ich kennete	kenne	gekannt.	
ich klöbe	kliebe	gekloben.	
ich klömme	klimme	geklommen.	*p*) Sometimes regular, klimmte.
ich klänge	klinge	geklungen.	
ich kniffe or knippe	kneife or kneipe	gekniffen or geknippen.	*q*) Kneipte, gekneipt is more frequently used.
ich käme	komm	gekommen.	
ich könnte		gekonnt.	
ich kröche	krieche or kriech	gekrochen.	*r*) Kreuchſt, kreucht, kreuch, obsolete. Only poetically used.
ich köhre	kühre	gekohren.	*s*) Kühren is entirely antiquated, wählen having taken its place.
ich lüde	lade	geladen.	
ich ließe	laſſe or laß	gelaſſen.	*t*) Veranlaſſen is regular.
ich liefe	laufe or lauf	gelaufen.	
ich litte	leide	gelitten.	*u*) Verleiden, to disgust, is regular
ich liehe	leihe	geliehen.	
ich läſe	lies	geleſen.	
ich läge	liege	gelegen.	
ich löge	lüge	gelogen.	

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Mahlen *v*), to grind,	ich mahle, du mahleſt (mählſt), er mahlt (mählt)	ich mahlte (mahl)
Meiden, to avoid,	ich meide, ꝛc.	ich mied
Melken *w*), to milk,	ich melke, du melkſt or milkſt, er melkt or milkt	ich molk
Meſſen, to measure,	ich meſſe, du miſſeſt, er miſſet or mißt	ich maß
Mißfallen, to displease,	ich mißfalle, du mißfällſt, er mißfällt	ich mißfiel
Mißlingen, to go amiss,	es mißlingt	es mißlang
Mögen, to be able,	ich mag, du magſt, er mag, wir mögen, ꝛc.	ich mochte
Müſſen, to be obliged,	ich muß, du mußt, er muß, wir müſſen, ihr müſſet or müßt, ꝛc.	ich mußte
Nehmen, to take,	ich nehme, du nimmſt, er nimmt	ich nahm
Nennen, to name,	ich nenne, ꝛc.	ich nannte
Pfeifen, to whistle,	ich pfeife, ꝛc.	ich pfiff
Pflegen *x*), to cherish,	ich pflege, ꝛc.	ich pflog
Preiſen, to praise,	ich preiſe, ꝛc.	ich p.ies
Quellen *y*), to gush,	ich quelle, du quillſt, er quillt	ich quoll
Rächen *z*), to avenge,	ich räche, ꝛc.	ich rächte (roch
Rathen, to advise,	ich rathe, du räthſt, er räth	ich rieth
Reiben, to rub,	ich reibe, ꝛc.	ich rieb
Reißen, to tear,	ich reiße, ꝛc.	ich riß
Reiten *a*), to ride,	ich reite, ꝛc.	ich ritt
Rennen *b*), to run,	ich renne, ꝛc.	ich rannte or rennte
Riechen, to smell,	ich rieche, ꝛc.	ich roch
Ringen, to wrestle,	ich ringe, ꝛc.	ich rang
Rinnen, to run (of fluids),	ich rinne, ꝛc.	ich rann
Rufen *c*), to call,	ich rufe, ꝛc.	ich rief
Salzen *d*), to salt,	ich ſalze, ꝛc.	ich ſalzte
Saufen, to drink, to tipple,	ich ſaufe, du ſäufſt, er ſäuft	ich ſoff
Saugen *e*), to suck,	ich ſauge, ꝛc.	ich ſog
Schaffen *f*), to create,	ich ſchaffe, ꝛc.	ich ſchuf
Scheiden *g*), to separate,	ich ſcheide, ꝛc.	ich ſchied
Scheinen to appear,	ich ſcheine, ꝛc.	ich ſchien

Digitized by Google

IMP. SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich mahlete (mühle)	mahle	gemahlen.	*v*) Except the past participle gemahlen, no irregular form is in use.
ich miede	meide	gemieden.	
ich mölke	melke	gemolken.	*w*) Sometimes regular. Milkt &c., rarely used.
ich mäße	miß	gemeſſen.	
ich mißfiele	mißfalle	mißfallen.	
es mißlänge	mißlinge	mißlungen.	
ich möchte	—	gemocht.	
ich müßte	—	gemußt.	
ich nähme	nimm	genommen.	
ich nennete	nenne	genannt.	
ich pfiffe	pfeife or pfeif'	gepfiffen.	
ich pflöge	pflege	gepflogen.	*x*) When it signifies, *to wont upon*, or *to be accustomed*, it is regular.
ich prieſe	preiſe	geprieſen.	
ich quölle	quelle	gequollen.	*y*) Quellen, to swell, is regular
ich rächte (röche)	räche	gerächt (gerochen).	*z*) The irregular form is no longer used. Where it occurs in former writers it must not be confounded with the same forms from riechen.
ich riethe	rathe	gerathen.	
ich riebe	reibe	gerieben.	
ich riſſe	reiße	geriſſen.	
ich ritte	reite	geritten.	*a*) Bereiten, to ride to, like all the compounds of reiten, is irregular; but bereiten, to make ready, from bereit, ready, is regular, like all derivatives.
ich rennete	renne	gerannt or gerennt.	*b*) Rennte and zerennt, not often used.
ich röche	rieche or riech	gerochen.	
ich ränge	ringe	gerungen.	
ich ränne (rönne)	rinne	geronnen.	
ich rieſe	ruſe	gerufen.	*c*) Regular in some writers, but improperly so.
ich ſalzete	ſalze	geſalzen.	*d*) Irregular only in the participle, and in that when used adjectively; as, geſalzene Fiſche; er hat ſie geſalzt.
ich ſöffe	ſaufe	geſoffen.	
ich ſöge	ſauge	geſogen.	*e*) Säugſt and ſäugt are not supported by good usage, but ſäugen, to suckle, is regular.
ich ſchüfe	ſchaffe	geſchaffen.	*f*) In the signification of to procure, to get, it is regular, as also anſchaffen, to purchase, to buy; abſchaffen to part with, to dismiss.
ich ſchiede	ſcheide	geſchieden.	*g*) The active verb ſcheiden, to part, to disjoin, to divide, is regular.
ich ſchiene	ſcheine	geſchienen.	

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Schelten, to scold,	ich ſchelte, du ſchiltſt, er ſchilt	ich ſchalt (ſcholt
Scheren, to shear,	ich ſchere, ꝛc.	ich ſchor
Schieben, to shove,	ich ſchiebe, ꝛc.	ich ſchob
Schießen, to shoot,	ich ſchieße, ꝛc.	ich ſchoß
Schinden, to flay,	ich ſchinde, ꝛc.	ich ſchund
Schlafen, to sleep,	ich ſchlafe, du ſchläfſt, er ſchläft	ich ſchlief
Schlagen *h*), to beat,	ich ſchlage, du ſchlägſt, er ſchlägt	ich ſchlug
Schleichen, to sneak,	ich ſchleiche, ꝛc.	ich ſchlich
Schleifen *i*), to sharpen, to whet,	ich ſchleife, ꝛc.	ich ſchliff
Schleißen, to slit,	ich ſchleiße, ꝛc.	ich ſchliß
Schliefen, to slip,	ich ſchliefe, ꝛc.	ich ſchloff
Schließen, to shut,	ich ſchließe, ꝛc.	ich ſchloß
Schlingen, to sling,	ich ſchlinge, ꝛc.	ich ſchlang
Schmeißen, to fling,	ich ſchmeiße, ꝛc.	ich ſchmiß
Schmelzen *k*), to melt,	ich ſchmelze, du ſchmelzeſt (ſchmilzeſt), er ſchmelzt (ſchmilzt)	ich ſchmolz
Schnauben, to snort,	ich ſchniebe or ſchnaube	ich ſchnob
Schneiden, to cut,	ich ſchneide, ꝛc.	ich ſchnitt
Schrauben *l*), to screw,	ich ſchraube, ꝛc.	ich ſchraubte (ſchrob)
Schreiben, to write,	ich ſchreibe, ꝛc.	ich ſchrieb
Schreien, to cry,	ich ſchreie, ꝛc.	ich ſchrie
Schreiten, to stride,	ich ſchreite, ꝛc.	ich ſchritt
Schroten, to bruise, to gnaw,	ich ſchrote, ꝛc.	ich ſchrotete
Schwären *m*), to suppurate,	ich ſchwäre, ꝛc.	ich ſchwor
Schweigen, to be silent,	ich ſchweige, ꝛc.	ich ſchwieg
Schwellen *n*), to swell,	ich ſchwelle, du ſchwillſt, er ſchwillt	ich ſchwoll
Schwimmen, to swim,	ich ſchwimme, ꝛc.	ich ſchwamm
Schwinden, to vanish,	ich ſchwinde, ꝛc.	ich ſchwand
Schwingen *o*), to swing,	ich ſchwinge, ꝛc.	ich ſchwang or ſchwung
Schwören, to swear,	ich ſchwöre, ꝛc.	ich ſchwor or ſchwur
Sehen, to see,	ich ſehe, du ſiehſt, er ſieht	ich ſah
Sein, to be,	ich bin ꝛc.	ich war, ꝛc.
Senden, to send,	ich ſende, ꝛc.	ich ſandte and ſendete
Sieden *p*), to boil,	ich ſiede, ꝛc.	ich ſott
Singen, to sing,	ich ſinge, ꝛc.	ich ſang
Sinken, to sink,	ich ſinke, ꝛc.	ich ſank
Sinnen, to think, to muse,	ich ſinne, ꝛc.	ich ſann
Sitzen, to sit,	ich ſitze, ꝛc.	ich ſaß
Sollen, to be obliged	ich ſoll, du ſollſt, er ſoll	ich ſollte
Spalten *q*), to split,	ich ſpalte, ꝛc.	ich ſpaltete
Speien, to spit,	ich ſpeie, ꝛc.	ich ſpie
Spinnen, to spin,	ich ſpinne, ꝛc.	ich ſpann

Digitized by Google

IMP. SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich ſchälte (ſchölte)	ſchilt	geſcholten.	
ich ſchöre	ſchere or ſchier	geſchoren.	
ich ſchöbe	ſchiebe	geſchoben.	
ich ſchöſſe	ſchieße	geſchoſſen.	
ich ſchünde	ſchinde	geſchunden.	
ich ſchliefe	ſchlafe	geſchlafen.	
ich ſchlüge	ſchlage	geſchlagen.	*k*) Rathſchlagen and berathſchlagen, to consult, are regular.
ich ſchliche	ſchleiche	geſchlichen.	
ich ſchliffe	ſchleife or ſchleif	geſchliffen.	*i*) Regular in all other significations, as, *to demolish*, or *to drag*
ich ſchliffe	ſchleiße	geſchliffen.	
ich ſchlöffe	ſchliefe	geſchloffen.	
ich ſchlöſſe	ſchließe	geſchloſſen.	
ich ſchlänge	ſchlinge	geſchlungen.	
ich ſchmiſſe	ſchmeiße	geſchmiſſen.	
ich ſchmölze	ſchmilz or ſchmelz	geſchmolzen.	*k*) As an *active* verb it is regular.
ich ſchnöbe	ſchnaube	geſchnoben.	
ich ſchnitte	ſchneide	geſchnitten.	
ich ſchraubete (ſchröbe)	ſchraube	geſchraubt (geſchroben).	*l*) Commonly regular, ſchraubte geſchraubt.
ich ſchriebe	ſchreibe	geſchrieben.	
ich ſchriee	ſchreie	geſchrieen.	
ich ſchritte	ſchreite	geſchritten.	
ich ſchrotete	ſchrote	geſchroten.	Regular now except in the participle, and this is frequently geſchrotet.
ich ſchwöre	ſchwäre	geſchworen.	*m*) Schwierſt ꝛc. in the present is provincial.
ich ſchwiege	ſchweige	geſchwiegen.	
ich ſchwölle	ſchwill or ſchwelle	geſchwollen.	*n*) Regular, when active.
ich ſchwämme	ſchwimme	geſchwommen.	
ich ſchwände	ſchwinde	geſchwunden.	
ich ſchwänge	ſchwinge	geſchwungen.	*o*) Schwung is less in usage than ſchwang.
ich ſchwöre or ſchwüre	ſchwöre	geſchworen.	
ich ſähe	ſiehe	geſehen.	
ich wäre	ſei	geweſen.	
ich ſendete	ſende	geſandt and geſendet.	
ich ſötte	ſiede	geſotten.	*p*) When active it is mostly regular.
ich ſänge	ſinge	geſungen.	
ich ſänke	ſinke	geſunken.	
ich ſänne (ſönne)	ſinne	geſonnen.	
ich ſäße	ſitze	geſeſſen.	
ich ſollte	—	geſollt.	
ich ſpaltete	ſpalte	geſpalten.	*q*) Irregular only in the participle, and this is sometimes geſpaltet when the verb is active.
ich ſpiee	ſpeie	geſpieen.	
ich ſpänne (ſpönne)	ſpinne	geſponnen.	

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Spleißen, to split,	ich ſpleiße, ꝛc.	ich ſpließ or ſpliß
Sprechen, to speak,	ich ſpreche, du ſprichſt, er ſpricht	ich ſprach
Sprießen r), to sprout,	ich ſprieße, ꝛc.	ich ſproß
Springen, to spring,	ich ſpringe, ꝛc.	ich ſprang
Stechen, to sting, to prick,	ich ſtreche, du ſtichſt, er ſticht	ich ſtach
Stecken s), to stick, to be fastened.	ich ſtecke, ꝛc.	ich ſteckte or ſtak.
† Stehen, to stand,	ich ſtehe, ꝛc.	ich ſtand (ſtunde
Stehlen, to steal,	ich ſtehle, du ſtiehlſt, er ſtiehlt	ich ſtahl ſtohl)
Steigen, to ascend,	ich ſteige, ꝛc.	ich ſtieg
Sterben, to die,	ich ſterbe, du ſtirbſt, er ſtirbt	ich ſtarb
Stieben t), to fly (as dust),	ich ſtiebe, ꝛc.	ich ſtob
Stinken, to stink,	ich ſtinke, ꝛc.	ich ſtank
Stoßen, to push,	ich ſtoße, du ſtößeſt, er ſtößt	ich ſtieß
Streichen, to stroke,	ich ſtreiche, ꝛc.	ich ſtrich
Streiten, to contend,	ich ſtreite, ꝛc.	ich ſtritt
Thun, to do,	ich thue, du thuſt, er thut	ich that
Tragen, to bear,	ich trage, du trägſt, er trägt	ich trug
Treffen, to hit,	ich treffe, du triffſt, er trifft,	ich traf
Treiben, to drive,	ich treibe, ꝛc.	ich trieb
Treten, to tread,	ich trete, du trittſt, er tritt	ich trat
Triefen, to drop, to trickle,	ich triefe, ꝛc.	ich troff
Trinken, to drink,	ich trinke, ꝛc.	ich trank
Trügen, to deceive,	ich trüge, du trügſt, er trügt	ich trog
Verbergen, to conceal,	ich verberge, du verbirgſt, er verbirgt	ich verbarg
Verbieten, to forbid,	ich verbiete, ꝛc.	ich verbot
Verbleiben, to remain,	ich verbleibe, ꝛc.	ich verblieb
Verbleichen, to grow pale,	ich verbleiche, ꝛc.	ich verblich
Verderben u), to perish,	ich verderbe, du verdirbſt, er verdirbt	ich verdarb
Verdrießen, to offend,	es verdrießt	es verdroß
Vergeſſen, to forget,	ich vergeſſe, du vergiſſeſt, er vergißt	ich vergaß
Verhehlen, to conceal,	ich verhehle, ꝛc.	ich verhehlte
Verlieren, to loose,	ich verliere, ꝛc.	ich verlor
Verlöſchen, to extinguish,	ich verlöſche, du verlöſcheſt or verliſcheſt, er verlöſcht or verliſcht	ich verloſch
Verſchallen w), to die away in sound.	ich verſchalle, ꝛc.	ich verſcholl
Verſchwinden, to disappear,	ich verſchwinde, ꝛc.	ich verſchwand
Verwirren, to perplex,	ich verwirre, ꝛc.	ich verwirrte
Verzeihen, to pardon,	ich verzeihe, ꝛc	ich verzieh

Digitized by Google

IMP. SUBJ.	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich ſpliſſe	ſpleiße	geſpliſſen.	
ich ſpräche	ſprich	geſprochen.	
ich ſpröſſe	ſprieße	geſproſſen.	r) This must not be confounded (in the imperfect) with the regular verb ſproſſen.
ich ſprünge	ſpringe	geſprungen.	
ich ſtäche	ſtich	geſtochen.	
ich ſteckte or ſtäke	ſtecke	geſteckt.	s) This verb is commonly regular; when active it is always so.
ich ſtünde (ſtüude)	ſtehe	geſtanden.	
ich ſtähle (ſtöhle)	ſtiehl	geſtohlen.	
ich ſtiege	ſteige	geſtiegen.	
ich ſtärbe (ſtürbe)	ſtirb	geſtorben.	
ich ſtöbe	ſtiebe	geſtoben.	t) So Zerſtieben, to be scattered as dust.
ich ſtänke	ſtinke	geſtunken.	
ich ſtieße	ſtoße	geſtoßen.	
ich ſtriche	ſtreiche	geſtrichen.	
ich ſtritte	ſtreite	geſtritten.	
ich thäte	thue	gethan.	
ich trüge	trage	getragen.	
ich träfe	trifft	getroffen.	
ich triebe	treibe	getrieben.	
ich träte	tritt	getreten.	
ich tröffe	trief or triefe	getroffen.	
ich tränke	trinke	getrunken.	
ich tröge	trüge	getrogen.	
ich verbärge	verbirg	verborgen.	
ich verböte	verbiete	verboten.	
ich verbliebe	verbleibe	verblieben.	
ich verbliche	verbleiche	verblichen.	
ich verdärbe (verdürbe)	verdirb	verdorben.	u) Verderben, to destroy (active), is regular.
es verdröſſe	verdrieße	verdroſſen.	v) Verdrießt, ꝛc., nearly obsolete.
ich vergäße	vergiß	vergeſſen.	
ich verhehlete	verhehle	verhehlt or verhohlen.	
ich verlöre	verliere	verloren.	
ich verlöſche	verlöſche or verliſch	verloſchen.	
ich verſchölle	verſchalle	verſchollen.	w) But little used, except in the imperfect and participle.
ich verſchwände	verſchwinde	verſchwunden.	
ich verwirrte	verwirre	verwirrt or verworren.	
ich verziehe	verzeihe	verziehen.	

Digitized by Google

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMP. INDIC.
Wachſen, to grow,	ich wachſe, du wächſeſt, er wächſt	ich wuchs
Wägen or Wiegen *x*), to weigh,	ich wäge or wiege, du wägſt or wiegſt, er wägt or wiegt	ich wog
Waſchen *y*), to wash,	ich waſche, ꝛc.	ich wuſch
Weben *z*), to weave,	ich webe, ꝛc.	ich wob
Weichen *a*), to yield,	ich weiche, ꝛc.	ich wich
Weiſen, to show,	ich weiſe, ꝛc.	ich wies
Wenden *b*), to turn,	ich wende, ꝛc.	ich wendete or wandte
Werben, to sue for,	ich werbe, du wirbſt, er wirbt	ich warb
Werden, to become,	ich werde, du wirſt, er wird	ich ward or wurde, du wurdeſt, er ward or wurde, wir wurden, ꝛc.
Werfen, to throw,	ich werfe, du wirfſt, er wirft	ich warf
Winden, to wind,	ich winde, ꝛc.	ich wand
Wiſſen, to know,	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	ich wußte
Wollen, to will,	ich will, du willſt, er will	ich wollte
Zeihen, to accuse of,	ich zeihe, ꝛc.	ich zieh
Ziehen *c*), to draw,	ich ziehe, ꝛc.	ich zog
Zwingen, to force,	ich zwinge, ꝛc.	ich zwang

§ 79. Verbs of the New Conjugation

(commonly called "regular verbs").

(1) In verbs of the New, or simpler form, the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle are not produced, as in the Old conjugation, by a change of the radical vowels; but by means of the suffix **e t** or **t**, which serves as a *tense characteristic*: thus, taking the rad-

Digitized by Google

IMP. SUBJ	IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	REMARKS.
ich wüchſe	wachſe	gewachſen.	
ich wöge	wäge or wiege	gewogen.	*a*) Wägen is active, and has wäge in the imperf. subj.; wiegen is neuter, and has wiege. Wiegen, to rock; is regular.
ich wüſche	waſche	gewaſchen.	*y* Wäſcheſt and wäſcht are also used.
ich wöbe	webe	gewoben.	*z*) Regular except with the poets, or when used figuratively.
ich wiche	weiche	gewichen.	*a*) Weichen, to soften, to mollify, is regular.
ich wieſe	weiſe	gewieſen.	
ich wendete	wende	gewendet or gewandt.	*b*) Regular when active
ich würbe	wirb	geworben.	
ich würde	werde	geworden; (and as an auxiliary) worden.	
ich wärfe (würfe)	wirf	geworfen.	
ich wände	winde	gewunden.	
ich wüßte	wiſſe	gewußt.	
ich wollte	—	gewollt.	
ich ziehe	zeihe	gezihen.	
ich zöge	ziehe	gezogen.	*c*) Zeuchſt &c. antiquated, and only in poetical usage
ich zwänge	zwinge	gezwungen.	

cal part (lob) of loben, to praise, and affixing thereto et or t, we get lob e t or lob t; to which add the *personal* endings and we have lobete or lobte (lob + et + e), I praised; lobeteſt or lobteſt, thou didst praise, &c.

(2) The verbs of the New form differ again from those of the Old, in that the former have in the Perfect Participle the termination et or t, instead of en: as, gelob e t or gelob t, praised. See the table of terminations § 76.

Digitized by Google

§ 80. PARADIGM OF A

Loben,

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE.		**PRESENT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich lobe,	I praise.	ich lobe,	I may
	2	du lobeſt,	thou praisest	du lobeſt,	thou mayst
	3	er lobt,	he praises.	er lobe,	he may
PLUR.	1	wir loben,	we praise.	wir loben,	we may
	2	ihr lobet,	you praise.	ihr lobet,	you may
	3	ſie loben,	they praise.	ſie loben,	they may
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		**IMPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich lobte,	I praised.	ich lobete,	I might
	2	du lobteſt,	thou didst praise.	du lobeteſt,	thou mightst
	3	er lobte,	he did praise.	er lobete,	he might
PLUR.	1	wir lobten,	we did praise.	wir lobeten,	we might
	2	ihr lobtet,	you did praise.	ihr lobetet,	you might
	3	ſie lobten,	they did praise.	ſie lobeten,	they might
		PERFECT TENSE.		**PERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich habe	I have	ich habe	I may have
	2	du haſt	thou hast	du habeſt	
	3	er hat	he has	er habe	
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have	wir haben	
	2	ihr habet	you have	ihr habet	
	3	ſie haben	they have	ſie haben	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.		**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich hatte	I had	ich hätte	I might have
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst	du hätteſt	
	3	er hatte	he had	er hätte	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had	wir hätten	
	2	ihr hattet	you had	ihr hättet	
	3	ſie hatten	they had	ſie hätten	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		**FIRST FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	ich werde	(if) I shall praise,
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will	er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		**SECOND FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	ich werde	(if) I shall have
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will	er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	

Digitized by Google

VERB OF THE NEW FORM.

to praise.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting.* 2. love du, praise thou. 3. lobe er, let him praise. 1. loben wir, let us praise. 2. lobet ihr, praise ye. 3. loben ſie, let them praise.	loben, to praise.	lobend, praising.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gelobt haben, to have praised.	gelobt. praised.
FIRST FUTURE.		FIRST FUTURE.	
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } loben. I should praise, &c.		loben werden, to be about to praise.	
SECOND FUTURE.			
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } gelobt haben. I should have praised, &c.			

Digitized by Google

§ 81. The Mixed Conjugation

(embracing the irregular verbs properly so called).

There are a few verbs (sixteen in all), which have a sort of mixed conjugation: partaking of the *Old* Form, in that they change their radical vowels to form the Imperfect Tense and the Perfect Participle; and at the same time, partaking of the *New* Form, in that they assume, in the same parts, the *tense-sign* te and the participial ending t. These are they which, strictly speaking, are the *irregular* verbs of the language, and accordingly, they are here so classed. They will be found, also, in the general List of (so called) "irregular" verbs (page 346), which, for the sake of convenience, we have there inserted.

§ 82.

LIST OF VERBS OF THE MIXED CONJUGATION.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT of the indicative.		IMPERFECT.		PAST PARTICIPLE.	IMPERATIVE
			Indicat.	*Subjunct.*		
Brennen, to burn,	—	—	ich brannte	ich brennte	gebrannt.	brenne
Bringen, to bring,	—	—	ich brachte	ich brächte	gebracht.	—
Denken, to think,	—	—	ich dachte	ich dächte	gedacht.	—
Dürfen, to be permitted,	ich darf, du darfſt, er darf		ich durfte	ich dürfte	gedurft.	
Haben, to have,	ich habe, du haſt, er hat		ich hatte	ich hätte	gehabt.	habe.
Kennen, to know,	—	—	ich kannte	ich kennte	gekannt.	—
Können, to be able, can,	ich kann, du kannſt, er kann		ich konnte	ich könnte	gekonnt.	
Mögen, to be allowed, may,	ich mag, du magſt, er mag		ich mochte	ich möchte	gemocht.	
Müſſen, to be obliged, must,	ich muß, du mußt, er muß		ich mußte	ich müßte	gemußt.	
Nennen, to name,	—	—	ich nannte	ich nennte	genannt.	—
Rennen, to run,	—	—	ich rannte	ich rennte	gerannt.	—
Senden, to send,	—	—	ich ſandte	ich ſendete	geſandt.	—
Sollen, to be obliged, shall,	ich ſoll, du ſollſt, er ſoll		—	—	—	
Wenden, to turn,	—	—	ich wandte	ich wendete	gewandt.	—
Wiſſen, to know,	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß		ich wußte	ich wüßte	gewußt.	wiſſe.
Wollen, to be willing,	ich will, du willſt, er will.		—	—	—	

Digitized by Google

§ 83. Paradigms of irregular verbs.

(1) In order to a better display of the irregularities of some of these verbs, we append the following paradigms. They will be found exceedingly convenient for ready reference. Some of these verbs, also, have certain peculiar uses, which require special attention. For this reason we have, immediately after the paradigms, added a series of explanatory remarks, with copious examples illustrating the veral ways in which they are employed.

Digitized by Google

(2) Dürfen, to be permitted,

		INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
		PRESENT TENSE.			PRESENT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich darf,	I am	permitted	ich dürfe,	I may	be permitted.
	2	du darfſt,	thou art		du dürfeſt,	thou mayst	
	3	er darf,	he is		er dürfe,	he may	
PLUR.	1	wir dürfen,	we are		wir dürfen,	we may	
	2	ihr dürfet,	you are		ihr dürfet,	you may	
	3	ſie dürfen,	they are		ſie dürfen,	they may	
		IMPERFECT TENSE.			IMPERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich durfte,	I was	permitted.	ich dürfte,	I might	be permitted.
	2	du durfteſt,	thou wast		du dürfteſt,	thou mightst	
	3	er durfte,	he was		er dürfte,	he might	
PLUR.	1	wir durften,	we were		wir dürften,	we might	
	2	ihr durftet,	you were		ihr dürftet,	you might	
	3	ſie durften,	they were		ſie dürften,	they might	
		PERFECT TENSE.			PERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich habe	I have	been permitted.	ich habe	I may have been permitted, &c	
	2	du haſt	thou hast		du habeſt		
	3	er hat	he has		er habe		
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have		wir haben		
	2	ihr habet	you have		ihr habet		
	3	ſie haben	they have		ſie haben		
		gedurft,			gedurft,		
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.			PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich hatte	I had	been permitted.	ich hätte	I might have been permitted, &c.	
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst		du hätteſt		
	3	er hatte	he had		er hätte		
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had		wir hätten		
	2	ihr hattet	you had		ihr hättet		
	3	ſie hatten	they had		ſie hätten		
		gedurft,			gedurft,		
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.			FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	be permitted.	ich werde	(if) I shall be permitted, &c.	
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt		
	3	er wird	he will		er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden		
		dürfen,			dürfen,		
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.			SECOND FUTURE TENSE		
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	have been permitted.	ich werde	(if) I shall have been permitted, &c.	
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt		
	3	er wird	he will		er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden		
		gedurft haben,			gedurft haben,		

Digitized by Google

to dare. (See Remark 9.)

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	Wanting.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
		dürfen, to be permitted.	dürfend, being permitted
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gedurft haben, to have been permitted.	gedurft, permitted.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} dürfen, I should be permitted, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} gedurft haben, I should have been permitted.

Digitized by Google

(3) Können

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich kann,	I am	able.
	2	du kannſt,	thou art	
	3	er kann,	he is	
PLUR.	1	wir können,	we are	
	2	ihr könnet,	you are	
	3	ſie können,	they are	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich konnte,	I was	able.
	2	du konnteſt,	thou wast	
	3	er konnte,	he was	
PLUR.	1	wir konnten,	we were	
	2	ihr konntet,	you were	
	3	ſie konnten,	they were	

PERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich habe	I have	been able
	2	du haſt	thou hast	
	3	er hat	he has	
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have	
	2	ihr habet	you have	
	3	ſie haben	they have	

gekonnt,

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich hatte	I had	been able.
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst	
	3	er hatte	he had	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had	
	2	ihr hattet	you had	
	3	ſie hatten	they had	

gekonnt,

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	be able.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	
	3	er wird	he will	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	
	3	ſie werden	they will	

können,

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	have been able.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	
	3	er wird	he will	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	
	3	ſie werden	they will	

gekonnt haben

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

ich könne,	I may		able
du könneſt,	thou mayst		
er könne,	he may		
wir können,	we may		be
ihr könnet,	you may		
ſie können,	they may		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich könnte,	I might		able.
du könnteſt,	thou mightst		
er könnte,	he might		
wir könnten,	we might		be
ihr könntet,	you might		
ſie könnten,	they might		

PERFECT TENSE.

ich habe		I may have been able, &c.
du habeſt		
er habe		
wir haben	gekonnt.	
ihr habet		
ſie haben		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich hätte		I might have been able, &c
du hätteſt		
er hätte		
wir hätten	gekonnt.	
ihr hättet		
ſie hätten		

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde		(if) I shall be able, &c.
du werdeſt		
er werde		
wir werden	können,	
ihr werdet		
ſie werden		

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde		(if) I shall have been able, &c.
du werdeſt		
er werde		
wir werden	gekonnt haben	
ihr werdet		
ſie werden		

Digitized by Google

to be able. (See Remark 10.)

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	Wanting.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
		können, to be able.	könnend, being able
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gekonnt haben, to have been able.	gekonnt, been able.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden
} können, I should be able, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdest
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
sie würden
} gekonnt haben, I should have been able, &c.

Digitized by Google

(4) Mögen, to be allowed.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich mag,	I am	allowed.	
2	du magſt,	thou art		
3	er mag,	he is		
PLUR. 1	wir mögen,	we are		
2	ihr möget,	you are		
3	ſie mögen,	they are		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich mochte,	I was	allowed.	
2	du mochteſt,	thou wast		
3	er mochte,	he was		
PLUR. 1	wir mochten,	we were		
2	ihr mochtet,	you were		
3	ſie mochten,	they were		

PERFECT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich habe	gemocht,	I have	been allowed.
2	du haſt		thou hast	
3	er hat		he has	
PLUR. 1	wir haben		we have	
2	ihr habet		you have	
3	ſie haben		they have	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich hatte	gemocht,	I had	been allowed.
2	du hatteſt		thou hadst	
3	er hatte		he had	
PLUR. 1	wir hatten		we had	
2	ihr hattet		you had	
3	ſie hatten		they had	

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SING. 1	ich werde	mögen,	I shall	be allowed.
2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
3	er wird		he will	
PLUR. 1	wir werden		we shall	
2	ihr werdet		you will	
3	ſie werden		they will	

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SING. 1	ich werde	gemocht haben	I shall	have been allowed
2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
3	er wird		he will	
PLUR. 1	wir werden		we shall	
2	ihr werdet		you will	
3	ſie werden		they will	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

ich möge,	I may	be allowed	
du mögeſt,	thou mayst		
er möge,	he may		
wir mögen,	we may		
ihr möget,	you may		
ſie mögen,	they may		

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich möchte,	I might	be allowed.
du möchteſt,	thou mightst	
er möchte,	he might	
wir möchten,	we might	
ihr möchtet,	you might	
ſie möchten,	they might	

PERFECT TENSE.

ich habe	gemocht,	I may have been allowed, &c.	
du habeſt			
er habe			
wir haben			
ihr habet			
ſie haben			

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich hätte	gemocht,	I might have been allowed, &c.	
du hätteſt			
er hätte			
wir hätten			
ihr hättet			
ſie hätten			

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	mögen,	(if) I shall be allowed, &c.	
du werdeſt			
er werde			
wir werden			
ihr werdet			
ſie werden			

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	gemocht haben	(if) I shall have been allowed, &c.	
du werdeſt			
er werde			
wir werden			
ihr werdet			
ſie werden			

Digitized by Google

to have liberty. (See Remark 11.)

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	Wanting.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
		mögen, to be allowed.	mögend, being allowed.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gemocht haben, to have been allowed.	gemocht, allowed

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} mögen, I should be allowed, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} gemocht haben I should have been allowed, &c.

Digitized by Google

(5) Müſſen, to be obliged;

		INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
		PRESENT TENSE.			PRESENT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich muß,	I am	obliged.	ich müſſe,	I may	be obliged.
	2	du mußt,	thou art		du müſſeſt,	thou mayst	
	3	er muß,	he is		er müſſe,	he may	
PLUR.	1	wir müſſen,	we are		wir müſſen,	we may	
	2	ihr müſſet,	you are		ihr müſſet,	you may	
	3	ſie müſſen,	they are		ſie müſſen,	they may	
		IMPERFECT TENSE.			IMPERFECT TENSE		
SING.	1	ich mußte,	I was	obliged.	ich müßte,	I might	be obliged.
	2	du mußteſt,	thou wast		du müßteſt,	thou mightst	
	3	er mußte,	he was		er müßte,	he might	
PLUR.	1	wir mußten,	we were		wir müßten,	we might	
	2	ihr mußtet,	you were		ihr müßtet,	you might	
	3	ſie mußten,	they were		ſie müßten,	they might	
		PERFECT TENSE.			PERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich habe	I have	been obliged.	ich habe	gemußt,	I may have been obliged, &c.
	2	du haſt	thou hast		du habeſt		
	3	er hat	he has		er habe		
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have		wir haben		
	2	ihr habet	you have		ihr habet		
	3	ſie haben	they have		ſie haben		
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.			PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich hatte	I had	been obliged.	ich hätte	gemußt,	I might have been obliged, &c.
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst		du hätteſt		
	3	er hatte	he had		er hätte		
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had		wir hätten		
	2	ihr hattet	you had		ihr hättet		
	3	ſie hatten	they had		ſie hätten		
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.			FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	be obliged.	ich werde	müſſen,	(if) I shall be obliged, &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt		
	3	er wird	he will		er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden		
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.			SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	have been obliged.	ich werde	gemußt haben	(if) I shall have been obliged &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt		
	3	er wird	he will		er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden		

Digitized by Google

must. (See Remark 12.)

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	Wanting.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
		müſſen, to be obliged.	müſſend, being obliged.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gemußt haben, to have been obliged.	gemußt, obliged.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} müſſen, I should be obliged, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} gemußt haben I should have been obliged, &c.

Digitized by Google

(6) Sollen, to be

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich ſoll,	I am	obliged.
2	du ſollſt,	thou art	
3	er ſoll,	he is	
PLUR. 1	wir ſollen,	we are	
2	ihr ſollet,	you are	
3	ſie ſollen,	they are	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich ſollte,	I was	obliged.
2	du ſollteſt,	thou wast	
3	er ſollte,	he was	
PLUR. 1	wir ſollten,	we were	
2	ihr ſolltet,	you were	
3	ſie ſollten,	they were	

PERFECT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich habe	geſollt,	I have	been obliged.
2	du haſt		thou hast	
3	er hat		he has	
PLUR. 1	wir haben		we have	
2	ihr habet		you have	
3	ſie haben		they have	

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING. 1	ich hatte	geſollt,	I had	been obliged.
2	du hatteſt		thou hadst	
3	er hatte		he had	
PLUR. 1	wir hatten		we had	
2	ihr hattet		you had	
3	ſie hatten		they had	

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SING. 1	ich werde	ſollen,	I shall	be obliged.
2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
3	er wird		he will	
PLUR. 1	wir werden		we shall	
2	ihr werdet		you will	
3	ſie werden		they will	

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SING. 1	ich werde	geſollt haben,	I shall	have been obliged.
2	du wirſt		thou wilt	
3	er wird		he will	
PLUR. 1	wir werden		we shall	
2	ihr werdet		you will	
3	ſie werden		they will	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

ich ſolle,	I may	be obliged.
du ſolleſt,	thou mayst	
er ſolle,	he may	
wir ſollen,	we may	
ihr ſollet,	you may	
ſie ſollen,	they may	

IMPERFECT TENSE.

ich ſollte,	I might	be obliged.
du ſollteſt,	thou mightst	
er ſollte,	he might	
wir ſollten,	we might	
ihr ſolltet,	you might	
ſie ſollten,	they might	

PERFECT TENSE.

ich habe	geſollt,	I may have been obliged, &c.
du habeſt		
er habe		
wir haben		
ihr habet		
ſie haben		

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

ich hätte	geſollt,	I might have been obliged, &c.
du hätteſt		
er hätte		
wir hätten		
ihr hättet		
ſie hätten		

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	ſollen,	(if) I shall be obliged, &c
du werdeſt		
er werde		
wir werden		
ihr werdet		
ſie werden		

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

ich werde	geſollt haben,	(if) I shall have been obliged, &c.
du werdeſt		
er werde		
wir werden		
ihr werdet		
ſie werden		

Digitized by Google

obliged. (See Remark 13.)

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	Wanting.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
		ſollen, to be obliged.	ſollend, being obliged.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		geſollt haben, to have been obliged.	geſollt, obliged.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} ſollen, I should be obliged, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} geſollt haben, I should have been o-ed, &c.

Digitized by Google

(7) Wiſſen.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich weiß,	I know.
	2	du weißt,	thou knowest.
	3	er weiß,	he knows.
PLUR.	1	wir wiſſen,	we know.
	2	ihr wiſſet,	you know.
	3	ſie wiſſen,	they know.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich wußte,	I knew.
	2	du wußteſt,	thou didst know.
	3	er wußte,	he knew.
PLUR.	1	wir wußten,	we knew.
	2	ihr wußtet,	you knew.
	3	ſie wußten,	they knew.

PERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich habe	I have	known.
	2	du haſt	thou hast	
	3	er hat	he has	
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have	
	2	ihr habet	you have	
	3	ſie haben	they have	

gewußt,

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich hatte	I had	known.
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst	
	3	er hatte	he had	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had	
	2	ihr hattet	you had	
	3	ſie hatten	they had	

gewußt,

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	know.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	
	3	er wird	he will	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	
	3	ſie werden	they will	

wiſſen,

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	have known.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	
	3	er wird	he will	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	
	3	ſie werden	they will	

gewußt haben,

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich wiſſe,	I may
	2	du wiſſeſt,	thou mayst
	3	er wiſſe,	he may
PLUR.	1	wir wiſſen,	we may
	2	ihr wiſſet,	you may
	3	ſie wiſſen,	they may

know

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich wüßte,	I might
	2	du wüßteſt,	thou mightst
	3	er wüßte,	he might
PLUR.	1	wir wüßten,	we might
	2	ihr wüßtet,	you might
	3	ſie wüßten,	they might

know.

PERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich habe	I may have	known, &c.
	2	du habeſt		
	3	er habe		
PLUR.	1	wir haben		
	2	ihr habet		
	3	ſie haben		

gewußt,

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING.	1	ich hätte	I might have	known, &c.
	2	du hätteſt		
	3	er hätte		
PLUR.	1	wir hätten		
	2	ihr hättet		
	3	ſie hätten		

gewußt,

FIRST FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	(if) I shall know,	&c.
	2	du werdeſt		
	3	er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden		

wiſſen,

SECOND FUTURE TENSE.

SING.	1	ich werde	(if) I shall have	known, &c.
	2	du werdeſt		
	3	er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden		

gewußt haben,

Digitized by Google

to know.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting.* 2. wiſſe du, know thou. 3. wiſſe er, let him know. 1. wiſſen wir, let us know. 2. wiſſet ihr, know ye. 3. wiſſen ſie, let them know.	wiſſen, to know.	wiſſend, knowing.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		gewußt haben, to have known.	gewußt, known.
FIRST FUTURE. ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } wiſſen, I should know, &c.			
SECOND FUTURE. ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } gewußt haben, I should have known, &c.			

Digitized by Google

(8) Wollen, to be

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE.		**PRESENT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich will,	I will.	ich wolle,	I may
	2	du willſt,	thou wilt.	du wolleſt,	thou mayst
	3	er will,	he will.	er wolle,	he may
PLUR.	1	wir wollen,	we will.	wir wollen,	we may
	2	ihr wollet,	you will.	ihr wollet,	you may
	3	ſie wollen,	they will.	ſie wollen,	they may
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		**IMPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich wollte,	I was willing.	ich wollte,	I might be willing.
	2	du wollteſt,	thou wast willing.	du wollteſt,	thou mightst be willing.
	3	er wollte,	he was willing.	er wollte,	he might be willing.
PLUR.	1	wir wollten,	we were willing.	wir wollten,	we might be willing.
	2	ihr wolltet,	you were willing.	ihr wolltet,	you might be willing.
	3	ſie wollten,	they were willing.	ſie wollten,	they might be willing.
		PERFECT TENSE.		**PERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich habe gewollt,	I have been willing.	ich habe gewollt,	I may have been willing, &c.
	2	du haſt gewollt,	thou hast been willing.	du habeſt gewollt,	
	3	er hat gewollt,	he has been willing.	er habe gewollt,	
PLUR.	1	wir haben gewollt,	we have been willing.	wir haben gewollt,	
	2	ihr habet gewollt,	you have been willing.	ihr habet gewollt,	
	3	ſie haben gewollt,	they have been willing.	ſie haben gewollt,	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.		**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich hatte gewollt,	I had been willing.	ich hätte gewollt,	I might have been willing, &c.
	2	du hatteſt gewollt,	thou hadst been willing.	du hätteſt gewollt,	
	3	er hatte gewollt,	he had been willing.	er hätte gewollt,	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten gewollt,	we had been willing.	wir hätten gewollt,	
	2	ihr hattet gewollt,	you had been willing.	ihr hättet gewollt,	
	3	ſie hatten gewollt,	they had been willing.	ſie hätten gewollt,	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		**FIRST FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde wollen,	I shall be willing.	ich werde wollen,	(if) I shall be willing, &c.
	2	du wirſt wollen,	thou wilt be willing.	du werdeſt wollen,	
	3	er wird wollen,	he will be willing.	er werde wollen,	
PLUR.	1	wir werden wollen,	we shall be willing.	wir werden wollen,	
	2	ihr werdet wollen,	you will be willing.	ihr werdet wollen,	
	3	ſie werden wollen,	they will be willing.	ſie werden wollen,	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		**SECOND FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde gewollt haben,	I shall have been willing.	ich werde gewollt haben,	(if) I shall have been willing, &c.
	2	du wirſt gewollt haben,	thou wilt have been willing.	du werdeſt gewollt haben,	
	3	er wird gewollt haben,	he will have been willing.	er werde gewollt haben,	
PLUR.	1	wir werden gewollt haben,	we shall have been willing.	wir werden gewollt haben,	
	2	ihr werdet gewollt haben,	you will have been willing.	ihr werdet gewollt haben,	
	3	ſie werden gewollt haben,	they will have been willing.	ſie werden gewollt haben,	

Digitized by Google

willing. (See Remark 14.)

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	1. *Wanting.* 2. Wolle du, *will thou.* 3. Wolle er, *let him be willing.*	PRESENT TENSE. wollen, to be willing.	PRESENT wollend, willing
		PERFECT TENSE. gewollt haben, to have willed.	PERFECT. gewollt, willed.

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} wollen, I should be willing, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde
du würdeſt
er würde
wir würden
ihr würdet
ſie würden
} gewollt haben, I should have been w-g. &c.

Digitized by Google

(9) *Remarks on* dürfen.

This verb is commonly rendered, *to dare*, though the primary sense seems to be that given above, viz, *to be permitted:* the signification, *to dare*, is one in which it is now seldom used. The verb is also employed (only in the Imperfect Subjunctive, however,) to denote what *probably may be*, and may then be translated by such words as *might, need, would*, &c.: thus, Es dürfte jetzt zu spät sein, it *may* or *might be* too late now: Es dürfte vielleicht wahr sein, it *might* perchance *be* true. It also signifies, *to need, to have occasion*, &c.: as, Er darf nur reden, he needs only to speak; Er darf sich darüber nicht wundern, he *must* not or *should* not wonder at that. When used without an infinitive after it, one must be supplied to complete the construction: thus, Er darf nicht in das Haus (kommen), he ventures not (*to come*) into the house.

(10) *Remarks on* können.

The original signification of können was *to know*, or *to know how;* hence the present sense, to be *at liberty* to do a thing, to be *able;* as, ich kann lesen und schreiben, I can (*know how to*) read and write. Its chief power now, is to indicate bare possibility, and hence it is often aptly translated by the English, *may:* as, Er kann es verstanden haben, he *may* (possibly) have understood it. It differs, therefore, from dürfen, when it (dürfen) is used (in the Imperfect Subjunctive) to express possibility; for dürfen not only signifies that the thing *may* be, but that it *probably is* or *will* be. Können like dürfen, has sometimes an infinitive understood after it, to complete the construction.

(11) *Remarks on* mögen.

Mögen marks *possibility* under allowance or concession from another: as, Er mag lachen, he *may* laugh; that is, he has permission to laugh, no one hinders him. Er mag ein braver Mann sein, he *may* (I grant) be a brave man; where the *possibility* of his being a brave man, is a thing conceded. Kindred to this are the other significations (*chance, inclination, wish*, &c.) usually attributed to this verb: thus, es möchte regnen, it *might* rain; that is, the causes that seem to forbid, are likely not to operate; ich möchte es bezweifeln, I am *disposed* or *inclined* to doubt it, that is, *I might* doubt it altogether, but for certain circumstances seeming to forbid: möge es der Himmel geben, *may* heaven grant it; ich mag es nicht thun, I do not *like* to do it, that is, I am not permitted by my feelings to do it cheerfully, &c.

Digitized by Google

(12) *Remarks on* müſſen.

The German müſſen and the English *must*, are very near equivalents. The predominant power of the word is everywhere that of obligation or necessity, and this being kept in mind, it will often be convenient to employ in translating it, such words, as, *be obliged, am to, have need to* and the like. Often an infinitive is understood with it: as, ich muß zurück, I must (*go*) back.

(13) *Remarks on* ſollen.

The prime and prevalent use of ſollen is to indicate *obligation* or *necessity*. What particular word or phrase shall be employed to translate it, in any given case, must be determined by circumstances. It is only necessary always to adhere to the *primary* idea; for in whatever way expressed, that primary sense must be kept in view. The following examples will be sufficient to show this:

Du ſollſt das thun, thou *art to* (i. e. art *obliged* to) do that:

Er ſoll gehen, he *is to* (i. e. is *bidden* to) go:

Soll ich es haben? *am I to* (i. e. *am I bound* or *am I permitted to*) have it?

Die Flotte ſoll geſchlagen worden ſein, the fleet *is said* or *reported to* (i. e. *must*, according to report) be beaten.

Sie ſollen ihn nicht beleidigt haben, you are *supposed* or *admitted* not to (that is, you *could* not of *necessity*, in my opinion) have offended him.

Was ſoll der Hut? what *means* the (i. e. what *must* be the meaning of the) hat?

Wenn er kommen ſollte, ſo will ich es ihm ſagen, if he *should* come (i. e. should be *obliged* by circumstances to come) I will tell him so.

So with an infinitive understood: was ſoll ich? what *am I to* (*do*)? was ſoll das? what *signifies* that? (i. e. supplying ſein, *what is that to* be?)

Er weiß nicht was er thun ſoll, he does not know what to do.

(14) *Remarks on* wollen.

Wollen implies future *purpose:* thus, ich will gehen, I will (to) go, i. e. my *purpose* is to go. The expression of mere futurity would be, ich werde gehen. Kindred to this is another signification of wollen: as, er will dich geſehen haben, he wills to have seen you, that is, he *will have it* or *affirms*, that he saw you.

Digitized by Google

(15) Examples,

further illustrating the uses of the preceding verbs.

Ich darf es thun.	I am allowed to do it.
Es dürfte vielleicht wahr ſein.	It might perhaps be true.
Es dürfte wohl geſchehen.	It might easily happen.
Du darfſt es nur fordern.	You need only ask for it.
Er kann weder leſen noch ſchreiben.	He can neither read nor write.
Ich kann mich irren.	I may be mistaken.
Ich konnte ihn nicht verſtehen.	I could not understand him.
Können Sie heute zu mir kommen?	Can you come to me to-day?
Ich mag das nicht.	I do not like that.
Ich möchte gerne wiſſen, wieviel Uhr es iſt.	I should like to know what o'clock it is.
Ich möchte wohl etwas davon haben.	I should like to have some of it.
Es mag ſein.	It may be.
Ich möchte lieber.	I had rather; I would rather.
Möge er lange leben!	May he live long!
Ich muß es thun.	I must do it.
Er müßte ſich ſeines Betragens ſchämen.	He should be ashamed of his conduct.
Mußte es nicht ſo kommen?	Should it not so have happened?
Wenn ich ſterben müßte, ſo würde ich es nicht thun.	If I should die, I would not do it.
Ich wollte gerne gehen.	I would willingly (i. e. would like to) go.
Ich will zu Fuße gehen.	I will go on foot.
Ich wollte, daß wir gehen ſollten.	I was for our going.
Sie ſollen ſchreiben.	You should write; you are to write.
Was ſoll das heißen?	What does that mean?
Es ſoll ſich zugetragen haben.	It is said to have happened.
Der König ſoll angekommen ſein.	The king is said to have arrived.
Wenn er morgen ſterben ſollte.	If he should die to-morrow.
Wenn das ſo ſein ſollte.	If that should be so.

Digitized by Google

§ 84. PASSIVE VERBS.

(1) The passive voice is formed by adding to the auxiliary werden (*to become*,) through all its moods and tenses, the Perfect Participle of the main verb, thus:

	INDIC. ACTIVE.	INDIC. PASSIVE.
Pres.	ich lobe, I praise,	ich werde gelobt, I am praised.
Imp.	ich lobte, I praised,	ich wurde gelobt, I was praised.
Perf.	ich habe gelobt, I have praised,	ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised.
Plup.	ich hatte gelobt, I had praised,	ich war gelobt worden, I had been praised.
1. *Fut.*	ich werde loben, I shall praise,	ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised.
2. *Fut.*	ich werde gelobt haben, I shall have praised,	ich werde gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised, &c.

(2) It will be noted, that wherever the perfect participle of the main verb (as gelobt above) is joined with the participle of the auxiliary, the latter is written worden, not geworden, whereby an offensive repetition (of the syllable ge) is avoided. Sometimes worden is altogether omitted in the past tenses, but this should be avoided.

(3) The German, by confining werden with the past participle to the expression of *passivity* and using sein, when the participle is to be taken as a mere *adjective*, has a manifest advantage over the English Passive. Thus, if we wish to say, in German, *he is feared*, it will be, er wird gefürchtet; if the intention, however, be merely to mark the state or character of the person as one who is feared, that is, whose character or conduct inspires fear generally, the German will be, er ist gefürchtet, he is (a) feared (man.) The form of expression in English, it will be observed, is the same for *both* ideas: "he *is* feared."

(4) The Germans, however, employ the passive form far less frequently than do the English. They prefer other methods: thus, man sagt, one says, i. e. *it is said;* der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden the key has been found.

Digitized by Google

§ 85. PARADIGM OF

Gelobt werden,

		INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.		
		PRESENT TENSE.			PRESENT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich werde	I am	praised.	ich werde	I may	be praised.
	2	du wirſt	thou art		du werdeſt	thou mayst	
	3	er wird	he is		er werde	he may	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we are		wir werden	we may	
	2	ihr werdet	you are		ihr werdet	you may	
	3	ſie werden	they are		ſie werden	they may	
		gelobt,			gelobt,		
		IMPERFECT TENSE.			IMPERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich wurde	I was	praised.	ich würde	I might	be praised.
	2	du wurdeſt	thou wast		du würdeſt	thou mightst	
	3	er wurde	he was		er würde	he might	
PLUR.	1	wir wurden	we were		wir würden	we might	
	2	ihr wurdet	you were		ihr würdet	you might	
	3	ſie wurden	they were		ſie würden	they might	
		gelobt,			gelobt,		
		PERFECT TENSE.			PERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich bin	I have	been praised.	ich ſei	I may have been praised, &c.	
	2	du biſt	thou hast		du ſeieſt		
	3	er iſt	he has		er ſei		
PLUR.	1	wir ſind	we have		wir ſeien		
	2	ihr ſeid	you have		ihr ſeiet		
	3	ſie ſind	they have		ſie ſeien		
		gelobt worden,			gelobt worden,		
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.			PLUPERFECT TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich war	I had	been praised.	ich wäre	I might have been praised, &c.	
	2	du warſt	thou hadst		du wäreſt		
	3	er war	he had		er wäre		
PLUR.	1	wir waren	we had		wir wären		
	2	ihr waret	you had		ihr wäret		
	3	ſie waren	they had		ſie wären		
		gelobt worden,			gelobt worden,		
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.			FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	be praised.	ich werde	(if) I shall be praised, &c.	
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt		
	3	er wird	he will		er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden		
		gelobt werden,			gelobt werden,		
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.			SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		
SING.	1	ich werde	I shall	have been praised.	ich werde	(if) I shall have been praised, &c.	
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt		du werdeſt		
	3	er wird	he will		er werde		
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall		wir werden		
	2	ihr werdet	you will		ihr werdet		
	3	ſie werden	they will		ſie werden		
		gelobt worden ſein,			gelobt worden ſein,		

Digitized by Google

A PASSIVE VERB.

to be praised.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTIC.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	
	1. *wanting* 2. werde du 3. werde er 1. werden wir 2. werdet ihr 3. werden ſie gelobt, be thou praised, &c.	gelobt werden, to be praised,	
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT
		gelobt worden ſein, to have been praised.	gelobt, praised
FIRST FUTURE.		FUTURE TENSE.	
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } gelobt werden, I should be praised, &c.		werden gelobt werden, to be about to be praised.	
SECOND FUTURE.			
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } gelobt worden ſein, I should have been p-ed, &c.			

Digitized by Google

§ 86. Reflexive Verbs.

(1) A verb is said to be *reflexive*, when it represents the subject as acting upon itself. We have several such in English: he *deports* himself well; he *bethought* himself; they *betook* themselves to the woods; where the subject and the object, in each case, being identical, the verb is made reflexive. It is manifest, that any active transitive verb may thus become a reflexive verb.

(2) Strictly speaking, however, those only are accounted reflexives, that can not otherwise be used. The number of these, in German, is much larger than in English. Some of them require the reciprocal pronoun to be in the Dative, but most of them govern the Accusative: thus, (with the Dative,) ich bilde mir nicht ein, I do not imagine; (with the Accusative,) ich ſchäme mich, I am ashamed. Further examples are the following:

WITH THE DATIVE.	WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.
Sich anmaßen, to presume; usurp.	Sich anſchicken, to prepare.
Sich ausbedingen, to condition.	Sich äußern, to intimate.
Sich einbilden, to imagine.	Sich bedanken, to be thankful for.
Sich getrauen, to be confident.	Sich bedenken, to pause to think.
Sich ſchmeicheln, to flatter one's self.	Sich begeben, to repair to; to happen.
Sich vornehmen, to propose to one's self.	Sich behelfen, to put up with; to make do
Sich vorſtellen, to represent to one's self.	Sich freuen, to rejoice.
Sich widerſprechen, to contradict.	Sich widerſetzen, to resist.

(3) Since the action of these verbs is confined to the agent, they are rightly regarded as *intransitives;* for the verb and the pronoun under its government, are to be taken *together* as a single expression for intransitive action: thus, ich freue mich, I rejoice *myself*, that is, I *rejoice*, or *delight in*.

(4) In like manner, reflexives often become the equivalents of *passives:* as, der Schlüſſel hat ſich gefunden, the key has *found itself*, that is, the key *is found* or *has been found* &c.

(5) In some instances a verb is found to have, both in the simple and in the reflexive form, the same signification: as, irren and ſich irren, to err; to be mistaken.

Digitized by Google

(6) It is worthy of remark, also, that some transitives, upon passing into the reflexive form, undergo some change of signification: thus, from berufen, to call, comes ſich berufen, to *appeal to*. It is generally easy, however, in these cases, to account for such changes. The following are additional examples:

Bedenken, to think upon;	ſich bedenken, to pause to think.
Beſcheiden, to assign;	ſich beſcheiden, to be contented with.
Finden, to find;	ſich finden (in etwas), to accommodate one's self to a thing.
Fürchten, to fear;	ſich fürchten, to be afraid of.
Hüten, to guard;	ſich hüten, to beware.
Machen, to make;	ſich machen (an etwas), to set about a thing.
Stellen, to place;	ſich ſtellen, to feign, pretend.
Verantworten, to answer for;	ſich verantworten, to defend one's self.
Vergehen, to pass away;	ſich vergehen, to commit a fault.
Verlaſſen, to leave;	ſich verlaſſen, to rely upon.

Digitized by Google

§ 87. PARADIGM OF A

Sich freuen,

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE.		PRESENT TENSE	
SING.	1	ich freue mich,	I rejoice.	ich freue mich,	I may
	2	du freueſt dich,	thou rejoicest.	du freueſt dich,	thou mayst
	3	er freuet ſich,	he rejoices.	er freue ſich,	he may
PLUR.	1	wir freuen uns,	we rejoice.	wir freuen uns,	we may
	2	ihr freuet euch,	you rejoice.	ihr freuet euch,	you may
	3	ſie freuen ſich,	they rejoice.	ſie freuen ſich,	they may
					rejoice.
		IMPERFECT TENSE		IMPERFECT TENSE.	
SING.	1	ich freuete mich,	I rejoiced.	ich freuete mich,	I might
	2	du freueteſt dich,	thou didst rejoice.	du freueteſt dich,	thou mightst
	3	er freuete ſich,	he rejoiced.	er freuete ſich,	he might
PLUR.	1	wir freueten uns,	we rejoiced.	wir freueten uns,	we might
	2	ihr freuetet euch,	you rejoiced.	ihr freuetet euch,	you might
	3	ſie freueten ſich,	they rejoiced.	ſie freueten ſich,	they might
					rejoice.
		PERFECT TENSE.		PERFECT TENSE.	
SING.	1	ich habe mich	I have	ich habe mich	I may have re-
	2	du haſt dich	thou hast	du habeſt dich	joiced, &c.
	3	er hat ſich	he has	er habe ſich	
PLUR.	1	wir haben uns	we have	wir haben uns	
	2	ihr habet euch	you have	ihr habet euch	
	3	ſie haben ſich	they have	ſie haben ſich	
		gefreut,	rejoiced.	gefreut,	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.		PLUPERFECT TENSE.	
SING.	1	ich hatte mich	I had	ich hätte mich	I might have
	2	du hatteſt dich	thou hadst	du hätteſt dich	rejoiced &c.
	3	er hatte ſich	he had	er hätte ſich	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten uns	we had	wir hätten uns	
	2	ihr hattet euch	you had	ihr hättet euch	
	3	ſie hatten ſich	they had	ſie hätten ſich	
		gefreut,	rejoiced.	gefreut,	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.		FIRST FUTURE TENSE.	
SING.	1	ich werde mich	I shall	ich werde mich	(if) I shall re-
	2	du wirſt dich	thou wilt	du werdeſt dich	joice, &c.
	3	er wird ſich	he will	er werde ſich	
PLUR.	1	wir werden uns	we shall	wir werden uns	
	2	ihr werdet euch	you will	ihr werdet euch	
	3	ſie werden ſich	they will	ſie werden ſich	
		freuen.	rejoice.	freuen,	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		SECOND FUTURE TENSE	
SING.	1	ich werde mich	I shall	ich werde mich	(if) I shall have
	2	du wirſt dich	thou wilt	du werdeſt dich	rejoiced, &c.
	3	er wird ſich	he will	er werde ſich	
PLUR.	1	wir werden uns	we shall	wir werden uns	
	2	ihr werdet euch	you will	ihr werdet euch	
	3	ſie werden ſich	they will	ſie werden ſich	
		gefreut haben,	have rejoiced.	gefreut haben,	

Digitized by Google

REFLEXIVE VERB.

to rejoice.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTIC.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting*. 2. freue (du) dich, rejoice thou, &c. 3. freue (er) ſich, 1. freuen (wir) uns, 2. freuet (ihr) euch, 3. freuen (ſie) ſich.	ſich freuen, to rejoice.	ſich freuend, rejoicing.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		ſich gefreut haben, to have rejoiced.	*Wanting.*

FIRST FUTURE.

ich würde mich
du würdeſt dich
er würde ſich
wir würden uns
ihr würdet euch
ſie würden ſich
} freuen, I should rejoice, &c.

SECOND FUTURE.

ich würde mich
du würdeſt dich
er würde ſich
wir würden uns
ihr würdet euch
ſie würden ſich
} gefreut haben, I should have rejoiced, &c.

Digitized by Google

§ 88. Impersonal Verbs.

(1) The impersonal verb, properly so called, is one destitute of the *first* and *second* persons: being confined to the third person singular, and having for its grammatical subject the pronoun es, without definite reference to any antecedent, as,

es regnet, it rains;
es ſchneit, it snows;
es donnert, it thunders;
es hagelt, it hails;
es blitzt, it lightens;
es friert, it freezes;
es thaut, it thaws;
es tagt, it dawns.

(2) It must immediately appear, that a verb may be impersonal and yet belong to any of the classes of verbs described in preceding sections. Thus some are *transitive:* some are *intransitive*; some are *passive;* some are *reflexive;* &c.

Examples.

Es ärgert mich, it *vexes me*, i. e. I am vexed;
es friert ihn, it *chills him*, i. e. he is chilled or frozen;
es hungert mich, it *hungers me*, i. e. I am hungry;
es reift, there is a hoar frost;
es heißt, it is said;
es wird viel davon geredet, it is much talked about;
es verſteht ſich, it *understands itself*, i. e. it is understood; &c.
es fragt ſich, it *asks itself*, i. e. it is asked, it is the question;
es giebt Menſchen, it *gives* or *yields men*, i. e. *there are men.*

§ 89. Compound Verbs.

(1) Various derivative verbs in German are produced by the union of simple words with prefixes. * Most of these prefixes are *separable*, that is, may stand apart from the radicals; some, however, are found to be *inseparable*; some are either separable or inseparable, according to circumstances.

(2) The prefixes are themselves, also, either simple or compound; as, herkommen, to come *here* or *hither*; herüberkommen, to come

* Under the name of Prefixes are here comprehended all those invariable words, (as adverbs and prepositions,) which are combined with other words to vary or modify their signification. They are, also, often called *Particles.* The simple words with which they are united, are generally verbs; but often nouns and adjectives are, by prefixes, converted into verbs.

Digitized by Google

over here, or *hither*. In most instances, the prefixes may be translated severally as above; but often they are found to be merely intensive or euphonic. *

§ 90. Simple Prefixes separable.

Ab,	from, off, down;	Abſetzen, to set or put down; to depose.
An,	to, at, in, on, towards;	Anfangen, to catch at, i. e. to begin.
Auf,	on, upon, up;	Aufgehen, to go up; to rise.
Aus,	out, out of, from;	Ausnehmen, to take out; to choose.
Bei,	by, near, with;	Beiſtehen, to stand by; to assist.
Da,	there, at;	Dableiben, to remain there, or at, to stay; to persist.
Dar,	there, at;	Darreichen, to reach there, i. e. to offer.
Ein,	in, into;	Einkaufen, to buy in; to purchase.
Empor,	up, upward, on high;	Emporheben, to lift up.
Fort,	onward, away, forward;	Fortfahren, to drive or bear on; to continue.
Gegen,	towards, against;	Gegenhalten, to hold against; to resist; to compare.
In,	in, within;	Inwohnen, to dwell in.
Heim,	home, at home;	Heimkehren, to turn homewards; to return.
Her,	hither, here;	Herbringen, to bring hither, or along.
Hin,	thither, there, away;	Hingehen, to go thither, or away.
Mit,	with;	Mitnehmen, to take with, or along.
Nach,	after;	Nachfolgen, to follow after; to succeed.
Nieder,	down, downwards, under;	Niederreißen, to pull down.
Ob,	on, over, on account of;	Obliegen, to lie on, i. e. to apply one's self to; to be incumbent on.
Vor,	for, before;	Vorgehen, to go before; to surpass.
Weg,	away, off;	Wegbleiben, to stay away.
Zu,	to, towards;	Zugeben, to give to; to grant.

* This is likewise often the case in English: thus, *ex* (which literally signifies *out* or *out of*,) has, in some words the signification *very*, *exceedingly* or the like; as, *exasperate*, to make *very* angry: so *a*, (literally, *to*, *at*;) in the word *ameliorate* is merely euphonic; the derivative form (ameliorate) meaning nothing more than the simple one, *meliorate*.

Digitized by Google

§ 91. Compound Prefixes separable.

Anheim	(an + heim, to-home);	Anheimſtellen, to put home to i. e. to refer to.
Dabei	(da + bei, there-by);	Daбeiſtehen, to stand close by.
Daher	(da + her, there-hither);	Daherſchleichen, to sneak along
Dahin	(da + hin, there-thither);	Dahineilen, to hasten away.
Dagegen	(da + g gen, there-against);	Dagegenſein, to be against.
Danieder	(da + nieder, there-below);	Danieder ſchlagen, to beat down.
Daran	(dar + an, there-to);	Daranſetzen, to put or lay thereto, i. e. to risk, to stake.
Darauf	(dar + auf, there-on);	Daraufgeben, to give there-on, i. e. to give an earnest;
Dareiu	(dar + ein, there-in);	Dareiureden, to talk there-in, i. e. to interrupt.
Davon	(da + von, there-from);	Davonlaufen, to run off or away.
Davor	(da + vor, there-before);	Davorliegen, to lie before.
Dawider	(da + wider, there-against);	Dawiderhaben, to have (objections) against.
Dazu	(da + zu, there-to);	Dazuthun. to do (in addition) thereto; to add.
Dazwiſch n	(da + zwiſchen, there-between);	Dazwiſchenreden, to speak there in the midst.
Einher	(ein + her, into-hither);	Einherziehen, to draw along.
Entgegen	(ent + gegen, apart-towards);	Entgegengehen, to go towards; to go to meet.
Entzwei	(ent + zwei, apart-two);	Entzweibrechen, to break or burst asunder.
Herab	(her + ab, hither-down);	Herabſetzen, to put down; to lower.
Heran	(her + an, hither-to);	Heranführen, to bring on or along.
Herauf	(her + auf, hither-on);	Herauffahren, to drive or urge on.
Heraus	(her + aus, hither-out);	Herausfahren, to drive out.
Herbei	(her + bei, hither-along);	Herbeirufen. to call over or towards.
Herein	(her + ein. hither-into);	Hereinfahren, to drive in or into.
Hernieder	(her + nieder, hither-down)	Herniederblicken, to look under.
Herüber	(her + über, hither-over);	Herüberkommen, to come over.
Herum	(her + um, hither-around);	Herumgeben, to give or hand around.
Herunter	(her + unter, hither-under);	Herunterfahren, to drive down.
Hervor	(her + vor, hither-forward);	Hervortreten, to step forward.
Herzu	(her + zu, hither-to);	Herzutreten, to step towards.
Hinab	(hin + ab, thither-down);	Hinabtreten, to step down.
Hinan	(hin + an, thither-to);	Hinantreten, to step up to.
Hinauf	(hin + auf, hither-on or up);	Hinaufziehen, to pull up.
Hinaus	(hin + aus, thither-out);	Hinauswerfen, to throw out.
Hinein	(hin + ein, thither-into);	Hineingießen, to pour into.
Hintan	(hint(en) + an, behind-to);	Hintanſetzen, to put behind; to undervalue.

Digitized by Google

Hinterher	(hinter + her, after-hither);	Hinterherſehen, to see afterwards.
Hinüber	(hin + über, thither-over);	Hinübertragen, to carry over.
Hinum	(hin + um, thither-around);	Hinumflattern, to flutter there about.
Hinunter	(hin + unter, thither-under);	Hinunterſpringen, to leap down there.
Hinweg	(hin + weg, thither-away);	Hinwegnehmen, to take away
Hinzu	(hin + zu, thither-towards);	Hinzueilen, to hasten away.
Uebereín	(über + ein, over-into);	Uebereinkommen, to come over into, i. e. to agree.
Umher	(um + her, around-hither);	Umherſchauen, to gaze around.
Umhin	(um + hin, around-thither);	Umhinkönnen, to be able thereabout; to forbear.
Voran	(vor + an, before-to);	Voranſtellen, to place before.
Vorauf	(vor + auf, before-on or up);	Vorauffſteigen, to mount on before; to ascend.
Voraus	(vor + aus, before-out);	Vorausſehen, to see or spy out before hand; to anticipate.
Vorbei	(vor + bei, before-by);	Vorbeireiten, to ride along before, to ride past.
Vorher	(vor + her, before-hither);	Vorherſehen, to foresee.
Vorüber	(vor + über, before-over);	Vorüberfahren, to drive along past in a coach.
Vorweg	(vor + weg, before-away);	Vorwegnehmen, to take away before; to anticipate.
Zuvor	(zu + vor, before-to);	Zuvorthun, to do before; to excel.
Zurück	(zu + rück, back-to);	Zurückkehren, to return.
Zuſammen	(zu + ſammen, to-gether)	Zuſammenſetzen, to put together.

Digitized by Google

§ 92. PARADIGM OF A COM

Anfangen,

		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		PRESENT TENSE.		**PRESENT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich fange an,	I begin.	ich fange an,	I may
	2	du fängſt an,	thou beginnest.	du fangeſt an,	thou mayst
	3	er fängt an,	he begins.	er fange an,	he may
PLUR.	1	wir fangen an,	we begin.	wir fangen an,	we may
	2	ihr fanget an,	you begin.	ihr fanget an,	you may
	3	ſie fangen an.	they begin.	ſie fangen an,	they may
		IMPERFECT TENSE.		**IMPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich fing an,	I began.	ich finge an,	I might
	2	du fingſt an,	thou didst begin.	du fingeſt an,	thou mightst
	3	er fing an,	he began.	er finge an,	he might
PLUR.	1	wir fingen an,	we began.	wir fingen an,	we might
	2	ihr finget an,	you began.	ihr finget an,	you might
	3	ſie fingen an,	they began.	ſie fingen an,	they might
		PERFECT TENSE.		**PERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich habe angefangen,	I have begun.	ich habe angefangen,	I may have begun, &c.
	2	du haſt	thou hast	du habeſt	
	3	er hat	he has	er habe	
PLUR.	1	wir haben	we have	wir haben	
	2	ihr habet	you have	ihr habet	
	3	ſie haben	they have	ſie haben	
		PLUPERFECT TENSE.		**PLUPERFECT TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich hatte angefangen,	I had begun.	ich hätte angefangen,	I might have begun, &c.
	2	du hatteſt	thou hadst	du hätteſt	
	3	er hatte	he had	er hätte	
PLUR.	1	wir hatten	we had	wir hätten	
	2	ihr hattet	you had	ihr hättet	
	3	ſie hatten	they had	ſie hätten	
		FIRST FUTURE TENSE		**FIRST FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde anfangen,	I shall begin.	ich werde anfangen,	(if) I shall begin, &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will	er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	
		SECOND FUTURE TENSE.		**SECOND FUTURE TENSE.**	
SING.	1	ich werde angef. haben,	I shall have begun.	ich werde angef. haben,	(if) I shall have begun, &c.
	2	du wirſt	thou wilt	du werdeſt	
	3	er wird	he will	er werde	
PLUR.	1	wir werden	we shall	wir werden	
	2	ihr werdet	you will	ihr werdet	
	3	ſie werden	they will	ſie werden	

Digitized by Google

POUND VERB SEPARABLE.

to begin.

CONDITIONAL.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT TENSE.	PRESENT.
	1. *wanting*. 2. fange (du) an, begin thou, &c. 3. fange (er) an. 1. fangen (wir) an. 2. fanget (ihr) an. 3. fangen (ſie) an.	anfangen, or anzufangen, to begin.	anfangend, beginning.
		PERFECT TENSE.	PERFECT.
		angefangen haben, to have begun.	angefangen, begun.
FIRST FUTURE.		FIRST FUTURE.	
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } anfangen, I should begin, &c.		angefangen werden, to be about to begin	
SECOND FUTURE.			
ich würde du würdeſt er würde wir würden ihr würdet ſie würden } angef. haben, I should have begun, &c.			

Digitized by Google

§ 93 Observations on the Paradigm.

(1) An inspection of the Paradigm above will show, that the separation of the prefix from the radical part of the verb, takes place in the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive (when preceded by zu,) and the Perfect Participle. In the Indicative and Subjunctive, however, the separation is *not* made, when, in dependent sentences, the verb is placed at the end of a clause or period: thus, als die Sonne diesen Morgen aufging, so verschwand der Nebel, when the sun rose (aufging) this morning, the fog disappeared.

(2) In regard to the *position* of the particle when separated, it must be noted that, in the Indicative, Subjunctive and Imperative, it stands *after* the radical; often, also, after the several words dependent upon it: thus, ich fange das Buch an, (where an belonging to fange, comes after the object,) I begin the book.

(3) In the Infinitive and the Perfect Participle, on the contrary, the particle comes *before* the radical: being separated from it, in the *Infinitive*, by zu, (when that preposition is employed,) and, in the *Participle*, by the augment ge, which is peculiar to that part of the verb: thus, anzufangen, (an+zu+fangen) to begin; to commence; vorgestellt, (vor+ge+stellt) placed before one; represented.

(4) It remains to be added, that particles, when separated from the radicals, receive the full or principal accent; and, that the radicals (if verbs) have the same form of conjugation, old or new, regular or irregular, as when employed without prefixes.

§ 94. Inseparable Prefixes.

The Prefixes of this class, as the name implies, are always found in close union with their radicals. They allow not even the augment syllable ge, in the Perfect Participle, to intervene; but reject it altogether: * as, bedeckt (not bedeckt) covered, from bedecken, to cover. Neither is zu (when used) allowed to come between the prefix and the Infinitive; but stands before the two combined into one word: as, zu empfangen, (not empzufangen,) to receive: except in case of compound prefixes, wherein the first component is a separable and the second an inseparable particle; zu being then inserted between the two particles; as, anzuerkennen, (from anerkennen). The inseparable prefixes are always unaccented.

* To this, however, must be excepted the case of the Prefix miß; which, in a few instances, allows the augment ge to be *prefixed*: thus, (from mißdeuten, to misinterpret,) we have, in the Perfect Participle, gemißdeutet.

Digitized by Google

§ 95. Simple Prefixes inseparable.

After	after, behind;	Afterreden, to talk behind (one's back) to slander.
Be,	near by, over, to make;	Bekommen, to come by, i. e. to get, to obtain.
Emp,	in, within;	Empfinden, to find or feel within, to perceive.
Ent,	apart, away, to deprive of;	Entgehen, to go away or off; to escape.
Er,	forth, for, on behalf of;	Erklären, to make clear for (*one*); to explain.
Ge,	(mainly, *intensive* or *euphonic*):	Gedenken (same as denken), to think of.
Miß,	wrong, erroneously;	Mißdeuten, to misinterpret.
Ver,	away, at loss;	Verschlafen, to sleep away, i. e. lose by sleeping.
Wider	against;	Widerstehen, to stand against; to resist.
Zer,	apart, asunder;	Zerschneiden, to cut apart, or in pieces

§ 96. Compound Prefixes inseparable.

Anbe	(an + be, to — near);	Anbetreffen, to hit or touch near to; to concern.
Aner	(an + er, to — for);	Anerkennen, to acknowledge; to own.
Auf er	(auf + er, up — for);	Auferbauen, to build up for; to erect.
Auser	(aus + er, out — for);	Auserwählen, to choose out for; to elect.
Anver	(an + ver, to — away);	Anvertrauen, to give away in trust; to confide to.
Beauf	(be + auf, near — on or up);	Beauftragen, to bring (duty) upon, i. e. to commission.
Mißver	(miß + ver, wrong — away);	Mißverstehen, to understand wrong, i. e. to mistake.
Vorbe	(vor + be, before — near);	Vorbehalten, to hold or keep ahead i. e. to put off; to reserve.

§ 97. Observations.

(1) Be has in German the same power which it has in English. It is, therefore, in most cases, better *transferred* than *translated*. Its uses will be easily learned from examples. Thus, from

Klagen, to moan.	Beklagen, to *be*moan.
Streuen, to strow.	Bestreuen, to *be*strow.
Folgen, to follow.	Befolgen, to follow after, i. e. to obey.
Arbeiten, to labor.	Bearbeiten, to labor upon; elaborate.
Lachen, to laugh.	Belachen, to laugh at.
Flügel, a wing.	Beflügeln, to furnish with wings.
Glück, happiness.	Beglücken, to make happy.
Frei, free.	Befreien, to set free.

In some instances, it is merely *euphonic*.

Digitized by Google

(2) Emp and ent. Emp is, probably, only another form of ent: occurring, however, only in three verbs; (empfinden, to feel; empfangen, to receive; empfehlen, to recommend:) and bearing a sense but remotely related to its original. The prime and predominant power of ent is that of indicating *separation*, *departure*, *privation*.

In some instances it has the kindred sense of *approach* or *transition* from one point or condition towards another. Examples.

Gehen, to go.	Entgehen, to go away, to get off.
Ziehen, to draw.	Entziehen, to withdraw.
Binden, to bind.	Entbinden, to unbind.
Haupt, the head	Enthaupten, to deprive of head, to behead.
Kraft, power.	Entkräften, to deprive of power weaken.
Blöde, dim-eyed, dull, bashful.	Entblöden, to divest of shame, be bold.
Brennen, to burn,	Entbrennen, to take fire, to kindle.
Sprechen, to speak.	Entsprechen, to answer, or correspond to.

Ent is sometimes, also, merely *intensive* or euphonic: as, entleeren (from leer, *empty*,) to empty out.

(3) Er and ver. Er, as a general thing, conveys the idea of *getting* or *gaining for* some one, by means of that which is expressed by the word connected with it; as, erbitten, to get, or try to get, by begging. It finds its exact opposite in ver; which marks what is *against* or *away* from some one's interest or benefit; as, verbitten, to beg off, to decline. The force and use of these particles are best illustrated by examples.

Baden, to bathe.	Erbaden, to get or gain by bathing
Finden, to find.	Erfinden, to find out for one's self, invent.
Stehen, to stand.	Erstehen, to arise, originate.
Bauen, to build.	Erbauen, to erect, to produce.
Sagen, to say or speak.	Versagen, to speak against, to deny.
Mauern, to wall, or make a wall.	Vermauern, to wall against, stop by wall.
Spielen, to play.	Verspielen, to play away, to lose by gambling.
Führen, to carry, or lead.	Verführen, to lead away, to seduce.
Salzen, to salt.	Versalzen, to oversalt, spoil in salting.

Digitized by Google

(4) Er and ver are, also, both employed in converting nouns and adjectives into verbs expressive of *transition* from one state or condition into another: thus,

Erkalten, (kalt, cold) to take cold.
Erkühnen, (kühn, bold) to become bold, dare.
Erlahmen, (lahm, lame) to become lame.
Erklären, (klar, clear) to make plain.
Veredeln, (edel, noble) to ennoble
Vergöttern, (Gott, God) to deify.
Veralten, (alt, old) to grow old or obsolete.
Vereinen, (ein, one) to make one, unite.

In some instances, moreover, er and ver are only *euphonic* or *intensive*.

§ 98. Prefixes separable and inseparable.

(1) The Prefixes of this class, when separable, are always under the full accent; when inseparable, the accent falls upon the radical.

(2) Their effect, *when separable*, is, in union with radicals to produce certain *intransitive* compounds *, in which each of the parts (prefix and radical) has its own peculiar and natural signification.

(3) Their effect, *when inseparable*, is, in connection with the radicals, to form certain *transitive* compounds; which, for the most part, are used in a figurative or metaphorical sense.

(4) We subjoin a list of the prefixes of this class: illustrating each by a couple of examples; the first being one in which the prefix is separable; the second one in which it is inseparable.

Durch, through; { Durch'bringen, to press or force through; / Durchdrin'gen, to *penetrate*.
Hinter, behind; { Hin'tergehen, to go behind; / Hinterge'hen, to *deceive*.
Ueber, over; { Ue'berſetzen, to set or put over; / Ueberſetz'en, to *translate*.
Um, around; { Um'gehen, to go around; / Umgeh'en, to *evade*.
Unter, under; { Un'terſchieben, to shove or push under; / Unterſchie'ben, to *defer*; also, to *substitute*.
Wieder, again; back; { Wie'derholen, to fetch or bring back; / Wiederho'len, to *repeat*.

* There are, however, some compounds of durch and um, in which, though these particles are separable, the verbs are, nevertheless, transitive. Still, it will be found, that in such cases the signification of the compound is figurative; as, umbringen, to bring about (*one's death*;) i. e. to *kill*.

Digitized by Google

§ 99. VERBS COMPOUNDED WITH NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

(1) A variety of compounds is produced by the union of verbs with nouns and adjectives. These follow the same general laws which govern those produced by means of prefixes. Some of them, accordingly, are *separable*; as,

Fehlſchlagen, to miscarry;	from	fehl	and	ſchlagen.
Freiſprechen, to acquit;	„	frei	„	ſprechen.
Gleichkommen, to equal;	„	gleich	„	kommen.
Losreißen, to tear away;	„	los	„	reißen.
Stattfinden, to take place;	„	ſtatt	„	finden

(2) Some are *inseparable*; as,

Frohlocken, to exult;	from	froh	and	locken.
Frühſtücken, to breakfast;	„	früh	„	ſtücken.
Fuchsſchwänzen, to fawn;	„	fuchs	„	ſchwänzen.
Handhaben, to handle;	„	hand	„	haben.
Liebäugeln, to ogle;	„	lieb	„	äugeln.
Liebkoſen, to caress;	„	lieb	„	koſen.
Muthmaßen, to suspect;	„	muth	„	maßen.
Vollziehen, to perform;	„	voll	„	ziehen.
Willfahren, to gratify;	„	will	„	fahren.
Weiſſagen, to foretell;	„	weis	„	ſagen.

(3) These verbs take the augment syllable g e in the perfect perticiple: except vollziehen, which has vollzogen. In some cases, however, verbs compounded with v o l l, also, take the augment; as, vollgegoſſen, from vollgießen, to pour full.

§ 100. THE ADVERBS.

(1) Adverbs in German, as in other languages, serve to modify the signification of verbs, participles, adjectives and, often, also that of one another: denoting, for the most part, certain limitations of time, place, degree and manner. Hence are they usually classified according to their *meaning*.

(2) They are indeclinable; and formed, either by derivation or composition, from almost every other part of speech: of some, however, the origin is wholly unknown.

Arranged according to derivation, adverbs are divisible into the following classes:

§ 101. ADVERBS FORMED FROM NOUNS.

Adverbs are formed from nouns by affixing the letter *s*. This termination *s* is nothing more than the sign of the genitive singular;

Digitized by Google

which case, not only of nouns, but also of adjectives, participles, &c. is often made to perform the office of an adverb. * Examples:

Morgens, in the morning;	from	der Morgen, morning.
Abends, in the evening;	"	der Abend, evening.
Tags, in the day;	"	der Tag, day.
Theils, in part, or partly;	"	der Theil, part.
Flugs, swiftly;	"	der Flug, flight.
Durchgehends, generally;	"	durchgehend, passing through.
Zusehends, visibly;	"	zusehend, looking at.

§ 102. Adverbs formed from adjectives.

(1) Adverbs are formed from adjectives by the addition of the suffixes lich, haft and lings; which, except the last, are also regular *adjective* terminations. These endings are chiefly expressive of manner; and may be translated sometimes by a corresponding suffix (as the English *ly* or *ishly*), and sometimes by some equivalent phrase. Examples:

Wahrlich, truly; verily;	from	wahr, true.
Boshaft, maliciously;	"	böse, evil; wicked.
Weislich, wisely;	"	weise, wise.
Freilich, sure; to be sure;	"	frei, free; sure.
Blindlings, blindly;	"	blind, blind.

(2) The letter s, also, as above stated, added to adjectives, gives rise to a class of adverbs: * thus,

Rechts, on the right;	from	recht, right.
Links, on the left;	"	link, left.
Anders, otherwise;	"	ander, other.
Bereits, already;	"	bereit, ready.
Besonders, particularly;	"	besonder, particular.
Stets, continually;	"	stet, continual.

(3) Here note, also, that *almost all German adjectives, in the absolute form, that is, in the simple form without the terminations of*

* The letter s is, also, sometimes affixed to adverbs ending in mal; as, vormals, formerly; damals, at the time; vielmals, many times. For numeral adverbs ending in mal, lei, &c. See the Section on Numerals.

Digitized by Google

declension, are employed as adverbs: thus, er rennt ſchnell, he runs rapidly; er handelt ehrlich, he acts honestly.

§ 103. Adverbs formed from pronouns.

(1) These are, chiefly, da, *there;* from der, die, das, *this* or *that;* wo, *where;* from wer, was, *who, what;* her, *hither,* and hin, *thither;* from some corresponding demonstrative pronoun no longer found.

(2) The pronominal adverbs in combination with other words, give rise to a number of compounds. Thus da and wo, united with prepositions, serve often instead of the dative and accusative (*neuter*) of the pronouns der, wer and welcher, respectively. It will be noticed, that when the other word begins with a vowel or with the letter n, da and wo are written dar and wor; that is, that r is inserted for the sake of euphony. The following are compounds of da and wo:

Dabei, thereby,
i. e. by this or that.
Dafür, therefor,
i. e. for this or that.
Damit, therewith,
i. e. with this or that.
Darin, therein,
i. e. in this or that.
Darunter, thereunder or among,
i. e. under this or that.
Darum, thereabout or therefor,
i. e. for this or that; therefor.

Daran, thereon,
i. e. on this or that.
Darauf, thereupon,
i. e. upon this or that.
Daraus, therefrom,
i. e. from this or that.
Davon, thereof,
i. e. of this or that.
Dazu, thereto,
i. e. to this or that.
Dadurch, there-through or thereby
i. e. through or by this or that

Wobei, whereby,
i. e. by which.
Wofür, wherefor,
i. e. for which.
Womit, wherewith,
i. e. with which.
Worin, wherein,
i. e. in which.
Worunter, whereunder, among,
i. e. under this or that.
Worum, whereabout,
i. e. about or for which; wherefor; why.

Woran, whereto,
i. e. to which.
Worauf, whereupon,
i. e. upon which.
Woraus, wherefrom,
i. e. from which.
Wovon, whereof,
i. e. of which.
Wozu, whereto,
i. e. to which.
Wodurch, whereby,
i. e. by or through which

Digitized by Google

(3) In like manner her and hin appear, also, combined with other words. Between these two particles a distinction exists, wherever they are used, whether alone or in composition with other words, which should be well understood and always remembered. They are, in signification, exact *opposites:* her indicating motion or direction *towards* the speaker; hin implying motion or direction *away from* the speaker. The following are examples:

Herab, down hither (i. e. *where the speaker is*).	Hinab, down thither (i. e. *away from the speaker*).
Herauf, up hither.	Hinauf, up thither.
Heraus, out hither.	Hinaus, out thither.
Herein, in hither; into this place.	Hinein, into that place.
Hierher, or hieher, hither here; this way.	Hierhin, thither; this way forward.
Herüber, over hither.	Hinüber, over thither.
Herunter, under hither.	Hinunter, under there.
Daher, from there hither, i. e. *thence*	Dahin, from thither (to) there, i. e. *thither.*
Woher, from which place hither, i. e. *whence.*	Wohin, from which place thither, i. e. *whither.*

(4) We have no words in English, corresponding exactly in use and force with her and hin; and therefore, though everywhere in German their force may be *felt*, it cannot always be expressed by single words, in translation. Hence are they often treated as expletives.

§ 104. Adverbs formed from verbs.

(1) Adverbs are formed from verbs by suffixing to the radical part the termination lich. All adverbs so formed, however, are equally employed as adjectives: thus,

Glaublich (from glaub+en, to believe), credibly.
Sterblich (from sterb+en, to die), mortally.
Klaglich (from klag+en, to lament), lamentably.
Merklich (from merk+en, to note; perceive), perceptibly.

§ 105. Adverbs formed by composition.

(1) Besides the classes given above, a numerous list of adverbs in German is produced by the union of various parts of speech. Thus, the word Weise (*mode, manner*), combined with nouns, forms a class of adverbs employed chiefly in specifying things indi-

Digitized by Google

vidually or separately: thus, ſchrittweiſe, step by step; theilweiſe, part by part; tropfenweiſe, drop by drop; wogenweiſe, wave by wave; like waves. Weiſe is also added to adjectives; as, diebiſcherweiſe, thievishly; glücklicherweiſe, fortunately.

(2) Sometimes an adverb and a preposition are united; examples of which may be found above under the head of adverbs formed from pronouns.

(3) Sometimes adverbs are formed by the union or the repetition of prepositions: as, durchaus, throughout; thoroughly; durch und durch, through and through.

(4) Sometimes a noun and a pronoun joined together, serve as an adverb; as, meinerſeits, on my side; dieſſeits, on this side; allerdings, by all means.

(5) Sometimes one adverb is formed from another by the addition of a suffix; as, rücklings, backwards: sometimes by the union of another adverb; as, nimmermehr, nevermore.

(6) Sometimes the several words composing a phrase, are, by being brought into union, made to perform the office of an adverb: thus, fürwahr (for für wahr), verily; ſonſt (for the obsolete ſo ne iſt, *if it is not*), otherwise; else.

§ 106. Comparison of adverbs.

(1) Many adverbs, chiefly, however, those expressive of manner are susceptible of the degrees of comparison. The forms for these are the same in adverbs as in adjectives

(2) It must be observed, however, that, when a *comparison*, strictly speaking, is intended, the form of the superlative produced by prefixing am (See Obs. § 38.), should always be employed; as, er ſchreibt am ſchönſten, he writes the most beautifully (*of all*).

(3) If, on the other hand, we purpose, not to compare individuals one with another, but merely to denote extreme excellence or eminence, there are three ways in which it may properly be done: *first*, by using the simple or absolute form of the superlative; as, er grüßt freundlichſt, he greets or salutes in a manner *very* friendly, *very* cordially; *secondly*, by employing aufs (auf+das) with the accusative, or zum (zu+dem) with the dative, of the superlative; as, aufs freundlichſte, in a manner very friendly; zum ſchönſten, in a manner very beautiful; *lastly*, by adding to the simple form of the superlative, the termination ens; beſtens, the best or in the best manner höchſtens, at the highest or at the most.

Digitized by Google

§ 107. THE PREPOSITIONS.

(1) The prepositions in German, that is, the words employed merely to denote the *relations* of things, are commonly classified according to the cases with which they are construed. Some of them are construed with the genitive only; some with the dative only; some with the accusative only; and some either with the dative or accusative, according to circumstances.

(2) They may also, on a different principle, be divided into two general classes: the Primitive and the Derivative. The primitive prepositions always govern either the dative or the accusative: the derivative prepositions are found, for the most part, in connection with the genitive only.

§ 108. TABLE OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

(1) Prepositions construed with THE GENITIVE.

Anſtatt, or ſtatt,	Oberhalb,
Außerhalb,	Trotz,
Dieſſeit, or dieſſeits,	Um — willen,
Halb, halben, or halber,	Unfern,
Innerhalb,	Ungeachtet,
Jenſeit, or jenſeits,	Unterhalb,
Kraft,	Unweit,
Längs,	Vermittelſt, o mittelſt,
Laut,	Vermöge,
	Während,
	Wegen,
	Zufolge.

(2) Prepositions construed with THE DATIVE.

Aus,	Nebſt,
Außer,	
Bei,	Ob,
Binnen,	
Entgegen,	Sammt,
Gegenüber,	
Gemäß,	Seit,
Mit,	Von,
Nach,	Zu,
Nächſt,	Zuwider

(3) Prepositions construed with THE ACCUSATIVE.

Durch,	Ohne,
Für,	Sonder,
Gegen, or gen,	Um,
	Wider.

(4) Prepositions construed with THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

An,	Ueber,
Auf,	Unter,
Hinter,	Vor,
In,	Zwiſchen.
Neben,	

Digitized by Google

§ 109 PREPOSITIONS CONSTRUED WITH THE GENITIVE.

We now give again the prepositions governing the several cases respectively, with their proper definitions: subjoining, also, some few observations on such of them as seem to require further explanation. And first, we mention those construed with the genitive.

Anſtatt, or ſtatt,	instead.	Um — willen,	for the sake of.
Außerhalb,	without; outside.	Ungeachtet,	notwithstanding.
Dieſſeit, or dieſſeits,	on this side.	Unterhalb,	below; on the lower side.
Halben, or halber,	on account of.	Unfern,	near; not far from.
Innerhalb,	within; inside.	Unweit,	near; not far from
Jenſeit, or jenſeits,	on that side; beyond.	Vermittelſt, or mittelſt,	by means of.
Kraft,	by virtue of.	Vermöge,	by dint of.
Längs, (also gov. Dat.)	along.	Während,	during.
Laut,	according to.	Wegen,	on account of.
Oberhalb,	above.		
Trotz, (also gov Dat.)	in spite of.	Zufolge, (also gov. Dat.)	in consequence of.

§ 110. OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Anſtatt is compounded of an (*in*) and Statt (*place*;) and these components may sometimes be separated: thus, an des Bruders Statt *in* the brother's *stead*. In this case the part, Statt, takes its proper character, which is that of a noun.

(2) Halben, like wegen and um — willen, expresses *motive*. Strictly speaking, however, halben seems to point to a motive that is *direct*, *immediate* and *special*; wegen indicates an object less *definite* and more *distant*; while um — willen looks to the *will*, *wish* or *welfare* of that which is expressed by the genitive. These distinctions, however, are not always regarded even by writers of reputation.

(3) Halben or halber is always placed *after* the noun which it governs: the form. halben being preferred, when the noun has an article or pronoun before it; and halber, when it has not: thus, des Geldes halben, for the sake of money; Vergnügens halber, for the sake of pleasure. Halben is often united with the genitive of the personal pronouns; in which case the final letter (r) is omitted and its place

Digitized by Google

supplied by t: thus, meinethalben, (instead of meinerhalben,) for my sake; deinethalben, for thy sake; seinethalben, for his sake, &c. So, too, it occurs in the compounds deßhalb, on account of that; weßhalb, on account of which: wherein, as in außerhalb, innerhalb, oberhalb, unterhalb, the form halben is shortened into halb. In the last four, halb has the sense *part* or *side*; as, außerhalb, *outside*, &c.

(4) Wegen may either come *before* or *after* its noun: as, wegen der großen Gefahr, on account of the great danger; seiner Gesundheit wegen, on account of his health.

(5) Um — willen is always separated by the genitive which it governs: thus, um Gottes willen, for God's sake.

(6) Ungeachtet may either *precede* or *succeed* its noun: as, ungeachtet aller Hinderniße, notwithstanding all hindrances; seines Fleißes ungeachtet, notwithstanding his industry.

(7) Vermöge, *by dint* or *means of*, indicates physical ability: as, vermöge des Fleißes, by means of industry. It thus differs from kraft, which points rather to the exercise of moral power: as, kraft meines Amtes, by virtue of my office.

(8) Zufolge, when it comes *after* the word which it governs, takes the latter in the *Dative*: as, dem Befehle zufolge, in consequence of (or pursuant *to*) the order.

(9) Längs and trotz may, also, govern the Dative.

§ 111. Prepositions construed with the Dative.

Aus,	out; out of.	Nach,	after; to; according to.
Außer,	without; outside of.	Nächst,	next; next to.
Bei,	by; near; with.	Nebst,	together with.
Binnen,	within.	Ob,	over; at.
Entgegen,	towards; opposite to.	Sammt,	together with.
		Seit,	since.
Gegenüber,	over against.	Von,	from; of.
Gemäß,	conformably with.	Zu,	to, at.
		Zuwider,	against; contrary.
Mit,	with.		

§. 112. Observations.

(1) Aus indicates the *place*, the *source* or the *material* whence any thing is produced; as, aus dem Hause, out of the house; aus Liebe, out of love; aus Nichts hat Gott die Welt gemacht out of nothing has God made the world.

Digitized by Google

(2) Außer differs from aus, in that it denotes *situation* rather than *transition:* thus, aus dem Hause marks *motion* from or out of the house, while außer dem Hause signifies *position* in respect to the house; that is, outside of the house; abroad: hence comes, also, the signification, *besides; exclusive of;* as, Niemand außer mir war zugegen, no one besides, or except me was present.

(3) Bei shows the relation of *proximity* or *identity* in respect to persons, places, times, &c.: as, er wohnt bei seinem Bruder he resides *with* his brother; bei dem Hause, *by* or *near* the house; bei der Schöpfung, *at* the creation; bei meiner Ankunft, *at* or *upon* my arrival; bei dem Plato, *in* Plato, that is, in the works of Plato. Bei is also used in making oath or protest; as, bei Gott; bei meiner Ehre; *by* God; *by*, or *upon* my honor: a use easily derived from the primary signification of the word. It should be added that the German bei (unlike the English *by*) is not properly employed to denote the cause, means or instrument of an action: this is done by the words durch von, or mit: ich fahre mit der Eisenbahn.

(4) Binnen is used in denoting a limitation of *time;* as, binnen acht Tagen, within eight days.

(5) Entgegen always comes *after* its noun; and denotes the relation of parties moving *towards* one another so as to meet: hence it gets the significations *opposite to, over against:* thus, der Knabe läuft seinem Vater entgegen, the boy runs *towards*, that is, *to meet* his father; dem Winde entgegen, *against* the wind.

(6) Gegenüber marks an opposite *position* of things; and like entgegen, comes after its noun; as, dem Hause gegenüber, *opposite to*, or *fronting* the house.

(7) Mit signifies sometimes the relation of *union;* sometimes that of *instrumentality;* as, er arbeitet mit seinem Vater, he works with his father; mit einem Messer schneiden, to cut *with* a knife: sometimes, also, it indicates the *manner* of an action; as, mit Gewalt; mit List.

(8) Nach, in all its uses, has its nearest equivalent in the English word *after;* as, zehn Minuten nach vier, ten minutes *after* four; nach englischer Mode, *after* the English fashion; der Nase nach, *after* (that is, *following* after) your nose; dem Strome nach, *after* (that is, *in the direction of*) the stream; der Beschreibung nach, *after* (that is, *according to*) the description; wir gehen nach der Stadt, we are going *after* (that is, *in the direction of, towards*, or *to*) the city; das Schiff ist nach Amerika bestimmt, the ship is bound *after* (that is, *for*) America, &c.

(9) When direction towards a *person*, instead of a place, is indi-

Digitized by Google

eated, zu is employed; as, ich werde zu meinem Vater gehen, I shall go to my father. Sometimes nach is used in connection with zu; as, er lief nach der Stadt zu, he ran (literally, *after to*) *towards* the city. When it denotes direction *with*, as in the phrase, dem Strome nach, following, or going *with* the stream, it is put *after* the noun which it governs: so, also, when it has the kindred sense, *according to;* as, meiner Meinung nach, according to my opinion. If, however, in the latter case, a genitive depends on the noun under the government of the preposition, nach *precedes;* as, nach der Beschreibung des Schiller, according to Schiller's description.

(10) Nebst and sammt have the same *general* signification, *together with;* but, strictly speaking, differ in this, that sammt not only indicates *conjoint*, but, also, *simultaneous* action: thus, Aaron sammt seinen Söhnen sollen ihre Hände auf sein Haupt legen, Aaron together with (i. e. *simultaneously with*) his sons shall lay their hands upon his head.

(11) Ob is seldom used except in poetry.

(12) Von marks the *source* or *origin* of a thing, and has the same latitude of signification as its English equivalent *from:* thus, der Wind wehet von Osten, the wind blows from the East; das Gedicht ist von ihm, that poem is from (*by*) him. With an or auf following, it indicates the extent of a period of time: von der ersten Kindheit an, from earliest childhood on; von seiner Jugend auf, from his youth up.

(13) Zu primarily is a mere sign of *transition;* but is made to denote a variety of coguate relations, from a state of motion to a state of rest. Examples best illustrate its use: thus, ich will zu meinem Vater gehen, I will go to my father; wir reisen zu Wasser und zu Lande, we travel by land and by water; zu Pferde, on horseback; zu Fuße, on foot; zu Hause, at home; zu jener Zeit, at that time; er hat mich zum (for zu dem) Narren gemacht, he has made me (*to become*) a fool; er thut es mir zu Liebe, he does it to (*show*) love for me. It is sometimes used as an adverb; as, geh zu, go on; zu viel, too much; mache die Thür zu, shut the door to.

(14) Zuwider, *against, contrary to*, comes *after* the word, which it governs.

§ 113. Prepositions construed with the accusative.

Durch,	through.	Sonder	apart; without.
Für,	for; in place of.	Um,	about; around.
Gegen or gen,	towards.	Wider,	against
Ohne,	without.		

Digitized by Google

§ 114. Observations.

(1) Durch has its exact equivalent in the English word *through*: as, durch die Stadt gehen, to go through the city; durch Ihren Beistand, through your aid; das ganze Jahr durch (where, as often in English, the preposition comes *after* the noun), *the whole year through*.

(2) Gegen (contract form, gen) indicates motion *towards*; and hence often has the signification *opposite to*; but whether it marks direction towards, in a manner friendly or otherwise, must be determined by the context. In this respect, it differs from wider, *against*, which denotes an opposition, doing or designing evil.

(3) Ohne and sonder are of the same import; but the latter is seldom used, and then only, when the substantive has no article before it.

(4) Um, like the English word *about*, indicates the going or being of one thing around another; and hence denotes also nearness, change of position, succession, &c.: thus, um den Tisch sitzen, to sit about the table; wirf deinen Mantel um dich, throw thy cloak about thee; um zwei Uhr, about (literally, *close about*, i. e. *exactly*) two o'clock; einen Tag um den andern, one day *about* another, that is, every other day; es ist um ihn geschehen, it is done *about* him, that is, it is all over with him; um Geld spielen, to play about (*for*) money; um zehn Jahre jünger, younger about (*by*) ten years, &c. Before an Infinitive preceded by zu (that is, before the *Supine*, as it is sometimes called), um denotes purpose; as, um Ihnen zu zeigen, *in order* to show you; um zu schreiben, *in order* to write, or for the *purpose* of writing.

§ 115. Prepositions construed with the dative or accusative.

An,	on; at; near.	Ueber,	over; above.
Auf,	on; upon.	Unter,	under; among.
Hinter,	behind.	Vor,	before.
In,	in, or into.	Zwischen,	betwixt; between.
Neben,	beside.		

§ 116. Observations.

These prepositions govern either the accusative or the dative; but not without a difference of signification: for, when motion *towards*, that is, motion from one point to another, is indicated, the accusative

Digitized by Google

is required: when, however, motion or rest *in* any given place or condition is signified, the dative is used; thus, der Knabe läuft in den Garten, the boy runs *into* (motion *towards*) the garden; der Knabe läuft in dem Garten, the boy runs *in* (motion *within*) the garden. This is the *general* principle; which will be found, with more or less distinctness, everywhere to prevail in the use of the prepositions of this class. We subjoin a list of examples.

Dat.	An einem Orte wohnen,	to dwell in or at a place.
Acc.	An einen Freund schreiben,	to write to a friend.
Dat.	Er arbeitet an einem Buche,	he is working on a book.
Acc.	An etwas denken.	to think on (i. e. *turn one's thoughts towards*) something.
Dat.	Er ist an der Auszehrung gestorben,	he died by consumption.
Acc.	Ich stelle den Tisch an die Wand,	I put the table against (*towards*) the wall.
Dat.	Schwach an Verstande.	weak in understanding.
Acc.	Bis an den Abend,	even to or until evening.
Dat.	Am Morgen und am Abend,	in the morning and in the evening.
Dat.	Auf dem Thurme,	on (i. e. *resting* on) the tower.
Acc.	Auf den Thurm,	upon (i. e. *climbing*) the tower.
Dat.	Auf dem Lande wohnen,	to live in the country.
Acc.	Auf das Land reisen,	to travel into the country.
Dat.	Auf der Post,	at the post-office.
Dat.	Auf der Schule,	at school.
Acc.	Auf eine Sache denken,	to think (*turn thoughts*) on a thing.
Acc.	So viel auf den Mann,	so much for a, or per man.
Acc.	Bis auf vier Thaler,	even to four dollars.
Acc.	Auf deutsche Art,	in (i. e. *following after*) the German way
Acc.	Auf Befehl,	pursuant to an order.
Acc.	Auf Montag,	next Monday.
Dat.	Er steht hinter mir,	he stands behind me.
Acc.	Er trat hinter mich,	he stepped behind me.
Dat.	Ich wohne in der Stadt,	I live in the city.
Acc.	Ich gehe in die Stadt,	I am going into the city.
Dat.	Er stand neben mir,	he stood near to me.
Acc.	Er stellte sich neben mich,	he placed himself near me.
Dat.	Ueber der Arbeit,	over (i. e. *while at*) the work
Acc.	Ueber meine Kräfte	beyond my strength.

Digitized by Google

Acc.	Ueber das Jahr,	beyond this (i. e. *next*) year.
Acc.	Den Tag über,	the day over, i. e. during the day
Dat.	Ich ſtand unter einem Baume,	I stood under a tree.
Acc.	Der Hund kriecht unter den Tiſch,	the dog creeps under the table.
Dat.	So will ich mich nicht vor dir verbergen,	then will I not hide myself from thee.
Dat.	Ich ſtand vor dem Hauſe,	I stood before the house.
Acc.	Ich gehe vor die Thür,	I go before the door.
Dat.	Ich ſaß zwiſchen zwei Freunden,	I sat between two friends.
Acc.	Ich ſtellte mich zwiſchen beide,	I placed myself between the two.

§ 117. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

(1) Conjunctions are words used in connecting sentences. As, however, there are various *kinds* of connections existing among sentences, it has been customary to classify the conjunctions according to the nature of the connection which they are employed to indicate Hence we have (among other classes) the following:

Copulatives:	as, und, and; auch, also.
Disjunctives:	as, entweder, either; oder, or.
Adversatives:	as, aber, but; however; allein, but; doch, yet.
Negatives:	as, weder, neither; noch, nor.
Comparatives:	as, wie, as; ſo, so; thus, als, than; gleichwie, just as
Conditionals:	as, wenn, if; falls, in case that; wofern, provided that.
Causals:	as, denn, for; weil, since; because.
Conclusives:	as, darum, therefore; daher, hence; deßhalb, therefore
Concessives:	as, obwohl, obſchon, obgleich, wenn; although.
Finals:	as, daß, that; auf daß and damit, in order that; um zu, in order to

(2) We give below a list of the conjunctions that most commonly occur in German: premising only that some of the words here set down as conjunctions are also employed as adverbs; for it will of course be kept in mind, that the *office* performed by a word, determines its name and character. For numerous examples illustrating their uses, See Lesson 69.

Digitized by Google

Aber, but.
Allein, but.
Als, as; than; when.
Alſo, so then; consequently; also.
Auch, also; *ever*.
Auf daß, in order that.
Bis, until.
Da, since.
Daher, therefore; hence.
Dafern, in case that; if.
Daß, that; in order that.
Damit, in order that.
Darum, therefore; on that account.
Denn, for; because; than.
Dennoch, still; nevertheless.
Deßhalb, therefore; on that account.
Deſto, the (L. 32. 10).
Doch, yet; however; still.
Ehe, before-that; ere.
Entweder, either.
Falls, in case that.
Folglich, consequently.
Je, — deſto, the—the
Jedoch, yet, nevertheless.
Indem, while; because; since.
Mithin, consequently.
Nachdem, after-that.
Noch, nor; nor yet.
Nun, therefore; then.
Nur, but; only.
Ob, whether; if.
Obgleich, though; although.
Obſchon, though; although.
Obwohl, though; although.
Oder, or.
Ohne, without; except.
Ohngeachtet, notwithstanding.
So, thus; therefore; if.
Sondern, but.
Und, and.
Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
Während, whilst.
Während dem, whilst.
Während daß, whilst that
Weder, neither.
Wenn, if; as.
Weil, because.
Wenngleich, although.
Wennſchon, although
Wie, as; when.
Wiewohl, though.
Wo, if.
Wofern, if; in case that.

§ 118. INTERJECTIONS.

(1) Interjections, as the name implies, are commonly *thrown into* a sentence; without, however, changing either its structure or its signification. They are merely the signs of strong or sudden emotion; and may be classified according to the *nature* of the emotion which they indicate: some expressing *joy*; some *sorrow*; some *surprise*, and so on. The list below contains those only that most commonly occur.

ach! alas!
ah! ah!
ei! eigh!
ha! ha!
he! ho!
hi! o! oh! o!
pfui! fy!
pſt! hist!
wehe! wo! alas!
heiſa! hurrah!

Digitized by Google

he da! ho there!	juchheiſa! huzza!
halt! hold!	wohlan! well then!
hella! holla!	hui! hoa! quick!
huſch! hush!	ñeh! lo!
leider! alas!	hum! hem!

(2) It may be added that other parts of speech and even whole phrases, are often employed *as* interjections, and in parsing are treated as such.

§ 119. SYNTAX.

Syntax is that part of Grammar which unfolds the relations and offices of words as arranged and combined in *sentences*.

The essential parts of every sentence are the *subject*, which is that of which something is affirmed; and the *predicate*, which is that which contains the affirmation.

The subject is either a noun or that which is the representative or equivalent of a noun; the predicate is either a verb alone, or a verb in conjunction with some other part or parts of speech. All other words entering into a sentence, are to be regarded as mere *adjuncts*. The following sentences exhibit the subject and the predicate under several varieties of form:

Subject.	*Predicate.*
God	exists.
Man	is mortal. *
To be,	contents his natural desire.
Throwing the stone	was his crime.

Sentences are either *simple*, that is, contain a single assertion or proposition; or *compound*, that is, contain two or more assertions or propositions. Of the various parts of a sentence whether principal or adjunct, we come now to speak more in detail; so as to show the relation, agreement, government and arrangement of words in construction.

§ 120. THE ARTICLES.

Rule.

The article in German, whether definite or indefinite, is generally employed wherever the corresponding article would be used in English.

* In the sentence *God exists*, the verb *exists* is the predicate: affirming, as it does, existence of the Almighty. But in the sentence, *man is mortal, mortal-*

Digitized by Google

OBSERVATIONS.

This rule is of course founded upon the presumption that the student is familiar with the usage of the *English* in respect to the article. In the specifications that follow, therefore, he is to look only for the points in which the German *differs* from the usage of our own language.

(1) The Germans insert the *definite* article:

(a) Before words of *abstract* or *universal* signification; as, der Menſch iſt ſterblich, man (i. e. *every* man) is mortal; das Gold iſt dehnbar, gold is ductile; das Leben iſt kurz, life is short; die Tugend führt zum Glücke, virtue leads to happiness:

(b) before the names of certain divisions or periods of time: as, der Sonntag, Sunday; der Montag, Monday; der Dezember, December; der Auguſt, August; der Sommer, Summer:

(c) before certain names (*feminines*) of countries; as, die Türkei, Turkey; die Schweiz, Switzerland; die Lombardei, Lombardy:

(d) before the names of authors, when used to denote their works; as, ich leſe den Leſſing, I am reading Lessing:

(e) before the proper names or titles of persons, when used in a way denoting familiarity or inferiority; as, grüße die Marie, greet (or remember me to) Mary; ſage dem Luther, daß ich ihn zu ſehen wünſche, tell Luther, that I wish to see him: also, when connected with *attributive* adjectives: as, die kleine Sophie, little Sophia:

(f) before words (especially proper names of persons) whose cases are not made known either by a change of termination, or by the presence of a preposition; as, das Leben der Fürſten, the life of princes; die Frau des Socrates, the wife of Socrates; der Tag der Rache, the day of (the) vengeance:

(g) before the names of ranks, bodies, or systems of doctrine: as, das Parlament, Parliament; die Regierung, government; die Monarchie, monarchy; das Chriſtenthum, Christianity: also in such phrases: as, in der Stadt, in town; in der Kirche, at church; die meiſten Menſchen, most men.

(h) before the words (signifying) *half* and *both:* as, die halbe (not halbe die) Zahl, *half the* number; die beiden (not beiden die) Brüder, *both the* brothers:

(i) before words denoting the *limit*, within which certain specified numbers or amounts are confined; wherein in English, the *indefinite* article would be used: as, zweimal die Woche, twice *a* week:

ity is what is affirmed of man; and the verb (*is*) is the mere link that connects the subject and the predicate together. It is thence called the *copula*. § 158.

Digitized by Google

(2) *Note*, further, that the German differs from the English in *omitting* the definite article,—

(a) before certain law appellatives, as: Beklagter, (*the*) defendant; Kläger, (*the*) plaintiff; Appellant, (*the*) appellant; Supplicant, (*the*) petitioner:

(b) before certain common expressions such as, in beſter Ordnung, in (*the*) best order; Ueberbringer dieſes, (*the*) bearer of this; and certain adjectives and participles treated as nouns; as, erſterer, (*the*) former; letzterer, (*the*) latter; beſagter, (*the*) before-said (person):

(c) before certain proper names of places: as, Oſtindien, (the) East Indies; Weſtindien, (*the*) West Indies; and before the names of the Cardinal points: as, Oſten, (*the*) East; Weſten, (*the*) West; Süden, (*the*) South; Norden, (*the*) North:

(d) before a past participle joined with a noun, which, in English, *precedes* the participle: as, das verlorene Paradies, (*literally*, the lost Paradise) Paradise Lost.

(3) *Note*, again, that the Germans in using certain collective terms preceded by adjectives, employ the *indefinite* article where the English would use the definite: as, ein hochweiſer Rath, the (lit. *a*) most learned Senate; eine löbliche Univerſität, the (*a*) honorable University.

(4) In German, also, the indefinite article stands *before* (not *after*, as in English,) the words, *such*, *half*: thus, ein ſolcher Mann, (not ſolcher ein Mann), such *a* man; ein halbes Jahr (not halbes ein Jahr), half *a* year. In questions, direct or indirect, like the following: Einen wie langen Spazierritt hat er gemacht, how long a ride has he taken; it must be noticed that the article stands *before* wie: thus, einen wie langen (a how long) and not, as in English, *how long a*.

(5) The German differs again from the English in not using an article at all in the phrases answering to the English; *a* few; *a* thousand; *a* hundred.

§ 121. THE NOUN.

Rule.

A noun or pronoun which is the *subject* of a sentence must be in the nominative case: as,

Der Menſch denkt, Gott lenkt, man devises, God disposes.
Die Berge donnern, the mountains thunder.

Observations.

(1) The subject or nominative in German, is seldom omitted, ex

Digitized by Google

cept in the case of the pronouns agreeing with verbs in the second person (singular and plural) of the Imperative: as,

Leſe (du), read! Gehet und ſaget (Ihr) ihm, go and tell him.

See, however, § 136. 2.

§ 122. Rule.

A noun or pronoun which is the *predicate* of a sentence, must be in the nominative case: as,

Er war ein großer König, he was a great king.

Dieſer Knabe iſt Kaufmann geworden, this boy is become a merchant.

Alexander hieß der Große, Alexander was called the Great.

Observations.

(1) This rule applies, where the subject and the predicate are connected, as above, by such verbs as ſein, *to be*; werden, *to become*; heißen, *to be called*; bleiben, *to remain*, &c.

(2) So, also, the rule becomes applicable when any of those verbs which in the *active* govern *two* accusatives (§ 132. 2.), are employed *passively*: as, Cicero wurde der Vater des Vaterlandes genannt, Cicero was called the father of his country; Er iſt Alexander getauft worden, he has been christened Alexander. From this remark, however, must be excepted the verb lehren: since it has no passive.

§ 123. Rule.

A noun used to limit * the application of another noun signifying a different thing, is put in the genitive; as,

Der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun.

Der Sohn meines Freundes, the son of my friend.

Die Erziehung der Kinder, the education of the children.

Die Wahl eines Freundes, the choice of a friend.

Observations.

(1) If, however, the *limiting* noun (unless restricted itself by an adjective or some other qualifying word) signify *measure*, *number*, *weight* or *quantity*, it is then put in the same case with that which it limits; as, zwei Glas Wein (not Weines), two glasses (of) wine; ſechs Pfund Thee (not Thees), six pounds (of) tea: but (with

* *How* the limitation is made, is easily seen: thus, der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun. Here we speak not of *any* course indefinitely, but of the *sun's* course definitely: the word der Sonne, is the genitive, limiting der Lauf, which is the governing word.

Digitized by Google

a restrictive term), ſechs Pfund dieſes Thees; zwei Glas dieſes Weines.

(2) It should be observed that the two nouns under this Rule must be of *different* significations; for two nouns standing for the *same* thing, would be in the same case, forming an instance of *apposition*. See § 133. (1).

(3) The noun in the genitive, that is, the *limiting* noun, is commonly said to be *governed* by the other one. This genitive is either subjective or objective; *subjective*, when it denotes that which *does* something or *has* something: *objective*, when it denotes that which *suffers* something, or which is the object of what is expressed by the *governing* word. To illustrate this, we have only to take the examples given above: der Lauf der Sonne, the course of the sun; die Erziehung der Kinder, the education of the children; where, in the first example, the sun is represented as *performing* or *having* a course, and is consequently *subjective*; and, in the second example, the children are represented as being the *objects* of education, and the word is consequently *objective*. This *objective* genitive, it should be added, occurs only after verbal nouns, and chiefly those ending in the suffixes e r, which marks the *doer*, and u n g, which marks the *doing* of an action.

(4) It seems hardly necessary to observe that under this rule come all words which perform the *office* of nouns; as, pronouns, adjectives used substantively, &c.; thus, die Gnade der Großen, the favor of the great.

(5) We say often in English, He is a friend *to*, or an enemy *to*, or a nephew *to* any one; where, were these phrases put into German, we might expect the *dative* to be used. But, in such cases, the German always employs the Genitive: thus, er iſt ein Feind ſeines Vaterlandes, he is an enemy *of* his native country.

(6) We say in English, the month *of* August, the city *of* London, and the like: where the common and the proper name of the same thing are connected by the preposition *of*. The Germans put the two nouns in *apposition*. See § 133. (2).

(7) So, too, in English we say, the fifth *of* August; but, in German, the numeral is put in direct agreement with the name of the month: as, der fünfte Auguſt, the fifth (*of*) August, or August fifth.

(8) In place of the genitive, the preposition v o n, followed by the dative, is, in the following instances, generally used:

a. When succeeded by nouns signifying quality, rank, measure weight age, distance and the like; as, ein Mann von hohem Stande,

Digitized by Google

a man of high standing; ein Schiff von zwei hundert Tonnen, a ship of two hundred tons; ein Gewicht von fünf Pfund, a weight of five pounds; ein Mann von achtzig Jahren, a man of eighty years; eine Reise von drei Meilen, a journey of three miles; ein Engländer von Geburt, an Englishman by birth, &c.

b. When followed by nouns denoting the material or substance of which any thing is made: as, ein Becher von Silber, a cup of silver; i. e. a silver cup; eine Uhr von Golde, a gold watch, &c.

c. When followed by nouns whose cases are not indicated by the terminations of declension nor by the presence of the article: as, der Schein von Redlichkeit, the appearance of honesty; ein Vater von sechs Kindern, a father of six children; die Königin von England, the queen of England; die Grenzen von Frankreich, the boundaries of France; der Bischof von Konstanz, the bishop of Constance

d. When followed by a word indicating the *whole*, of which the word preceding expresses but a *part*: as, einer von meinen Bekannten, one of my acquaintances; welcher von beiden? which of the two?

§ 124. Rule.

A noun limiting the application of an adjective, where in English the relation would be expressed by such words as *of* or *from*, is put in the genitive: as, die meisten Verluste sind eines Ersatzes fähig, most losses are capable of reparation; die Erde ist voll der Güte des Herrn, the earth is full of the goodness of the Lord.

Observations.

(1) The adjectives comprehended under this rule are such as follow

Bedürftig, in want; needing.
Benöthigt, needing; wanting.
Bewußt, conscious.
Eingedenk, mindful.
Fähig, capable; susceptible.
Froh, glad.
Gewahr, aware.
Gewärtig, waiting; in expectation.
Gewiß, sure; certain.
Gewöhnt, used to; in the habit.
Kundig, having a knowledge; skilled.
Ledig, empty; void.
Leer, void.
Los, free; rid.
Mächtig, having; in possession.
Müde, tired; weary.
Satt, satiated; weary.
Schuldig, guilty; indebted.
Theilhaft, partaking.
Ueberdrüssig, tired; weary.
Verdächtig, suspicious.
Verlustig, having lost; deprived of.
Voll, full.
Werth, worth; worthy.
Würdig, worthy.
Quitt, rid; free from.

Digitized by Google

(2) After gewahr, gewohnt, los, müde, ſatt, voll and werth, the *accusative* is often used: as, er ward ſeinen Bruder gewahr, he was aware of (the presence of) his brother, i. e. he observed his brother.

§ 125. Rule.

A noun limiting the application of any of the verbs following, is put in the genitive:

Achten, to mind, or regard.	Harren, to wait.
Bedürfen, to want.	Lachen, to laugh.
Begehren, to desire.	Pflegen, to foster.
Brauchen, to use.	Schonen, to spare.
Entbehren, to need.	Spotten, to mock.
Entrathen, to do without.	Verfehlen, to miss, or fail.
Ermangeln, to want, or be without.	Vergeſſen, to forget.
Erwahnen, to mention.	Wahren, to guard.
Gedenken, to think, or ponder.	Wahrnehmen, to observe.
Genießen, to enjoy.	Walten, to manage.
Gewahren, to observe.	Warten, to attend to, or mind.

Observations.

Bedürfen, begehren, brauchen, entbehren, erwähnen, genießen, pflegen, ſchonen, verfehlen, vergeſſen, wahrnehmen, wahren and warten, take more frequently, in common conversation, the *accusative*. Achten, harren and warten are more commonly construed with auf, and lachen, ſpotten and walten with über, before an *accusative*.

§ 126. Rule.

The following *reflexive* verbs, take in addition to the pronoun peculiar to them, a word of limitation in the genitive:

Sich anmaßen, to claim.	Sich entblöden, to dare, or be bold
„ annehmen, to engage in.	„ entbrechen, to forbear.
„ bedienen, to use.	„ enthalten, to refrain.
„ befleißen, to attend to.	„ entſchlagen, to get rid
„ befleißigen, to apply to.	„ entſinnen, to recollect.
„ begeben, to yield up.	„ erbarmen, to pity.
„ bemächtigen, to acquire.	„ erfrechen, to presume.
„ bemeiſtern, to seize.	„ erinnern, to remember.
„ beſcheiden, to acquiesce in.	„ erkühnen, to venture
„ beſinnen, to ponder.	„ erwehren, to resist.
„ entäußern, to abstain.	

Digitized by Google

Sich freuen, to rejoice.
„ getröſten, to hope for.
„ rühmen, to boast.
„ ſchämen, to be ashamed.
„ überheben, to be haughty.
„ unterfangen, to undertake.
Sich unterwinden, to undertake.
„ vermeſſen, to presume.
„ verſehen, to be aware.
„ wehren, to resist.
„ weigern, to refuse.
„ wundern, to wonder.

Observations.

(1) The genitive is in like manner put after the following *impersonals:*

Es gelüſtet mich, I desire, or am pleased with.
Es jammert mich, I pity, or compassionate.
Es reuet mich, I repent, or regret.
Es lohnt ſich, It is worth while.

§ 127. Rule.

The verbs following require after them a genitive denoting a *thing* and an Accusative signifying a *person.*

Anklagen, to accuse.
Belehren, to inform.
Berauben, to rob.
Beſchuldigen, to accuse.
Entbinden, to liberate.
Entblößen, to strip.
Entheben, to exempt.
Entladen, to disburden.
Entkleiden, to undress.
Entlaſſen, to free from.
Entledigen, to free from.
Entſetzen, to displace.
Entwöhnen, to wean.
Losſprechen, to acquit
Mahnen, to remind.
Ueberführen, to convict.
Ueberheben, to exempt.
Ueberzeugen, to convince.
Verſichern, to assure.
Vertröſten, to amuse, or put off with hope.
Würdigen, to deem worthy.
Zeihen, to accuse; to charge

Examples.

Er hat mich meines Geldes beraubt, he has robbed me of my money.
Der Biſchof hat den Prediger ſeines Amtes entſetzt, the bishop has removed the preacher from his office.

Observations.

(1) The verbs above, when in the *passive* voice, take for their *nominative* the word denoting the person: the genitive of the *thing* remaining the same: as, er iſt eines Verbrechens angeklagt worden, he has been accused of a crime.

Digitized by Google

§ 128. Rule.

Nouns denoting the *time*, *place*, *manner*, *intent* or *cause* of an action, are often put absolutely in the genitive and treated as adverbs: as,

Des Morgens gehe ich aus, in the morning I go out.
Man ſucht ihn aller Orten, they seek him everywhere.
Ich bin Willens hinzugehen, I am willing to go there.

Observations.

(1) This adverbial use of the genitive is quite common in German. See § 101. In order, however, to express the particular *point*, or the *duration* of time, the accusative is generally employed, or a preposition with its proper case; as, Ich werde nächſten Montag aus der Stadt gehen, I shall go out of town next monday.

§ 129. Rule.

A noun or pronoun used to represent the object, in *reference* to which an action is done or directed, is put in the dative: as,

Ich danke dir, I thank (or am thankful *to*) you.
Er gefällt vielen Leuten, he pleases many people.
Er iſt dem Tode entgangen, he has escaped from death.

Observations.

(1) The dative is the case employed to denote the person or thing, *in relation to* which the subject of the verb is represented as acting. Compared with the accusative, it is the case of the *remote* object: the accusative being the case of the *immediate* object. Thus, in the example, ich ſchrieb meinem Vater einen Brief, I wrote (to) my father a letter, the immediate object is *a letter*; while *father*, the person *to* whom I wrote, is the remote object. The number of verbs thus taking the accusative with the dative, is quite large.

(2) On the principle explained in the preceding observation, may be resolved such cases as the following: es thut mir leid, it causes me sorrow, or I am sorry; es wird mir im Herzen weh thun, it will cause pain to me in the heart, (it will pain me to the heart,) &c.

(3) A right regard to the observation made above, namely, that the dative merely marks that person or thing, in *reference to* which an action is performed, will serve, also, to explain all such examples as these: Ihnen bedeutet dieſes Opfer nichts, to you (i. e. so far as you

Digitized by Google

are concerned) this sacrifice means nothing; die Thränen, die Eurem Streit geflossen, the tears which have flowed in relation to (i. e. *from*) your dispute; mir tödtete ein Schuß das Pferd, a shot killed a horse for me, i. e. killed my horse; falle mir nicht, Kleiner, fall not for me, little one. In such instances as the last two, the dative is often omitted in translating.

(4) The Rule comprehends all such verbs as the following: antworten, to answer; danken, to thank; dienen, to serve; drohen, to threaten; fehlen, to fall short; fluchen, to curse; folgen, to follow; fröhnen, to do homage; gebühren, to be due; gefallen, to please; gehören, to pertain to; gehorchen, to obey; genügen, to satisfy; gereichen, to be adequate; gleichen, to resemble; helfen, to help, &c.

(5) This Rule, also, comprehends all reflexive verbs that govern the dative: as, ich maße mir keinen Titel an, welchen ich nicht habe, I claim to myself no title, which I have not; as, also, all impersonals requiring the dative: as, es beliebt mir, it pleases me, or I am pleased: es mangelt mir, it is wanting to me, or I am wanting, &c.

(6) The dative is, also, often used after passive verbs: as, ihnen wurde widerstanden, it was resisted to them, i. e. they were resisted; von Geistern wird der Weg dazu beschützt, the way thereto is guarded by angels; ihm wird gelohnt, (*literally*) it is rewarded to him, i. e. he is rewarded.

§ 130. Rule.

Many compound verbs, particularly those compounded with **e i, v e r, e n t, a n, a b, a u f, b e i, n a c h, v o r, z u** and **w i d e r**, require after them the dative; as,

Ich habe ihm Geld angeboten, I have offered him money.

§ 131. Rule.

An adjective used to limit the application of a noun, where in English the relation would be expressed by such words as *to* or *for*, governs the dative: as,

Sei deinem Herrn getreu, be faithful to your master.

Das Wetter ist uns nicht günstig, the weather is not favorable to us

Observations.

(1) Under this Rule are embraced (among others) the following adjectives: ähnlich, like; angemessen, appropriate; angenehm, agreeable; anstößig, offensive; bekannt, known; beschieden, destined; eigen, peculiar; fremd, foreign; gemäß, according to; gemein, common;

Digitized by Google

gewachſen competent; gnädig, gracious; heilſam, healthful; lieb agreeable; nahe, near; überlegen, superior; willkommen, welcome widrig, adverse; dienſtbar, serviceable; gehorſam, obedient; nützlich, useful.

§ 132. Rule.

A noun or pronoun which is the *immediate* object of an active transitive verb, is put in the accusative:

Wir lieben unſere Freunde, we love our friends.
Der Hund bewacht das Haus, the dog guards the house.

Observations.

(1) The accusative, as before said, being the case of the *direct* or *immediate* object (§ 129. 1.) is used with all verbs, whatever their classification in other respects, that have a *transitive* signification. Accordingly, under this rule come all those impersonal and reflexive verbs that take after them the accusative; all those verbs having a *causative* signification, as, fällen, to fell, i. e. to *cause* to fall; as also nearly all verbs compounded with the prefix be.*

(2) Lehren, to teach; nennen, to name; heißen, to call; ſchelten, to reproach (with vile names); taufen, to baptize (christen); take after them *two* accusatives: as, er lehrt mich die deutſche Sprache, he teaches me the German language; er nennt ihn ſeinen Retter, he calls him his deliverer. See Lesson LIII.

(3) The accusative is used with such terms as wiegen, to weigh; koſten, to cost; gelten, to pass for; werth, worth; ſchwer, heavy; reich, rich; lang, long; weit, wide; to mark definitely the *measure* or *distance*† indicated by these words; as, dieſer Stock iſt einen Fuß lang, this stick is a foot long; er iſt vier Monate alt, he is four months old.

(4) As words expressing time indefinitely are put in the genitive (§ 128. 1.), so those denoting a particular point, or duration of time, are put in the accusative; as, ich wartete den zweiten Tag, I waited two days.

(5) A substantive construed with a participle, is sometimes put *absolutely* in the accusative; as, dieſen Umſtand ausgenommen, finde ich alles recht, this circumstance excepted, I find all right.

* The exceptions are begegnen, behagen, beſtehen, beruhen, beharren and bewachſen.

† In the earlier German, these words of measure or distance were put in the genitive: as, einer Spanne weit, a span wide.

Digitized by Google

§ 133. Rule.

A noun or pronoun used merely to explain or specify that which is signified by a preceding noun or pronoun, must be in the same case: as,

Cicero, ein großer Redner, Cicero, a great orator.

Ihm, meinem Wohlthäter, to him, my benefactor.

Der Rath meines Bruders, des Rechtsgelehrten, the advice of my brother, the lawyer.

Observations.

(1) The explanatory noun is said to be in *apposition* with that which it explains. the latter being called the *principal* term. Between these two, that is, between the principal and the explanatory term, there often intervenes some connective particle. Thus, er hat sich als Gesetzgeber verdient gemacht, he, *as* a lawgiver, has rendered himself meritorious; mein Nachbar, nämlich der Bauer, my neighbor, *namely*, the farmer. This latter mode of specifying (that is, with the word nämlich), is far more common in German than in English.

(2) The proper names of months, countries, towns, and the like appellatives are put in apposition with their common names; where, in English, the two words stand connected, for the most part, by the preposition *of*; as, der Monat August, the month (*of*) August; die Stadt London, the city (*of*) London; die Universität Oxford, the university (*of*) Oxford.

§ 134. THE PRONOUNS.

Rule.

A pronoun must agree with the noun or pronoun which it represents, in person, number and gender: as,

Der Mann, welcher weise ist, the man who is wise.

Die Frau, welche fleißig ist, the woman who is diligent.

Das Kind, welches klein ist, the child that is small.

Observations.

(1) The neuter pronoun, es, is used in a general and indefinite way to represent words of all gender and numbers: as, es ist der Mann, *it* is the *man*; es ist die Frau, *it* is the *woman*; es ist das Kind, *it* is the *child*; es sind die Männer, they are the *men*, &c. In like manner, also, often are used, the pronouns das, (*that*); dies, (*this*) was, (*what*); as also the neuter adjective alles, (*all*); as, das sind meine Richter, these are my judges.

Digitized by Google

(2) When the antecedent is a personal appellation formed by one of the diminutive (*neuter*) terminations, chen and lein, the pronoun instead of being in the neuter, takes generally the gender *natural* to the person represented: as, wo iſt ihr Söhnchen? Iſt er (not es) im Garten? Where is your little son? Is *he* in the garden? The same remark applies to Weib (*woman*) and Frauenzimmer (*lady*). When, however, a child or servant is referred to, the neuter is often employed.

(3) A collective noun may in German, as in English, be represented by a pronoun in the *plural* number: as, die Geiſtlichkeit war für ihre Rechte ſehr beſorgt, the clergy were very anxious about their rights.

(4) The relative in German can never, as in English, be suppressed:* thus, in English, we say, the letter (*which*) you wrote; but in German, it must be, der Brief, welchen du ſchriebeſt.

(5) The neuter pronoun es, at the beginning of a sentence, is often merely expletive, and answers to the English word "there" in the like situation: as, es war niemand hier, there was no one here; es kommen Leute, there are people coming.

(6) The English forms, he is a friend *of mine*; it is a stable *of ours*, &c., can not be literally rendered into German; for there we must say, er iſt mein Freund, he is my friend; or, er iſt einer meiner Freunde, he is one of my friends, &c. See L. 28. 3.

(7) The definite article in German is often used, where in English a possessive pronoun is required: as, er winkte ihm mit der Hand, he beckoned to him with his (*the*) hand.

(8) The datives of the personal pronouns are often in familiar style employed in a manner merely expletive: as, ich lobe mir den Rheinwein, I like Rhenish wine *for me*, i. e. I prefer Rhenish wine See § 129. 3.

§ 135. THE ADJECTIVES.

Rule.

Adjectives, when they *precede* their nouns (expressed or understood), agree with them in gender, number and case; as,

Dieſe ſchöne Dame, this handsome lady.
Ein gütiger und gerechter Vater, a good and just father.
Den zwölften dieſes Monats, the twelfth (*day*) of this month, &c.
Hier iſt ein Mißverſtand, — ein handgreiflicher, here is a misunderstanding, — a palpable (*one*).

* The antecedent is sometimes omitted, and sometimes follows the relative; as, Die ſo denken, kennen ihn nicht, (*those*) that think thus, do not know him

Digitized by Google

Observations.

(1) This Rule of course has reference to those adjectives which are used *attributively;* for predicative adjectives it will be remembered, are not declined. For the several circumstances under which adjectives are varied in declension, consult § 27. § 28., &c.

(2) This Rule applies equally to adjectives of all degrees of comparison; as, beſſere Bücher, better books; der beſte Wein, the best wine; des beſten Weines, of the best wine, &c. So, too, it applies equally to all classes of adjectives; as, adjective pronouns, numerals and participles.

(3) The word "*one,*" which, in English, so often supplies the place of a preceding noun after an adjective, cannot be translated *literally* into German: its office being rendered needless in the latter tongue by the terminations of declension. See last example under the Rule

(4) So, also, the English "*one's*" is the proper equivalent of the German ſein, in such cases as the following: gibt es etwas Edleres, als ſeinen Feinden zu vergeben? is any thing more noble than to forgive one's enemies?

(5) When the same adjective is made to refer to several singular nouns differing in gender, it must be repeated with each and varied in form accordingly; as, ein gelehrter Sohn und eine gelehrte Tochter, a learned son and a learned daughter. The adjectives are, also, often repeated, though the nouns be all of the same gender.

§ 136. THE VERBS.

Rule.

A verb agrees with its subject or nominative in number and person; as,

Jeder Augenblick iſt koſtbar, every moment is precious.
Die Bäume blühen im Frühling, the trees bloom in spring.

Observations.

(1) When the subject is the pronoun es, das or dies, used indefinitely (See § 134. 1.), the *predicate,* if a noun, determines the number and person of the verb; as, es ſind die Früchte Ihres Thuns. these are the fruits of your actions.

(2) In the *second* person (singular and plural) of the Imperative mood, the pronoun which forms the subject is commonly omitted; as, gehet hin und ſaget Johanni wieder, was Ihr ſehet und höret, go and tell John what ye see and hear.

(3) When the verb has two or more singular subjects connected

Digitized by Google

by und, it is generally put in the plural; as, Haß und Eifersucht sind heftige Leidenschaften, hatred and jealousy are violent passions.

(4) When the subject is a collective noun, that is, one conveying the idea of many individuals taken together as unity, the verb must (generally) be in the singular; as, das englische Volk hat große Freiheit, the English people have (*has*) great liberty. In a few cases only, as, ein Paar, a pair; eine Menge, a number; ein Dutzend, a dozen, the verb stands in the plural.

(5) When a verb has several subjects, and they are of different *persons*, the verb agrees with the first rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, du, dein Bruder und ich wollen spazieren gehen, thou, thy brother and I will go take a walk; du und dein Bruder vermöget viel, you and your brother avail much.

§ 137. USE OF THE TENSES.

Rule.

The *Present tense* properly expresses what exists or is taking place at the time being; as, die wahre Tapferkeit beschützt den Schwachen, true valor protects the weak.

Observations.

(1) The Present in German, as in other languages, is often, in lively narrative, employed in place of the *Imperfect*; as,

Die Sonne geht (for ging) unter, da steht (for stand) er am Thor, &c., the sun goes down, while he stands at the door, &c.

(2) The Present is not unfrequently used for the *Future*, when the true time is sufficiently clear from the context; or when, for the sake of emphasis, a future event is regarded and treated as already *certain*; as,

Ich reise morgen ab, I start (i. e. *will* start) to morrow.

Wer weiß, wer morgen über uns befiehlt, who knows who commands (i. e. *will* command) us to-morrow?

Bald sehen Sie mich wieder, soon you (*will*) see me again.

Dies Schloß ersteigen wir in dieser Nacht, this castle scale we (i. e. *will* we scale) this very night.

(3) It should be noted that the Present is, moreover, the proper tense for the expression of *general* or *universal* truths or propositions; as, die Vögel fliegen in der Luft, birds fly in the air.

(4) In English we have several forms of the Present tense; as, *I praise*, *I do praise* or *I am praising*. In German there is but *one* form (ich lobe) for the expression of these several shades of meaning.

Digitized by Google

(5) The Present in connection with the adverb ſchon (*already*) often supplies the place of a Perfect; as, wir wohnen ſchon ſieben Jahre hier, already dwell we here (i. e. *have we dwelt*) seven years.

(6) In English, we say often, "I *do* walk, I *did* walk," and the like: where the verb *do* (Present and Imperfect) is employed as an auxiliary. This cannot properly be done with the corresponding verb (thun, *to do*) in German.

§ 138. Rule.

The *Imperfect tense* is used to express what *existed*, or *was taking place* at some past time indicated by the context: as, ich ſchrieb an Sie, als ich Ihren Brief erhielt, I was writing to you, when I received your letter.

Observations.

(1) The Imperfect is the *historical* tense of the Germans. Its proper office is to mark what is incomplete, or going on, while something else is going on. It is the tense adopted by the narrator, who speaks as an *eye-witness*; though it *may* be used by such as have not been eye-witnesses of the events narrated: provided the statement be introduced or accompanied by such expressions as, *he said* (ſagte er), *it is said*, or *they say* (ſagt man). When the speaker has not been an eye-witness, the Perfect should be used.

(2) From the use of the Imperfect in expressing the *continuance* of a thing i. e. what was *going on* at a given time, comes the kindred power which it has, of expressing *repeated* or *customary* action: as, er pflegte zu ſagen, he used to say, i. e. was in the habit of saying.

(3) The Imperfect in German, like the Present, has but one form; which, according to circumstances, is to be rendered by any one of the *three* English forms of that tense. Ich lobte, therefore, is either *I praised*, *did praise*, or *was praising*.

§ 139. Rule.

The *Perfect tense* is that which represents the being, action or passion, as past and complete at the time being: as, die Schiffe ſind angekommen, the ships have arrived; er iſt vorige Woche geſtorben, he died last week.

Observations.

(1) The German Perfect, as a general thing, corresponds closely to our *Imperfect*, when used as an *aorist*; that is, when used to express an event simply and absolutely, and without regard to other events or circumstances. Hence often it happens, that where in Eng-

Digitized by Google

lish we use the Imperfect, the Germans employ their Perfect: thus ich habe deinen Bruder gestern gesehen, aber nicht gesprochen, I *saw* your brother yesterday, but *did* not speak to him.

(2) The auxiliary participle (worden) in the perfect passive, is sometimes omitted. (See § 84. 2.)

(3) We may remark here also, that, though in English we have a double form for the Perfect, (thus, I have written and I have been writing) the Germans have but the one. By which of the English forms, therefore, the German Perfect is, in any given case, to be rendered, must be determined by the context.

§ 140. Rule.

The *Pluperfect tense* is used to express what *had* taken place at some past time denoted by the context: as,

Nachdem die Sonne untergegangen war, ging er weg, after the sun had gone down, he went off.

Er hatte während unserer Unterredung geschlafen, he had slept during our conversation.

§ 141. Rule.

The *first Future tense* is employed merely to express what *shall* or *will* take place hereafter; while the *second Future* is used to denote what *shall have* occurred at some future period.

Observations.

(1) The Future tenses are used as in English, and also to indicate a probability, in which case they are translated by other tenses in connection with an appropriate adverb; as, Es wird Ihr Bruder sein, it is *probably* your brother.

(2) When a future action is represented, or is mentioned, as a thing *necessary* to be done, as in the English phrases, *I am to go*, *he is to have* and the like, the German employs a distinct verb expressive of obligation or necessity: as, ich soll es haben, I am (*shall be obliged*) to have it. Er soll sprechen, &c.

§ 142. Rule.

The *Indicative mood* is used in affirming or denying that which is conceived to be *certain* or *undoubted*; as,

Er wird morgen zurückkommen, he will return to-morrow.

Observations.

(1) Since the proper office of the Indicative is to express *reality*, it is employed in all absolute or independent sentences. Even in

Digitized by Google

conditional sentences, moreover, it is used, if the condition is assumed as a *fact;* as, biſt du reich, ſo gib viel, art thou rich (i. e. if thou art rich), give much.

(2) Sometimes the Indicative is employed instead of the *Imperative*, where, that which is enjoined, is treated as something already in progress; as, du trittſt vor, thou steppest forward, i. e. step (thou) forward. This is regarded as the strongest form of command

§ 143. Rule.

The *Subjunctive mood* is used when that which is expressed by the verb, is conceived to be *uncertain*, though *possible;* as,

Ich habe gehört, daß er die gewünſchte Stelle erhalten habe, I have heard, that he has obtained the desired situation.

Ich wünſche, daß er glücklich werde, I wish that he may become happy

Observations.

(1) The Subjunctive, from its very nature, stands chiefly in dependent clauses; and, in these appears, under various circumstances. Thus, it is employed:

(2) When the design of the speaker is merely to *repeat* or *quote* a statement, without vouching for its accuracy; as, er ſagt, der Baum blühe, he says, that the tree blossoms; er meldete mir, daß er ſich verheirathet habe, he told me, that he had been married. When, on the contrary, the design of the speaker is to set forth the thing repeated or quoted, as something real and undoubted, the *Indicative* must be used; as, er will es nicht glauben, daß ſein Bruder geſtorben iſt, he will not believe, that his brother is dead.

(3) In like manner, the Subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses, after such verbs as hoffen, *to hope;* fürchten, *to fear;* wünſchen, *to wish;* wollen, *to desire;* bitten, *to ask;* rathen, *to advise;* verbieten, *to forbid;* ermahnen, *to exhort;* since the event, in such cases, may be supposed to be always more or less uncertain; as, er fürchtet, daß er Strafe erhalte, he is afraid, that he may be punished.

(4) So, also, the Subjunctive is employed in clauses which indicate an *end, object, wish* or *result;* and which are introduced by daß, auf daß, damit, or by a relative; as, ſprich laut, damit er dich verſtehe, speak loud, that he may understand you; er ſucht Arbeit, welche ihm Brod gebe, he seeks work, which may give him bread.

(5) In cases such as those explained in the observations above, the student must note, that that tense of the Subjunctive is employed, which corresponds with the one used by the subject of the dependent clause, at the time *when* he said or did that which is affirmed or

Digitized by Google

him: as, er ſagte, er habe diesmal keine Zeit, he said, that he *had* (literally *has*) no time at present; er hatte mir geſagt, daß er es gethan habe, he had told me, that he had done it.

(6) The Subjunctive appears, also, in asking *indirect* questions; as, ich fragte ihn, ob er mir das Geld geben könne, I asked him, whether he could give me the money. When the question is made *directly*, of course the Indicative is used.

(7) The Subjunctive is sometimes employed as a sort of softened Imperative, to express a *wish* or *permission*; as, gebe es der Himmel, may heaven grant it! dieſer Baum trage nie wieder Frucht, let this (or *may* this) tree never again bear fruit! er thue was er will, let him do what he will!

§ 144. Rule.

The *Conditional mood* is used, where a condition is *supposed*, which may or may not be conceived to be *possible*; as,

Wäre ich reich, ſo würde ich ihm ſeine Bitte nicht abgeſchlagen haben, were I rich, I would not have refused his request.

Wenn er noch lebte, ſo würde er 50 Jahre alt ſein, if he yet lived, he would be fifty years old.

Observations.

(1) Besides the two tenses ranged in the paradigms (See p. 328 and following) under the head of the Conditional, it must be observed that the Imperfect and the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive are equally often employed in expressing conditional propositions. In point of time, indeed, there is no difference between the Imperfect of the Subjunctive and the first Conditional, and between the Pluperfect of the Subjunctive and the second Conditional. Ordinarily, where both forms are employed in the same sentence, the Subjunctive will be found in the clause expressing the condition, while the form peculiar to the Conditional appears in the other; as, ich würde es thun, wenn es möglich wäre, I would do it, if it were possible; wenn er hier wäre, würde er dich beſucht haben, if he were here, he would have visited you.

(2) When the condition is assumed and treated as a *fact*, it is expressed, not by the Conditional, but by the Indicative; as, biſt du reich, ſo gieb viel, art thou (i. e. *if* thou art) rich, then give much.

(3) Sometimes the verb expressing the condition is merely understood; as, ich hätte die Sache anders gemacht, I should have done it otherwise (if it had been committed to me); in ſeiner Lage hätte ich

Digitized by Google

es nicht gethan, (if I had been) in his situation, I would not have done it.

(4) Sometimes, in the way of exclamation, the condition is expressed, while that which depends upon it is omitted: in which case the whole expression being of the nature of a *wish* or *petition*, is often introduced (in translation) by "O," "I wish that," and the like: as, hätte ich doch diesen Mann nie gesehen! as, O, that I had never seen this man! literally, had I never seen this man (how happy I should be)! wäre er doch am Leben! O, that he were yet alive!

(5) The Conditional is frequently employed in questions designed to elicit a negative answer; as, wäre es denn wahr? could it be true? (it could *not* be true;) du wärest so falsch gewesen? would you have been so faithless? (you would *not*.)

(6) Not unfrequently the Conditional of the auxiliaries mögen, dürfen, sollen, können and wollen, is employed to render an expression less positive, or to give it an air of diffidence; as, ich wollte, Sie begleiteten mich, I could wish (instead of, I wish) you would accompany me; ich möchte schwer zu überreden sein, I should be hard to be persuaded, or, it would be difficult to persuade me; dürfte ich Sie um das Messer bitten? might I (be permitted to) ask you for the knife?

§ 145. Rule.

The *Imperative mood* is used in expressing a command, entreaty or exhortation; as,

Fürchte Gott und ehre den König, fear God and honor the king.

Observations.

(1) The Imperative is sometimes employed to indicate a condition, on which something is declared to depend; as, sei stolz und du wirst wenig Achtung finden, be haughty (i. e. *if* you be haughty) and you will find little regard.

(2) In order to make a request in a manner modest and polite, instead of the Imperative, the Subjunctive of mögen and wollen is often employed; as, du wolltest seiner nie vergessen, pray, never forget him; mögen Sie meiner gedenken, may you remember, or remember me, I pray. To express a decided command, however, the Indicative is frequently used. See § 142. 2.

(3) Sometimes, by a peculiar ellipsis, the past Participle is employed in place of the Imperative; as, nur nicht lang gefragt! do not ask long! where the full phrase would be, es werde nur nicht lang gefragt, let it not long be asked! An die Arbeit gegangen let them go to their work!

Digitized by Google

§ 146. Rule.

The *Infinitive mood* either with or without the particle zu (*to*) preceding, is used to represent the being, action or passion, in a manner unlimited: as,

Sterben iſt Nichts, doch leben und nicht ſehen, das iſt ein Unglück, to die is nothing, yet to live and not to see, that is a misfortune indeed.

Der Wunſch gelobt zu werden, the wish to be praised.

Observations.

(1) The Infinitive *without* zu, (*to*) appears,

a. When, as a verbal substantive (§ 146. 3.), it is made either the subject or the object of a verb: as, Geben iſt ſeliger als Nehmen, to give is more blessed than to receive; das nennt er arbeiten, that he calls working.

b. When it stands alone, as in a dictionary: as, loben, to praise · lieben, to love.

c. After the verbs

heißen, to bid: as, ich hieß ihn gehen, I bade him go.
helfen, to help: as, er hilft mir ſchreiben, he helps me to write.
lehren,* to teach: as, er lehrt das Kind leſen, he teaches the child to read.
lernen,* to learn: as, wir lernen tanzen, we learn to dance.
hören, to hear: as, ich höre ſie ſingen, I hear them sing.
ſehen, to see: as, ich ſehe ihn kommen, I see him come.
fühlen, to feel: as, ich fühle den Puls ſchlagen, I feel his pulse beat.
finden, to find: as, ich fand das Buch auf dem Tiſche liegen, I found the book lying on the table.

d. After the auxiliaries of mood, mögen, können, laſſen, dürfen, ſollen, wollen and müſſen, and after werden, when employed as an auxiliary in forming the future tense.

e. After the verbs following, in certain phrases,

bleiben, to remain: as, er bleibt ſitzen, he continues sitting.
fahren, to go in a carriage: as, ich fahre ſpazieren, I ride out for an airing.

* Lehren and lernen form exceptions to the observation in the text: admitting, as they do sometimes, the particle zu between them and an Infinitive succeeding. The student will note, also, that the Infinitive after all these verbs, is, in English, often best rendered by a participle: as, er fühlte ſein Blut gähren, he felt his blood *boiling*.

Digitized by Google

gehen,	to go or walk:	as, er geht betteln, he goes begging.
haben,	to have:	as, er hat gut reden, he has easy talking, i. e. it is easy for him to talk.
legen,	to lay:	as, ich lege mich schlafen, I lay myself down to sleep.
machen,*	to make:	as, er machte mich lachen, he made me laugh.
nennen,	to name:	das nenne ich spielen, that I call playing.
reiten,	to ride:	as, ich reite spazieren, I ride out for exercise.
thun,*	to do:	as, er thut nichts als schelten, he does nothing but scold.

(2) The Infinitive *with* zu is employed:

a. After nouns and adjectives, which, in English, are followed either by the preposition *to* with the Infinitive or by *of* with a participle: as, ich war froh ihn zu sehen, I was glad to see him; Sie haben Lust zu spielen, you have a desire to play; ich bin müde es zu hören, I am tired of hearing it:

b. After verbs, to express the end or object of their action: as, ich komme mit Ihnen zu sprechen, I come to (i. e. in order to) speak with you: in which case also, the particle um often comes before zu, to render the expression more forcible: as, liebet die Tugend, um glücklich zu sein, love virtue, in order (um) to be happy.

c. After the verbs following and others of like import:

Anfangen, to begin.	Zögern, to delay.
Aufhören, to cease.	Gewöhnen, to accustom.
Befehlen, to command.	Dienen, to serve.
Bitten, to beg.	Hinreichen, to suffice.
Erwarten, to expect.	Warnen, to warn.
Hoffen, to hope.	Weigern, to refuse.
Fürchten, to fear.	Erkennen, † to acknowledge.
Drohen, to threaten.	Bekennen, † to confess.
Sich freuen, to rejoice.	Scheinen, to appear.
Sich schämen, to be ashamed.	Wünschen, to wish.
Sich rühmen, to boast.	Verlangen, to desire.

* Machen however, cannot, as in English, be used to signify to make or cause *by force:* thus, to translate the English phrase, *make him go out*, the Germans say, laß (not mache) ihn hinausgehen The Infinitive without zu comes after thun, only when nichts als precedes, in the example above.

† Erkennen and bekennen are construed mainly with the *preterite* of the Infinitive: as, er erkennt, sich geirrt zu haben, he acknowledges that he has been in error.

Digitized by Google

Bereuen, to regret.
Pflegen, to be wont.
Fortfahren, to proceed.
Unterlaſſen, to neglect.
Haben, to have.
Sein, to be.
Helfen, to help.
Vermeiden, to avoid.
Erlauben, to permit.
Geſtatten, to allow.
Verdienen, to deserve.
Wagen, to venture.
Wiſſen, to know.
Nutzen, to be of use.
Frommen, to avail.

d. After the prepositions ohne (*without*) and ſtatt or anſtatt (*instead of*): as, ohne ein Wort zu ſagen, without saying a word; anſtatt zu ſchreiben, instead of writing.

(3) The Infinitive in German, as intimated before, often performs the office of a verbal Substantive. It is then commonly preceded by the neuter of the article, and has all the various cases: as. das Lügen ſchadet dem Lügner am meiſten, lying injures the liar most; ich bin des Gehens müde, I am weary of walking; zum Reiſen biſt du nicht geſchickt. you are not fit for journeying.

(4) The Infinitive *active*, in German, after certain verbs, as, ſein, laſſen, verbieten, befehlen, &c. is not unfrequently employed *passively:* thus, laß ihn rufen, which (literally) means, let him *call*, may, also, signify, let him *be called;* es iſt keine Zeit zu verlieren, there is no time to lose, or to be lost.

(5) The Germans often employ the Indicative or Subjunctive, preceded by daß, where, in English, the Infinitive, preceded by *to*, is used: as, ich weiß, daß er der Mann iſt, I know him to be (literally, I know *that he is*) the man.

(6) The Infinitive, in English, preceded by the words *how*, *where*, *what*, *when*, and the like, after such verbs as, *tell*, *know*, *say* and *teach*, cannot be rendered literally into German: the Germans, in such cases, always using the Indicative or Subjunctive of such verbs as ſollen, müſſen, können: as, ich weiß, wie ich es thun muß, I know how *to* do it, or (literally) I know how I must do it; lehren Sie mich, was ich ſagen ſoll, teach me what *to* say. For the use of the Infinitive of mögen, wollen, ſollen, &c., in place of the past Participle See § 74. 8.

§ 147. THE PARTICIPLES.

(1) The Participles, in German, are varied by cases: following the same rules of inflection as the adjectives. Having the nature of adjectives, the Present in a *few*, and the Preterite in *many* instances, readily admit the degrees of comparison.

(2) The use of the Participle, as such, however, in German, is

Digitized by Google

far more restricted than in English. For, in English, it is commonly used to form a distinct clause of a sentence; and is thus made to indicate the *time*, *cause* or *means* of effecting that which is expressed in the main clause: thus, we say: Walking (that is, *by* or *when* walking) uprightly, we walk surely. This mode of expression can rarely, if ever, be adopted in German; into which language, if we desire to translate the above sentence, we must say: wenn wir aufrichtig wandeln, ſo wandeln wir ſicher, that is, *when* we walk uprightly, we walk surely.

(3) So, too, we say in English: *Having given* him the money, he went away; but, since there is nothing in German to correspond to this English compound Participle, it would be a gross error to attempt to render the sentence literally. Resort must be had, as in the other case, to a different structure: thus, als er ihm das Geld gegeben hatte, ging er weg, that is, *after* or *when* he had given him the money, he went away. In this way must all similar cases be managed: we must employ a *verb* in each clause and connect the two together by means of suitable conjunctions; such as, weil, wenn, als, da and indem.

§ 148. Rule.

The *Present Participle*, like an attributive adjective, agrees with its noun in gender, number and case; and may, also, govern the same case as the verb whence it is derived: as,

Der lachende Frühling, the smiling spring.
Kühlendes Getränke, cooling drink.
Die alles belebende Sonne, the all animating sun, i. e. the sun that animates all.

Observations.

(1) This Participle is seldom, if ever, otherwise employed with a noun than in an *attributive* sense. Its *predicative* use is found almost altogether in those words, that have so far lost character a Participles, as to be commonly recognized only as adjectives: as,

Reizend, charming.	Drückend, oppressive.
Kränkend, mortifying.	Fließend, flowing.
Einnehmend, captivating.	Hinreißend, overpowering.
Dringend, pressing.	

Such a combination, therefore, as, *I am reading*, *we are walking* and the like, which is so common in English, is wholly inadmissible in German; save in the instance of those Participles that have lost,

Digitized by Google

as just said, their true participial character: as, die Noth iſt dringend, the necessity is pressing.

(2) The Present Participle, in connection with the article, is often used substantively: the noun being understood; as, der Leſende, the reader, (literally) the (one) reading; die Sterbende, the dying (female).

(3) This Participle, however, cannot in German, as in English, be, by means of an article, turned into an abstract verbal *noun*. But in order properly to render such phrases as, *the reading*, *the writing*, into German, we must use the present of the Infinitive: thus, das Leſen, das Schreiben.

(4) The Present Participle, as stated in the RULE, may govern the case of its own verb; but it must be noted that the word so governed, always *precedes* the Participle: das uns verfolgende Geſchick, the *us* pursuing fate, i. e. the fate that pursues us. In some instances, the words are actually united, forming compounds: as, ehrliebend, honor-loving, that is, ambitious; geſetzgebend, law-giving, &c.

(5) The Present Participle is sometimes used with the power of an Adverb; that is, to express some circumstance of *manner* or *condition:* thus, weinend ſprach er zu mir, weeping (i. e. *weepingly*) he spoke to me; er ſetzte ſich ſchweigend nieder, keeping silent (i. e. *silently*) he sat down.

§ 149. RULE.

The *Preterite Participle* is not only used in the formation of the compound tenses, but may, also, be construed with nouns, after the manner of Adjectives: as,

Ich habe heute das Buch geleſen, I have read the book to-day.
Ein geliebtes Kind, a beloved child.
Der Mann iſt gelehrt, the man is learned.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) This Participle, in its character as an Adjective, is far more frequently employed in German than in English. Indeed, many Preterites in German, having lost all character as Participles, are now used exclusively as Adjectives.

(2) The Preterite, like the Present Participle, is sometimes used in an adverbial manner: thus, das Buch iſt verloren gegangen, the book is lost (literally, *gone lost*).

(3) This is especially the case with certain Participles employed with the verb kommen; as, er kömmt gefahren, he comes *driven*, i. e. driving in a carriage · er kömmt geritten, he comes *ridden*, i. e. riding

Digitized by Google

on horseback; er kömmt geflogen, he comes flying; er kömmt gelaufen, he comes running, &c.

(4) Kindred to this, is its use, when connected with a verb, to express the *condition* or *state* of the subject: as, jetzt ſterb' ich beruhigt, now I die content; in ſeine Tugend gehüllt, trotzt er der Verleumdung, wrapped in his virtue, he defies calumny.

(5) The Preterite Participle usually in connection with the accusative, is in some phrases employed *absolutely:* as, die Augen gen Himmel gerichtet, his eyes being directed towards heaven; den Gewinn abgerechnet, the profit being deducted; dieſen Fall ausgenommen, this case being excepted.

(6) This Participle is sometimes elliptically used for the Imperative. (See § 145. 3.)

§ 150. Rule.

The *Future Participle* is used, when the subject is to be represented as a thing that *must* or *ought* to take place: as,

Eine zu lobende That, a deed to be (i. e. that *ought* to be) praised.

Observations.

(1) What is called the Future Participle in German, is produced by placing zu before the present participle as above. It can be formed from transitive verbs only, and is always to be taken in a passive sense. It is chiefly to be found in the case of compound verbs: thus, hochzuehrender Herr, the-highly-to be-honored i. e. the honorable, Sir.

§ 151. THE ADVERBS.

Rule.

Adverbs qualify verbs, participles, adjectives and other adverbs: as,

Er ſchreibt ſelten, he writes seldom.

Er hat den Gegenſtand vortrefflich behandelt, he has treated the subject admirably.

Dieſes Buch iſt ſehr gut, this book is very good.

Er arbeitet nicht gern, he works unwillingly.

Observations.

Almost all adjectives in the absolute form are, in German, employed as Adverbs. See § 102. 3. For remarks on the position of Adverbs in sentences, see the section on the arrangement of words § 158.

Digitized by Google

§ 152. THE PREPOSITIONS.

RULE.

The Prepositions anſtatt, außerhalb, dieſſeits, &c. (See the List § 109.) are construed with the genitive.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) When the same Preposition governs several nouns in the same construction, it is put before the first only; as, ich bin von meiner Heimath, meinem Vaterlande und meinen Freunden getrennt, from my home, my country and my friends, am I separated.

(2) For the right use and position of some of the Prepositions, much attention is required. See the Observations on those construed with the genitive: § 110.

§ 153. RULE.

The Prepositions aus, außer, bei, &c. (See List § 111.) are construed with the dative. (See Obs. § 112.)

§ 154. RULE.

The Prepositions durch, für, gegen, &c. (See List § 113.) are construed with the accusative. (See Obs. § 114.)

§ 155. RULE.

The Prepositions an, auf, hinter, &c. (See List § 115.) govern the dative or accusative: the accusative, when motion or tendency *towards* is signified, but in the other situations the dative. (See Obs. § 116.)

§ 156. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

RULE.

Conjunctions connect words and sentences in construction, and show their mutual relation and dependence; as,

Johann und Wilhelm gehen zur Schule, John and William are going to school.

Ich ſah es; daher weiß ich es, I saw it; therefore I know it.

Er iſt älter als ich, he is older than I.

OBSERVATIONS.

(1) Under the general name of Conjunctions in this Rule, must be included all words performing the *office* of Conjunctions, whether

Digitized by Google

properly such or not. Of these connective words three classes are to be distinguished: 1. those that do not affect the order of the words of a sentence in which they occur (§ 160. 8.); 2. those that always remove the copula to the end of the sentence (§ 160. 7.); 3. and finally, those that do or do not remove the copula to the end, according as they stand before or after the subject (§ 160. 8.).

(2) The true force and use of the Conjunctions is best learned from examples; of which see a large collection in Lesson 69. We subjoin, however, a few remarks in explanation of the following:

a. Aber, allein, ſondern. Aber is less *adversative* than either of the others. It is often merely continuative. Allein always introduces what is contrary to what might be inferred from what precedes: as, er iſt ſehr fleißig, allein er lernt ſehr wenig, he is very industrious, *but* he learns very little. Sondern serves to introduce what is contradictory. It is used only when a negative precedes; nicht edel, ſondern kleinmüthig, not noble, *but* pusillanimous; es iſt weder ſchwarz, noch braun, ſondern grün, it is neither black nor brown, *but* green.

b. Daß, also auf daß, introduces a clause expressing the end, object or result: as, ich weiß, daß er kommt, I know *that* he is coming. This form of expression is more common in German than in English. When daß is left out, the copula comes immediately after the subject. See Note, page 445.

c. Doch introduces something unexpected or not properly proceeding from the antecedent: as, er iſt ſehr reich, und hat doch wenig gearbeitet, he is very rich, *yet* has he worked little. It is sometimes elliptically employed to indicate *certainty*, *entreaty* and the like: as, ſagen Sie mir doch, tell me, *pray*.

d. Je, like the definite article in English, is put before comparatives to denote proportion. It, then, has deſto for its correlative: thus, je fleißiger er iſt, deſto gelehrter wird er, *the* more diligent he is, *the* more learned he becomes. Deſto sometimes comes before je: as, ein Kunſtwerk iſt deſto ſchöner, je vollkommener es iſt, a work of art is *the* more beautiful, the more perfect it is. Sometimes je is employed before both comparatives: thus, je mehr, je beſſer, *the* more, *the* better. Sometimes deſto stands before a comparative without je answering to it: as, ich erwartete nicht meinen Freund zu finden, deſto größer aber war meine Freude, als ich ihn ſah, I did not expect to find my friend, but *the* greater was my joy, when I saw him.

e. Obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, indicate concession. The parts are often separated, especially by monosyllables: such as, ich du, er, es.

Digitized by Google

wir, ihr, ſie. Often two or three such little words come between: as, ob er gleich alt iſt, ꝛc., *although* he is old, &c.; ob ich mich gleich freue, ꝛc., *although* I rejoice, &c.

f. So, after such conjunctions: as, weil, als, da, wenn, nachdem, ob gleich, obſchon, obwohl, wenngleich and wiewohl, introduces the subsequent clause. This is chiefly the case, when the antecedent clause is long, or consists of several members: *Ex.* Weil dich Gott dies Alles gewahr werden ließ, ſo iſt Niemand ſo weiſe als du, since God hath given thee to know all this, so (therefore) is no one so wise as thou. So commonly, however, denotes comparison: as, der Knabe iſt ſo gut, als das Mädchen, the boy is *so* (as) good as the girl. So in the phrases, ſowohl als auch, or ſowohl als, *so* (as) well as: ſobald als, *so* (as) soon as, &c. With auch (ſo—auch) following, it signifies *however*: as, ſo groß die Schrecken des Krieges auch, ꝛc., *however* great the terrors of war, &c.; ſo reich er auch iſt, ꝛc., *however* rich he is, &c.

g The following are the more common correlatives: as,

Entweder,	either,	oder,	or.
Weder,	neither,	noch,	nor.
Wenn,	if,	ſo,	so, or then
Da,	when,	ſo,	then.
Je,	the,	je,	the.
Je,	the,	deſto,	the.
Sobald,	as soon,	als,	as.
Sowohl,	as well,	als,	as.
Wie,	as,	ſo,	so.
So,	so,	ſo,	so.
Nicht,	not,	ſondern,	but.
Nicht allein,	not only,	ſondern,	but.
Nicht nur,	not only,	ſondern auch,	but also.

§ 157. THE INTERJECTIONS.

Rule.

Interjections have no dependent construction.

Observations.

(1) Interjections stand generally before the nominative or the vocative; as, O! theuerſter Vater! But sometimes the genitive, and sometimes the dative, is preceded by an Interjection: as, O, der Freude! O the joy! Weh mir! Woe to me!

Digitized by Google

§ 158. COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

(1) In the arrangement of words in sentences, the German differs widely from the English. Many differences of collocation, accordingly, have already been noted and explained in various other parts of this work. But, as every word and member of a sentence in German, takes its position according to a definite law of arrangement, and cannot, without great offense against euphony, be thrown out of its proper place, we subjoin here some general instructions on this topic.

(2) The essential parts of every sentence, as already remarked (§ 119.), are the *Subject* and the *Predicate*. That which is used (properly some part of the verb of existence, ſein) to couple the subject and the predicate, is called the *Copula*. Now, arranging these three parts in their natural order, the subject will come first, the copula next, the predicate last: thus,

Subject.	*Copula.*	*Predicate.*
Die Blume	iſt	ſchön.
The flower	is	beautiful.
Das Pferd	war	ſtark.
The horse	was	strong.

(3) When, as in the case of simple tenses, the copula and the predicate are both contained in a single word, that word holds the place of the copula; while the place of the predicate either remains vacant, or is occupied by the object of the verb. Examples:

Subject.	*Copula.*	*Predicate.*
Die Blume	blüht.	—
The flower	blooms.	—
Wir	leſen	das Buch.
We	read	the book.
Die Soldaten	fechten.	—
The soldiers	fight.	—
Ich	ſehe	dieſen Mann.
I	see	this man.

(4) In the case of compound tenses, however, the auxiliary takes the place of the copula; which place is also held by the auxiliaries of mood (§ 74.): the place of the predicate being occupied by the infinitive or participle. If the verb be a compound separable (§ 90), the *particle* stands in the place of the predicate, while the radical forms the copula. Examples:

Digitized by Google

Subject.	*Copula.*	*Predicate.*
Ich	habe	geleſen.
I	have	read.
Wir	ſind	geweſen.
We	have	been.
Er	kann	ſchreiben.
He	can	write.
Sie	wurden	geſehen.
They	were	seen.
Er	geht	aus.
He	goes	out.

(5) When any of those verbs which assume the place of the copula, are employed in the compound form, the Participle or Infinitive belonging to them stands *after* the proper predicate. Examples:

Subject.	*Copula.*	*Predicate.*
Er	iſt	thöricht geweſen.
He	has	foolish been.
Er	wird	geleſen haben.
He	will	read have.
Sie	hätten	ſchreiben ſollen.
Sie	ſind	gehört worden.
Er	wird	geſehen worden ſein.
Er	iſt	ausgegangen.

(6) The object of a sentence comes between the copula and the Predicate; and, if there be two objects, that of the person precedes that of the thing. Examples:

Subject.	*Copula.*	1st *Object.*	2d *Object.*	*Predicate.*
Er	hat	einen Brief	—	geſchrieben.
Er	ſchreibt	meinen Brief	—	ab.
Er	iſt	ſeinem Freunde	—	gewogen.
Sie	ſind	eines Verbrechens	—	beſchuldigt worden.
Ich	habe	dem Knaben	ein Buch	gegeben.
Er	hat	den Sohn	einer Sünde	beſchuldigt.
Ich	habe	meinen Freund	—	um Rath* gefragt.

* Um Rath with fragen forms a phrase, (um Rath fragen, to ask for advice, which belongs to a class of phrases in German, in which a noun or adjective is made to play the same part in respect to a verb, that is sustained by a separable particle. This will account for the *position* of um Rath in the sentence: it being treated just like a separable prefix. Other phrases belonging to this class are:

Digitized by Google

(7) Should both objects, however, be persons, the accusative comes first: except the oblique cases of the personal pronouns (ich, du, er, ſie, es, wir, ihr, ſie), which always take the precedence. Examples:

Subj.	*Copula.*	1st *Object.*	2d *Object.*	*Predicate.*
Ich	habe	deinen Sohn	meinem Freunde	empfohlen.
Ich	habe	dir	meinen Sohn	empfohlen.
Er	wird	ihm	ſeine Tochter	geben.

(8) When two *personal* pronouns form the objects of a sentence, the accusative comes before the dative and the genitive. Examples:

Subj.	*Copula.*	1st *Object.*	2d *Object.*	*Predicate.*
Sie	haben	es	mir	gegeben.
Wir	nehmen	uns	ſeiner	an.
Er	hat	ſich	mir	empfohlen.

(9) Adverbs of degree and manner, or nouns governed by prepositions and serving in the place of adverbs, when they refer exclusively to the verb, stand immediately after the object. Examples:

Subj.	*Copula.*	*Object.*	*Adverb.*	*Predicate.*
Er	behandelt	ſeinen Gegenſtand	vortrefflich.	—
Er	hat	ſeinen Gegenſtand	vortrefflich	behandelt.
Er	hat	das Geld	mit Freuden	ausgegeben.

(10) Adverbs of time, and phrases used instead of adverbs of time, commonly come before the object and before adverbs of place. Examples:

Subj.	*Copula.*	*Adverb.*	*Object.*	*Predicate.*
Ich	habe	geſtern	einen Brief	geſchrieben.
Er	iſt	vor drei Tagen in London	—	angekommen.

(11) Adverbs of place, and nouns with prepositions, used as such, generally come immediately before the predicate. Examples:

Subj.	*Copula.*	*Object.*	*Adverb.*	*Predicate.*
Ich	habe	einen Brief	aus Berlin	erhalten.
Ich	werde	meinen Sohn	nach Paris	ſchicken.

Hülfe leiſten, to render aid.
Zu Hülfe kommen, to come to the aid.
Zu Mittag eſſen, to dine.
Sorge tragen, to take care.
Zu Grunde gehen, to perish.
Zu Grunde richten, to ruin.
Ins Werk ſetzen, to execute.
Zu Stande bringen, to accomplish.
Acht geben, to pay attention.
Ums Leben bringen, to deprive of life.
Trotz bieten, to bid defiance.
Zu Theil werden, to fall to one's part.
Rath geben, to give advice.
Gehör geben, to grant a hearing.
Gefahr laufen, to run a risk.
Still ſtehen, to stand still.
Feſt halten, to hold fast.

Digitized by Google

(12) Nouns and pronouns with the prepositions appropriate to the verb employed in the sentence, generally come immediately before the predicate. Examples:

Ich habe niemals über den Gegenstand mit ihm gesprochen.
Ich werde niemals in meinem Leben zu ihm gehen.

When, however, the preposition with its noun is merely used to denote the cause or purpose, &c., of what is expressed by the verb, it stands before the object. Examples:

Wir tranken gestern aus Mangel an Bier Wasser.
Ich konnte ihm vor Freuden keine Antwort geben.

§ 159. Inversion.

(1) In all the cases preceding, the natural order of the leading parts has been preserved; that is, the subject first, the copula next, and the predicate last. But for the sake of giving special emphasis to particular words, this order is often inverted. Thus, the real, or logical subject is made emphatic by being put *after* the copula: the pronoun **es** taking its place as a grammatical subject: as, **es hebt die Freiheit ihre Fahne auf**, *liberty* uplifts her standard. When, again, either the copula or the predicate is to be rendered emphatic, they exchange places: thus, (*predicate emphatic*) sterben müssen Alle, *die* must all. The chief places in which the copula receives the stress, are,

a. in direct questions; as, schreibt der Mann?

b. in imperatives; as, sprechen Sie mit ihm;

c. in the case of mögen, when used to express a wish; as, möge es der Himmel geben!

d. in cases where surprise (generally with doch) is to be expressed; as, ist doch die Stadt wie gekehrt!

(2) When, on any one of those words which, in the natural order, come between the copula and the predicate, we wish to lay special emphasis, it must be put either before the other words standing between the copula and the predicate, or else before the subject. In this latter case, however, the subject and the copula exchange places: thus, nur von Edlem kann Edles stammen; where the common order would be: Edles kann nur von Edlem stammen. These inversions, however, chiefly occur when principal and subordinate sentences are connected by conjunctions.

Digitized by Google

§ 160. SENTENCES: PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.

(1) A principal sentence is one that expresses by itself an independent proposition: thus, *It was reported; He deserves; John toils.*

(2) A subordinate sentence is one, that serves as the complement to a principal sentence; and without which it conveys no complete idea. Thus, in the expressions, *It was reported, that the town was taken; He deserves, that we should defend him; John toils, although he is rich:* the first, in each case, is the principal and the second the subordinate sentence.

(3) In the natural order, the principal precedes the subordinate sentence. But this order is often reversed; in which case the order of the subject and the copula in the principal sentence, is also reversed. Thus, in the natural order we say, ich weiß, daß er es nicht thun kann, *I know*, that he can not do it. Putting the subordinate sentence first, it will stand: daß er es nicht thun kann, weiß ich, that he can not do it, *know I.*

(4) When, however, the subordinate sentence comes in after the copula (i. e. before a *part* only) of the principal sentence, the natural order of the latter remains unchanged: as, ich fand, als ich in London ankam, meinen Freund nicht.

(5) In subordinate sentences, the common order of the leading parts, differs from that of principal sentences, in making the copula* come *last*, i. e. in making the copula and the predicate exchange places. Examples:

		Copula.
Er,	welcher mir den Brief	brachte.
He,	who to me the letter	*brought.*
Der,	deſſen Herz rein	iſt.
Ich weiß,	wo ich ihn geſehen	habe.
Er ſagt,	daß er es nicht thun	kann.
Er iſt arm,	weil er ſehr träge	iſt.

(6) The subordinate sentence is usually connected with the principal one by means of some conjunctive word. The conjunctive word so employed, is either a relative pronoun, a relative adverb, or some conjunction proper, expressing cause, condition, purpose, limitation or the like. See the examples under the preceding paragraph.

(7) The conjunctions employed in connecting principal with subordinate sentences, are, als, auf daß, bevor, bis, da, dafern, damit, daß,†

* The copula is sometimes entirely omitted; as, Das Buch, das er mir gegeben; the book that he (has given me.

† Daß is sometimes omitted; in which case the copula stands, not at the end, but just as in a principal sentence: thus, er ſagt, er könne ſchreiben.

Digitized by Google

dieweil, ehe, falls indem, je, je nachdem, nachdem, nun, ob, obgleich, obschon, obwohl, seitdem, ungeachtet, während, weil, wenn, ‡ wenn nicht, wenn gleich, wenn schon, wenn auch, wie, wie auch, wiewohl, wo, wofern, obzwar. These all remove the copula to the *end* of the sentence.

(8) The following are the conjunctive adverbs, which are used to connect subordinate sentences with principal ones, after the manner of real conjunctions: außerdem, daher, dann, alsdann, darum, deßwegen, deßhalb, dennoch, dessenungeachtet, deßgleichen, desto, einerseits, anderseits, endlich, ferner, folglich, gleichwohl, hernach, indessen, (indeß), nachher, kaum, mithin, nichtsdestoweniger, nicht allein, nicht nur, nicht bloß, noch, nur, sonst, theils, ingleichen, in so fern, in so weit (so weit), jedoch, übrigens, überdies, vielmehr, wohl, zudem, zwar. These all reverse the order of subject and copula, when they stand *before* the subject; when, however, they come after the copula, the natural order of the sentence obtains.

Je mehr man hat, desto mehr verlangt man.	The more one has the more one desires.
Er ist krank, daher bleibt er zu Hause.	He is sick, hence he stays at home.
Nachher ging er wieder weg.	Afterward he went away again.

(9) Allein, denn, sondern, und and oder always stand at the head of a sentence without influencing the order of the other words. Aber and nämlich may, also, occupy the first place without changing the position of the other words.

(10) Where a mood-auxiliary, or any such verb as takes the infinitive without zu, occurs together with an other infinitive, the copula stands *before* the two infinitives: thus, wenn ich es hätte thun müssen &c., not wenn ich thun müssen hätte.

IDIOMATIC PHRASES.

There are in German, as in other languages, numerous idiomatic phrases. Many of these can not be rendered literally into English without a great sacrifice both of sense and sound. Still their meaning and application must be familiar to the student. We give below, therefore, a somewhat extended list; adding, to each, either some equivalent phrase in our own language, or, where it will bear it, a regular translation. In every case, however, it will be highly advantageous to the student to put the phrase first in a perfectly literal dress, and then deduce from it, if possible, the thought, which it is employed to convey.

‡ When wenn is left out the subject and copula stand as in a question: thus, wenn ich es geschrieben hätte, &c., or (without wenn) hätte ich es geschrieben, so würde ich es Ihnen gesagt haben.

Digitized by Google

Achten Sie es nicht so gering.	Do not think so light of it.
An der Sache ist nichts auszusetzen.	No fault can be found with it.
Auf's Ungewisse.	Upon an uncertainty.
Bei stockfinsterer Nacht.	At the dead of the night.
Bei der Sache ist ein Aber.	There is a *'but'* in the matter.
Darauf ist es eben angelegt.	This was the very aim.
Das Schiff lag vor Anker.	The vessel rode at anchor.
Das Buch läßt sich lesen.	The book is readable.
Das läßt sich sehen.	That looks well; that will do.
Das hat keine Art.	That is unbecoming; unseemly.
Das läßt sich nicht blasen.	That cannot be done in a trice.
Das habe ich mir bald gedacht.	I thought so soon enough.
Dem ist nicht zu helfen.	There is no remedy for it.
Den Kürzern ziehen.	To get the worse of it.
Der Name will mir nicht beifallen.	The name does not occur to me.
Die Haare standen mir zu Berge.	My hair stood on end.
Die Fenster gehen in den Garten.	The windows look into the garden.
Die Waare findet keinen Abgang.	There is no demand for the article.
Die Waare findet starken Absatz.	The article finds a ready market.
Eile mit Weile.	Slow and sure (hasten slowly).
Ein Erz-Schurke.	An arrant knave.
Ein vornehmer Mann.	A man of rank; a leading man
Einem Pferde die Sporen geben.	To clap spurs to a horse.
Einem auf den Leib gehen.	To attack or assault one.
Einem an die Hand gehen.	To go to one's aid.
Einen herausfordern.	To challenge or call out one.
Einen anfahren.	To address one harshly.
Einen an seinem Geburtstage anbinden.	To make a present to one on his birth-day.
Einen aufziehen.	To quiz one.
Sie ist unter die Haube gekommen.	She has got married.
Er prahlt gern, *or* schneidet gern auf.	He is fond of talking big.
Er läßt es sich sehr angelegen sein.	He makes it his business.
Er sah mich starr an.	He stared me in the face.
Er stellt sich unwissend an.	He affects ignorance.
Er hat sich losgemacht.	He has got off.
Er hält übel Haus.	He is a poor manager.
Er mußte schwören.	He was put to his oath.
Er weiß weder aus noch ein.	He is sadly put to it.
Er riecht den Braten.	He smells the rat.
Er hat sich davon gemacht.	He has run away.
Er läßt viel darauf gehen.	He spends a great deal of money.
Er hat sich mit seinen Gläubigern abgefunden.	He has come to term with his creditors

Digitized by Google

Er hat es so in der Art.	It is his way.
Er hat endlich seine Waare an den Mann gebracht.	He has found a market at last.
Er macht es gar zu bunt.	He is too bad; he goes too far.
Er geht nur darauf aus.	He aims at nothing else.
Es wird nicht angehen.	It will not do.
Es sieht sehr darnach aus.	It looks very much like it.
Es geht mir nichts ab.	I want for nothing.
Es geht bunt zu.	These are strange goings on.
Es reißt in den Beutel.	It costs a great deal of money.
Blau läßt nicht schön auf Grün.	Blue does not look well on green.
Ich halte viel auf meine Schwester.	I set a great store by my sister.
Ich kann ihn gut leiden.	I like him well.
Ich kann mich nicht darauf besinnen.	I cannot recollect it.
Ich frage nichts darnach.	I do not care for it.
Ich kann den Mann nicht ausstehen.	I cannot bear the man.
Ich thäte es selber nicht.	I would not do it myself.
Ich will es mit ihm nicht so genau nehmen.	I won't stand upon it with him.
Ich bin dahinter gekommen.	I have found it out.
Ich lasse es gehen wie es will.	I let things go as they will.
Was hat er vor?	What is he about?
Ihm fällt jede Kleinigkeit auf.	Every trifle catches his attention.
In Beschlag nehmen.	To seize (goods).
Jedermann mag ihn gut leiden.	He is liked by every one.
Kehren Sie sich nicht an ihn.	Never mind him.
Kein Blatt vor das Maul nehmen.	To speak fearlessly.
Kurz angebunden sein.	To be irritable.
Langen Sie zu, meine Herren.	Help yourselves, Gentlemen
Lassen Sie mich zufrieden.	Let me alone.
Mein Nachbar läßt mir sagen.	My neighbor sends me word.
Mir nichts, dir nichts.	Without any ado.
Setzen Sie Ihren Hut auf.	Put your hat on.
Sie hat ihn darum gebracht.	She made him lose it.
Sie ergriffen das Hasenpanier.	They took to their heels.
Sie geben mir immer die Schuld.	You always blame me.
Sie thun der Sache zu viel.	You are carrying the thing too far
Was geht das mich an?	What is that to me?
Was hil' mir's?	What am I the better for it?
Was fällt Ihnen ein?	What an idea!
Was wollte ich doch sagen?	What was I going to say?
Weit gefehlt.	You are quite out.
Wenn ich sie zu sehen bekomme.	If I get a sight of her.
Wenn's mir fehl schlägt.	If I do not succeed.
Wenn ich anders recht daran bin.	If I am not mistaken

Digitized by Google

EXERCISES IN COMPOSING GERMAN.

In the following list, together with the vocabularies, English as well as German, the pupil will find an ample stock of words for the construction of the proposed sentences (see p. 79) according to any one of the several Lessons. Thus, for instance, on the

MODEL ACCORDING TO LESSON X,

the sentence, *Ex.* 16, „Dieſer Müller iſt der Sohn jenes Bauers," may be changed as follows: Jener Bauer iſt der Freund dieſes Müllers; *or*, Jener Müller giebt dem Bauer das Korn; *or*, Dieſer Bauer verkauft dem Müller das Korn; *or*, Der Müller verkauft dieſem Bauer das Mehl; *or*, the sentence may be so varied as to embrace the instructions of several of the preceding Lessons, either with or without the introduction of words which have not already occurred in former Exercises.

MODEL EXERCISES ACCORDING TO LESSON XII,

Exercise 20. 1. Ihr Vater hat ein Glas und einen Hammer auf dem Tiſche; *or*, Mein Bruder hat ein Feuer in ſeinem Ofen; *or*, Unſer Freund hat mein Glas und Ihren Stuhl; *or*, Mein Hund ſteht zwiſchen meinem Freunde und unſerem Lehrer.

A similar course may be pursued with any other sentence in any given Exercise; a less or more advanced lesson being selected, as a model, according to the progress or capacity of the pupil.

EXERCISES ACCORDING TO LESSON XXXVI.

Exercise 68. 1. Was hat der Müller in den kleinen Säcken? 2. Er hat Mehl darin. 3. Wer hat die Gurken? 4. Die Köche haben ſie. 5. Wer hat die ſilberne Lichtputze gehabt? 6. Wo ſind die Schaufeln und der Schaumlöffel? 7. Welche Gemälde haben die Maler gehabt?

Digitized by Google

I. Professions and Trades. Handwerke und Gewerbe.

Apothe'ker, *m.* –s,° apothecary.
Arzt, *m.* –es; *pl.* Aerzte, physician.
Barb'er', *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, barber.
Bau'meister, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, architect
Bild'hauer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, sculptor.
Bischof, *m.* –s, *pl.* Bischöfe, bishop.
Böttcher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cooper.
Brauer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, brewer.
Buch'binder, *m.* –s, bookbinder.
Buch'drucker, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, printer.
Capellan', *m.* –s, *pl.* –, chaplain.
Chirurg', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, surgeon.
Dach'decker, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, slater.
Farber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, dyer.
Fisch'händler, *m.* –s, *pl.* fishmonger.
Fleischer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, butcher.
Fuhrmann, *pl.* –leute, wagoner.
Geist'liche, *m.* –n, clergyman.
Gerber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, currier.
Glaser, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, glazier.
Gold'schmied, *m.* –es, goldsmith.
Hand'schuhmacher, *m.* –s, glover.
Hirt, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, herdman.
Hufschmied, *m.* –es, farrier.
Juwelier', *m.* –es, jeweler.
Köhler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, collier.
Küfer, *m.* –s, *pl.* (See Böttcher.)
Künstler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, artist.
Kup'ferschmied, *m.* –es, brazier.
Kup'ferstecher, *m.* –s, graver.
Mäher, *m.* –s, *pl.* mower.
Markt'schreier, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, quack.
Maurer, *m.* –s. *pl.* –, mason.
Messer'schmied, *m.* –es, cutler.
Metzger, *m.* –s. (See Fleischer.)
Musikant', *m.* –en, musician.
Nacht'wächter, *m.* –s, watchman.
Nä'herin, *pl.* –nen, seamstress.
Naturforscher, *m.* –s, naturalist.
Obst'händlerin, fruitwoman.
Papst, *m.* –es, *pl.* Päpste, pope.
Perrück'enmacher, hair-dresser.
Pfarrer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, vicar, parson.
Pfer'dehändler, *m.*, horsedealer.
Philisoph', *m.* –en, philosopher.
Pre'diger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, preacher.
Priester, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, priest.
Redner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, orator.
Sattler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, saddler.
Schau'spieler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, actor.
Schlosser, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, locksmith.
Schmied, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, smith.
Schneider, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tailor.
Schorn'steinfeger, chimney-sweep.
Schrift'steller, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, author.
Schuh'flicker, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cobbler.
Schul'lehrer, *m.* –s, schoolteacher.
Seiler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, rope-maker.
Specerei'händler, grocer.
Stick'erin, *pl.* –nen, embroideress.
Tag'löhner, *m.* –s, day-laborer.
Tapezi'rer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, upholsterer
Trödler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, fripperer.
Tuch'händler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, draper.
Uhr'macher, *m.* –s, watchmaker.
Wäsch'erin, *pl.* –nen, washer-woman.
Weber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, weaver.
Wechsler, *m.* –s, money-exchanger.
Wundarzt, *pl.* –ärzte, See Chirurg.
Zahnarzt, *pl.* –ärzte, dentist.
Zuck'erbäcker, confectioner.

II. Man. Der Mensch.

Alter, *n.* –s, old age.
Amme, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, nurse.
Braut, *f.* –, *pl.* Bräute, bride.
Bräu'tigam, *m.* –s, bridegroom.
E'hefrau, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, wife.
E'hemann, *pl.* –männer, husband.
Enkel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, grand son.
En'kelin, *pl.* –nen, grand daughter.
Fami'lie, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, family.
Geburt', *f.* –, birth.
Gemahl', *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, Gemahlin, *f.* –, *pl.* –nen, } consort.
Groß'mutter, –mütter, grandmother.
Groß'vater, –väter, grandfather.
Jugend, *f.* –, youth.
Jungfrau, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, virgin.
Jüngling, *m.* –s, young man.
Kindheit, *f.* –, childhood, infancy.
Nachkommen, *pl.* descendants.
Pathe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, godfather.

* For *declension* and formation of *plural*, see p. 80; *connected view of declensions*, page 104.

Digitized by Google

Pathe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, godmother.
Pfle'gevater, *pl.* –väter, fosterfather.
Schwager, brother-in-law.
Schwa'gerin, sister-in-law.
Schwie'germutter, mother-in-law.
Schwie gerſohn, son-in-law.
Schwie'gervater, father-in-law.
Stief'mutter, stepmother.
Stiefſohn, *m.* –es, stepson.
Stiefvater, *m.* –s, stepfather.
Ur'enkel, great-grand son.
Ur'großvater, great-grand father.
Verlo'bung, *pl.* –en, betrothment.
Vor'fahren, *pl.* ancestors.
Waiſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, orphan.
Wittwe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, widow.
Wittwer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, widower.
Zwilling, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, twin.

III. The Human Body. Der menſchliche Körper.

Ader, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, vein.
Arm *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, arm.
Aug apfel, *pl.* –äpfel, eye-ball, pupil.
Au'genbraune, *pl.* –n, eye-brow.
Au'genlied, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, eye-lid.
Au'genwimpern, *pl.* eye-lashes.
Backen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cheek.
Back'enbart, *pl.* –bärte, whiskers.
Bart, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Bärte, beard.
Bein, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, leg.
Blut, *n.* –es, –s, blood.
Bruſt, *f.* –, *pl.* Brüſte, breast.
Buſen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, bosom.
Daumen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, thumb.
El'bogen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, elbow.
Ferſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, heel.
Fleiſch, *n.* –es, flesh.
Galle, *f.* –, gall.
Gaumen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, palate.
Gehirn', *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, brain.
Gelenk', *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, joint.
Gerip'pe, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, skeleton.
Geſicht', *n. pl.* –e, –er, sight.
Geſichts'punkt, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –züge, lineament, feature.
Glied, *n.* limb, member.
Hals, *m.* –es, *pl.* Hälſe, neck.
Haut, *f.* –, *pl.* Häute, skin.
Herz, *n.* –ens, *pl.* en, heart.
Hüfte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, hip.
Kehle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, throat.
Knie, *n.* –s, *pl.* Kniee, knee.
Knochen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, bone.
Körper, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, body.
Leber, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, liver.
Lippe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lip.
Lunge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lungs.
Magen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, stomach.
Mark, *n.* –es, –s, marrow.
Milz, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, spleen.
Mund, *m. pl.* Münder, mouth.
Muskel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, muscle.
Nacken, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, nape.
Nagel, *m.* –s, *pl.* Nägel, nail.
Naſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, nose.
Nerv, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, nerve.
Nieren, *pl.* –, loins.
Rippe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, rib.
Rückgrat, *m.* & *n.* spine.
Schädel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, skull.
Schenkel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, thigh.
Schlaf, *m. pl.* Schläfe, temple.
Schlag'ader, *f.* –, *pl.* –n' artery.
Schulter, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, shoulder.
Seite, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, side.
Stirn, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, forehead.
Wade, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, calf.
Wange, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cheek.
Zahnfleiſch, *n.* –es, gum.
Zehe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, toe.
Zunge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tongue.

IV. Maladies, Remedies. Krankheiten, Heilmittel.

Anfall, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –fälle, fit.
Balſam, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, balm.
Blattern, *pl.* the small-pox.
Blindheit, *f.* –, blindness.
Branntwein, *m.* brandy.
Brech'mittel, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, vomitive.
Fieber, *n.* –s, fever.
Geſchwulſt', Geſchwülſte, swelling.
Geſchwür', *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, ulcer.
Gicht, f. –, gout.
Heilung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, cure.
Hei'ſerkeit, *f.* –, hoarseness.
Huſten, *m.* –s, cough.
Jelappe, *f.* jalap.
Kolik, *f.* –, colic.
Krampf, *m.* Krämpfe, cramp.
Krebs, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, cancer.
Maſern, *pl.* measles.

Digitized by Google

Mittel, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, remedy.
Narbe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, scar.
Ner'venfieber, *n.* –s, nervous-fever.
Ohnmacht, *f.* –, fainting.
Pocken, *pl.* (See Blattern.)
Quetſchung, *pl.* –en, contusion.
Recept', *n. pl.* –e, prescription.
Salbe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, salve.
Scharlachfieber, scarlet-fever.
Schielen, *n.* –s, squinting.
Schnupfen, *m.* –s, cold.
Schwindel, *m.* –s, dizziness.
Schwindſucht, *f.* –, consumption.
Stammeln, *n.* –s, stammering.
Stummheit, *f.* –, dumbness.
Sucht, die fallende, epilepsy.
Taubheit, *f.* –, deafness.
Ue'belkeit, *f.* –, nausea.
Un'päßlichkeit, indisposition.
Verren'kung, *pl.* –en, dislocation.
Waſſerſucht, *f.* –, dropsy.
Wunde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, wound.

V. Articles of Dress, etc. Kleidungsſtücke, ꝛc.

Aermel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, sleeve.
Armband, *pl.* –bänder, bracelet.
Atlas, *m.* –ſſes, *pl.* –ſſe, satin.
Barchent, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, dimity.
Batiſt', m. –es, *pl.* –e, cambric.
Baum'wolle, *f.* –, cotton.
Bein'kleider, *pl.* pantaloons.
Beſatz', *m.* –es, *pl.* –ſätze, trimming.
Beutel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, purse, bag.
Brille, *f.* –, *p.* –n, spectacles.
Bruſt nadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, broach.
Bürſte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, brush.
Degen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, sword.
Diamant, *m.* diamond.
El'fenbein, *n.* –es, –s, ivory.
Fächer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, fan.
Flor, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Flöre, crape.
Frack, *m. pl.* Fräcke, dress-coat.
Franſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fringe.
Futter, *n.* –s, lining.
Geſchmei'de, *n.* –s, jewelry.
Granat', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, garnet.
Gürtel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, sash.
Haarnadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, hair-pin.
Halsband, *n. pl.* –bänder, neck-lace.
Halstuch, *n. pl.* –tücher, neck-cloth.
Haube, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cap.
Hemd, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –en, shirt.
Hoſen, *pl.* breeches.
Ho'ſenträger, *m.* suspenders.
Kamaſch'en, *pl.* gaiters.
Kamm, *m. pl.* Kämme, comb.
Kappe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cap.
Kleid, *n.* –es, dress, gown.
Kopfputz, *m.* –es, head-dress.
Kragen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, collar.
Lein'wand, *f.* –, linen.
Locke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, curl.
Muſſelin', *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, muslin.
Mütze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, (See Kappe.)
Na'delkiſſen, *n.* –s, pin-cushion.
Näh'nadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, needle.
O'berrock, *m. pl.* –röcke, frock-coat
Ohrring, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, ear-ring.
Pelzwerk, *n.* –es, s, *pl.* –e, fur.
Perle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pearl.
Poma'de, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pomatum.
Riech'fläſchchen, *n.* smelling-bottle.
Ring, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, ring.
Sammet, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, velvet.
Scheere, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, shears.
Schlafrock, *m.* dressing-gown.
Schleier, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, vail.
Schloß, *n.* –es, *pl.* Schlöſſer, clasp.
Schnalle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, buckle.
Schnürbruſt, *f.* –, *pl.* –brüſte, stays.
Schnür'nadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bodkin.
Schooß, *m.* –es, *pl.* Schöße, lap.
Schürze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, apron.
Seide, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, silk.
Socke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sock.
Son'nenſchirm, *m.* parasol.
Spitzen, *pl.* laces.
Sporen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, spur.
Stecknadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pin.
Stie'felknecht, *m.* boot-jack.
Strumpf, *m. pl.* Strümpfe, stocking
Taffet, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, taffeta.
Taſche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pocket.
Un'terhoſen, *pl.* drawers.
Weſte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, vest.
Wichſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, blacking.
Zahn'bürſte, *f.* tooth-brush.
Zahn'ſtocher, *m.* tooth-pick.

Digitized by Google

VI. Town and House, etc. Die Stadt und das Haus, ꝛc.

Balken, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, beam.
Bank, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, bank.
Baum'garten, *pl.* –gärten, orchard.
Baum'ſchule, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, nursery.
Bibliothek, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, library.
Börſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, exchange.
Brett, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –er, plank.
Brücke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bridge.
Brunnen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, well.
Capel'le, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chapel.
Caſer'ne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, barrack.
Dach, *n.* –es, *pl.* Dächer, roof.
Dachrinne, *f* gutter, spout.
Decke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, ceiling.
Dorf, *n. pl.* Dörfer, village.
Erd'geſchoß, *n.* ground-floor.
Fenſterladen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –läden, window-shutters.
Flecken, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, borough.
Fuß'boden, *m.* –s, *pl.* –böden, floor.
Gaſſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lane.
Gefängniß, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, prison.
Gewächs'haus, *n. pl.* –häuſer, greenhouse.
Gewölbe, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, vault.
Glocke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bell.
Glock'enſpiel, *n.* –es, chime.
Goſſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, kennel.
Hauptſtadt, *f.* –, *pl.* –ſtädte, metropolis, chief town.
Hecke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, hedge.
Hof, *m. pl.* Höfe, court, yard.
Hütte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cottage, hut.
Kalk, *m.* –es, –s, lime.
Kamin, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, chimney.
Kammer, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chamber.
Keller, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cellar.
Kirchhof, *m.* –es, *pl.* –höfe, burying-place, church-yard.
Kirchſpiel, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, parish.
Kirchthurm, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –thürme, tower, belfry of a church.
Kloſter, *n.* –s, *pl.* Klöſter, cloister.
Küche *f.* –, *pl.* –n, kitchen.
Landhaus, *n.* country-house
Land'ſtraße, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, highway.
Mauer, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, wall.
Mei'erhof, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –höfe, farm.
Möbeln, *pl.* furniture.
Mörtel, *m.* –s, mortar.
Münze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, mint, coin.
Ofen, *m.* –s, *pl.* Oefen, stove.
Palaſt, *m.* –es, *pl.* Paläſte, palace.
Pflaſter, *n.* –s, pavement.
Poſt, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, post-office.
Pumpe, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, pump.
Rathhaus, *n.* –es, *pl.* häuſer, town house, council-house.
Riegel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, bolt, door-bar
Saal, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Säle, saloon.
Sacriſtei', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, vestry.
Schau'ſpielhaus, *n.* theater.
Schelle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n. bell (small).
Scheune, *f.* –, granary, barn.
Schlaf'zimmer, *n.* –s, bed-room.
Schloß, *n.* –ſſes, castle, lock.
Schiefer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, slate.
Schornſtein, *m.* (See Kamin.)
Speicher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, loft, garret.
Spital', *n.* –es, *pl.* –täler, hospital.
Stadtthor, *n.* –es. *pl.* –e, city-gate.
Stadt'viertel, *n.* quarter of (the) town.
Stall, *m.* –es, *pl.* Ställe, stable,
Stockwerk, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, story.
Stube, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chamber.
Treibhaus, *n.* hot-house.
Trep'pengeländer, *n.* stair-case-rail.
Thurm, *m.* Thürme, tower, steeple.
Umge'bungen, *pl.* environs.
Vor'zimmer, *n.* ante-chamber.
Vorſtadt, *f.* –, *pl.* –ſtädte, suburb.
Wand, *f.* –, Wande, wall (of house)
Weinberg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, vine-yard
Wieſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, meadow.
Zeughaus, *n. pl.* –häuſer, arsenal.
Ziegel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tile.
Zie'gelſtein, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, brick.
Zollhaus, *n.* custom.-house.

VII. Furniture, etc. Mobilien, ꝛc.

Becher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tumbler, cup.
Bett, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –en, bed.
Bett'decke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, coverlet.
Bett'lade, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bedstead.
Betttuch, *n.* –es, *pl.* –tücher, sheet.
Bla'ſebalg, *m. pl.* –bälge, bellows.
Bü'cherbrett, *n.* book-shelf.
Bü'cherſchrank, *m.* book-case.
Bü'geleiſen, *n.* smoothing-iron.
Caſſerol', *n.* –s, *pl.* –e, sauce-pan.
Deckel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cover.
Eimer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, bucket.

Digitized by Google

Faß, *n.* –ſſes, *pl.* Fäſſer, cask.
Fe'derbett, *n.* –es, feather-bed.
Feu'erſtahl, *m. pl.* –ſtahle, steel.
Feu'erſtein, *m.* –es, –e, *pl.* –e, flint.
Feu'erzange, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tongs.
Feu'erzeug, *n.* –es, tinder-box.
Fußbank, *f.* –, *pl.* –bänke, foot-stool.
Gedeck', *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, cover.
Gemal'de, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, picture.
Handtuch, *n.* –es, *pl.* –tücher, towel.
Herd, *m.* –es, –e, *pl.* –e, hearth.
Holz'kohle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, charcoal.
Kaſtchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, box. (L. 24. 1.)
Keſſel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, kettle.
Kerze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, taper, candle.
Kiſte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chest.
Komo'de, *f.* –, chest of drawers.
Kopf'kiſſen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, pillow.
Korb, *m.* –es, –e, *pl.* Körbe, basket.
Kron'leuchter, *m.* chandelier.
Krug, *m.* –es' *pl.* Krüge, pitcher.
Kübel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, pail, tub.
Küch'engeſchirr, *n.* kitchen utensil.
Lampe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lamp.
Later'ne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lantern.
Licht, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, (See Kerze.)
Licht'putze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, snuffers.
Mörſer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, mortar.
Pfanne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pan.
Pfeffer'büchſe, *f.* –, pepper-box.
Pfropfen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cork.
Pfropfenzieher, *m.* cork-screw.
Pfühl, *m.* –s, *pl.* Pfühle, bolster.
Polſter, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, bolster.
Pult, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, desk.
Rahmen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, frame.
Salzfaß, *n. pl.* –faſſer, salt-cellar
Schachtel, *f.* –, (See Kaſtchen.)
Schaufel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, shovel.
Schaum'löffel, *m.* –s, skimmer.
Schirm, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, screen.
Schrank, *m. pl.* Schränke, cupboard.
Schub'lade, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, drawer.
Schür'eiſen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, poker.
Schwe'felhölzchen, *n.* match.
Seife, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, soap.
Senftopf, *m.* –töpfe, mustard-pot.
Servier'te, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, napkin.
Sieb, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, sieve.
Sopha, *n.* –s, *pl.* –s, sofa.
Stein'kohle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, coal.
Sup'penſchüſſel, *f.* –, tureen.
Teppich, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, carpet.
Tiegel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, skillet.
Tiſchtuch, *n. pl.* –tücher, table-cloth
Topf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Töpfe, pot.
Trichter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, funnel.
Wand'leuchter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, sconce.
Wärm'flaſche, *f.* –, warming-pan.
Waſch'becken, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, washbowl
Wiege, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cradle.
Zuck'erdoſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sugar-box.
Zunder, *m.* –s, tinder.

VIII. Dishes. Gerichte.

Confect', *n.* comfit, sweet-meats.
Ei, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, egg.
Ei'erkuchen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, omelet.
Erfriſch'ung, *f.* –, refreshment.
Fleiſch'brühe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, broth.
Gaſtmahl, *n.* –es, –mähler, banquet
Ham'melfleiſch, *n.* –es, mutton.
Ham melkeule, *f.* –, leg of mutton.
Kalbfleiſch, *n.* –es, veal.
Kalbs cotelet'te, *f.* cutlet.
Kloß, *m.* –es, *pl.* Klöße, dumpling.
Nudel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, vermicelli.
Och'ſenbraten, *m.* roast-beef.
Och'ſenfleiſch, –es, beef.
Pfann'kuchen, *m.* –s, pan-cake.
Schinken, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, ham.
Schwei'nefleiſch, *n.* –es, pork.
Suppe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, soup.
Torte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tart.
Wurſt, *f.* –, *pl.* Würſte, sausage.

IX Grain and Vegetables. Getreide und Gemüſe.

Blu'menkohl, *m.* –es, cauliflower.
Bohne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bean.
Erbſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pea.
Gerſte, *f.* –, barley.
Gurke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cucumber.
Hafer, *m.* –s, oats.
Hirſe, *m.* –n, millet.
Knoblauch, *m.* –es, –s, garlic.
Kohl, *m.* –es, –e, cabbage.
Korn, *n.* –es, *pl.* Körner, corn, grain
Kraut, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* Kräuter, herb
Kreſſe, *f.* –, cress.
Linſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lentil.
Mais, *n.* –es, maize.

Digitized by Google

Meer'rettig, *m.* horse-radish.
Paſtina'ke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, parsnip.
Peterſi'lie, *f.* –, parsley.
Pflanze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, plant.
Pilz, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, mushroom.
Radieß'chen, *n.* –s, turnip-radish.
Reiß, *m.* –es, rice.
Rettig, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, radish.
Roggen, *m.* –s, rye.
Rübe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, (brassica rapa); gelbe Rübe, carrot, rothe Rübe, beet; weiße Rübe, turnip.
Salbei, *f.* –, sage.
Sau'erampfer, *m.* –s, sorrel.
Schwamm, *m.* –es, (See Pilz).
Sell'erie, *m.* –s, celery.
Spargel, *m.* –s, asparagus.
Spinat', *m.* –es, –s, spinage.
Thy'mian, *m.* –s, thyme.
Trüffel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, truffle.
Weizen, *m.* –s, wheat.
Wurzel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, root.
Zwiebel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, onion.

X. Fruits and Fruit-Trees. Obſt und Obſtbäume.

A'nanas, *f.* –, *pl.* –ſe, pine-apple.
Ap'felbaum, *m.* apple-tree.
Apfelſi'ne, *f.* sweet-orange.
Aprikoſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, apricot.
Birnbaum, *m.* pear-tree.
Brom'beere, *f.* black-berry.
Citro'ne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lemon.
Dattel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, date.
Erd'beere, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, strawberry.
Ha'ſelnuß, *f.* –, *pl.* –nüſſe, hazelnut.
Hei'delbeere, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, bilberry.
Him'beere, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, raspberry.
Johan'nisbeere, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, currant.
Kaſta'nie, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chesnut.
Mandel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, almond.
Maul'beere, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, mulberry.
Melo'ne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, melon.
Mispel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, medlar.
Pfir'ſiche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, peach.
Pflau'menbaum, *m.* plum-tree.
Pomeran'ze, *g.* –, *pl.* –n, orange.
Quitte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, quince.
Roſi'ne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, raisin.
Stach'elbeere, *f.* –, goose-berry.
Strauch, *m.* –es, *pl.* Sträuche, bush.
Wallnuß, *f.* –, *pl.* –nüſſe, walnut.
Weinſtock, *m.* grape-vine.
Wein'traube, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, grape.

XI. Forest-Trees. Waldbäume.

Ahorn, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, maple.
Birke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, birch.
Buche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, beech.
Eiche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, oak.
Eſche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, ash.
Espe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, aspen.
Fichte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pine.
Lärche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, larch.
Linde, *f.* linden tree, lime-tree.
Pappel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, poplar.
Rinde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bark.
Stamm, *m.* trunk.
Tanne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fir.
Ulme, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, elm.
Weide, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, willow.
Zweig, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, bough.

XII. Flowers, etc. Blumen, ꝛc.

Auri'kel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, auricula.
Diſtel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, thistle.
Geißblatt, *n.* honey-suckle.
Jasmin', *m.* –es, –s, jessamine.
Levko'je, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, gillyflower.
Li'lie, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lily.
Maß'liebe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, daisy.
Mohn'blume, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, poppy.
Myrthe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, myrtle.
Nelke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pink.
Neſſel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, nettle.
Rit'terſporn, *m.* –es, –s, lark-spur.
Roſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, rose.
Schlüſſ'elblume, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cowslip.
Son'nenblume, *f.* –, sun-flower.
Tulpe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tulip.
Unkraut, *n.* –es, –s, weed.
Veilchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, violet.
Vergiß'meinnicht, *n.* –es, –s, forget me-not.

Digitized by Google

XIII. Birds, etc. Vögel, ꝛc.

Adler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, eagle.
Amſel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, blackbird.
Bach'ſtelze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, wagtail.
Buchfink, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, chaffinch.
Diſtelfink, *m.* goldfinch.
Dohle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, jackdaw.
Droſſel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, thrush.
Elſter, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, magpie.
Ente, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, duck.
Eule, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, owl.
Falke, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, falcon.
Faſan', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, pheasant.
Fle'dermaus, *f.* –, *pl.* –mäuſe, bat.
Flügel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, wing.
Gans, *f.* –, *pl.* Gänſe, goose.
Habicht, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, hawk.
Hänfling, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, linnet.
Huhn, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* Hühner, hen.
Kana'rienvogel, *m.* canary-bird.
Krahe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, crow.
Küchlein, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, chicken.
Kuckuck, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, cuckoo.
Lerche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lark.
Nach'tigall, *f.* –, nightingale.
Papagei, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, parrot.
Pfau, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, peacock
Rabe, *m.* –n, *pl.* n, raven.
Raub'vogel, *m.* bird of prey.
Rebhuhn, *n.* partridge.
Reiher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, heron.
Roth'kehlchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, redbreast
Schnabel, *m.* –s, *pl.* Schnäbel, bill.
Schwalbe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, swallow.
Schwan, *m.* swan.
Sperling, *m.* –s, sparrow.
Storch, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Störche, stork.
Strauß, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, ostrich.
Taube, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pigeon.
Truthahn, *m.* –es, turkey.
Tur'teltaube, *f.* –, turtle-dove.
Wachtel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, quail.
Wald'ſchnepfe, *f.* –, wood-cock.
Waſſ'erhuhn, *n.* moor-hen.
Waſſ'erſchnepfe, *f.* –, –, *pl.* –n, snipe.
Zaun'könig, –es, –s, *pl.* –e, wren.

XIV. Quadrupeds. Vierfüßige Thiere.

Affe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, ape.
Bär, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, bear.
Biber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, beaver.
Dachs, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, badger.
Eich'hörnchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, squirrel.
Frettchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, ferret.
Fuchs, *m.* –es, *pl.* Füchſe, fox.
Füllen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, colt.
Gemſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chamois.
Haſe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, hare.
Hirſch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, deer.
Igel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, hedge-hog.
Kanin'chen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, rabbit.
Lamm, *n.* lamb.
Löwe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, lion.
Marder, *m.*—s, *pl.* –, pole-cat.
Maul'eſel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, mule.
Maulwurf, *m.* –es, *pl.* –würfe, mole.
Reh, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, roe.
Schwein, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, hog.
Tiger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tiger.
Wolf, m. –es, –s, *pl.* Wölfe, wolf.
Ziege, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, goat.

XV. Fishes, etc. Fiſche, ꝛc.

Aal, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, eel.
Auſter, *f.* –, *pl* –n, oyster.
Barſch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, perch.
Bückling, *m.* red-herring.
Forel'le, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, trout.
Garne'le, *f.* –, *pl* –n, shrimp.
Hai, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, shark.
Häring, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, herring.
Hecht, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, pike.
Hummer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –n, lobster.
Ka'beljau, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, haddock.
Karpfen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, carp.
Krebs, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, craw-fish.
Lachs, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, salmon.
Muſchel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, shell.
Salm, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, (See Lachs.
Schellfiſch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, haddock.
Schild'kröte, *f* –, *pl.* –n, turtle.
Schleihe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tench.
Stör, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, sturgeon.
Wallfiſch, *m.* –es –s, *pl.* –e, whale.

Digitized by Google

READING LESSONS.

The following selections are from various sources; all excellent, however, and embracing a great diversity of style and matter. The student, therefore, who has become familiar with the grammatical course laid down in the preceding part of this book, will enter upon these reading lessons with no little pleasure. With the aid of the vocabulary, which is sufficiently full, and the references to the grammar, which are quite numerous, he can, indeed, find no serious difficulty. Many more references might have been made; but he who duly consults those already given, will not, it is believed, be in want of further guidance in the use of his grammar.

I. Fabeln.

1. Der Hirsch.

Der Hirsch sah einst in einem klaren Bache sein Bild. Wahrlich, sagte er, ich übertreffe alle Thiere an Anstand und Pracht! Wie herrlich ragt[a] das[b] Geweih empor! — Doch meine Füße, wie mager und häßlich! Kaum hatte er das (L. 44. 1.) gesagt[c], so erblickte er[d] einen Löwen, der[e] auf ihn losging. Mit größter[f] Schnelle trugen ihn seine verachteten Füße in den nächsten Wald; aber plötzlich hielten die Gesträuche seine breiten Hörner auf, und er konnte sich nicht loswinden. Der Löwe erreichte und tödtete ihn.

Schätze[g] die Dinge nicht nach der äußern Gestalt, sondern nach dem innern Werthe; sonst wirst du oft dein Urtheil zu bereuen haben. Meißner.

2. Der Wanderer und das Irrlicht.

Ein Wanderer sah des Nachts[h] auf seinem Wege unweit von sich ein Irrlicht, ging ihm gerade nach, kam vom rechten Pfade ab und versank dadurch in einen tiefen Sumpf. Ha, verwünschtes Trugbild! rief er aus, warum mußtest du mich hierher führen? — Ich dich geführt? erwiederte das Irrlicht; um Verzeihung, ich verdiene diesen Vorwurf nicht. Du gingst mir ja[i] freiwillig[j] nach. Niemand als du selbst[k] gab dir den Rath mir[l] zu folgen.

Meißner.

[a] L. 51. 4; [b] L. 42. *k*; [c] L. 36. 3; [d] L. 53. 5; [e] L. 39; [f] L. 32. 5; [g] L. 50. 5; [h] L. 61. 8; [i] L. 69. 20; [j] L. 34. 7, [k] L. 29. 8. [l] L. 64. 5.

Digitized by Google

3. Der wilde Apfelbaum.

In den hohlen Stamm eines wilden Apfelbaumes ließ sich ein Schwarm Bienen nieder. Sie füllten ihn[a] mit den Schätzen ihres Honigs, und der Baum ward so stolz darauf, daß er alle anderen Bäume gegen sich verachtete. Da rief ihm ein Rosenstock zu: Elender Stolz auf geliehene Süßigkeiten! Ist deine Frucht darum weniger herbe? In diese treibe den Honig herauf, wenn du es vermagst, und dann erst wird der[a] Mensch dich segnen! Lessing.

4. Der Specht und die Taube.

Ein Specht und eine Taube hatten einen Pfau besucht. Wie gefiel dir unser Wirth? fragte der Specht auf dem Rückwege. Ist er nicht ein widriges Geschöpf? Sein Stolz, seine unförmlichen Füße, seine häßliche Stimme, sind sie nicht unerträglich? „Auf alles dieses," antwortete die gute Taube, „hatte ich keine Zeit zu sehen; denn ich hatte genug an der Schönheit seines Kopfes, an den herrlichen Farben seiner Federn und an seinem majestätischen Schweife zu bewundern." Meißner.

5. Die Wespen im Honigtopfe.

Ein Schwarm Wespen[o] war in einen Honigtopf gekrochen[p] und ließ es sich da wohl schmecken. Doch jetzt, als sie wieder fort wollten,[q] konnten sie nicht; denn die zähe Süßigkeit hatte Flügel und Füße unbrauchbar gemacht. Kläglich jammerten sie nun über ihr nahes Ende. — Eine einzige Wespe hatte sich vorsichtig am Rande erhalten, zwar weniger genossen, aber sich auch[r] nicht gefangen.[s] Ihr dauert mich, Schwestern, sprach sie, indem sie fort flog; aber ihr hättet auch die Schwierigkeit des Herauskommens[t] bedenken sollen, ehe ihr euch so tief hinein wagtet.

Der Weg zum sündhaften Vergnügen ist leicht. Doch desto schwerer fällt es, von ihm sich loszureißen. Daran denke[u] man[v] vorher, denn nachher ist es zu spät und fruchtlos. Meißner.

6. Die Taube und die Krähe.

Ein muthwilliger Knabe warf nach einer schneeweißen Taube mit nasser Erde, und das glänzende Gefieder derselben[w] wurde schmutzig und schwarz. Nun bist du doch auch geworden wie unser[x] einer! sagte eine alte Krähe hohnlachend; denn die Bösen haben es nicht gern, daß man besser sein will, als sie, und freuen sich über den Unfall der Guten.

Wie euer[x] einer geworden? erwiederte die Taube. Keinesweges! Ich scheine nur so; ich werde aber nicht so bleiben!

Und sie blieb auch nicht[r] so. Sie badete, sie reinigte sich, und war wieder so glänzend weiß, als zuvor; aber die Krähe blieb, wie sie war, und würde[v] es[u] auch geblieben sein, wenn sie auch ein Jahr lang gebadet und geputzt hätte.

Haltet die Herzen nur rein; gegen die Verläumdung wird schon Rath, und die Unschuld geht am Ende dennoch gerechtfertigt und geläutert hervor. Löhr.

[a] L. 28. 5; [u] L. 42; [o] L. 59. 3; [p] L. 48. 2; [q] L. 45. 15 [r] L. 21. 8; [s] L. 29. 10; [t] L. 49. 4; [u] L. 55. 3; [v] L. 19; [w] L. 41. 6; [x] L. 26. 13; [y] L. 56. 1; [z] L. 28. 16.

Digitized by Google

7 Der Einsiedler und der Bär.

Ein Einsiedler hatte einen jungen Bären aufgezogen[a] und durch Futter, Schläge und manche Mühe ihn so zahm wie einen Hund gemacht. Oft brachte nun der Bär seinem Erzieher ein ansehnliches Stück Wildpret[b] heim, trug Holz und Wasser herbei, bewachte seine Hütte, kurz, er leistete ihm Dienste aller Art. Einst lag an einem Sommertage[c] der Einsiedler im Grase dahingestreckt und schlief. Neben ihm saß sein Bär und wehrte die Fliegen ab, die schaarenweise[d] den Greis umschwärmten. Vorzüglich quälte ihn eine; wohl einmal[e] hatte der Bär sie fortgejagt, und immer kam sie wieder. Jetzt, als sie sich abermals auf die Stirn des Schlafenden[f] setzte, rief der Bär unwillig aus: Warte! warte! ich will dich wegbleiben lehren![g] — Bei diesen Worten ergriff er einen Stein, zielte richtig und zerschmetterte die Fliege, aber freilich auch mit ihr den Kopf des Alten.[f]

Wähle dir keinen einfältigen, keinen allzu rohen Menschen zum[h] Freunde! Selbst[i] mit dem besten Willen kann er dir[j] oft mehr als dein ärgster Feind schaden.

Lavater.

8. Die Nachtigall und der Gimpel.

Die Nachtigall ging einst auf Reisen und zur[k] Gesellschaft nahm sie einen Gimpel mit.[l] Sie flogen über Thal und Berg und kamen nach etlichen Tagen in einen schönen Wald, in welchem sie sich niederließen. Kaum hatten sie sich auf einen Busch gesetzt, so versammelte sich auch schon eine ganze Schaar von den Vögeln des Waldes, um[k] die Fremdlinge zu sehen. Alle bewunderten den Gimpel und lobten seinen schwarzen Kopf, den grauen Rücken und das schöne Roth seiner Brust. Das muß ein sehr vornehmer Reisender[f] sein, sprach einer zu dem andern. Der andere Vogel ist sehr unbedeutend. Wahrscheinlich ist er der Diener. Man drängte sich immer neugieriger um den schön befiederten Gimpel her, und drängte die Nachtigall so allmälich in eine unbeobachtete Ecke.

Endlich ersuchten die Vögel den Gimpel, er möge doch auch einmal seine Stimme hören lassen.[l] Denn man vermuthete, daß sein Gesang seinem Kleide gleich[j] kommen müsse. Er ließ sich bereden[l] und sang. Aber die Vögel, die ihn vorhin bewundert hatten, lachten insgeheim und sagten sich[m] halblaut in's Ohr: Welch' elende Stimme! Wenn er nur lieber geschwiegen hätte.

Jetzt erhob die Nachtigall in ihrem verborgenen Winkel ihre Stimme. Was ist das? riefen die Vögel mit Bewunderung und Freude. Welch[q] herrlicher Gesang! Wie? der unscheinbare Fremdling singt so schön? O, Freund, du übertriffst alle Sänger an Lieblichkeit und Stärke des Gesanges. Deine Stimme beschämt dein Aussehen.

Urtheile nicht nach dem Aeußern. In einem unscheinbaren Kleide ist oft das seltenste Talent verborgen.

Grimm.

[a] L. 51. 3; [b] L. 59. 3; [c] L. 24. 4; [d] L. 52. 5; [e] § 50; [f] L. 38; [g] L. 49; [h] L. 42. *j*; [i] L. 29. 5; [j] L. 64. *b*; [k] L. 49. 5; [l] L. 49. 6; [m] L. 63. [n] L. 70. 6; [o] L. 42 *k*; [p] L. 66. 7; [q] L. 13. 3.

Digitized by Google

II. Parabeln.

1. Der rohe Edelstein.

Ein roher Edelstein lag im Sande zwischen vielen anderen gemeinen Steinen. Ein Knabe sammelte von diesen zu seinem Spiel und brachte sie nach Hause[a] zugleich mit dem Edelstein, aber er kannte diesen nicht. Da sah der Vater des Knaben dem Spiele zu und bemerkte den rohen Edelstein, und sagte zu seinem Sohne: gib mir diesen Stein! — Solches[b] that der Knabe und lächelte, denn er dachte, was will der Vater mit dem Stein machen?

Dieser[a] aber nahm und schliff den Stein in regelmäßige Flächen und Ecken, und herrlich strahlte nun der geschliffene Diamant.

Siehe, sagte darauf der Vater, hier ist der Stein, den du[d] mir gabest. Da erstaunte der Knabe über des Gesteines Glanz und herrliches Funkeln, und rief aus: Mein Vater, wie vermochtest du dieses?

Der Vater sprach: Ich erkannte des rohen Steines Tugend und verborgene Kräfte, so befreit' ich ihn von der verhüllenden Schlacke. —

Darnach als der Knabe ein Jüngling geworden war, gab ihm der Vater den veredelten Stein als Sinnbild[a] von des Lebens Werth und Würde.

Krummacher.

2. Der müßige Magnet.

Ein Knabe erhielt einen sehr guten Magnet zum Geschenk. Er wollte ihn[e] schonen und verbarg ihn, von allem Eisenwerke entfernt, sorgfältig in einem Schranke. Nach langer Zeit holte er ihn wieder einmal hervor, um Neugierigen[j] seine Kraft zu zeigen. Er hielt ihn an Eisen; allein der Magnet zog nun gar nicht mehr, weil er[f] durch die lange träge Ruhe alle Kraft verloren hatte.

Löhr.

3. Böser Umgang.

Sophron, ein weiser Volkslehrer, erlaubte auch seinen erwachsenen Söhnen und Töchtern nicht, mit Menschen umzugehen, deren Wandel nicht ganz rein und sittsam war. Väterchen,[g] sagte eines Tages[h] die sanfte Eulalia zu ihm, als er ihr untersagte, in Gesellschaft des Bruders die leichtsinnige Lucinda zu besuchen, Väterchen, du mußt uns wohl für sehr kindisch halten, weil du glaubst, dieser Weg könne uns gefährlich werden. Aber der Vater nahm stillschweigend eine schon erloschene Kohle vom Kamin und reichte sie der Tochter hin. Sie brennt nicht; Kind, sagte er, nimm sie nur. Das that Eulalia, und siehe, die zarte, weiße Hand wurde schmutzig und unversehens auch das weiße Gewand. Daß man doch gar nicht vorsichtig genug sein kann, sagte Eulalia verdrießlich, wenn man Kohlen berührt! Ja wohl, sprach der Vater. Du siehst mein Kind, daß die Kohle, wenn sie auch[i] nicht brennt, doch schwärzt. Also der Umgang mit Sittenlosen.

Nebau.

[a] L. 43. 2; [b] L. 41. 9; [c] L. 10. 2; [d] L. 27. 2; [e] L. 43. *b*; [f] L. 28. 5. [g] L. 24. 2, [h] L. 61. 8; [i] L. 53. 3: [j] L. 33

Digitized by Google

4. Die drei Blicke.

Ein frommer Mann wurde[a] einst gefragt, woher es komme, daß er, trotz[b] aller Drangsale des[c] Lebens, doch solchen Gleichmuth in sich bewahren könne. Der[d] antwortete: Das kommt daher, daß[e] ich meine Augen wohl in Acht nehme, denn alles Böse kommt durch die Sinne zum Herzen, aber auch das Gute. — Auf die weitere Frage, wie er das mache,[f] sagte er: Jeden Morgen, ehe ich an die Geschäfte und unter die Menschen gehe, richte ich meine Augen bedachtsam auf drei Dinge: Erstens[g] hebe ich sie gen Himmel und erinnere mich,[h] daß mein Hauptgeschäft und das Ziel meines Lebens und Strebens dort oben sei. Zweitens[g] senk' ich sie zur Erde und bedenke, wie wenig Raum ich bedarf, um[i] einst mein Grab darin[j] zu finden. Drittens endlich schau ich um mich und betrachte die Menge derer,[k] denen es noch schlimmer ergeht,[l] als mir. Auf diese Weise getröste ich mich alles Leides und lebe mit Welt und Menschen zufrieden in Gott. Auerbacher.

5. Die Kornähren.

Ein Landmann ging mit seinem kleinen Sohne auf[m] den Acker hinaus, um zu sehen, ob das Korn bald reif sei. Sieh, Vater, sagte der unerfahrene Knabe, wie aufrecht einige Halme den Kopf[n] tragen! Diese müssen wohl recht vornehm sein; die andern, die sich vor ihnen so tief bücken, sind gewiß viel schlechter. Der Vater pflückte ein Paar Aehren[o] ab und sprach: Thörichtes Kind, da sieh einmal! Diese Aehre hier, die sich so stolz in die Höhe streckte, ist ganz taub und leer; diese aber, die sich so bescheiden neigte, ist voll[p] der schönsten Körner.

Trägt[q] einer gar zu hoch den Kopf,
So ist er wohl ein eitler Tropf. Schmid.

6. Der erste Sabbath.

Der sechste Tag der Schöpfung neigte sich zu seinem Ende. Die Sonne hatte ihre Bahn vollendet. Das Dunkel des Abends begann sich über die jugendliche Erde zu verbreiten. Der erstgeborene Sohn der Schöpfung stand auf[m] einem Hügel Edens, neben ihm Eloah, sein Schutzengel und Begleiter.

Es ward[r] immer dunkler und dunkler rings um den Hügel; die Dämmerung wandelte sich[s] in Nacht, und verhüllete wie ein duftiger Schleier die Höhen und Thäler. — Die Lieder der Vögel und die frohen Laute der Thiere verstummten. Selbst[t] die spielenden Lüftchen[u] schienen einzuschlummern.

Was ist das? fragte der Mensch mit leiser Stimme seinen himmlischen Begleiter. Wird die junge Schöpfung aufhören und in ihr altes Nichts versinken?

Eloah lächelte und sprach: Es ist die Ruhe der Erde.

[a] L. 58; [b] L. 60; [c] L. 42; [d] L. 44. 3; [e] L. 50. 6; [f] L. 55. *b*; [g] § 51; [h] L. 29. 9; [i] L. 49. 5; L. 28. 6; [k] L. 41. 3; [l] L. 47. 7; [m] § 116; [n] L. 26. 10; [o] L. 59. 6; [p] L. 61; [q] L. 53. 3. *Obs.*; [r] L. 46. 3. 4; [s] L. 28. 2; [t] L. 29. 5; [u] L. 24.

Digitized by Google

Nun erſchienen die himmliſchen Lichter: der Mond ging auf und das Heer der Sterne trat hervor in heiterem Glanze.

Der Menſch ſah aufwärts[a] gen Himmel mit ſüßem Erſtaunen; der Engel des Herrn aber blickte mit Wohlgefallen auf[b] den emporſchauenden Sohn der Erde hernieder. Die Nacht ward ſtiller; die Nachtigallen ſchlugen ſtärker und tönender.

Eloah berührte den Menſchen mit ſeinem Stabe. Er lagerte ſich an dem Hügel und ſchlummerte. Der erſte Traum kam zu ihm hernieder. Jehovah bildete ihm die Gefährtin.[c]

Als nun die Morgendämmerung begann, berührte Eloah den Schlummernden.[d] Er erwachte und fühlte ſich durchſtrömt von Kraft und Leben. Aus der Dämmerung erhoben ſich die Hügel und Thäler; das junge Licht kam hernieder und hüpfte auf den Wellen der Ströme Ebens, die Sonne ſtieg empor und brachte den Tag. Der Menſch erblickte das neuerſchaffene Weib, die Mutter der Lebendigen. — Staunen und Wonne erfüllten ſein Herz.

Siehe! ſprach Eloah — aus der Ruhe wird das Göttliche geboren. Darum ſollſt du dieſen Tag der Ruhe[e] und dem Göttlichen heiligen.

Krummacher.

7. Tod und Schlaf.

Brüderlich umſchlungen durchwandelten der Engel des Schlummers und der Todesengel[f] die Erde. Es ward[g] Abend. Sie lagerten ſich[h] auf einem[i] Hügel nicht fern von den Wohnungen der[j] Menſchen. Eine wehmüthige Stille waltete rings umher; auch das Abendglöckchen[k] im fernen Dörflein verſtummte.

Still und ſchweigend, wie es ihre Weiſe iſt,[l] ſaßen die beiden[m] wohlthätigen Genien der Menſchheit in traulicher Umarmung, und ſchon nahete die Nacht.

Da erhob ſich der Engel des Schlummers von ſeinem bemoosten Lager, und ſtreuete mit leiſer Hand die unſichtbaren Schlummerkörnlein. Die Abendwinde trugen ſie zu den ſtillen Wohnungen des müden Landmannes. Nun umfing der ſüße Schlaf die Bewohner der ländlichen Hütten, vom Greiſe, der[n] am Stabe geht, bis zu dem Säugling in der Wiege. Der Kranke vergaß ſeiner Schmerzen,[o] der Trauernde ſeines Kummers, die Armuth ihrer Sorgen. Aller[p] Augen ſchloſſen ſich.

Jetzt, nach vollendetem Geſchäft, legte ſich der wohlthätige Engel des Schlummers wieder zu ſeinem ernſteren[q] Bruder. „Wenn die Morgenröthe erwacht[r]", rief er mit fröhlicher Unſchuld, „dann preiſen[s] mich die Menſchen als ihren Freund und Wohlthäter! O, welche Freude, ungeſehen und heimlich wohlzuthun! Wie glücklich ſind wir unſichtbaren Boten des guten Geiſtes. Wie ſchön unſer ſtiller Beruf!"

So ſprach der freundliche Engel des Schlummers. Ihn ſah der Todesengel mit ſtiller Wehmuth an, und eine Thräne, wie die Unſterblichen ſie[t] weinen,

[a] 52. 6; [b] § 116; [c] L. 23. 5; [d] L. 33; [e] L. 64; [f] L. 24. 4; [g] L. 46. 4; [h] L. 29. 9; [i] L. 20. 3; [j] § 120; [k] L. 24. 2; [l] L. 53; [m] L. 65 2; L. 39; [n] L. 62. 5; [o] L. 61. 9; [p] 32. 5; [q] L. 38. 1. c; [r] L. 41. 7.

Digitized by Google

trat in sein großes, dunkles Auge. „Ach," sprach er, „daß ich nicht, wie du, des fröhlichen Dankes mich freuen[a] kann. Mich nennt die Erde ihren Feind und Freudenstörer!—" „O, mein Bruder," erwiederte der Engel des Schlafes, „wird nicht auch beim Erwachen[b] der Gute in dir seinen Freund und Wohlthäter erkennen und dankbar dich segnen? Sind wir nicht Brüder, und Boten Eines[c] Vaters?"

So sprach er; da glänzte das Auge des Todesengels, und zärtlicher umfingen sich[d] die brüderlichen Genien. Krummacher.

III. Anekdoten.

1. Einer oder der Andere.

Zur Zeit Heinrichs IV., Königs von Frankreich, ritt einmal ein Bäuerlein von seinem Dorfe nach Paris. Nicht mehr weit von der Stadt begegnete er einem stattlichen Reiter.[e] Es war der König. Sein Gefolge war[f] absichtlich in einiger Entfernung geblieben. „Woher des Wegs, mein Freund? Habt Ihr Geschäfte zu Paris?"

„Ja," antwortete der Bauer; „auch möchte ich gern einmal unsern guten König sehen, der sein Volk so zärtlich liebt."

Der König lächelte und sagte: „Dazu kann Euch Rath werden."

„Aber wenn ich nur wüßte, welcher es ist unter den vielen Höflingen, von denen er umgeben sein wird."[g]

„Das will ich euch sagen: Ihr dürft nur Achtung geben, welcher den[h] Hut auf dem Kopfe behalten wird, wann alle Andern sich ehrerbietig werden entblößt haben."

Also ritten sie mit einander in Paris hinein, und zwar das Bäuerlein auf der rechten Seite des Königs; denn was die liebe Einfalt, es sei[i] mit Absicht oder durch Zufall, Ungeschicktes thun kann, das thut sie. Der Bauer gab dem König auf alle seine Fragen gesprächige Antwort. Er erzählte ihm Manches über den Feldbau, aus seiner Haushaltung und wie er zuweilen des Sonntags auch sein Huhn in dem Topfe habe, und merkte lange nichts. Als er aber sah, wie alle Fenster sich öffneten und alle Straßen sich mit Menschen anfüllten, wie Jedermann ehrerbietig[k] auswich, da ging ihm ein Licht auf. „Mein Herr,"[l] sagte er zu seinem unbekannten Begleiter, den er mit Aengstlichkeit und Verwunderung anschaute, „entweder seid Ihr der König oder ich bin's; denn wir beide haben allein noch den Hut auf dem Kopfe."

Da lächelte der König und sagte: „Ich bin's,"[m] Wann Ihr Euer Rößlein in den Stall gestellt und Euer Geschäft besorgt habt, so kommt zu mir auf mein Schloß; ich will Euch dann mit einer Mittagssuppe aufwarten und Euch den Dauphin zeigen. Johann Paul Hebel.

[a] L. 62; [b] L. 49. 4; [c] L. 16 4; [d] L. 29. 6; [e] L. 64. *b*; [f] L. 48. 2; [g] L. 58. 2; [h] L. 42. *k*; [i] 55. 1. 3; L. 14. 6; [k] L. 34. 7; [l] L. 70; [m] L. 28. 8.

Digitized by Google

2. Scherz und Ernst.

Während[a] eines Gebirgsmarsches im[b] siebenjährigen Kriege, ging[c] Friedrich der Große einmal, ungeduldig über das langsame Vorrücken des Geschützes, durch den Engweg zu Fuße bergan; mit ihm der Generallieutenant Graf Schmettau. Während dieses verdrießlichen Ganges wandelte den König, um[d] sich die Langeweile zu vertreiben, die Lust an, den Grafen, einen sehr religiösen Mann, ein wenig zu necken. Er erkundigte sich[e] nach dessen[f] Beichtvater in Berlin, ob sich derselbe noch wohl befinde und ließ einem Strom von Scherzreden und Stichtereien freien Lauf.

„Ew.[g] Majestät sind viel witziger, als ich, und auch sehr viel gelehrter,[e] erwiederte Schmettau, als er endlich einmal zu Worte kommen konnte. „Ueberdies,“ fügte er hinzu, „sind Sie auch mein König! Der geistige Kampf ist also zwischen Ihnen und mir in jeder Rücksicht ungleich. Dennoch können Sie mir meinen Glauben nicht nehmen. Und gelänge[h] es auch; nun! so hätten Sie mir zwar unermeßlich geschadet, aber zugleich doch auch sich selber nicht unbedeutend mit.“

Der König blieb stehen[i] und machte Fronte gegen Schmettau, das Blitzen[j] des[k] Unwillens in den mächtigen Augen. — „Was soll das heißen Monsieur Schmettau? sagte er. „Ich sollte mir schaden, wenn ich ihm[l] seinen Glauben nähme? Wie meint er[m] das?

Mit unerschütterlicher Ruhe entgegnete der General: „Ew. Majestät glauben jetzt einen guten Offizier an mir zu haben, und ich hoffe Sie irren nicht. Könnten Sie mir aber meinen Glauben nehmen, da hätten Sie ein erbärmliches Ding an mir — ein Rohr im Winde, worauf[e] nicht der mindeste Verlaß wäre, weder bei Berathschlagungen, noch in der Schlacht.“

Der König schwieg und ging eine Zeitlang im stillen Nachdenken weiter. Dann sagte er mit freundlicher Stimme: „Sage er mir doch Schmettau, was ist eigentlich sein[m] Glaube?“

„Ich glaube,“ sagte Schmettau freudig, „an göttliche Vorsehung, die jedes Haar auf meinem Haupte zählt; an die göttliche Erlösung von allen meinen Sünden, und an ein ewig seliges Leben nach dem[k] Tode.“

„Das glaubt ihr[e] wirklich?“ sagte der König, „das glaubt er so recht mit voller Zuversicht?“

„Ja, wahrhaftig, Ew. Majestät.“

Der König faßte bewegt Schmettau's Hand, drückte sie[p] ihm[r] stark und sagte: „Er ist ein glücklicher Mensch!“ Dann ging er nachdenkend weiter, und nie, seit jener Stunde, hat er Schmettau's religiöse Ansichten verspottet.

[a] L. 60; [b] 20. 4; [c] L. 53. 5; [d] L. 49. 5; [e] L. 29. 9; [f] L. 44. 3; [g] L. 27. 3. note; [h] L. 55. 6; [i] L. 49; [j] L. 49. 4; [k] L. 42; [l] L. 64; [m] L. 27. 4; [n] L. 28. 6; [o] L. 27. 3. *Obs.*; [p] L. 28. 5; [q] L. 41. 4 *b.*; [r] § 129. 3.

Digitized by Google

IV. Denksprüche und kurze Betrachtungen.

1. Die einzige Art, seine[a] Freiheit zu behaupten, besteht darin, nie etwas Anderes zu wollen, als man soll; dann darf man thun, was man will.
Mutschelle.

2. Ein gutes Gewissen ist besser als zwei Zeugen. Es verzehrt Deinen Kummer, wie die Sonne das Eis. Es ist ein Brunnen, wenn Dich[b] dürstet, ein Stab, wenn Du sinkest, ein Schirm, wenn Dich die Sonne sticht, ein Ruhekissen im Tode. Hippel.

3. Kleine Freuden laben, wie Hausbrod, immer ohne Ekel; große[c] wie Zuckerbrod, zeitig mit Ekel. Richter.

4. Der Trieb des Gewissens, und die innerliche Schamhaftigkeit vor dem Bösen sind die Schutzengel des Guten.[d] Ohne Demuth ist der Mensch eine ewige Lüge. Gellert.

5. Fürchte die Einsamkeit nicht. Sie ist harmlos wie der reine Mondschein, dessen[e] Silberstreifen im Palaste des Gottlosen höllische Gespenster, und in der Hütte des Frommen spielende Engel des Himmels abbilden. Wagner.

6. Nimm mit Ehrfurcht die Bibel in die Hand, denn sie enthält Gottes Wort. Wisse, die[f] keinen Führer hatten auf dem gefahrvollen Wege des Lebens, die keinen Trost hatten in bitterer Noth, und keinen Beistand in ihrer letzten Stunde, denen[f] war die Bibel Führer, Trost und Beistand. Siehe, die Bibel ist eine Mutter, welche alle gläubigen Kinder nähret und stillet, bis sie erreichen das reifere[g] Alter einer höheren[g] Welt. Harms.

7. Ehe Du ein Geschäft unternimmst, verabsäume nie,[h] Deine ganze Seele zu Gott, dem Urquell alles Guten, inbrünstig[i] zu erheben, und ihn um Beistand und um Stärkung Deiner eignen schwachen Kräfte demüthig[i] anzuflehen.
Campe.

8. Wenn Du auf die Schaubühne[j] des geschäftigen Lebens trittst, so[k] wolle nicht glänzen, sondern nützen und glücklich sein. Campe.

9. Die Kunst ist lang, das Leben kurz, das Urtheil schwierig, die Gelegenheit flüchtig. Göthe.

10. Vieles[l] wünscht sich der Mensch, und doch bedarf er nur wenig;
Denn die Tage sind kurz, und beschränkt der Sterblichen[m] Schicksal.
Göthe.

11. Eins recht wissen und ausüben gibt höhere Bildung als Halbheit im Hundertfältigen. Göthe.

[a] L. 19. 2; [b] L. 57. 2; [c] L. 10. 3; [d] L. 33; [e] L. 39. 3; [f] L. 40. 6; [g] L. 32. 5; [h] L. 53-8; [i] L. 34. 7; [j] § 116; [k] L. 53. 2; [l] L. 65; [m] L. 61. 9.

Digitized by Google

12. Der Furchtſame erſchreckt vor der Gefahr, der Feige in ihr,[a] der Muthige nach ihr. Richter.

13. Wir haben Alle ſchon geweint: jeder Glückliche einmal vor Weh, jeder Unglückliche einmal vor Luſt. Richter.

14. Ehrfurcht beſiehlt die Tugend auch[b] im Bettlerkleid. Schiller.

15. Wer[c] auf der Erde ohne Beſtimmung lebt, gleicht einem Schiffe,[d] auf dem trocknen Lande; und wer nicht in das große Rad der Menſchheit eingreift, der[e] gleicht den zinnernen Taſchenuhren der Kinder, die wohl Zeiger und Zifferblätter, aber keine mechaniſchen Eingeweide haben. Leſſing.

16. Zur Erwerbung eines Glückes gehört Fleiß und Geduld, und zur Erhaltung deſſelben[e] gehört Mäßigung und Vorſicht. Langſam und Schritt für Schritt ſteigt man eine Treppe hinauf; aber in einem Augenblicke fällt man hinab und bringt Wunden und Schmerz genug mit auf die Erde. Hebel.

17. So[f] gewiß der Schatten dem Lichte folgt,[d] ſo gewiß folgt die That dem Willen, wenn er[g] nur rein iſt. Börne.

18. Wenn Du mit Deinen Gefälligkeiten warteſt, bis Dich der Freund anſpricht: ſo erniedrigſt Du die Gefälligkeit zum Almoſen und deinen Freund zum[e] Bettler. Kleiſt.

19. Im Unglücke erſcheint die Tugend in ihrem hellſten Glanze. Man könnte ſagen, daß ſie Aehnliches mit den würzreichen Pflanzen habe, die man drückt, um[h] ihr wohlriechenden Balſam abzugewinnen. Klopſtock.

20. Aufmerkſamkeit auf unſere einzelnen Handlungen ſchützt uns vor Uebereilung, vor Nachſicht gegen unſere Begierden, vor Gleichgültigkeit gegen unſere Fehler. Wieland.

21. Um Ruhe an einem fernen, freundlichen Geſtade zu finden, muß der Schiffer erſt einen Kampf mit den empörten Wogen beſtehen. Würkert.

22. Manche Pflanze kann nur auf einer andern beſtehen und ſich erhalten. So mancher Menſch. Allein erhält er ſich nicht, durch andere nur beſteht er. Würkert.

23. Viele Kenntniſſe machen einen Theil der Bedachtſamkeit unnöthig. Reinicke.

24. Das unfehlbarſte Mittel ſich Liebe zu erwerben, iſt Gefälligkeit. Wieland.

25. Die Religion iſt das letzte Ziel, wohin alle unſere Gedanken und Handlungen gehen müſſen. Wer dies noch nicht gelernt hat, der weiß nichts, der kennt weder ſich ſelbſt, j noch Gott, und iſt keiner[i] eigentlichen Glückſeligkeit fähig. Klopſtock.

[a] L. 28. 5; [b] L. 69. 5; [c] L. 40; [d] L. 64. 5.; [e] 41. 4; [f] L. 69. 3; [g] L. 42. *j*.; [h] L. 49. 5; [i] L. 61; [j] L. 29. 4.

Digitized by Google

26. Vor allen Dingen wache über Dich, daß Du nie die innere Zuversicht zu Dir selber,[a] das Vertrauen auf Gott und gute Menschen verlierst! Sobald[b] Dein Gefährte oder Gehülfe auf Deiner Stirn Mißmuth und Verzweiflung liest —so ist Alles aus. Sehr oft aber ist man im Unglück ungerecht gegen die Menschen. Jede kleine böse Laune, jede kleine Miene von Kälte deutet man auf sich; man meint, jeder sehe[c] es uns an, daß wir leiden, und weiche[c] von der Bitte zurück, die wir ihm thun könnten. Knigge.

V. Gedichte.

1. Mailied.

Wie herrlich leuchtet
Mir die Natur!
Wie glänzt die Sonne!
Wie lacht die Flur!

Es bringen die Blüthen
Aus jedem Zweig,
Und tausend Stimmen
Aus dem Gesträuch.

Und Freud' und Wonne
Aus jeder Brust.
O Erd' und Sonne,
O Glück und Lust.

Göthe.

2. Die Theilung der Erde.

Nehmt hin die Welt! rief Zeus von seinen Höhen
Den Menschen zu, nehmt, sie[d] soll euer sein.
Euch schenk' ich sie zum[e] Erb' und ew'gen Lehen;
Doch theilt euch brüderlich darein.[f]

Da eilt, was Hände hat, sich einzurichten,
Es[g] regte sich geschäftig Jung und Alt.
Der Ackersmann griff nach des Feldes Früchten
Der Junker birschte durch den Wald.

Der Kaufmann nimmt was seine Speicher fassen,[h]
Der Abt wählt sich den edeln Firnewein.
Der König sperrt die Brücken und die Straßen,
Und spricht: der Zehente[i] ist mein.

Ganz spät, nachdem die Theilung längst geschehen,[j]
Naht der Poet, er kam aus weiter Fern'.
Ach! da war überall nichts mehr zu sehen,[k]
Und alles hatte seinen Herrn!

[a] L. 29. 3; [b] L. 69. 3. *note*; [c] L. 55. *b.*; [d] L. 28. 5; [e] 42. *j.*; [f] L. 28 6; [g] L. 28. 9; [h] L. 38. *c.*; [i] § 45. 2; [j] L. 40. 8. [k] L. 49. 6.

Digitized by Google

Weh' mir! so soll denn ich allein von Allen
Vergessen sein, ich dein getreu'ster Sohn?
So ließ er laut der Klage Ruf[a] erschallen,
Und warf sich hin vor Jovis Thron.

Wenn du im Land der Träume dich verweilet,[b]
Versetzt der Gott, so hab're nicht mit mir.
Wo warst du denn, als man die Welt getheilet?[c]
Ich war, sprach der Poet bei dir.

Mein Auge hing an deinem Angesichte,
An deines Himmels Harmonie mein Ohr;
Verzeih' dem Geiste,[a] der von deinem Lichte
Berauscht, das Irdische[d] verlor![e]

Was thun?[f] spricht Zeus — die Welt ist weggegeben,
Der Herbst, die Jagd, der Markt ist nicht mehr[g] mein.
Willst du in meinem Himmel mit mir leben,
So oft[e] du kommst, er[h] soll dir offen sein.

Schiller

3. Hoffnung.

Es[i] reden und träumen die[j] Menschen viel
Von bessern künftigen Tagen;
Nach einem glücklichen, goldenen Ziel
Sieht man[k] sie rennen und jagen.
Die Welt wird alt und wird wieder jung,
Doch der Mensch hofft immer Verbesserung.

Die Hoffnung führt[l] ihn in's[m] Leben ein,[l]
Sie umflattert den fröhlichen Knaben.
Den Jüngling lockt[f] ihr Zauberschein,[n]
Sie wird[o] mit dem Greis nicht begraben;
Denn beschließt er im Grabe den müden Lauf,
Noch am Grabe pflanzt er — die Hoffnung auf.

Es ist kein leerer, schmeichelnder Wahn,
Erzeugt im Gehirne des Thoren.
Im Herzen kündet es laut sich an:
Zu was[p] Besserem sind wir geboren.
Und was[q] die innere Stimme spricht,
Das[q] täuscht die hoffende Seele nicht.

Schiller.

[a] L. 61. 9; [b] L. 40. 8; [c] L. 64. b.; [d] L. 33. 2; [e] L. 38. 2; [f] L. 34. 10; [g] L. 69. 3; [h] L. 28. 5; [i] L. 28. 9; [j] L. 42; [k] L. 19; [l] L. 51. 4; [m] L. 20. 4; [n] L. 53. 5; [o] L. 58; [p] L. 18; [q] L. 40. 1. 3; [r] 49. 6.

Digitized by Google

4. Das Amen der Steine.

Von Alter blind, fuhr Beda dennoch fort
Zu predigen die neue frohe Botschaft.
Von Stadt zu Stadt, von Dorf zu Dorf wallte
An seines Führers Hand der fromme Greis
Und predigte das Wort mit Jünglingsfeuer.[a]

Einst leitet' ihn sein Knabe in ein Thal,[b]
Das übersät' war mit gewalt'gen Steinen.
Leichtsinnig mehr, als boshaft, sprach der Knabe:
„Ehrwürd'ger Vater, viele Menschen sind
Versammelt hier und warten auf die Predigt."

Der blinde Greis erhub sich[c] alsobald,
Wählt' einen Text, erklärt' ihn, wandt' ihn an,
Ermahnte, warnte, strafte, tröstete
So herzlich, daß die Thränen mildiglich
Ihm[d] niederflossen in den grauen Bart.
Als er beschließend drauf das Vaterunser,
Wie sich's geziemt,[e] gebetet und gesprochen:[f]
„Dein ist das Reich und Dein die Kraft und Dein
Die Herrlichkeit bis in die Ewigkeiten,"—
Da riefen rings im Thal viel tausend Stimmen:
Amen, ehrwürdiger Vater, Amen, Amen!

Der Knab' erschrak; reumüthig kniet er nieder
Und beichtete dem Heiligen die Sünde.
„Sohn," sprach der Greis, „hast Du denn nicht gelesen:
Wenn Menschen schweigen, werden Steine schrei'n? —
Nicht spotte künftig, Sohn, mit Gottes Wort!
Lebendig ist es, kräftig, schneidet scharf,
Wie ein zweischneidig Schwert. Und sollte gleich
Das Menschenherz sich ihm zum Trotz versteinern,
So wird im Stein ein Menschenherz sich regen."

Kosegarten.

6. Die Worte des Glaubens.

Drei Worte nenn' ich euch, inhaltschwer,[g]
Sie gehen von Munde zu Munde,
Doch stammen sie nicht von außen her;
Das Herz nur giebt davon Kunde.
Dem Menschen ist aller Werth geraubt,[h]
Wenn er nicht mehr[i] an die drei Worte glaubt.

[a] L. 24. 4; [b] L. 20. 3; [c] L. 29. 9; [d] § 129; [e] L. 57. 6; [f] L. 40 8; [g] L. 24. 7; [h] L. 64. 1; [i] L. 34. 10.

Digitized by Google

Der Menſch iſt frei geſchaffen, iſt frei,
Und würd'[a] er in Ketten geboren.
Laßt euch nicht irren des Pöbels Geſchrei,
Nicht den Mißbrauch raſender[b] Thoren!
Vor dem Sclaven, wenn er die Kette bricht,
Vor dem freien Menſchen erzittert nicht!

Und die Tugend, ſie[c] iſt kein leerer Schall,
Der Menſch kann ſie[d] üben im Leben;
Und ſollt er auch[e] ſtraucheln überall,
Er kann nach der göttlichen ſtreben,
Und was kein Verſtand der Verſtändigen[f] ſieht,
Das übet[g] in Einfalt ein kindlich Gemüth.[g]

Und ein Gott iſt, ein heiliger Wille lebt,
Wie auch der menſchliche wanke;[h]
Hoch über der Zeit und dem Raume webt
Lebendig der höchſte Gedanke,
Und ob Alles in ewigem Wechſel kreiſ't,
Es[i] beharret im Wechſel ein ruhiger Geiſt.

Die drei Worte bewahret[j] euch, inhaltſchwer,
Sie pflanzet[j] von Munde zu Munde,
Und ſtammen ſie gleich nicht von außen her,
Euer Inn're giebt davon Kunde.
Dem Menſchen iſt nimmer ſein Werth geraubt,
So[k] lang er noch an die drei Worte glaubt. **Schiller.**

7. Gefunden.

Ich ging im Walde
So für mich hin,
Und nichts zu ſuchen,
Das war mein Sinn.

Im Schatten ſah' ich
Ein Blümchen ſtehn,
Wie Sterne leuchtend,
Wie Aeuglein ſchön.

Ich wollt' es brechen,
Da ſagt es fein:
Soll ich zum Welken
Gebrochen ſein?

Ich grub's mit allen
Den Würzlein aus,
Zum Garten trug ich's
Am hübſchen Haus.

Und pflanzt es wieder
Am ſtillen Ort;
Nun zweigt es immer
Und blüht ſo fort.

Göthe.

[a] L. 56. 2; [b] L. 32. 9; [c] L. 28. 12; [d] L. 28. 5; [e] L. 69. 5; [f] L. 33; [g] L. 53. 5; [h] L. 55. *a*.; [i] L. 28. 9; [j] L. 50. 5; [k] L. 69. 3. *note*.

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY

FOR THE EXERCISES AND READING LESSONS.

ABBREVIATIONS.

adj.	adjective.	*pl.*	plural.
adv.	adverb.	*prep.*	preposition.
art.	article.	*prn.*	pronoun.
c. or *conj.*	conjunction.	*v. a.*	active verb.
comp.	comparative.	*v. a. & n.*	active and neuter verb.
f.	feminine gender.	*v. aux.*	auxiliary verb.
imp.	imperfect tense.	*v. imp.*	impersonal verb.
int.	interjection.	*v. ir.*	irregular verb.
m.	masculine gender.	*v. n.*	neuter verb.
n.	neuter gender.	*v. r.*	reflexive verb.
p.	participle.		

A

Aal, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, eel.
Abbilden, *v. a.* to portray, represent.
Abend, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, evening, eve, west; –glöckchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, vesper-bell, evening-bell; –roth, *n.*, –röthe, *f.* evening-red, evening-sky; –wind, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, evening-wind, zephyr.
Aber, *conj.* but, however.
Abermal *or* abermals, *adv.* again, once more, anew.
Abfahren, see fahren, *p.* 348, *v. n. ir.* to set off, set out, depart.
Abgewinnen, *v. a. ir.*, to win from, gain.
Abkommen, *v. n. ir.*, to come off, deviate, lose.
Abmatten, *v. a.* to harass, weary.
Abpflücken, *v. a.* to pluck off, gather.
Abreisen, to depart, set out.
Absagen, to countermand, refuse, decline, renounce.
Abschrei'ben, see schreiben, *p.* 354; *v. a. ir.*, to copy, transcribe
Absicht, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, view, intention.
Absichtlich, *adj.* designed, purposely (see L. 34. 7).
Absteigen, see steigen, *p.* 356; *v. ir. n.*, to descend, dismount, put up.
Abt, *m.* –es, *pl.* Aebte, abbot.
Abwehren, *v. a.* to keep off, ward off.
Ach! *int.* ah! O! oh! alas!
Achse, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, axle, axis.
Acht, eight.
Acht, *f.* –, care, attention, outlawry; in Acht nehmen, to take care.
Achtel, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, eighth.
Achten, *v. a.* to regard, attend to, value, deem, esteem, take for.
Achtung, *f.* –, esteem, respect, estimation, regard, attention.
Achtzehn, eighteen.
Acker, *m.* –s, *pl.* Aecker, field, acre.
Ackersmann, *m.* –es, *pl.* –leute, husbandman, tiller.
Adler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, eagle.
Adolph, *m.* Adolphus.
Aecht, *adj.* genuine, authentic.
Aehnlich, *adj.* like, similar.

Digitized by Google

Aehre, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, ear (of grain).
Aengſtlichkeit, *f.* –, anxiety, uneasiness.
Aergern, *adj.* silly, foolish.
Albrecht, *m.* Albert.
Allein, *adv.* alone, only; *c.* but.
Aller, all (L. 65. 11), every.
Allerbeſt, best of all, very best.
Allerlei, *adj.* various, of all sorts.
Allmahlig, by degrees, gradually.
Allzu, *adv.* too, too much, over,
Almoſen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, alms charity.
Als, *conj.* than, but, when, as, like, except, besides, namely, als eben, just as.
Alſo, *adv.* thus, so; *c.* therefore.
Alſobald, immediately, directly.
Alt, *adj.* old, ancient, aged.
Alter, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, age, old age.
Amboß, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, anvil.
Amen, *int.* amen.
Ame'rika, –s, America.
Amerika'ner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, American.
Amt, *n.* –es, *pl.* Aemter, charge, office, employment, business.
An, *prep.* in, at, on, by, to, unto, with, up, about, against.
Ander (der, die, das Andere), *adj.* second, other. (L. 65.)
Anders, *adv.* otherwise, differently.
Anderthalb, *adj.* one and a half.
Anekdo'te, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, anecdote.
Anfangen, see fangen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* & *n.*, to begin, act, open, do. (L. 51. 4.)
Anflehen, *v. a.* to implore, entreat.
Anfüllen, *v. a.* to fill up.
Angehören, *v. n.* to belong.
Angel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fishing-hook, angle.
Angenehm, *adj.* agreeable, pleasant.
Angeſicht, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –er, face, countenance.
Anhaltend, *adj.* constant.
Anhangen, see hangen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.*, to be attached to. adhere to.
Anker, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, anchor.
Anklagen, *v. a.* to accuse.
Ankommen, see kommen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.*, to arrive; - auf, to depend upon.
Ankunden, ankündigen, *v. a.* to proclaim, announce, declare, publish.
Ankunft, *f.* –, arrival.
Anlangen, *v. n.* to arrive, come at.
Anſchauen, *v. a.* to look at, regard.
Anſchuldigen, *v. a.* to charge with, accuse of.
Anſehen, see ſehen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.*, to look at. behold, view.
Anſehnlich, *adj.* considerable, important, of consequence. (L. 34. 7.)
Anſicht, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, sight, view, opinion, prospect.
Anſprechen, *v. a. ir.*, to accost, address, speak to, beg, ask.
Anſpruch, *m.* –es, *pl* –ſprüche, claim, demand; in – nehmen, to call for, claim, request.
Anſtalt, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, preparation, institution; Anſtalten *or* Anſtalt machen, to make preparations, prepare.
Anſtand, *m.* –es, gracefulness, station, stand, behavior.
Anſtatt, *prep.* instead of, in lieu.
Anſtrengend, *adj.* toilsome.
Antwort, *f.* –, *pl.* – en, answer.
Antworten, *v. a.* to answer.
Anvertrauen, *v. a.* to intrust to, confide to.
Anwandeln, *v. n.* to come upon. Es wandelte ihn die Luſt an, the desire came upon him ("he took a fancy," "he took it into his head.")
Anwenden, *v. a.* to apply, employ, make use of, apply to.
Anweſend, *adj.* & *p.* present, those present.
Anziehen, see ziehen, *p.* 358; *v. ir. a.* to draw, put on, attract, interest.
Apfel, *m.* –s, *pl.* Aepfel, apple.
Apfelbaum, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –bäume, apple-tree.
Aprikoſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n apricot.
Aprikoſenbaum, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –bäume, apricot-tree.
April', *m.* –s, April.
Arbeit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, work, labor.
Arbeiten, *v. n.*, to work, labor.
Arbeiter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, workman, laborer.
Arg, *adj.* bad, wicked.
Arm, *adj.* poor, indigent.
Arm, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, arm.
Armee', *f.* –, *pl.* –n, army.
Aermel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, sleeve.
Armuth, *f.* –, poverty.

Digitized by Google

Art, *f.* -, *pl.* -en species, kind, nature, quality, propriety, way.
Artig *adj.* polite agreeable.
Arzt, *s.* -es, *pl.* Aerzte, physician, doctor.
Asch, *f.* ashes.
Atlaß, *m.* -sses, *pl.* sse, satin.
Atmosphä're, *f.* -, atmosphere.
Auch, *conj.* also, too, even.
Auf, *prep.* on, upon, in, at, to up; -einmal, at once, all at once; -daß, in order that.
Aufenthalt, *m.* -es, stay, sojourn, delay.
Aufforbern, *v. a.* to summon, challenge, ask, invite.
Aufgabe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, exercise.
Aufgehen, see gehen, *p.* 348. *v. ir. n.* to rise, open, see Licht.
Aufhalten, *v. a. ir.* to stop, hinder, detain.
Aufhören, *v. n.* to cease, end.
Aufmerksam, *adj.* attentive.
Aufmerksamkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, attention.
Aufpflanzen, *v. a.* to plant, mount, set up.
Aufrecht, *adv.* upright, erect.
Aufschneiden, see schneiden, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to cut up, cut open.
Aufspeichern, *v. a.* to store up.
Aufstehen, see stehen, *p.* 356; *v. ir. n.* to arise, get up, stand open.
Aufsteigen, see steigen, *p.* 356; *v. ir. n.* to mount, ascend, rise.
Aufwärts, *adv.* upward, upwards.
Aufwarten, *v. n.* to wait on, attend, serve.
Aufziehen, *v. a. ir.* to bring up, educate draw up.
Auge, *n* -s, *pl.* -n, eye, bud; -nblick, *m.* twinkling, moment; -nblicklich, instaneous, instantly.
Aeuglein, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, eye (L. 24. 2).
Aus, *prep.* out, out of, from, of, by, on, upon, in; *adv.* over, out, at an end, finished.
Ausdehnen, *v. a. & r.* to stretch, extend, expand.
Ausdreschen, see dreschen, *p.* 346; *v.* to thrash out.
Ausfinden, see finden, *p.* 248; *v. ir. a.* to find out.
Ausführen, *v. a.* to accomplish.
Ausgeben, see geben, *p.* 348; *v. ir a.*, to give out, spend.
Ausgehen, see gehen, *p.* 348; *v. ir n.*, to go out, go abroad, proceed.
Ausgraben, *v. a. ir.*, to dig out, excavate.
Aushalten, *v. ir. n.*, to hold out, sustain.
Ausrufen, *v. n. ir.*, to call out, cry out, exclaim.
Aussehen, *n.* -s, face, appearance.
Außen, *adv.* out, on the outside without, abroad.
Aeußere (der, die, das), *adj.* outward, exterior, outside.
Außerhalb, *prep.* & *adv.* abroad, without, out of, outside, beyond.
Aussprechen, see sprechen, *p.* 356; *v. a. & n. ir.*, to pronounce, utter, express.
Austra'lien, *n.* -s, Australia.
Ausüben, *v. a.* to exercise, practice, execute, perpetrate.
Auswandern, *v. n.* to emigrate.
Ausweichen, *v. a. ir.*, to give way, turn aside, evade, avoid.
Axt, *f.* -, *pl.* Aexte, ax, hatchet.

B

Bach, *m.* -es, *pl.* Bäche, brook.
Backen, *v. ir. v.*, to bake, dry, *p.* 346.
Backer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, baker.
Baden, *v. a.* to bathe.
Bahn, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, way, road, career, course,
Baier, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, Bavarian
Baiern, *n.* -s, Bavaria.
Bald, *adv.* soon, early, nearly.
Ball, *m.* -es, *pl.* Balle, ball.
Balsam, *m.* -s, *pl.* -e, balm, balsam
Band, *n.* -es, *pl.* Bänder, ribbon string, *m. pl.* Bände, volume.
Banbigen, *v. a.* to tame, break.
Bank, *f.* -, *pl.* Banke, bench, seat.
Banner, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, banner.
Bar, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, bear.
Barke, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, bark, barge.
Bart, *m.* -es, -s, *pl.* Barte, beard.
Bauen, *v. a.* to build, raise; *fig.* auf einen -, to rely upon one.
Bauer, *m.* -s, *pl.* -n, peasant.
Bauerlein, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, peasant. L. 24. 1.
Baum, *m.* -es, *pl.* Bäume, tree.

Digitized by Google

Baumeiſter, *m* –s, *pl.* –, architect.
Baumwolle, *f.* –, cotton.
Becken, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, basin.
Bedacht'ſam, *adj.* considerate.
Bedacht'ſamkeit, *f.* –, circumspection, caution, prudence.
Bedau'ern, *v. a.* to pity.
Bedeck'en, *v a.* to cover, shelter.
Bedenk'en, *a. a. ir.*, to consider, reflect upon, mind.
Bedien'te, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, servant.
Bedür'fen, see dürfen, *p.* 346; *v. ir.* n. to need, want.
Bedürf'tig, *adj.* wanting, in want of.
Befehl', *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, command.
Befeh'len, *v. ir. a.*, to command, order, charge, desire. *p.* 346.
Befie'dert, plumaged.
Befin'den, see finden, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to find, think; *v. ir. r.*, to be; wie – ſie ſich, how do you do?
Befleiß'en, *v. ir. r.* to be studious of.
Befrei'en, *v. a.* to free, deliver.
Bege'ben, see geben, *p.* 348; *v. ir. r.*, to betake.
Begeg'nen, *v. n.* to meet.
Begeh'en, see gehen, *p.* 348; *v. a. ir.*, to commit.
Begeh'ren, *v. a.* to desire, demand.
Begier'de, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, desire, lust.
Begin'nen, *v. a.* & *n. ir.*, to begin, do, undertake.
Beglei'ten, *v. a.* to accompany.
Beglei'ter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, companion, attendant, follower, guide.
Begra'ben, see graben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.*, to bury.
Begrei'fen, see greifen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.*, to feel, comprehend, understand.
Behal'ten, see halten, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to keep, retain.
Behan'deln, *v. a.* to treat, manage.
Behar'ren, *v. n.* to continue, persist, insist, persevere.
Behaup'ten, *v. a.* to affirm, maintain, pretend.
Bei, *prep.* at, near, beside, by, on, with, to, in, in the presence of.
Beichten, *v. a.* & *n.* to confess.
Beichtvater, *m.* –s, *pl.* –väter, confessor.
Beide, *adj.* both, two; keiner von –, neither of the two
Beikommen, see kommen, *p.* 350; *n. ir. n.*, to get at.
Bein, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, leg, bone.
Beiſpiel, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, example, instance, pattern; zum –, for example, for instance.
Beißen, *p.* 346; *v. a.* to bite.
Beiſtand, *m.* –es, –s, assistance.
Beiſtehen, *v. n ir.*, to assist.
Beiſtimmen, *v. n.* to agree with, assent to.
Beiwohnen, *v. n.* to be present at assist.
Bekann'te *m.* & *f.*–n, *pl.*–n, acquaintance.
Bekla'gen, *v. r.* to complain.
Bela'gerung, *f.* –, –en, siege.
Belei'digen, *v. a.* to offend, insult.
Bellen, *v. n.* to bark.
Belohn'nen, *v. a.* to reward.
Belohn'ung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, reward.
Bemer'ken, *v. a.* to perceive, mark, observe, note.
Bemooſt', *adv.* mossy.
Benei'den, *v. a.* to envy.
Benö'thigt, *adj.* in need, in want.
Berath'ſchlagung, *f.*–, *pl.* –en, consultation, deliberation.
Berau'ben, *v. a.* to rob, plunder.
Berauſcht', frenzied, intoxicated.
Bere'den, *v. a.* to persuade.
Bereits, *adv.* already.
Bereu'en, *v. a.* to repent, regret.
Berg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, mountain.
Bergan', bergauf', *adv.* uphill.
Bergen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.*, to save, conceal.
Berli'n, *n.* –s, Berlin.
Beruf', *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, vocation.
Berühmt', *adj.* celebrated.
Berüh'ren, *v. a.* to touch, handle, mention, hint at.
Beſchä'men, *v. a.* to shame, *fig.* to excel, be superior to.
Beſchei'den, *adj.* modest.
Beſchlie'ßen, to decree, determine resolve, to finish.
Beſchrän'ken, *v. a.* to confine, limit, bound, restrain.
Beſchrei'ben, see ſchreiben, *p.* 354; *n ir. a.*, to describe.
Beſchul'digen, *v. a.* to accuse.
Beſen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, broom.
Beſie'gen, *v. a.* to vanquish, conquer

Digitized by Google

Beſitz'en, see ſitzen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.*, to possess.
Beſor'gen, *v. a.* to take care of, provide, apprehend, fear.
Beſtän'dig, *adj.* constant, durable.
Beſtär'igen, *v. a.* to confirm.
Beſte (der, die, das), *adj.* best.
Beſteh'en, see ſtehen, *p.* 356; *v. ir. a. & n.*, to suffer, be, endure, consist of, encounter; – auf, to insist upon.
Beſtel'len, *v. a.* to order, appoint.
Beſtell'ung, *f.* –, *pl.* en, order, commission.
Beſtim'mung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, determination, destination, destiny.
Beſtra'fen, *v. a.* to punish.
Beſu'chen, r. *a.* to visit, see, frequent, go to see.
Beten, *v. a. & n.* to say a prayer, to pray.
Betrach'ten, *v. a.* to look upon, contemplate, consider.
Betracht'ung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, view, consideration.
Betra'gen, see tragen, *p.* 356; *v. ir. a.* to amount to; *v. ir. r.* to behave one's self.
Betra'gen, *n.* –s, conduct, behavior.
Betrü'bt, *adj.* afflicted, sad.
Betrü'gen, *p.* 346; to cheat, deceive.
Bett, *n.* –es, *pl.* –en, bed.
Betteln, *v. n.* to beg.
Bettler *m.* –s, *pl.* –, beggar.
Bettlerkleid, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –er, beggar's dress.
Bewach'en, *v. a.* to watch, guard.
Bewaff'nen, *v. a.* to arm.
Bewah'ren, *v. a.* to keep, take care of, preserve, guard.
Bewe'gen, *v. a.* to move, excite.
Bewegt, *adj.* moved, touched.
Bewoh'ner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, inhabitant.
Bewun'dern, *v. a.* to admire, wonder.
Bewun'derung, *f.* –, admiration.
Bewußt, *adj.* known, conscious of, –ſein, *n.* consciousness.
Bezich'tigen, *v. a.* to charge, accuse.
Bezüch'tigen, see bezichtigen.
Bibel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, Bible.
Biene, *f. pl.* –n, bee.
Bier, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, beer.
Bild, *n* –es, *pl.* –er, image, idea, representation, portrait, picture.
Bilden, *v. a.* to form, cultivate, civilize, improve.
Bildung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, culture, learning, accomplishment.
Binde, *f. pl.* –n, band; –wort, *n.* conjunction.
Binden, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to bind, tie.
Birne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pear.
Birſchen, *v. a.* to shoot, go a shooting, shoot with a rifle.
Bis, *adv. & conj.* till, until; bis an –auf, –zu, up, to, as far as
Bitte, *f. pl.* –n, request, entreaty, petition, suit.
Bitten, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to beg, pray, request, entreat, invite.
Bitter, *adj.* bitter, sharp.
Blaſen, *p.* 346 to blow.
Blatt, *n.* –es, *pl.* Blätter, leaf.
Blatter, *f.* –, *pl.* –n blister; die –n, *pl.* the small-pox.
Blau, *adj.* blue.
Blei, *n.* –es, –s, lead.
Bleiben, *p.* 346; *v. ir. n.* to remain, continue, perish.
Bleich, *apj.* pale, faded.
Bleiſtift, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, pencil.
Blick, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, look, glance.
Blicken, *v. n.* to glance, look.
Blind, *adj.* blind.
Blitzen, *v. n.* to lighten, flash, gleam.
Blume, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, flower; –ngarten, *m.* flower-garden.
Blümchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, floweret.
Blüthe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bloom, flower.
Blutig, *adj.* bloody.
Boden, *m.* –s, *pl.* Böden, ground, soil, bottom, loft, garret.
Bogen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, bow.
Bohne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bean.
Bohrer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, auger.
Böſe, *adj. & adv.* bad, ill, wicked, hurtful, angry, sore.
Boshaft, *adj.* malicious, wicked.
Bote, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, messenger.
Botſchaft, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, message.
Böttcher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cooper.
Brauchen, *v. a.* to want, need, use.
Brauer, *m.* –s *pl.* –, brewer.
Braun, *adj.* brown.
Brauſen, *v. n.* to rush, roar, buzz.
Brechen, *p.* 346 *v. ir. a. & n.* to break.
Breit, *adj.* broad, large, wide.

Digitized by Google

Bremen, *n.* –s, Bremen.
Brennen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* & *n.* to burn, scorch, parch, distil, cauterize, brand.
Brett *n* –es, *pl.* –er, board.
Brief, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, letter; –papier, letter-paper.
Bringen, *p.* 316. *v. ir. a.* to bring carry, convey, bear; an ſich –, to acquire, get possession.
Brod, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, bread, loaf.
Brücke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bridge.
Bruder, *m.* –s, *pl.* Brüder, brother.
Brüderlich, *adj.* brotherly, fraternal; –umſchlungen, in fraternal embrace.
Brüllen, *v. n.* to roar, low.
Brunnen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, well, spring fountain.
Bruſt, *f.* –, *pl.* Brüſte, breast.
Bruſtnadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, breast-pin.
Buch, *n.* –es, *pl.* Bücher, book, quire –binder, *m.* bookbinder; –händler, *m.* bookseller, stationer.
Buche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, beech.
Bücken, *v. r.* to stoop, bow.
Bundesgenoß, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, confederate, ally.
Bürger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, citizen.
Bürſte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, brush.
Buſch, *m.* –es, *pl.* Büſche, bush. thicket.
Butter, *f.* –, butter.

C

Charakter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –te're, character.
Chriſtenheit, *f.* –, christendom.
Couſine, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cousin.

D

Da, *adv.* & *conj.* there, present, then, at that time, when, as, while, because, since.
Dabei', *adv.* by that, thereby, therewith, thereat, near it, present.
Dach, *n.* –es, *pl.* Dächer, roof.
Dadurch', *adv.* by this, by that, through it, through that place.
Dafür', *adv.* for it, for that, instead of that.
Daher', *adv.* & *c.* thence, hence, out of that, therefore.
Dahin', *adv.* thither, there, away, down, gone, past; –ſtrecken, to stretch out, spread out.
Dame, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lady.
Damit, *adv.* & *conj.* therewith, with it (this, that), by it, by that, in order.
Dämmerung, *f.* –, twilight, dusk.
Dampf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Dämpfe steam, vapor, smoke, fume.
Däne, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Dane.
Dank, *m.* –es, thanks, reward.
Dankbar, *adj.* thankful, grateful.
Danken, *v. a.* & *n.* to thank.
Dann, *adv.* then, thereupon.
Daran', *adv.* thereon, thereat, on it, at it, by it.
Darauf', *adv.* thereon, thereupon, on that, on it, upon it, at that, to that, it, after that; ſich – ſchwingen, to leap upon, swing upon.
Daraus', *adv.* thereout, out of that, therefrom, thence, from this, of this.
Darein', *adv.* therein, into it; ſich – theilen, to share therein.
Darin', *adv.* therein, in that, in this, in it, wherein.
Darnach', *adv.* after that, upon that, for that, for it.
Darum, *adv.* around that, for that, for it, therefor.
Das, *art.* the; *prn.* that, which.
Daß, *conj.* that; – nicht, lest; bis –, till.
Dauern, *v. n.* to last, continue; *v. a.* & *imp.* to grieve, cause to pity; ihr dauert mich, you grieve me, I pity you.
Dauphin, *m.* –s, dauphin, crown-prince, eldest son of the kings of France.
Davon', *adv.* thereof, therefrom, of that, of it, from it, whereof, by it, off, away; –jagen, to hasten away.
Dazu', *adv.* thereto, to that, for it, for that, at that.
Decke, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cover.
Decken, *v. a.* to cover, screen.
Dein, *prn. poss.* thy. L. 12. 2.
Demant, see Diamant.
Demoſthenes, *m.* Demosthenes.
Demuth, *f.* –, humility, meekness

Digitized by Google

Demüthig, *adj.* humble, meek.
Denken, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a. & n.*, to think (of, upon, an, auf), to mind, reflect upon.
Denkſpruch, *m.* –es, –e, *pl.* –ſprüche, sentence motto, maxim.
Denn, *conj* for, then, than; es ſei – daß, unless, if, provided.
Dennoch, *conj.* yet, however, notwithstanding, nevertheless.
Der, *art.* the; *prn.* this, that, who.
Derei'nſt, *adv.* once, in the future.
Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, *prn. demonstr.* he, that.
Derſelbe, dieſelbe, dasſelbe, *prn.* the same, he, she, it, that; eben–, the very same.
Deshalb, *adv.* therefore, for this reason, on that account.
Deſſentwillen, *prep. & prn.* therefore, on that account.
Deſto, *adv.* the; – beſſer, the better, so much the better.
Deuten, *v. a.* to explain, interpret; –, *v. n.* to point.
Deutlich, *adj.* clear, distinct.
Deutſch, *adj.* German.
Deutſchland, *n.* –s, Germany.
Diamant', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, diamond.
Dick, *adj.* thick, big, large, stout.
Dieb, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, thief.
Diener, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, servant.
Dienſt, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, service, office, employment; –e nehmen, to enter service.
Dienſtmädchen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, servant-girl.
Diesſeits, *adv.* on this side.
Dieſer, Dieſe, Dieſes, *prn. demons.* this (L. 10).
Ding, *n.* –es, –e, *pl.* –e, thing, affair, matter.
Doch, *conj.* yet, however, nevertheless but. (L. 69. 11).
Dolch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, dagger.
Dom, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, cathedral, dome.
Donnern, *v. n.* to thunder.
Doppelt, *adj.* double, twofold; *adv.* doubly, twice.
Dorf, *n.* –es, *pl.* Dörfer, village.
Dorn *m.* –es, *pl.* –en, & Dörner, thorn.
Dort, *adv.* yonder, there; – oben, there, above, up there.
Drängen, *v. a.* to throng, press.
Drangſal, *n.* –es, –e *pl.* –e, calamity.
Drauf, see Darauf.
Drehen, *v. a. & r.* to turn, revolve.
Drei, three; –mal, *adv.* three times.
Dreißig, thirty.
Dreſchen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to thrash.
Dreſcher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, thrasher.
Dresden, *n.* –s, Dresden.
Dringen, *v. n. ir.* to press forth, crowd, urge, penetrate.
Drittel, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, third.
Drittens, thirdly.
Drohen, *v. n.* to threaten.
Druck, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, pressure.
Drücken, *v. a.* to press, squeeze, oppress.
Du, *prn.* thou.
Duftig, *adj.* vaporous, fragrant.
Dumm, *adj.* dull, stupid.
Dunkel, *adj.* dark, obscure.
Dunkel, *n.* –s, darkness, obscurity.
Dunkelheit, *f.* –, darkness.
Dunſt, *m.* –es, *pl.* Dünſte, vapor, steam.
Durch, *prep.* through, by means of.
Durchſtrö'men, *v. n.* to permeate.
Durchwan'deln, *v. n.* to wander, or pass through, or over, to traverse.
Dürfen, to be allowed, be permitted, be able, need. (L. 45. 4. & *p.* 346.)
Durſten, Dürſten, *v. n. & imp.* to thirst, be thirsty.

E

Eben, *adj. & adv.* even, level, plain, even, just, exactly, precisely, als –, just as.
Ecke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, corner, edge.
Edel, *adj. & adv.* noble, precious, choice; –mütig, *adj.* noble, magnanimous.
Edelſtein, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, precious stone.
Eden, *n.* –s, Eden, paradise.
Ehe, *adv.* ere, before.
Eher, *adv.* sooner, rather.
Ehre, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, honor.
Ehrerbietig, *adj.* reverent, respectful.
Ehrfurcht, *f.* –, veneration, awe, reverence.
Ehrlich, *adj.* honest, faithful.

Digitized by Google

Ehrwürdig, *adj.* reverend, venerable.
Ei! *int.* eh! hey! ay!
Eiche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n. oak.
Eigen, *adj.* own, self, proper, peculiar, singular, strange, accurate; **–heit**, *f.* property, peculiarity; **–nützig**, *adj.* selfish; **–sinnig**, *adj.* capricious, willful, obstinate.
Eigentlich, proper, exact, real.
Eilen, *v. n.* to hasten, hurry, speed.
Ein, *art.* a, an; *adj.* one.
Einander, *adv.* one another, each other.
Einerlei, the same.
Einfalt, *f.* –, simplicity, silliness.
Einfältig, *adj.* simple, silly.
Einführen, *v. a.* to introduce, import, conduct.
Eingeweide, *n.* –s, *pl.* –n, inwards, entrails, intestines.
Engweg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, defile, narrow pass.
Eingreifen, *v. n. ir.* to catch, lay hold of, exert influence, interfere.
Einiger, Einige, Einiges, *pron.* some, any.
Einmal, *adv.* once, one time.
Einrichten, *v. a. & r.* to set right, arrange, adjust; **sich einrichten**, to accommodate, establish one's self.
Eins, *adj.* one, one thing, one and the same.
Einsam, *adj.* solitary, lonely.
Einsamkeit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, solitude, retiredness.
Einschlummern, *v. n.* to fall into a slumber, fall asleep.
Einsammeln, *v. a.* to gather in, collect.
Einsiedler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, hermit.
Einst, *adv.* once, one day, one time.
Einstellen, *v. a.* to suspend, stop; *v. r.* to appear.
Einwohner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, inhabitant.
Einzeln, *adj.* single, isolated.
Einzig, *adj.* only, single, alone.
Eis, *n.* –es, ice, ice-cream; **–bär**, *m.* polar bear.
Eisen, *n.* –s, iron; **–werk**, *n.* –s, iron work.
Eisern, *adj.* iron.
Eitel, *adj.* idle, vain, frivolous.
Eitern, *v. n.* to fester.
Ekel, *m.* –s, aversion, disgust.
Elend, *n.* –es, misery, distress.
Elend, *adj.* miserable, wretched.
Elephant, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, elephant.
Elle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, ell.
Eloah, *m.* Eloah.
Eltern, *pl.* parents.
Empfan'gen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to receive, take, accept.
Empfeh'len, *p.* 346; *v. ir. a.* to recommend.
Empor', *adv.* on high, upward, up aloft.
Empö'ren, *v. a.* to stir up, excite; –, *v. r.* to rebel, revolt.
Empö'rer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, rebel.
Empor'ragen, *v. n.* to tower up.
Empor'schauen, *v. n.* to look *or* gaze up.
Empor'steigen, *v. n. ir.* to rise, mount.
Ende, *n.* –s, *pl.* –n, end, aim.
Endlich, *adj.* finite, final; *adv.* at last, finally.
Eng *or* **Enge**, *adj.* narrow, tight.
Engel *m.* –s, *pl.* –, angel.
England, *n.* –s, England.
Engländer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, Englishman.
Englisch, *adj.* English.
Entblößen, *v. a.* to uncover, bare.
Entblößt', *adj.* destitute, deprived of, *p.* see entblößen.
Ente, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, duck.
Entfer'nung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, distance, removal, departure.
Entfernt', *adj.* distant, remote.
Entge'gen, *prep. & adv.* against, opposite.
Entgeg'engehen, *v. n. ir.*, to go to meet.
Entgeg'nen, *v. n.* to answer, reply.
Enthal'ten, *v. a. ir.* to contain, comprehend; *v. r. ir.* to abstain from, avoid.
Enthe'ben, see heben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to exempt from.
Entle'digen, *v. a.* to release.
Entrin'nen, see rinnen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. n.*, to run away, escape.
Entsa'gen, *v. n.* to renounce, resign.
Entschla'fen, see schlafen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.*, to fall asleep, expire.
Entschla'gen, see schlagen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. r.*, to get rid of, divest.
Entschlie'ßen, see schließen, *p.* 354; *v.*

Digitized by Google

ir. a., to unlock, disclose; *v. r.* to resolve, determine.
Entſte'hen, see ſtehen, *p.* 356, *v. ir. n.*, to arise, originate.
Entwe'der, *conj.* either.
Entzwei'en, *v. a.* to disunite, set at variance; *v. r.* to quarrel.
Er, *prn.* he, it. (L. 28. 5.)
Erbar'men, *v. r.* to pity, have mercy.
Erbärm'lich, *adj.* pitiful, miserable, wretched.
Erbe, *n.* –s, inheritance, patrimony.
Erben, *v. a.* to inherit · *v. n.* to devolve by inheritance.
Erbit'ten, *v. a. ir.*, to get, *or* try to get by entreaty.
Erbit'terung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, animosity.
Erblick'en, *v. a.* to descry, see, view.
Erbſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, pea.
Erde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, earth, ground.
Ereig'nen, *v. r.* to happen, chance.
Erfin'den, see finden, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.*, to invent.
Erfül'len, *v. a.* to fill, do, fulfill.
Erge'ben, see geben, *p.* 348; *v. ir. r.*, to surrender, submit, devoted, addicted, given.
Erge'hen, *v. n. ir.*, to happen, befall; *r. imp.* to go, fare with.
Ergrei'fen, see greifen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.*, to seize, catch
Erhal'ten, see halten, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.*, to keep, maintain, save, receive, get, gain.
Erhal'tung, *f.* –, preservation, maintenance, support.
Erhe'ben, *v. a. ir.*, to raise; *v. r. ir.*, to rise, arise.
Erin'nern, *v. a.* to remind, mention; *v. r.* to remember, recollect.
Erkäl'ten, *v r.* to catch cold.
Erken'nen, see kennen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.*, to perceive, distinguish, recognize.
Erkla'ren, *v. a.* to explain, interpret, define, declare.
Erklet'tern, *v. a.* to climb.
Erkun'digen, *v. r.* to inquire, make inquiry.
Erlau'ben, *v. a.* to permit, allow.
Erlie'gen, see liegen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.*, to succumb, be subdued, sink under
Erlö'ſchen, *v. n. ir.*, to go out, be extinguished, expire.
Erlö'ſung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, redemption deliverance, salvation.
Ermor'den, *v. a.* to murder.
Ermah'nen, *v. a.* to exhort, admonish remind.
Ernie'drigen, *v. a.* to lower, abase *v. r.* to humble one's self.
Ernſt, Ernſthaft, Ernſtvoll, *adj.* earnest, serious, grave, stern.
Ernte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, harvest, crop.
Ero'berer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, conqueror.
Errei'chen, *v. a.* to reach, attain.
Erret'ten, *v. a.* to save, rescue.
Errich'ten, *v. a* to erect, build up.
Erſatz', *m.* –es, compensation.
Erſchal'len, *v. n. ir.* to sound, resound, spread.
Erſchei'nen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to appear.
Erſchie'ßen, see Schießen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to shoot.
Erſchre'cken, *v. a.* to terrify, frighten; *v. r. ir.* to be terrified, be frightened.
Erſetz'en, *v. a.* to supply, replace.
Erſt, *adj. & adv.* first, prime, at first, before, only, not till.
Erſtau'nen, *v. n.* to be astonished, amazed.
Erſtens, *adv.* first, in the first place.
Erſu'chen, *v. a.* to entreat, request.
Ertrin'ken, see trinken, *p.* 356; *v. ir. n.* to be drowned, drown.
Erwa'chen, *v. n.* to awake, appear
Erwach'ſen, *adj.* full grown, adult.
Erwäh'nen, *v. a.* to mention.
Erwar'ten, *v. a.* to expect, await.
Erweck'en, *v. a.* to awaken, rouse.
Erwei'chen, *v. a.* to soften.
Erwei'ſen, see weiſen, *p.* 358; *v. ir. a.* to show, do, render; *v. r.* to prove.
Erwer'ben, *v. a. ir.* to acquire, earn, gain, obtain.
Erwer'bung, *f.* acquisition.
Erwie'dern, *v. a.* to answer, reply.
Erzäh'len, *v. a.* to tell, narrate, report.
Erzeu'gen, *v. a.* to beget, produce, engender.
Erzie'her, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, instructor master, governor.
Erzit'tern, *v. n.* to tremble, shake.

Digitized by Google

Es, *prn.* it, so.
Eſel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, ass, donkey.
Eſſen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to eat.
Eſſig, *m.* –s, vinegar.
Etliche, *adj.* some, any, several.
Etwas, *prn.* something, somewhat, some, any, a little.
Euch, you. to you.
Euer, euere, euer, *prn.* your.
Eula'lia *f.* Eulalia.
Eule, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, owl.
Euro'pa, *n.* –s, *or* ens, Europe.
Europa'er, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, European.
Ew., your. L. 27. 3.
Ewig, *adj.* eternal, everlasting.
Ewigkeit, *f.* –, eternity.

F

Fabel, *f.* –, *pl* –n, fable.
Facher, *m.* –s *pl.* –, fan.
Fahig, *adj* able, apt, fit, capable.
Fahren, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to drive, carry, convey; *v. ir. n.* to move quickly, run, start, rush. to go in a carriage, to sail, navigate.
Fallen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to fall, decline, fail.
Falſchheit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, falsehood.
Fami'lie, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, family.
Fangen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to catch, take, seize.
Farbe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, color.
Farben, *v. a.* to color, dye.
Farber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, dyer.
Faß, *n.* –ſſes, *pl.* Fäſſer, cask, barrel.
Faſt, *adv.* almost
Faſſen, *v. a.* to seize, contain; *v. r.* fast to collect ones se'f, recover.
Faul, *adj.* putrid, lazy, idle.
Faulheit, *f.* –, laziness, idleness.
Februa r, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, February.
Fechten, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to fight, fence.
Feder, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, feather, pen.
Fegen, *v. a.* to sweep, cleanse.
Fehlen, *v. n.* to fail, miss, err, mistake, to be wanting, want, to be deficient; was fehlt Ihnen? what ails you!
Fehler, *m.* –s *pl.* –, fault, error.
Feig, *adj.* coward, faint-hearted.
Fein, *adj.* fine, delicate, pretty.
Feind, *adj.* hostile, inimical.
Feind, *m.* –es, *pl.* e, enemy.
Feindlich, *adj.* hostile, inimical.
Feindſeligkeit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, hostility.
Feld, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, field, plain; –blume, *f.* wild-flower; –frucht, produce of the fields; –herr, *m.* commander in-chief; –webel, m. sergeant.
Feldbau, *m.* –es, –s, agriculture.
Fels, *m.* –ſens, *pl.* –ſen, Felſen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, rock, cliff.
Fenſter, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, window.
Fern, *adj.* far, remote, distant.
Ferne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, farness, distance
Fertig *adj.* ready, prepared, done.
Feſſel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fetter, chain.
Feſſeln, *v. a.* to fetter, shackle, chain, captivate.
Feſt, *adj.* fast, fixed, steadfast.
Fett, *adj.* fat, greasy.
Feuer, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, fire.
Finden, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to find, think; Statt –, to take place; *v. r. ir.* to be found, offer, comprehend.
Finger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, finger; –hut, *m.* thimble.
Firnewein, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, wine of the last year, old wine, firn, from the root of vorn, fern.
Fiſch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, fish.
Fiſchen, *v. a.* to fish.
Fiſcher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, fisherman.
Flach, *adj.* flat, plain, level.
Flache, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, plain, flatness, tract, surface.
Flachs, *m.* –ſes, flax.
Flaſche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, flask, bottle.
Flechten, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to braid.
Fleiſch, *n.* –es, flesh, meat.
Fleiſcher, *m.* –s. *pl.* –, butcher.
Fleiß, *m.* –es, diligence, industry.
Fleißig, *adj.* diligent, industrious.
Fliege, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fly.
Fliegen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to fly; hoch –, to soar.
Fliehen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to flee, shun.
Fließen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to flow, run.
Flöte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, flute.
Fluchen, to curse, imprecate.
Flüchtig, *adj.* flying, transient.
Flug, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Flüge, flight.
Flügel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, wing.
Flur, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, field, plain, floor
Fluß, *m.* –ſſes, *pl.* Flüſſe, river, stream; –pferd, hippopotamus.

Digitized by Google

Fluth, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, flood, deluge, inundation, tide.
Folge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sequel, consequence.
Folgen, *v. n.* to follow, succeed, obey.
Folglich, *conj* consequently.
Forelle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, trout.
Fort, *adv.* forth, gone off, away.
Fortblühen, *v. n.* to continue blossoming.
Fortfahren, to continue, go on with, drive off, depart.
Fortfliegen, *v. n. ir.* to fly away.
Fortjagen, *v. a. & n.* to drive away, turn away,
Fortschleppen, *v. a.* to drag away.
Fortwollen, *v. n. ir.* to wish, *or* intend to go.
Frage, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, question.
Fragen, *v. a. & n.* to ask, question, interrogate.
Frankfurt, *n.* –s, Frankfort.
Frankreich, *n.* –s, France.
Franz, *m.* Francis.
Franzo'se, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Frenchman.
Franzö'sisch, *adj.* French.
Frau, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, woman, wife, lady, madam, mistress.
Fräulein, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, young lady, miss.
Frech, *adj.* impudent, bold, saucy, audacious.
Frei, *adj.* free, exempt, disengaged, vacant, independent, open, public; –sprechung, *f.* acquittal.
Freigebig, *adj.* liberal, generous.
Freiheit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, liberty, freedom, privilege, license.
Freilich, *adv.* certainly, to be sure, indeed.
Freiwillig, *adj.* voluntary.
Fremde, *m. & f.* foreigner, stranger.
Fremdling, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, stranger, foreigner.
Fressen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to eat, devour, corrode.
Freude, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, joy, pleasure.
Freudenstörer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, disturber of joy, marfeast.
Freudig, *adj.* glad, joyful, cheerful.
Freuen, *v. r.* to rejoice; über etwas, auf etwas, to rejoice in, be glad; *v. imp.* to afford joy, pleasure; es freut mich, I am glad.
Freund, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, friend.
Freundin, *f.* –, *pl.* –nen, female friend.
Freundlich, *adj.* friendly, kind.
Freundschaft, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, friendship.
Friede, *m.* –ns (Frieden, *m.* –s), peace.
Friedlich, *adj.* peaceful, peaceable
Friedrich, *m.* Frederic.
Frieren, *v. n. & imp. ir.* to freeze, be chilled; es friert mich, I am cold.
Froh, *adj.* glad, joyful, joyous.
Fröhlich, *adj.* joyous, joyful, cheerful.
Fromm, *adj.* pious, gentle.
Fronte, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, front; – machen, to face.
Frucht, *f.* –, *pl.* Früchte, fruit.
Fruchtlos, *adj.* fruitless, useless.
Frühling, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, spring.
Fügen, *v. a.* to join, unite; *v. r.* accommodate one's self to, submit.
Fühlen, *v. a. & n.* to feel, be sensible of, perceive.
Führen, *v. a.* to carry, convey, lead, guide, manage, wear.
Führer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, guide, leader.
Füllen, *v. a.* to fill, fill up.
Fünf, see §. 45, (1).
Fünfte, *adj.* fifth.
Fünfzehn, see § 45.
Funkeln, *v. n.* to sparkle, glitter.
Für, *prep.* for, instead of, by, after; – und –, forever and ever.
Fürchten, *v. a.* to fear, be afraid; *v. r.* to be in fear.
Furchtsam, *adj.* timid, timorous.
Fürst, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, prince.
Fürwort, *n.* –es, *pl.* –wörter, pronoun.
Fuß, *m.* –es, *pl.* Füße, foot.
Futter, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, food, fodder, provender, case.

G

Gabel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fork.
Gang, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Gänge, going, walk, way, direction, course.
Gans, *f.* –, *pl.* Gänse, goose.
Ganz, *adj.* whole, all, entire, total, full, perfect, complete, quite, – recht, quite right.
Gar, *adj. & adv.* prepared, entirely, very, even.
Garn, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, yarn.

Digitized by Google

Garten, *m.* –s, *pl.* Gärten, garden; –blume, *f.* garden-flower.
Gärtner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, gardener.
Gaſt, *m.*–es, *pl.* Gaſte, guest; –freund, *m.* guest, host; –haus, *n.* hotel.
Gaul, *m.* –es, *pl.* Gäule, horse, nag.
Gebaude, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, building.
Geben, *p.* 348; to give.
Gebie'ten, *p.* 348; *v. ir. a.* to command, order.
Gebir'ge, *n.*–s, *pl.*–, chain of mountains, mountains.
Gebirgs'marſch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –märſche, mountain-march.
Gebo'ren, *adj.* born.
Gebrauch, *m.* –es, *pl.* Gebräuche, use, custom, usage, practice.
Gebrech'en, see brechen, *p.* 346; *v. ir. imp.* to be wanting, be in want of, want.
Gebüh'ren, *v. n.* to be due, belong to; *v. r. & imp.* to be fit, becoming.
Gedacht'niß, *n.* –ſſes, memory.
Gedan'ke, *m.* –ns, *pl.* –n, thought, idea, notion, meaning, purpose.
Gedenken, see denken, *p.* 346; *v. ir. n.* to think of, remember, mention, intend.
Gedicht', *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, poem.
Gedrang't, *p.* pressed, crowded.
Geduld', *f.* –, patience, indulgence.
Geduld'ig, *adj.* patient, forbearing.
Gefahr', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, danger, peril.
Gefahr'lich, *adj.* dangerous.
Gefahr'te, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, companion, consort.
Gefahr'tin, *f.* –, *pl.* –nen, new, companion, consort.
Gefahr'voll, *adj.* fraught with danger, dangerous, perilous.
Gefal'len, see fallen, *p.* 348; to please; es gefallt mir, I like it.
Gefal'ligkeit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, complaisance, kindness, favor, service.
Gefang'niß, *n.* –ſſes, *pl.* –ſſe, prison.
Gefa'ß, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, vessel.
Gefie'der, *n.* –s, plumage, feathers.
Gefol'ge, *n.* –s, train, retinue.
Gegen, *prep.* toward, to, against, for, about, near, compared to; –theil, *n.* contrary.
Gehen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to go, walk fare, be; wie geht es? how are you? es geht mir wohl, I am well, der Wind geht, the wind blows.
Gehirn', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, brain.
Gehor'chen, *v. n.* to obey.
Gehö'ren, *v. n.* to belong.
Gehor'ſam, *adj.* obedient, dutiful, *m.* –s, obedience, duty.
Gehül'fe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, assistant.
Geige, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, violin.
Geiſt, *m.* –es, *pl.* –er. ghost, spirit soul, genius.
Geiſtig, *adj.* spirituous, spiritual, intellectual.
Geiz, *m.* –es, avarice; –hals, *m.* –es, miser.
Geizig, *adj.* avaricious, covetous.
Gekroch'en, see kriechen.
Gelb, *adj.* yellow.
Geld, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, money, coin.
Gele'genheit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, occasion, opportunity.
Gelehrt', *adj.* learned, skilled.
Gelie'hen, see leihen.
Geling'en, *p.*348; *v. ir. n.* to succeed, prosper, speed.
Gelten, *p.* 348. *v. ir. n.* to be of value.
Gemäl'de, *n.* –s, *pl.*–, picture, painting.
Gemein', *adj.* common, ordinary, vulgar.
Gemſenjäger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, chamois-hunter.
Gemüth', *n.* –es, *pl.* –er. mind, soul, heart, nature.
Gen, *prep.* toward, to.
General', *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Generäle, general, commander.
General'lieutenant, *m.* –s, *pl.* –s, lieutenant-general.
Gene'ſen, *p.* 348; *v. ir. n.* to recover
Genie'ßen, *p.* 350: *v. ir. a.* to enjoy, take, taste, eat, drink.
Genius, *m.* –, *pl.* Genien, genius.
Genug, *adv.* sufficient, enough.
Genü'gen, *v. n.* to suffice, satisfy.
Gera'de, *adj.* straight, right, plain, immediately, directly, just, exactly.
Gerber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tanner.
Gerecht, *adj.* just, righteous.
Gerei'chen, *v. n.* to tend, redound.
Geri'cht, *n.*–es, *pl.*–e, judgment, tribunal.
Gern, *adv.* willingly, gladly, cheer

Digitized by Google

fully, with pleasure; –haben, to like, be fond of.
Gerſte, *f.* –, barley.
Geſang, *m.* –es, *pl.* Geſänge, song.
Geſchäft', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, business, employment.
Geſchäftig, *adj.* busy, busied, bustling.
Geſche'hen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to happen, take, place, chance, be done.
Geſchenk', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, present, gift.
Geſchich'te, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, history, story.
Geſchickt, *adj.* fit, apt, skillful.
Geſchöpf', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, creature.
Geſchrei', *n.* –es, cry, clamor, scream, lamentations.
Geſchütz', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, artillery, cannon.
Geſchwei'gen, see ſchweigen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to pass over in silence.
Geſchwind', *adj.* swift, fast, rapid, quick.
Geſchwür', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, sore, ulcer.
Geſell'ſchaft, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, company.
Geſetz', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, law, decree.
Geſpenſt', *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, ghost, specter, spirit, phantom.
Geſprä'chig, *adj.* affable, talkative.
Geſta'de, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, shore, coast.
Geſtalt', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, figure, form.
Geſtein', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, stone, rock.
Geſtern, *adv.* yesterday.
Geſträuch', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, bushes, briars, thicket.
Geſund' *adj.* sound, healthy.
Geſund'heit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, health.
Getrei'de, *n.* –s, corn, grain.
Getreu', *adj.* faithful, loyal, true, honest, devoted.
Getroſt', confident, courageous, with confidence.
Getrö'ſten, *v. r.* to console one's self, trust in, to be not afraid of.
Gewahr', *adj.* perceiving; –werden, to see, perceive.
Gewalt', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, power, force.
Gewal'tig, *adj.* powerful, mighty, very large, prodigious.
Gewand', *n.* –es. *pl.* Gewänder, garment, drapery cloth, dress.
Geweih', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, horns, branches, antlers.
Gewin'nen, *p.* 350; to win, earn.
Gewiß', *adj.* certain, sure, fixed.
Gewiſſen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, conscience.
Gewöhn'lich, usual, common.
Gewohnt', used, accustomed.
Gewöl'be, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, & –r, vault, arch.
Gewürz', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, spice, aromatic.
Geziе'men, *v. imp.* to become, beseem, be fit.
Gießen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to pour, spill, cast.
Giftig, *adj.* poisonous, venomous.
Gimpel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, chaffinch, simpleton.
Glanz, *m.* –es, splendor, luster, brightness, glance.
Glänzen, *v. n.* to glisten, glitter.
Glas, *n.* –es, *pl.* Gläſer, glass.
Glaſer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, glazier.
Gläſern, *adj.* glass, glassy.
Glatt, *adj.* smooth, even, plain.
Glaube, *m.* –ns, faith, belief, credit.
Glauben, *v. a.* to believe, think.
Gläubig, *adj.* believing, faithful.
Gläubige, *m.* & *f.* believer.
Gleich, *adj.* like, alike, equal, level, plain, straight, just, immediately.
Gleichkommen, to equal.
Gleichen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to equal, equalize, level, resemble.
Gleichgültigkeit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, equalness, equivalence, indifference.
Gleichmuth, *m.* –es, equinimity, calmness.
Glück, *n.* –es, fortune, happiness, prosperous condition.
Glücklich, *adj.* happy, fortunate, prosperous.
Glückſeligkeit, *f.*–, happiness, felicity
Gnädig, *adj.* gracious, merciful.
Gold, *n.* –es, gold; –ſchmied, *m.* goldsmith.
Golden, *adj.* gold, golden.
Gott, *m.* –es, God.
Göttlich, *adj.* divine, godly, godlike.
Gottlos, *adj.* godless, impious, wicked.
Grab, *n.* –es, *pl.* Gräber, grave, tomb, sepulchre.
Graben, *m.* –s, *pl.* Gräben, ditch, trench, canal.
Graben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* & *n.* to dig, cut
Graf, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, earl, count.
Gränze, see Grenze.
Gras, *n.* –ſes, *pl.* Gräſer, grass.

Digitized by Google

Grau, *adj.* gray, grizzle ..
Greifen, *v. a. & n. ir.* to gripe, grasp, seize, lay hold of.
Greis, *adj.* gray, hoary; – *m.* –ſes, *pl.* –ſe, an old man.
Grenze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, limit, border.
Griechenland, *n.* –s, Greece.
Grob, *adj.* croarse, clumsy, gross, rude.
Groß, *adj.* great, large, vast, huge, high, tall, eminent, grand.
Grube, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pit, cavity.
Grün, *adj.* green, verdant, fresh.
Grund, *m.* –es, *pl.* Gründe, ground, bottom, foundation, reason.
Günſtig, *adj.* favorable, propitious.
Guſtav, *m.* Gustavus.
Gut, *adj.* good, well, sufficiently, good-natured, kind, pleasant, convenient; –, *n.* –es, *pl.* Güter, good, possession, estate, commodity.
Güte, *f.* –, goodness, kindness.
Gütig, *adj.* kind, benevolent.

H

Ha, *int.* ha!
Haar, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, hair, wool.
Haben, *v. ir. aux.* to have, possess.
Habicht, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, hawk.
Habsburg, *n.* Hapsburg.
Hader, *m.* –s, quarrel, brawl.
Hadern, *v. n.* to quarrel, brawl.
Hafen, *m.* –s, *pl.* Häfen, harbor.
Hafer, *m.* –s, oats.
Hager, *adj.* haggard.
Halb, *adj.* half.
Halb, halben, halber, *prep.* by reason of, on account of.
Halbheit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, mediocrity.
Halblaut, *adv.* in an under tone.
Halm, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, stalk, halm.
Halten, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to hold, keep, support, contain, stop, maintain, manage, value, deem, estimate, think, celebrate, treat.
Hammer, *m.* –s, *pl.* Hämmer, hammer.
Hämmern, *v. a.* to hammer.
Hand, *f.* –, *pl.* Hände, hand; –ſchuh, *m.* glove, gauntlet.
Handeln, *v. a.* to handle, treat; *v. n.* to act, trade, deal.
Handlung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, action, deed.
Hanf, *m.* –es, hemp.
Hangen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to hang, dangle.
Harmlos, *adj* without grief, harmless.
Harmonie', *f.* –, *pl.* –n, harmony.
Hart, *adj.* hard, severe, rigorous.
Haſe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, hare.
Haſſen, *v. a.* to hate.
Häßlich, *adj.* ugly, wicked, dirty.
Haſt, *f.* –, haste.
Haupt, *n.* –es, *pl.* Häupter, head.
Hauptgeſchäft, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, main business.
Hauptmann, *m.* –es, *pl.* –männer, –leute, captain.
Hauptſtadt, *f.* –, *pl.* –ſtädte, capital, metropolis.
Haus, *n.* –ſes, *pl.* Häuſer, house, household, family; – frau, *f.* housewife.
Hausbrod, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, household bread, domestic-bread.
Haushaltung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, housekeeping, household, family.
Heben, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to lift, raise, elevate.
Heer, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, army, host.
Heil, *adj.* healed, sound, unhurt; *n.* –es, welfare, health.
Heilig, *adj.* holy, sacred.
Heiligen, *v. a.* to hallow, consecrate.
Heimbringen, *v. a. ir.* to bring home.
Heimlich, *adj.* secret, private.
Heinrich, *m.* –s, Henry.
Heiß, *adj.* hot, ardent, torrid.
Heißen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.* to call, bid, enjoin, to be called, be said, mean, signify, be considered; was ſoll das –? what does that mean? what do you mean by that? es heißt, it is said, they say; das heißt, that is to say, that is; wie heißen Sie? what is your name?
Heiter, *adj.* serene, clear, fair, bright, cheerful.
Helfen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to help, assist, save, avail.
Hell, *adj.* clear, bright, light.
Her, *adv.* hither, hitherward.
Herab', *adv.* down from, down, downward.
Heran', *adv.* on, near near to, up, upward.

Digitized by Google

Heran'rücken, *v. n.* to advance, approach, march on.
Herauf', *adv.* up, upward.
Herauf'treiben, *v. a. ir.* to force *or* press up.
Heraus'kommen, *v. n. ir.* to come out.
Heraus schreiten, *v. n. ir.* to step forth.
Herb, herbe, *adj.* acerb, bitter, eager, harsh, sour.
Herbei', *adv.* hither, near, on.
Herbei'bringen, *v. a. ir.* to bring forward, produce.
Herbei'führen, *v. a.* to lead near, bring on.
Herbei'tragen, *v. a. ir.* to bring *or* fetch to *or* in.
Herbst, *m.* -es, harvest, autumn.
Hernie'der, *adv.* down, downward.
Hernie'derblicken, *v.* to look down.
Hernie'derkommen, *v. n. ir.* to come down.
Herr, *m.* -en, *pl.* -en, master, gentleman, lord, sir.
Herrlich, *adj.* magnificent, glorious, splendid.
Herrlichkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, magnificence, glory, splendor.
Herrschen, *v. n.* to rule, reign, govern, prevail.
Herstammen, *v. n.* to descend, issue from, come from.
Herüber, *adv.* over, across.
Herunter, *adv.* down.
Hervor'gehen, *v. n. ir.* to go forth, proceed, follow.
Hervor'holen, *v. a.* to fetch out.
Hervor'treten, *v. n. ir.* to step forth, appear.
Herz, *n.* -ens, *pl.* -en, heart, courage.
Herzlich, *adj.* hearty, cordial.
Herzog, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, duke.
Herzogshut, *m.* -es, *pl.* -hüte, ducal hat.
Hesse, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, Hessian.
Heu, *n.* -es, hay.
Heuchelei', *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hypocrisy.
Heulen, *v. n.* to howl.
Heute, *adv.* to-day, this day; - zu Tage, now-a-days.
Hier, *adv.* here, in this world; -her, hither, here.
Hierher'kommen, *v. n. ir.* to come hither.
Himmel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, heaven, heavens, *pl.* sky, zone, climate.
Himmlisch, *adj.* heavenly, celestial.
Hin, *adv.* thither, away, gone, lost, on, along, down. (L. 52.)
Hinab', *adv.* down, down there (see herunter, hinunter).
Hinab'fallen, *v. n. ir., imp.* to fall down.
Hinauf', *adv.* up, up there.
Hinauf'steigen, *v. n. ir.* to step *or* climb up.
Hinaus', *adv.* out, out there.
Hinaus'gehen, *v. n. ir.* to go out.
Hinein'reiten, *v. n. ir.* to ride into.
Hinein'wagen, *v. r.* to venture in.
Hinnehmen, *v. a. ir.* to take. receive.
Hinreichen, *v.* a. to reach, hand; -, *v. n.* to suffice.
Hinsicht, *f.* -, view, respect.
Hinter, *prep. & adv.* behind, after, back, backwards.
Hinüber, *adv.* over, across, beyond.
Hinzu'fügen, *v. a.* to add to, join, adjoin.
Hirsch, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, stag, hart.
Hobel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, plane.
Hoch, *adj.* high, lofty, sublime.
Höchst, *adv.* most, extremely.
Hoffen, *v. a. & n.* to hope, expect, trust.
Hoffnung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hope, expectation.
Höfling, *m.* -s, *pl.* -e, courtier.
Höhe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, hight, highness. elevation; in - Höhe, up, upward.
Hohl, *adj.* hollow, concave.
Hohnlachen, *v. n.* to laugh in scorn, scoff.
Höllisch, *adj.* hellish, infernal.
Holen *v. a.* to fetch, go for; -lassen, to send for.
Holz, *n.* -es, *pl.* -e & Hölzer, wood timber; -hauer, woodcutter.
Hölzern, *adj.* wooden.
Honig *m.* -es, honey.
Honigtopf, *m.* -es, *pl.* -, -töpfe, honey-jar.
Hören, *v. a. & n.* hear, give ear.
Horn, *n.* -es, *pl.* Hörner, horn.
Hübsch, *adj.* pretty, fair.
Huf, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, hoof.
Hügel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, hillock, hill.
Huhn, *n.* -es, *pl.* Hühner, fowl.

Digitized by Google

Hülfe, *f.* –, aid, help, succor, assistance, relief.
Hülflos, *adj.* helpless.
Hund, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, dog.
Hündchen, (L. 24. 1).
Hundert, see § 45, (1).
Hundertfältig, hundredfold, a hundred things.
Hungern, *v. n & imp.* to hunger.
Hüpfen, *v. n.* to leap, hop, skip.
Hut, *m.* –es, *pl.* Hüte, hat, bonnet; –macher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, hatter.
Hütte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, hut, cot, cottage.

I (Vokal).

Ich, *prn.* I.
Ihr, *prn.* your, to her, her, its, you, their.
Immer, *adv.* always, ever.
In, *prep.* into, in, at, within, to, of.
Inbrünstig, *adj.* ardent, fervent.
Indem', *conj.* while, when, because, since.
Inhaltsschwer, *adj.* significant, full of meaning.
Innere, *adj.* inner, interior, intrinsic, *fig.* heart, soul.
Innerhalb, *prep.* within.
Innerlich, *adj.* inward, internal, intrinsic, hearty, mental.
Insel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, island, isle.
Insgeheim', *adv.* privately, secretly.
Interessant', *adj.* interesting.
Interesse, *n.* –s, *pl.* –n, interest.
Irdisch, *adj.* terrestrial, earthly; das Irdische, earthly portion, possession.
Irren, *v. n.* to err, go astray; *v. r.* to mistake, commit an error.
Irrlicht, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, ignis fatuus, Will-o'-the-wisp, Jack-o'-lantern.
Island, *n.* –s, Iceland.
Italie'ner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, Italian.
Italie'nisch, *adj.* Italian.

J (Consonant).

Ja, *adv.* yes, why, indeed, on any account; du thatst es ja freiwillig, why you did it voluntarily; ay yea; jawohl, certainly.
Jacke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, jacket.
Jagd, *f.* –, chase, hunt.
Jagdhund, *m.* –es *pl.* –e, hunting-dog, pointer, hound.
Jagen, *v. a. & n.* to chase, hunt; in die Flucht –, to put to flight.
Jäger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, hunter.
Jahr, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, year; –szeit, *f.* season.
Jammern, *v. a. & n.* to lament, mourn, pity, feel pity.
Januar', *m.* –s, January.
Je, *adv.* ever, always; –nachdem, according as.
Jeder, *prn.* every, each.
Jedermann, *prn.* every body.
Jedoch', *conj.* however.
Jeho'vah, *m.* –s, Jehovah.
Jemand, *prn.* somebody, any one.
Jener, jene, jenes, *prn.* that, you, yonnder, the former.
Jenseits *adv.* on the other side.
Jetzt, *adv.* now. at present.
Jovis, (gen. of Jupiter), of Jupiter.
Jugend, *f.* –, youth.
Jugendlich, *adj.* juvenile, youthful.
Jung, *adj.* young, new, recent.
Jüngling, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, youth, lad.
Jünglingsfeuer, *n.* –s, youthful ardor.
Juni, *m.* June.
Junker, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, young nobleman, squire.
Jupiter, *m.* –s, Jupiter.

K

Kaffee, *m.* –s, coffee.
Käfig, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, cage.
Kahn, *m.* –s, *pl.* Kähne, boat.
Kaiser, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, emperor.
Kaiserin, *f.* –, *pl.* –nen, empress.
Kalb, *n.* –s, *pl.* Kälber, calf.
Kalk, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, lime.
Kalt, *adj.* cold, chill, frigid.
Kälte, *f.* –, cold, coldness.
Kameel', –es, *pl.* –e, camel.
Kamerad', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, comrade
Kamin', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, chminey, fire place, fire-side.
Kamm, *m.* –es, *pl.* Kämme, comb.
Kampf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Kämpfe, combat
Kanne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, can, jug.
Kanzel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pulpit.
Kapitän', *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, capitain.
Karl, *m.* –s, Charles.
Käse, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cheese.
Kaufen, *v. a.* to buy, purchase.
Kaufmann, *m.*–s, *pl.*–leute, merchant.

Digitized by Google

Kaum, *adv.* scarce, scarcely.
Kehren, *v. a.* to brush, sweep.
Keichen, *v. n.* to pant, gasp.
Kein (keiner, keine, keines), *adj. prn.* no, not any, no one, none.
Keineswegs, *adv.* in no wise, by no means, not at all.
Keller, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cellar.
Kellner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, waiter.
Kennen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* to know, be acquainted with.
Kenntniß, *f.* –, *pl.* –e, knowledge, science, acquirement.
Kerker, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, prison, dungeon.
Keſſel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, kettle.
Kette, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, chain.
Keuchen, see Keichen.
Keule, *f.* –, *pl.* –, club.
Kind, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, child, infant.
Kindiſch, *adj.* childish, childlike.
Kirche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, church.
Kirſchbaum, *m.* –es, *pl.* –bäume, cherry-tree.
Kirſche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cherry.
Klagen, *v. n.* to complain, lament.
Klage *f.* –, *pl.* –n, complaint, lamentation, plaint.
Kläglich, *adj.* lamentable, mournful, pitiful.
Klar, *adj.* clear, bright, fair, plain.
Kleid, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, garment, dress, garb. gown.
Klein, *adj.* little, small, trifling.
Klempner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tinman.
Klettern, *v. n.* to climb, scramble.
Klug, *adj.* prudent, ingenious wise, judicious, skillful.
Knabe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, boy, lad,
Knecht, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, servant, slave.
Knopf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Knöpfe, button.
Knospe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, bud, eye;
Koch, *m.* –es, *pl.* Köche, cook.
Köchin (L. 23. 5.).
Koffer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, coffer, trunk.
Kohle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, coal.
Kommen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to come, arrive at, get to.
König, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, king; –reich, *n.* kingdom.
Königin, *f.* –, *pl.* –nen, queen.
Können, *v. n. ir.* to be able, be permitted, know. (L. 45. 5. & *p.* 350).
Kopf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Köpfe, head.
Korb, *m.* –es, *pl.* Körbe, basket.
Korn, *n.* –es, *pl.* Körner, grain, corn. –ähre, *f.* ear of corn.
Körper, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, body.
Koſten, *v. n.* to cost.
Kraft, *f.* –, *pl.* Kräfte, strength, force, vigor, faculty, power.
Kraft, *prep.* by virtue of.
Kräftig, *adj.* strong, powerful.
Kragen, *m.* –s, *pl.* Kragen, collar
Krähe, *f.* –, *pl* –n, crow.
Kranich, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, crane.
Krank, *adj.* sick, ill, diseased.
Kränken, *v. a.* & *r.* to grieve, vex.
Kreide, *f.* –, chalk.
Kreiſen, *v. n.* to move in a circle, turn round, revolve, whirl.
Kreuz, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, cross, crucifix; –zug, *m.* crusade.
Kriechen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to creep, crawl.
Krieg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, war.
Krieger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, warrior.
Kriegszug, *m.* –es, Kriegszüge, campaign.
Krokodil', *m.* & *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, crocodile.
Krone, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, crown, coronet, head, top (of a tree).
Krug, *m.* –s, *pl.* Krüge, pitcher.
Küfer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cooper.
Kuh, *f.* –, *pl.* Kühe, cow.
Kühl, *adj.* cool, fresh, cold.
Kühn, *adj.* bold, hardy, dauntless.
Kummer, *m.* –s, sorrow, grief.
Kunde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, knowledge, information, news, notice.
Künftig, *adj.* future, next, coming; ins Künftige, for the future.
Kunſt, *f.* –, *pl.* Künſte, art, skill.
Künſtler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, artist.
Kupfer, *n.* –s, copper.
Kupfern, *adj.* copper, of copper.
Kurz, *adj.* & *adv.* short, brief, short ly, in short.
Kutſcher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, coachman.

L

Laben, *v. a.* to refresh, recreate.
Lächeln, *v. n.* to smile.
Lachen, to laugh, smile.
Lächerlich, *adj.* ridiculous.
Lachs, *m.* –ſes, *pl.* –e, salmon.
Lager, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, & Läger, couch, bed, camp.

Digitized by Google

Lagern, *v. a.* to lay down, store, encamp, lie down.
Lahm, *adj.* lame, halt, halting.
Lamm, *n.* –es, *pl.* Lämmer, lamb.
Land, *n.* –es, *pl.* Länder, land, ground, soil, country; –luft, *f.* country-air; –mann, *m.* peasant; –ſtraße, *f.* high-road, highway.
Ländlich, *adj.* rural, country-like.
Landſchaft, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, landscape.
Lang, *adj.* long, tall, during; –weilig, tedious, tiresome.
Lange, *adv.* long, a long time.
Langeweile, *f.* –, ennui, heaviness, tediousness.
Längs, *adv.* along.
Langſam, *adj.* slow, dull, heavy.
Längſt, *adv.* long ago, long since.
Laſſen, to let, permit, allow, give, suffer, fit, become. (L. 45. 11. & p. 350.)
Laſttbier, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, beast of burden.
Laſterhaft, *adj.* vicious, wicked.
Läſtig, *adj.* burdensome, troublesome.
Lauf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Läufe, run, course, currency, current.
Laufen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to run.
Laune, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, humor, temper, whim, freak.
Laut, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, sound, tone.
Laut, *adj.* & *adv.* loud, aloud.
Läutern, *v. a.* to purify, refine, clear.
Leben, *v. n.* to live; *n.* –s, life, vivacity.
Leben, *n.* –s, life.
Leben'dig, *adj.* living, alive, quick.
Leder, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, leather.
Ledig, *adj.* empty, void, vacant, free.
Leer, *adj.* empty, void, vain.
Legen, *v. a.* to lay, put, place; *v. r.* to lie down.
Lehen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, tenure, possession.
Lehren, *v. a.* to teach, instruct.
Lehrer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, teacher, instructor, professor, master.
Lehrerin (L. 23. 5).
Lehrling, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, apprentice.
Lehrreich, *adj.* instructive.
Leib, *m.* –es, *pl.* –er, body.
Leicht, *adj.* light, easy, fickle.
Leichtſinnig, *adj.* light, light-minded.
Leid, *adj.* sorrowful, troublesome; es iſt mir –, es thut mir –, I am sorry for it.
Leid, *n.* –es, hurt, pain, sorrow.
Leiden, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* & *n.* to suffer, endure, bear, tolerate; *n.* –s, *pl.* –, suffering, misfortune.
Leidenſchaft, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, passion.
Leihen, *p.* 350; *v. a.* to lend, borrow.
Leipzig, *n.* –s, Leipsic.
Leiſe, *adj.* low, soft, light.
Leiſten, *v. a.* to do, render, perform, accomplish, execute.
Leiten, *v. a.* to guide, lead
Lerche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lark.
Lernen, *v. a.* & *n.* to learn; auswendig –, to learn by heart.
Leſen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a.* & *n.* to read gather.
Letzt, *adj.* last, ultimate, final.
Leu, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, lion.
Leuchten, *v. n.* to shine, light, give light.
Leuchter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, candlestick.
Leute, *pl.* people, persons.
Licht, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e & –er, light, candle; es ging ihm ein – auf, he began to see, understand.
Lieb, *adj.* dear, beloved, pleasing; es iſt mir –, I am glad.
Liebe, *f.* –, love, affection.
Lieben, *v. a.* & *n.* to love.
Lieber, *comp. of* lieb & gern, *adj.* dearer; *adv.* rather, sooner.
Lieblichkeit, *f.* –, loveliness, amiableness, sweetness.
Lied, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, song, hymn.
Liegen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. n.* to lie.
Linde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, linden-tree.
Link, *adj.* left, left-handed.
Lob, *n.* –es, praise, commendation.
Loben, *a. a.* to praise, commend.
Loch, *n.* –es, *pl.* Löcher, hole.
Locken, *v. a.* & *n.* to call, decoy, bait, allure, entice.
Löffel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, spoon.
Lohn, *m.* & *n.* –es, *pl.* Löhne, reward, wages, *pl.* hire, pay, salary.
Los, *adj.* & *adv.* loose, free, rid.
Löſchpapier, *n.* blotting-paper.
Losgehen, *v. n. ir.* to come off, begin, go off; auf Einen –, to attack one.
Losreißen, *v. a. ir.* to tear off, break loose; *v. r. ir.* to disengage one's self by force.
Loswinden, *v. a.* & *r. ir.* to untwist, tear away, disengage one's self.

Digitized by Google

Löwe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, lion.
Lucin'de, *f.* Lucinda.
Luft, *f.* –, *pl.* Lüfte, air, breeze.
Lüftchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, breeze.
Lüge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, lie, falsehood.
Lügen, *p.* 350; *v. ir. a. & n.* to lie, tell a lie.
Luſt, *f.* –, *pl.* Lüſte, pleasure, joy, enjoyment, delight, inclination, fancy, desire.

M

Machen, *v. a.* to make, fabricate, produce, represent.
Macht, *f.* –, *pl.* Mächte, might, force.
Mächtig, *adj.* mighty, powerful; einer Sprache – ſein, to be master of a language.
Mädchen, *n.* –s' *pl.* –, maiden, girl.
Magdeburg, *n.* –s, Magdeburg.
Mager, *adj.* meager, lean.
Magnet', *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, load-stone, magnet.
Mahlen, *p* 352; *v. ir. a.* to grind.
Mährchen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, tale, legend.
Mai, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, & –en, May.
Mailied, *n.* –es, May song.
Mais, *m.* maize, Indian corn.
Majeſtät', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, majesty.
Majeſtä'tiſch, *adj.* majestic.
Mal, *n.* –s, *pl.* –e, time. (§ 50.)
Maler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, painter.
Malta, *n.* –s, Malta.
Man. (L. 19).
Mancher, manche, manches, *prn.* many a, many a one, much.
Manche, *pl.* many, some, several; manches, many things.
Mandel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, almond.
Mann, *m.* –es, *pl.* Männer, man, husband.
Mannheim, *n.* Manheim.
Mantel, *m.* –s, *pl.* Mäntel, cloak
Märchen, see Mährchen.
Markt, *m.* –es, *pl.* Märkte, market, mart, market-place.
Marmor, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, marble.
Marſchall, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Marſchälle, marshal.
März, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, March.
Maſer, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, speck, spot; die –n, measles
Mäßig, *adj.* moderate, temperate.
Mäßigung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, moderation temperance.
Maſt, *m.* –es, *pl.*–en, mast.
Matro'ſe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, sailor.
Maulthier, *n.* –s, *pl.* –e, mule
Maurer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, mason.
Mecha'niſch, *adj.* mechanical.
Meer, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, sea, ocean,
Meereswoge, *f.*–, *pl.*–n, wave, billow
Mehl, *n.* –es, *pl.* e, flour, meal, dust.
Mehr, *adj.* more, longer
Mehrere, *adj. pl.* several.
Meiden, *p.* 352; to avoid, shun.
Mein, meine, mein, *prn.* my, mine
Meinen, *v. a. & n.* to think, suppose.
Meinung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, opinion, meaning, intention, mind.
Meißel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, chisel.
Meiſter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, master.
Melden, *v. a.* to announce, notify.
Melo'ne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, melon.
Menge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, multitude, great many, great deal, plenty.
Menſch, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, man, human being, person, mankind.
Menſchenherz, *n.* –ens, *pl.* –en, human heart.
Menſchheit, *f.* –, humanity, mankind.
Menſchlich, *adj.* human, humane.
Merken, *v. a.* to mark, note, perceive observe.
Meſſen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to measure, survey, compare.
Meſſer, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, knife; –ſchmied, *m.* cutler.
Meſſingen, *adj.* brass, brazen.
Miene, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, mien, air, look countenance.
Milch, *f.* –, milk.
Mildiglich, mildly, charitably.
Mindeſt, *adj.* smallest, lowest.
Miniſ'ter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, minister.
Mißbrauch, *m.* –s, Mißbräuche, abuse, misuse.
Mißlich, *adj.* doubtful, precarious.
Mißlin'gen, *p.* 352; *v.* ir. *n.* to go amiss, fail.
Mißmuth, *m.* –es, ill-humor, melancholy, sadness.
Mißverſtehen, see ſtehen, *p.* 356.; *v. ir. a.* to misunderstand.
Mit, *prep.* with, by, at, upon, under to.

Digitized by Google

Mitnehmen, *v. a. ir.* to take along with.
Mitschüler, *m.* –s, ¨– –, fellow-scholar,
Mitschülerin, *f.* (L. 23. 5.)
Mittagssuppe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, dinner.
Mittel, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, middle, medium, mean, means, expedient, remedy.
Mitten, *adv.* in the midst, in the middle of, in the heart of, amidst.
Mögen, to have a mind, like, wish, be able. (L. 45. 7. & *p.* 352.
Monat, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, month, moon.
Mond, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e & –en, moon, month.
Mondschein, *m.* –es, –s, moon-light, moon-shine.
Monsieur (French), Sir, Mr.
Morgen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, morning, morn, Orient, East; *adv.* to-morrow.
Morgenbämmerung, *f.* –, day-break, morning-twilight.
Morgenlicht, *n.* –es, *pl.*–er, morning-light.
Morgenröthe, *f.* –, aurora, morning-dawn, twilight.
Müde, *adj.* weary, tired, fatigued.
Mühe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, toil, pain, trouble.
Müller, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, miller.
München, *n.* –s, Munich.
Mund, *m.* –es, *pl.* Münde (Münder), mouth.
Murren, *v. n.* to grumble, growl.
Musik', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, music.
Müßig, *adj.* idle, dormant.
Muskel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –n, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, muscle.
Müssen, *v. n. ir.* must, to be obliged, be forced (L. 45. 8), *p.* 352.
Muth, *m.* –es, courage, spirit, mood.
Muthig, *adj.* courageous.
Muthwillig, *adj.* petulant, pert.
Mutter, *f.* –, *pl.* Mütter, mother.

N

Nach, *prep.* after, behind, in, at, to, for, toward, upon, according to.
Nachbar, *m.* –s, *pl.* –n, neighbor.
Nachbarin (L. 23. 5).
Nachdem', *conj.* after, when.
Nachdenken, see denken, *p.* 346; *v. ir. n.* to meditate, reflect.
Nachen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, boat, skiff.
Nachgehen, *v. n. ir.* to go after, follow.
Nachher', *adv.* afterward, after that, hereafter.
Nachlässig, *adj.* negligent, careless, slovenly, inattentive.
Nachricht, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, account, advice, intelligence, news, tidings.
Nachsetzen, *v. n.* to sed after, run after.
Nachsicht, *f.* –, forbearance, indulgence.
Nächst, *prep.* next, next to.
Nacht, ¨– –, *pl.* Nächte, night.
Nachtigall, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, nightingale.
Nadel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, needle.
Nagel, *m.*–s, *pl.* Nagel, nail, pin, peg.
Nahe, *adj.* near, nigh.
Nahen, *v. n.* & *r.* to approach, draw near.
Nähen, *v. a.* & *n.* to sew, stitch.
Nähren, *v. a.* & *n.* to foster, feed, nourish.
Name, *m.* –ns, *pl.* –n, name; title, renown, reputation.
Naß, *adj.* wet, moist.
Natur', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, nature.
Nebel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, mist, fog.
Neben, *prep.* by, near, beside, besides, by the side of, next to, close to, with.
Necken, *v. a.* to banter, tease, provoke, irritate, vex.
Neffe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, nephew.
Nehmen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a.* to take, receive; sich in Acht –, to beware.
Neid, *m.* –es, envy, jealousy.
Neidisch, *adj.* envious, grudging.
Neigen, *v. a.* to bend, incline; *v. r.* to approach, bow, turn.
Neigung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, inclination, proneness, disposition.
Nein, *adv.* no.
Nelke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pink.
Nennen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a.* & *r.* to name, denominate, call.
Nervenfieber, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, nervous fever.
Nest, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, nest.
Neu, *adj.* new, fresh, recent, modern, aufs Neue, von Neuem, anew afresh, again.
Neuerschaffen, *adj.* new-created.
Neugierig, *adj.* curious, inquisitive
Neulich, *adj.* late, recent.
Neunzig, § 45. (1).

Digitized by Google

Nicht, *adv.* not.
Nichts, *prn.* nothing, naught.
Nie. *adv.* never at no time.
Niederfließen, *v. n. ir.* to flow down, *or* under.
Niederknieen, *v. n.* to kneel down.
Niederlaſſen, *v. a. ir.* to let down; *v. r. ir.* to settle, sit down, alight.
Niemals, *adv.* never, at no time.
Niemand, *prn.* nobody, no one.
Noch, *adv.* yet, still, more; *conj.* nor.
Norden *m.* –s, north.
Norweger, *m.* –s, Norwegian.
Noth, *adj.* needful, necessary; es thut –, it is necessary; *f.* –, *pl.* Nöthen, need, distress, calamity.
Nun, *adv.* now, at present, well, well then,
Nur, *adv.* only, just, but, ever.
Nutzen, nützen, *v. a. & n.* to use, make use of, be of use, be useful.
Nützlich, *adj.* useful, profitable.

O

Ob, *conj.* whether, if though; als –, as if; *prep.* over, on account of.
Oben, above, on high.
Oberon, *m.* Oberon.
Oberhalb, *prep.* above.
Oberſt, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, colonel.
Obgleich', *conj.* though, although, notwithstanding.
Oblate, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, wafer.
Obſt, *n.* –es, fruit, fruits; –garten, *m.* orchard.
Ochs, *m.* –ſen (or Ochſe –n), *pl.*–n, ox.
Oder, *conj.* or, or else, either, or.
Ofen, *m.* –s, *pl.* Oefen, stove.
Offen, *adj.* open.
Offizier', *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, officer.
Oeffnen, *v. a.* to open.
Oft, *adv.* oft, often, frequently.
Oheim, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, uncle.
Ohne, without, destitute of.
Ohr, *n.* –s, *pl.* –en, ear.
Oel, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, oil.
Onkel, *m.* s, *pl.* –, uncle.
Ordentlich, *adj.* orderly, regular.
Ort, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, & Oerter, place.
Oſt, *m.* East.
Oſten, *m.* –s, East.
Oeſterreich, *n.* –s, Austria.
Oeſterreicher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, Austrian.

P

Paar, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, pair, couple, a few.
Palaſt', *m* –es, *pl.* –läſte, palace.
Papier', *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, paper.
Para'bel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, parable.
Paris', *n.* Paris.
Paſſen, *v. a. & n.* to fit, suit.
Patrio'tiſch, *adj.* patriotic.
Pavia, *n.* Pavia.
Perle, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, pearl.
Peſt, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, pestilence, plague.
Petſchaft, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, seal.
Pfad, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, path.
Pfau, *m.* –es & –en, *pl.* –e & –en, peacock.
Pfeffer, *m.* –s, pepper.
Pfeifen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to pipe, whistle.
Pfeil, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, arrow.
Pferd, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, horse.
Pfirſiche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, peach.
Pflanze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, plant, vegetable,
Pflanzen, *v. a.* to plant, set, transplant.
Pflaume, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, plum.
Pflegen, *v. a.* to take care of, nurse, attend to; *v. n.* to be accustomed, indulge.
Pflicht, *f.* –, *pl.*–en, duty, obligation.
Pflücken, *v. a.* to pluck.
Pfund, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, pound.
Pilſen, *n.* –s, Pilsen.
Pinſel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, paint-brush, pencil.
Plan, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e & Pläne, plan, design.
Plötzlich, *adj.* sudden, instantaneous, on a sudden, at once.
Pöbel, *m.* –s, mob, populace.
Poet, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, poet.
Pole, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Pole.
Poli'ren, *v. a.* to polish.
Porzella'n, *n.* –s, porcelain, china.
Pracht, *f.* –, pomp, state, splendor
Prächtig, *adj.* magnificent, splendid.
Praktiſch, *adj.* practical.
Predigen, *v. a. & n.* to preach.
Predigt, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, sermon.
Preiſen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a.* to praise, commend, call.
Preuße, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Prussian

Digitized by Google

Preußen, *n.* –s, Prussia.
Prome'theus, *m.* Prometheus.
Pult, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, desk.
Pulver, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, powder.
Putzen, *v. a. & r.* to dress, attire, trim, clean.

Q

Quälen, *v. a.* to pain, torment, plague.

R

Rabe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, raven.
Rache, *f.* –, vengeance, revenge.
Rächen, *v. a.* to revenge, avenge; *v. r.* to revenge one's self, take vengeance.
Rad, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* Räder, wheel.
Rand, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* Ränder, edge, brim, brink, margin.
Rang, *m.* –es, *pl.* Range, rank, order, rate, dignity, quality, row.
Rasen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, turf, sod, clod.
Rasen, *v. n.* to rave, rage, bluster.
Rath, *m.* es, counsel, advise, means, expedient; dagegen wird ſchon Rath, for that there is redress (a remedy); dazu kann ihm Rath werden, in this he can be helped, this he can do.
Raub, *m.* –es, robbery; –vogel, *m.* bird of prey.
Rauben, *v. a.* to rob, spoil, steal.
Räuber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, robber.
Rauchen, *v. a. & n.* to smoke.
Raum, *m.* –es, *pl.* Räume, room, space.
Recht, *adj.* right, just, true, real, legitimate, rightly, well, very.
Recht, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, right, claim, title, privilege, immunity, law, justice.
Rechtfertigen, *v. a.* to justify, vindicate, exculpate.
Rede, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, speech, harangue, oration, discourse.
Reden, *v. a. & n.* to speak, talk, discourse.
Redner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, orator.
Regel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, rule, principle.
Regelmäßig, *adj.* regular.
Regen, *v. a. & r.* to stir, move, rouse, be active.
Regen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, rain, shower; –ſchirm, *m.* umbrella.
Regie'ren, *v. a. & n.* to reign, rule, govern.
Regie'rung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, reign, government.
Regiment', *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, regiment.
Reich, *adj.* rich, wealthy, opulent; *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, empire, realm, kingdom.
Reif, *adj.* ripe, mature.
Reifen, *v. n.* to grow ripe, ripen.
Reihe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, row, rank, file, range, order, series, turn.
Rein, *adj.* clean, pure, clear, innocent.
Reinigen, *v. a.* to purify, cleanse.
Reiſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, journey, voyage.
Reiſen, *v. n.* to travel, journey.
Reiſend, *adj.* traveling; der Reiſende, the traveler.
Reis, *m.* –es, rice.
Reiten, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to ride, go on horseback.
Reiter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, horseman.
Religion', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, religion.
Religiös', *adj.* religious.
Rennen, *v. n. ir.* to run, race.
Republik', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, republic.
Reumüthig, *adj.* repentant.
Revolution', *f.* –, *pl.* –en, revolution.
Rhein, *m.* –es, Rhine.
Richten, *v. a. & r.* to direct, raise, arrange, adapt, judge, execute, criticize; zu Grunde –, to ruin, destroy.
Richter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, judge.
Richtig, *adj.* right, exact, just, true
Rieſe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, giant; –ngebirge, *n.* Giant Mountains.
Ring, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, ring.
Rings, *adv.* around.
Rock, *m.* –es, *pl.* Röcke, coat.
Roggen, *m.* –s, rye.
Roh, *adj.* raw, crude, rough, rude.
Rohr, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, reed, cane.
Rom, *n.* –s, Rome.
Roſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, rose.
Roſenſtock, –es, *pl.* –ſtöcke, rose-bush.
Roß, *n.* –ſſes, *pl.* ſſe, horse, steed.
Röslein, *n* –s, *pl.* –, horse. (L. 24)
Roſtig, *adj.* rusty.
Roth, *adj.* red.
Rubin', *m.* –s *pl.* –e, ruby.

Digitized by Google

Ruck, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, stroke, pull, fit, jolt, jerk.
Rücken, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, back, ridge.
Rückſicht, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, view, respect, consideration, regard.
Rückweg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, return.
Ruf, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, call, cry, clamor, sound, voice.
Rufen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to call, cry.
Ruhe, *f.* –, rest, repose. quiet, tranquillity, peace, sleep.
Ruhekiſſen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, pillow.
Ruhen, *v. n.* to rest, repose.
Ruhig, quiet, peaceable
Ruhm, *m.* –es, glory, renown, fame.
Rühmen, *v. a.* to praise, glorify, extol; *v. r.* to glory in, boast of.
Ruſſe, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Russian.
Rußland, *n.* –s, Russia.

S

Sabbath, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, sabbath.
Sache, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, thing, matter, affair, concern, business.
Sachſen, *n.* –s, Saxony.
Sack, *m.* –es, *pl.* Säcke, bag, sack.
Sagen, *v. a. & n.* to say, tell, speak.
Salz, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, salt.
Sammeln, *v. a.* to collect, gather; *v. r.* to assemble, collect one's self.
Sand, *m.* –es, sand.
Sanft, *adj.* gentle, soft, mild.
Sänger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, singer, songster.
Sardi'nien, *n.* –s, Sardinia.
Sattel, *m.* –s, *pl.* Sättel, saddle.
Sattler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, saddler.
Satz, *m.* –es, *pl.* Sätze, leap, jump, sediment, position, thesis, point, sentence, period, stake.
Saufen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. a. & n.* to drink (of beasts).
Säufer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, drunkard.
Säugling (**Säuglein**), *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, sucking, babe.
Schaar, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, troop, band, horde, multitude.
Schaarenweiſe, *adv.* (L. 52. 5), in bands, by swarms.
Schaden, *m.* –s, *pl.* Schäden, loss.
Schaden, *v. n.* to hurt, injure, damage, prejudice.
Schaf, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, sheep.
Schaffen, *p.* 352; to create, procure, carry, convey.
Schall, *m.* –es, *pl.* Schälle, sound.
Schämen, *v. r.* to be ashamed.
Schamhaftigkeit, *f.* bashfulness, modesty, a shrinking from.
Schande *f.* –, shame, disgrace.
Scharf, *adj.* sharp, acute, severe,
Scharlachfieber, *n.* scarlet-fever.
Schatten, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, shadow, shade, phantom.
Schatz, *m.* –es, *pl.* Schätze, treasure
Schätzen, *v. a.* to prize, value, estimate, esteem.
Schaubühne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, stage, theater.
Schauen, *v. a.* to look, see, view.
Schaufel, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, shovel.
Schaumen, *v. a.* to skim; *v. n.* to foam, froth.
Schauſpieler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, actor.
Scheinen, *p.* 352; *v. ir. n.* to shine, appear, seem.
Schelten, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a. & n.* to scold, chide.
Schenken, *v. a.* to give, present.
Scheren, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to shave, shear.
Scherz, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, jest, joke.
Scherzrede, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pleasantry.
Schicken, *v. a. & n.* to send, dispatch.
Schickſal, *n.* –s, *pl.* –e, fate, destiny, change.
Schießen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a. & n.* to shoot, discharge, dart, rush.
Schiff, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, ship, vessel, nave (of a church).
Schiffer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, mariner.
Schildwache, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sentinel.
Schinden, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to flay.
Schirm, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, screen, shelter, shield, protection.
Schlacht, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, battle.
Schlachten, *v. a.* to slaughter, kill.
Schlacke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, dross, refuse.
Schlaf, *m.* –es, sleep, rest.
Schlafen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to sleep, rest.
Schlag, *m.* –es, *pl.* Schläge, blow, stroke, kind, sort, stamp, apoplexy.
Schlagen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to beat, strike, slay, coin, warble.
Schlange, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, serpent, snake.
Schlecht, *adj.* bad. base, mean
Schleichen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to sneak, slink, move slowly.
Schleier, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, veil.

Digitized by Google

Schleifen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a.* to grind, polish, furbish.
Schließen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. a. & n* to shut, lock, close, conclude.
Schlimm, *adj.* ill, bad, evil, sad, arch, sore, unwell.
Schloß, *n.* -ſſes, *pl.* Schlöſſer, lock, castle.
Schloſſer, *or* Schloſſer, (L. 26.)
Schlummer, *m.* -s, slumber, nap.
Schlummerkörnlein, *n.* -s, *pl.* -, seeds of slumber. (L. 24).
Schlummern, *v. n.* to slumber.
Schlüſſel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, key.
Schmecken, *v. a. & n.* to taste, relish; ſich es gut -laſſen, to eat *or* drink with good appetite; *i. e.* to relish greatly.
Schmeichelhaft, *adj.* flattering.
Schmeicheln, *v. n.* to flatter, wheedle. caress.
Schmeichler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, flatterer.
Schmelzen, *p.* 354; *v. ir. n.* to melt, dissolve; *reg. a.* to melt.
Schmerz, *m.* -es, *pl.* -en, pain, ache; *fig.* affliction, grief.
Schmettau, *m.* Schmettau.
Schmied, -es, *pl.* -e, smith.
Schmieden, *v. a.* to forge, fetter, chain.
Schmücken, *v. a.* to adorn.
Schmutzig, *adj.* foul, dirty.
Schnee, *m.* -s, snow.
Schneeweiß, *adj.* snow-white.
Schneiden, *p.* 354; to cut.
Schneider, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, tailor.
Schnell, *adj.* quick, swift, sudden.
Schnelle, *f.* -, rapidity, swiftness.
Schon, *adv.* already, even.
Schon, *adj.* beautiful, fine, fair.
Schonen, *v. a.* to spare, save.
Schönheit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, beauty.
Schöpfung, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, creation.
Schrank, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schränke, shrine, chest.
Schreibpapier, *n.* writing-paper.
Schreiben, *p.* 354; to write.
Schreien, *p.* 354; to cry, scream.
Schritt, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, step, stride, pace, stalk.
Schuh, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, shoe.
Schuhmacher, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, shoemaker.
Schuld, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, guilt, debt.
Schuldig, *adj.* guilty, indebted.
Schule, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, school.
Schüler, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, scholar
Schülerin (L. 23. 5).
Schützen, *v. a.* to shelter, defend.
Schutzengel, *m.* -s, *pl.* -, guardian angel.
Schwaben, *n.* Suabia.
Schwach, *adj.* weak, feeble, imbecile, faint.
Schwager, *m.* -s, *pl.* Schwäger, brother-in-law.
Schwägerin, *f.* -, *pl.* -nen, sister-in law.
Schwalbe, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, swallow.
Schwamm, *m.* es, *pl.* Schwämme, sponge.
Schwan, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schwäne, swan.
Schwanken, *v. n.* to stagger, fluctuate, waver, hesitate.
Schwarm, *m.* -es, *pl.* Schwärme, swarm, crowd, throng, cluster.
Schwarz, *adj.* black, dark.
Schwärzen, *v. a.* to blacken, black.
Schweben, *v. n.* to wave, to hang, to be suspended.
Schwede, *m.* -n, Swede.
Schweden, *n.* Sweden.
Schwedisch, Swedish.
Schweif, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, tail, train.
Schweigen, *v. n. ir.* to be silent, keep silent, stop.
Schwellen, *v. a.* to swell, make swell, raise; *v. n. p.* 354; to swell, rise, heave.
Schwer, *adj.* heavy. difficult, hard; es fällt -, it is difficult.
Schwermuth, *f.* melancholy, sadness.
Schwert, *n.* -es, *pl.* -er, sword.
Schweſter, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, sister.
Schwierig, *adj.* hard, difficult.
Schwierigkeit, *f.* -, *pl.* -en, hardness, difficulty.
Schwimmvogel, *m.* web-footed-bird.
Schwimmen, *p.* 354; to swim.
Schwören, *p.* 354; to take an oath, swear, vow.
Sclave, *m.* -n, *pl.* -n, slave.
Sechs, six.
Seehund, *m.* -es, *pl.* -e, seal.
Seele, *f.* -, *pl.* -n, soul.
Segeln, *v. a. & n.* to sail.
Segnen, *v. a.* to bless.
Sehen, *p.* 354; to see, look, view, behold.

Digitized by Google

Sehr, *adv.* very, much, greatly, extremely, very much.
Seide, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, silk.
Seil, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, rope.
Seiler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, ropemaker.
Sein (ſeiner), *prn.* his, one's, its, of his, of it.
Sein, *v. n.* & *aux. ir.* to be, exist; es ſei, be it (L. 69. 10).
Seit, *adv.* & *prep.* since.
Seitdem', *adv.* since.
Seite, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, side, page.
Selbſt, *prep.* & *adv.* self, even; – *or* ſelber, (L. 29. 3.)
Selig, *adj.* blessed, blissful, happy.
Selten, *adj.* rare, scarce, seldom.
Senf, *m.* –es, mustard.
Senken, *v. a.* to sink, lower, let down, lay.
Setzen, *v. a.* to set, put, place; *v. n.* to leap, pass over; *v. r.* to sit down, perch.
Seufzen, *v. n.* to sigh, groan.
Sich, *prn.* one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Sie, *prn.* she, it, they, you.
Sieben, seven.
Siebenjährig, *adj.* (of) seven years', seven years old.
Sieg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, victory.
Siegel, *n.* –, *pl.* –, seal; – lack, *m.* sealing-wax.
Siegen, *v. n.* to conquer.
Silber, *n.* –s, silver.
Silbern, *adj.* silver.
Silberſtreifen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, silver-ray.
Singen, *p.* 354; to sing, chant.
Sinken, *p.* 354, to sink; – laſſen, to let fall; den Muth – laſſen, to be disheartened.
Sinn, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, sense, mind, intention, meaning, acceptation.
Sinnbild, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, emblem, symbol, allegory.
Sitte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, custom, manner; Sitten, *pl.* manners, morals.
Sittenlos, *adj.* immoral.
Sittſam, *adj.* modest, decent, proper, discreet.
Sitzen, *p.* 354; to sit, to be imprisoned, fit.
Smaragd', *m.* –es, *pl.* –en, emerald.
So, *adv.* & *conj.* so, thus, in such a manner, such, so as, as, if, when.
Sobald', *adv.* as soon as.
Sofa, *n.* & *m.* –s, *pl.* –s, sofa.
Sogleich', *adv.* instantly, immediately.
Sohn, *m.* –es, *pl.* Söhne, son.
Solcher, *prn.* such.
Soldat', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, soldier.
Soldner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, mercenary.
Sollen (L. 45. 9).
Sommer, *m.* –s, *pl* –, summer.
Sommertag, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, summer day.
Sonder, *prep.* without.
Sondern (L. 21. 4).
Sonne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sun; –nſchein, *m.* sunshine; –nſchirm, *m.* parasol.
Sonntag, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, Sunday.
Sonſt, *adv.* else, otherwise, in other respects, besides, moreover, at other times, formerly (L. 69. 28).
Sopha, see Sofa.
Sophron, *m.* Sophron
Sorge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, care, concern, sorrow; – tragen, to take care.
Sorgfältig, *adj.* solicitous, careful
Spalten, *v. a.* & *n.* to split
Spanien, *n.* Spain.
Spaniſch, *adj.* spanish.
Spät, *adj.* late.
Spaten, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, spade.
Spazie'ren, *v. n.* to walk; –gehen, to take a walk. (L. 49).
Specht, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, wood-pecker
Speer, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, spear, lance.
Speicher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, granary, warehouse, store-house.
Speiſe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, food, dish, meal.
Sperling, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, sparrow.
Sperren, *v. a.* to shut, close, bar, stop, block up.
Sphäre, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sphere.
Spiegel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, looking-glass.
Spiel, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, play, game, sport, diversion.
Spielen, *v. a.* & *n.* to play, act.
Spieler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, player, performer.
Spinnen, *p.* 354; to spin.
Spitz, ſpitzig, *adj.* pointed.
Spitzig, *adj.* pointed, sharp.
Spotten, *v. a.* to mock, deride, scoff banter, ridicule.
Spötterei, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, gibe, mockery, derision.

Digitized by Google

Sprache, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, language
Sprechen, *p.* 356; to speak, talk, say, pronounce, declare, utter.
Sprichwort, –es, *pl.* Sprichwörter, proverb, adage, saying.
Springen, *p.* 356.; to leap, spring.
Staat, *m.* –es, *pl.* –en, state.
Stab, *m.* es, *pl.* Stäbe, staff, stick, rod.
Stachel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –n, sting.
Stadt, *f.* –, *pl.* Städte, town, city, –leben, *n.* city-life.
Stahl, *m.* –es, *pl.* Stähle, steel.
Stahlern, *adj.* steel.
Stall, *m.* –es, *pl.* Ställe, stable, stall, sty.
Stamm, *m.* –es, *pl.* Stämme, stock, trunk, stem, stalk, race, family.
Stark, *adj.* strong, stout, loud.
Stärke, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, strength, force.
Stärkung, *f.* –, *pl.*–en, strengthening, corroboration.
Stattlich, *adj.* stately, splendid.
Staub, *m.* –es, dust, powder; sich aus dem –e machen, to run a way.
Staunen, *v. n.* to be astonished, stare; – *n.* –s, astonishment, surprise.
Stechen, *p.* 356; to sting, prick, pierce, cut, engrave.
Stehen, *p.* 356; to stand, remain, stop; es steht bei Ihnen, it depends upon you; es steht ihm gut, that becomes him well.
Stehlen, *p.* 356; to steal, pilfer.
Steigen, *p.* 356; to mount, ascend, descend.
Steil, *adj.* steep.
Stein, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, stone, rock, chessman, man, pawn.
Stelle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, place, stand, spot, situation, office.
Stellen, *v. a.* to put, place, set.
Stempel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, stamp.
Sterben, *p.* 356; to die, decease.
Sterblich, *adj.* mortal, desperate.
Stern, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, star.
Stiefel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –n, boot.
Stiel, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, handle.
Still, *adj.* still, silent, quiet, calm.
Stille, *f.* –, stillness, silence, quietness, calmness, tranquility.
Stillen, *v. a.* to still, appease, nurse, silence.
Stillschweigend, *adj.* silent, tacit.
Stimme, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, voice.
Stirn, *f.* –, –en, front, forehead.
Stock, *m.* –es, *pl.* Stöcke, stick, cane.
Stolpern, *v. n.* to stumble, trip.
Stolz, *adj.* proud, haughty; *m.* –es, pride, haughtiness, arrogance.
Störenfried, *m.* disturber of the peace.
Störer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, disturber.
Strafen, *v. a.* to punish, reprove.
Strahlen, *v. a.* & *n.* to beam, emit rays, dart beams.
Straße, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, street.
Straucheln, *v. n.* to stumble, make a false step, fail.
Strauß, *m.* –es, *pl.* Straußen, ostrich
Streben, *v. n.* to strive, struggle endeavor, aspire.
Strecken, *v. a.* & *r.* to stretch, extend, lengthen.
Streit, –es, combat, fight.
Streiten, *p.* 356; to fight, contend, litigate.
Streuen, *v. a.* to strew, scatter sprinkle, spread.
Strom, *m.* –es, *pl.* Ströme, stream, torrent, flood, current.
Stück, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, piece, head.
Studi'ren, *v. a.* to study.
Stuhl, *m.* –es, *pl.* Stühle, chair stool, seat, pew.
Stumm, *adj.* dumb, mute, silent.
Stumpf, *adj.* blunt, dull.
Stunde, –, *pl.* –n, hour, lesson.
Sturm, *m.* –es, *pl.* Stürme, storm, alarm, tumult, assault.
Stürzen, *v. a.* & *n.* to throw, precipitate, overthrow, fall, rush.
Suchen, *v. a.* to seek, search, look for, try.
Süd, *m.* –es, south.
Süden, *m.* –s, south.
Sumpf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Sümpfe, pool, fen, marsh, bog; –vogel, *m.* morass-bird.
Sünde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, sin, trespass.
Sündhaft, *adj.* sinful.
Süß, *adj.* sweet, agreeable.
Süßigkeit, *f.* –, sweetness, saccharine substance, *pl.* –en, sweets.

T

Tabak, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e. tobacco.
Tadel, *m.* –s, fault, blame.
Tadeln, *v. a.* to blame, censure.

Digitized by Google

Tag, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, day; –löhner, *m.* day-laborer.
Täglich, Tagtäg'lich, *adj.* daily.
Talent', *n.* –s, *pl.* –e, talent.
Tand, *m.* –es, trash.
Tanne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, fir, fir-tree, pine.
Tante, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, aunt.
Tanz, *m.* –es, *pl.* Tänze, dance.
Tanzen, *v. a.* & *n.* to dance.
Tapfer, *adj.* valiant, brave, gallant.
Tasche, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, pocket; –ntuch, *n.* pocket-handkerchief.
Taschenuhr, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, watch.
Tasse, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cup, saucer, dish.
Taub, *adj.* deaf; *fig.* empty.
Taube, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, dove, pigeon.
Tauchen, *v. a.* & *n.* to dive, duck, dip, immerge, plunge.
Taucher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, diver.
Täuschen, *v. a.* to delude, deceive, disappoint, cheat.
Tausend, *adj.* thousand,; –mal, a thousand times.
Tell, *m.* Tell.
Teller, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, plate.
Teppich, *m.* –s, *pl.* –e, carpet.
Text, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, text.
Thal, *n.* –es, *pl.* Thäler, dale, vale, valley.
Thaler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, thaler.
That, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, deed, action, fact.
Thätig, *adj.* active.
Thee, *m.* –s, tea.
Theil, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, part, share, portion, deal.
Theilen, *v. a.* to divide, part, share.
Theilung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, division. partition, sharing.
Thier, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, animal, beast.
Thor, *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, fool, simpleton.
Thöricht, *adj.* foolish, silly.
Thräne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tear, drop.
Thron, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, throne.
Thun, *p.* 356; to do, perform, act; es thut nichts, it is no matter; es thut Noth, it is necessary; es thut mir leid, I am sorry; weh –, to hurt.
Thür, *or* **Thüre**, *f.* –, *pl* –en, door.
Tief, *adj.* deep, low, profound, high.
Tieger, Tiger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, tiger.
Tilly, *m.* –s, Tilly.
Tinte, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, ink, tint; –nfaß, ink-stand.
Tisch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, table, board.
Tischler, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, cabinet-maker.
Toben, *v. n.* to rage, to din.
Tochter, *f.* –, *pl.* Töchter, daughter.
Tod, *m.* –es, death, disease.
Todesengel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, angel of death.
Todt, *adj.* dead. lifeless.
Tödten, *v. a.* to kill, slay.
Ton, *m.* –es, *pl.* Töne, sound, tone accent, stress, fashion.
Tönen, *v. a.* & *n.* to tune, sound, sound sweetly, to ring.
Topf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Töpfe, pot.
Träge, *adj.* idle, lazy, slothful.
Tragen, *p.* 356; to bear, carry, wear. produce, yield, suffer, support.
Trauen, *v. n.* to trust, confide in, have confidence in.
Trauern, *v. n.* to be in mourning, grieve, to be afflicted.
Trauernde, *m.* & *f.* –n, *pl.* –n, mourner.
Traulich, *adj.* confiding, familiar, cordial, intimate.
Traum, *m.* –es, *pl.* Träume, dream.
Träumen, *v. a.* & *n.* to dream, fancy.
Traurig, *adj.* sad, sorrowful.
Treffen, *n.* 356; to hit, strike, hit off, befal, meet.
Treiben, *p.* 356; to drive, put in motion, perform, float along.
Treppe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, staircase, stairs.
Treten, *p.* 356; to tread, step, enter.
Treu, *adj.* faithful, trusty, true.
Trieb, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, impulse, action, drift, motion, instinct.
Trinken, *p.* 356; to drink.
Trocken, *adj.* dry, arid, barren, cold.
Tropf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Tröpfe, ninny, simpleton.
Trost, *m.* –es, consolation, comfort, encouragement.
Trösten, *v. a.* to comfort, console.
Tröster, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, comforter. (L. 23. 5. 6.)
Trotz, *prep.* in defiance of, in spite of, notwithstanding.
Trotzen, *v. n.* to dare, brave, defy.
Trugbild, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, phantom.
Trutz, *m.* –es, defiance, daring; zum –, in defiance.
Tuch, *n.* –es, *pl.* Tücher, cloth. handkerchief, neckcloth.
Tugend, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, virtue, quality

Digitized by Google

Tugendhaft, *adj.* virtuous.
Türke, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Turk.
Türkei', *f* Turkey.
Tyrann', *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, tyrant.

U

Uebel, *adj.* & *adv.* evil, ill, bad, badly wrong, sick, sickly; – wollen, to bear a grudge.
Ueben, *v a.* to exercise, practise, execute, do.
Ueber, *prep.* & *adv.* over, above, beyond, besides, on, upon, at, during, past, across, concerning.
Ueberall', *adv.* everywhere.
Ueberdies', *adv.* besides, moreover.
Ueberdrüssig, *adj.* tired, wearied, satiated, disgusted.
Uebereilung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, precipitancy.
Ueberführen, *v. a.* to lead over, transport; überführ'en, *v. a.* to convict, convince.
Uebergeben, *v. a. ir.* to surrender, deliver; *v. r.* to surrender, retch, vomit.
Ueberlegen, *adj.* superior.
Uebermorgen, *adv.* day after to-morrow.
Uebernachten, *v. n.* to pass, *or* spend the night.
Uebernehmen, see nehmen, *p.* 352; to receive, accept, undertake.
Ueberrock, *m.* –es, *pl.* –röcke, overcoat.
Ueberstreuen, *v. a.* to sow over, strew over, cover with.
Ueberschuh, *m.* –es, *pl.* –schuhe, overshoe.
Uebersetzen, *v. a.* to translate.
Uebertreffen, *v. r. ir.* to surpass, excel, exceed.
Ueberzeugen, *v. a.* to convince.
Ueberziehen, *v. a. ir.* to cover, *fig.* to invade.
Uebung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, exercise, exercising, practising, practice.
Ufer, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, shore, coast, bank.
Uhr *f.* –, *pl.* –en, clock, watch; wie viel – ist es, what time is it? (L. 65. 7.)
Uhrmacher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, watchmaker.
Um, *prep.*, *adv.* & *conj.* about, round, near, at, for, by, past, over, as for; – zu, in order to. (L. 49. 5.)
Um – willen (L. 60. 5).
Umarmung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, embrace.
Umfangen, *v. a. ir.* to embrace, encircle, surround.
Umflattern, *v. a.* to flutter *or* hover about, flow round.
Umgang, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –gänge, intercourse, commerce, conversation, company.
Umgeben, *v. a. ir.* surround, environ, inclose.
Umgehen, *v. n. ir.* to go about, revolve; mit Jemandem –, to have intercourse with, associate with.
Umher', *adv.* around, about, round about.
Umhin', *adv.* about; ich kann nicht –, I can not forbear, I can not help. (L. 45.)
Umschlingen, *v. a. ir.* to embrace closely, enclose, surround.
Umschlungen, *p.* embraced.
Umschwärmen, *v. a.* to swarm around, buzz around.
Umsonst', *adv.* gratis, without pay, for nothing, in vain, vainly, to no purpose, without cause.
Umstand, *m.* –es, *pl.* –stände, circumstance, condition.
Unangenehm, *adj.* unpleasant, disagreeable.
Unbändig, *adj.* indomitable, unmanageable, intractable.
Unbedeutend, *adj.* inconsiderable, insignificant, unimportant.
Unbekannt, *adj.* unknown, unacquainted with.
Unbeobachtet, *adj.* unobserved.
Unbrauchbar, *adj.* unserviceable, useless.
Und, *conj.* and.
Uneingedenk, *adj.* unmindful.
Unerfahren, *adj.* inexperienced.
Unermeßlich, *adj.* immeasurable, immense, vast.
Unerschütterlich, *adj.* immovable.
Unerträglich, **Unerträglich**, *adj.* intolerable, insufferable, insuportable.
Unfall, *m.* –es, *pl.* Unfälle, mischance, misfortune, disaster.
Unfehlbar, *adj.* infallible, certain.
Unfern, *prep.* near, not far from.
Unförmlich, *adj.* deformed, disproportionate.

Digitized by Google

Ungar, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, Hungarian.
Ungeachtet, *prep.* notwithstanding.
Ungeduldig, *adj.* impatient.
Ungemach, *n.* –es, discomfort, fatigue.
Ungemein, *adj.* uncommon.
Ungerecht, *adj.* unjust, unrighteous.
Ungeschickt, awkward, unapt, unhandy.
Ungesehen, *adj.* unseen
Ungewohnt, *adj.* unaccustomed.
Ungleich, *adj.* uneven, unlike, disproportionate, odd.
Unglück, *n.* –es, misfortune, disaster, adversity, calamity.
Unglücklich, *adj.* unlucky, unhappy, unfortunate, disastrous.
Unhöflich, *adj.* uncivil, impolite.
Unkraut, *n.* –es, weed, tare. § 13. 3.*b*.
Unnöthig, *adj.* unnecessary.
Unrecht, *adj.* wrong, unjust; *n.* –es, wrong, injustice.
Unrein, *adj.* unclean, impure.
Unscheinbar, *adj.* insignificant, unsightly.
Unschuld, *f.* innocence.
Unschuldig, *adj.* innocent, guiltless.
Unser, *prn.* of us, our, ours; –einer, one of us.
Unsicher, *adj.* insecure, unsafe, uncertain, dubious.
Unsichtbar, *adj.* invisible.
Unsterb'lich, *adj.* immortal.
Unter, *prep.* under, below, beneath, among, amongst, between, betwixt, amid, amidst.
Unterdrü'cken, *v. a.* to oppress.
Unterhalb, *prep.* below.
Unterneh'men, *v. a.* to undertake, attempt; *n.* –s, undertaking.
Unterrich'ten, *v. a.* to instruct.
Untersa'gen, *v. a.* to forbid, prohibit.
Unterschied, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, difference, distinction.
Unterthan, *adj.* subject to, dependent; *m.* –en, *pl.* –en, subject.
Unterwer'fen, *v. a. ir.* to submit, subdue.
Untreu, *adj.* unfaithful, faithless.
Unvergeßlich, *adj.* memorable, not capable of being forgotten.
Unversehens, *adv.* unexpectedly, unawares.
Unwahrscheinlich, *adj.* improbable.
Unweit, *prep.* near, not far from.
Unwiderstehlich, *adj.* irresistible.
Unwille, *m.* –ns, indignation, displeasure, anger.
Unwillig, *adj.* indignant, angry.
Unwohl, *adj.* & *adv.* unwell.
Unzählbar, *adj.* innumerable.
Unzählig see Unzählbar.
Unzufrieden, *adj.* discontent, discontented, dissatisfied.
Urquell, *m.* –es, *pl.* –en, fountain head, original source.
Ursache, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cause, reason.
Urtheil, *n.* –es, –e, judgement, sentence, verdict.
Urtheilen, *v. a.* & *n.* to judge, be of opinion, decide.

V

Vater, *m.* –s, *pl.* Väter, father.
Väterchen, *n.* –s. (L. 24. 2).
Vaterland, *n.* native country, father land.
Vaterun'ser, *n.* –s, Lord's Prayer.
Vene'dig, *n.* Venice.
Verab'säumen, *v. a.* to neglect.
Verach'ten, *v. a.* to despise, scorn.
Verän'derung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, change, alteration, variation.
Veran'lassung, *f.* cause, occasion.
Verber'gen, *v. a. ir.* to hide, conceal; *v. r. ir.* to abscond.
Verbes'serung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, amendment, improvement.
Verbin'den, *v. a. ir.* to bind up, tie up, unite, join, oblige.
Verbor'gen, *adj.* hidden, retired.
Verbre'chen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, crime.
Verbre'cher, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, criminal.
Verbrei'ten, *v. a.* to divulge; *v. r.* to spread, be propagated, extend.
Verbrin'gen, *v. a. ir.* to spend, consume.
Verdäch'tig, *adj.* suspected, suspicious.
Verder'ben, *p.* 356; to corrupt, render unfit, spoil.
Verdie'nen, *v. a.* to gain, earn, merit, deserve.
Verdrie'ßen, *v. imp. p.* 356; to grieve, cause, disgust, trouble.
Verdrieß'lich, *or* verdrüß'lich, *adj.* morose, peevish, troublesome, irksome, vexatious.

Digitized by Google

Vere'deln, *v. a. & r.* to improve, ennoble
Vered'lung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, improvement.
Vereh'ren, *v. a.* to honor.
Verei'nigen, *v. a.* to unite
Verei'nigt, united.
Verfah'ren, *v. a. n.* to act, proceed.
Verfeh'len, *v. a.* to miss.
Verfer'tigen, *v. a.* to make, perform.
Vergeſ'ſen, *p.* 356; to forget.
Vergnü'gen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, pleasure, diversion, delight, comfort.
Verhaf'ten, *v. a.* arrest, imprison.
Verhalt'niſswort, *n.* –es, *pl.* –wörter, preposition.
Verhaßt', *adj.* hated, hateful.
Verhül'len, *v. a.* to veil, cover over, wrap up.
Verkal'ten, *v. r.* to take cold.
Verkau'fen, *v. a.* to sell, vend.
Verlan'gen, *v. a. & n.* to ask, demand, desire, long for; es verlangt mich zu wiſſen, I long to know; *n.* –s, desire, demand.
Verlaß', *m.* –ſſes, reliance, inheritance, succession.
Verlaſ'ſen, *v. a. ir.* to leave, forsake; *v. r. ir.* auf einen –, to rely upon, depend on; *adj.* destitute, abandoned.
Verleum'dung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, calumny, slander, defamation.
Verlie'ren, *p.* 356; to lose.
Verluſt, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, loss, damage.
Vermie'then, *v. a.* to let.
Vermit'telſt, *prep.* by means of.
Vermö'ge, *prep.* by dint of.
Vermö'gen, *v. a. & n. ir.* to be able, to have the power; einen zu etwas –, to prevail upon one to do; *n.* –s, ability, power, faculty, property, wealth.
Vermu'then, *v. a.* to suppose, presume, think.
Vernunft', *f.* –, reason, sense.
Vernünf'tig, *adj.* rational, reasonable; sensible, judicious, discreet.
Verpflich'ten, *v. a.* to bind by duty *or* oath, to oblige.
Verrath', *m.* –es, treason.
Verra'ther, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, traitor.
Verſam'meln, *v. a. r.* to assemble, meet, congregate.
Verſchal'len, *v. n. ir.* to cease sounding, die away.
Verſchen'ken, *v. a.* to give away.
Verſchwen'deriſch, *adj.* prodigal, lavish, profuse, wasteful.
Verſchwin'den, *v. n. ir.* to disappear, vanish.
Verſeß'en, *v. a.* to answer, reply, respond.
Verſin'ken, *v. n. ir.* to sink down.
Verſpot'ten, *v. a.* to scoff, deride.
Verſpre'chen, *v. a. ir.* to promise.
Verſtand', *m.* –es, understanding, intellect.
Verſtän'dig, *adj.* sensible, intelligent, judicious.
Verſte'hen, *v. a. & n. ir.* to understand, apprehend, mean.
Verſtei'nern, *v. a. & r.* to petrify.
Verſtel'lung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, dissimulation.
Verſtum'men, *v. n.* to become silent, cease to sound.
Verſu'chen, *v. a.* to try, attempt, experience, taste, tempt.
Verthei'digen, *v. a.* to defend.
Vertrau'en, *v. a. & n.* to entrust, confide; *n.* –s, confidence, trust.
Vertrei'ben, *v. a. ir.* to drive away, chase, expel.
Verur'ſachen, *v. a.* to cause.
Verwandt'e, *m. & f.* –n, *pl.* –n, relation, kin, kinsman.
Verwei'len, *v. n. & r.* to tarry, stay, delay, retard, loiter.
Verwünſcht', *adj.* accursed, detestable.
Verzeh'ren, *v. a.* to consume, eat.
Verzei'hen, see zeihen, *p.* 356; to pardon, forgive, excuse.
Verzei'hung, *f.* pardon; um – bitten, to beg pardon; um Verzeihung (ich bitte implied), your pardon.
Verzwei'feln, *v. n.* to despair.
Verzweif'lung, *f.* –, despair, desperation.
Vetter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –n, cousin.
Vieh, *n.* –es, beast, brute, cattle; –händler, *m.* dealer *or* trader in cattle.
Viel, *adj. & adv.* much, many, a great deal; –mehr, *adv. & conj.* more, much more, rather.

Digitized by Google

Vielleicht', *adv.* perhaps, possibly, may be.
Vier, four; –mal, four times.
Viertel, fourth.
Vierzehn, fourteen
Vierzig, fourty
Vogel, *m.* –s, *pl.* Vögel, bird, fowl.
Volk, *n.* –es, *pl.* Völker, people, nation.
Volkslehrer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, teacher of the people.
Voll, *adj* full, whole, entire.
Vollen'den, *v. a.* to end, finish, accomplish, perfect.
Von, *prep.* of, from, by, on, upon.
Vor, *prep.* before, from, of, ago, since, in preference to.
Vorgestern, *adv.* day before yesterday.
Vorhaben, *v. a. ir.* to design, intend, purpose.
Vorher', *adv.* before, previously, beforehand.
Vorhin', *adv.* before, heretofore, a little while ago.
Vorig, *adj.* former, last.
Vornehm, *adj.* distinguished, noble, of rank, gentle.
Vorrücken, *v. a.* & *n.* to move forward, march on; *n.* –s, advance.
Vorsehung, *f.* –, providence.
Vorsetzen, *v. a.* to set before, place *or* put before, prefix.
Vorsicht, *f.* –, foresight, precaution, providence, circumspection.
Vorsichtig, *adj.* cautious, circumspect.
Vorwurf, *m.* –es, –s, *pl.* –würfe, reproach.
Vorzüg'lich, *adj.* preferable, excellent; –, *adv.* especially, particularly, chiefly.

W

Wachen, *v. n.* to be awake, watch, guard.
Wachsam, *adj.* watchful.
Wachsen, *p.* 358; to grow, increase.
Wachsthum, *m.* & *n.* –es, growth, increase, vegetation.
Waffe, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, arms, weapons.
Wagen, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, wagon, carriage, chariot, coach.
Wagen, *v. a.* & *r.* to venture.
Wählen, *v. a.* to elect, choose.
Wahn, *m.* –es, illusion, conjecture, conceit.
Wahr, *adj.* true, genuine.
Während, *prep.* & *conj.* during, while.
Wahrhaftig, *adj.* true, real.
Wahrheit, *f.* –, –en, truth, verity.
Wahrlich, *adv.* forsooth, in truth, verily, certainly.
Wahrscheinlich, *adj.* probable.
Waise, *m.* & *f.* *pl.* –n, orphan.
Wald, *m.* –es, *pl.* Wälder, forest, wood; –horn, *n.* French-horn, bugle-horn.
Waldbaum, *m.* –es, *pl.* –bäume, forest-tree.
Wallen, *v. n.* to undulate, wave, wander.
Wallfisch, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, whale.
Walten, *v. n.* to manage, reign.
Wandel, *m.* –s, conduct, behavior.
Wandeln, *v. n.* to go, walk, change.
Wanderer, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, traveler, pedestrian.
Wandern, *v. n.* to wander.
Wanken, *v. n.* to totter, stagger, hesitate, waver.
Wann, *adv.* when; dann und –, now and then, sometimes.
Warm, *adj.* warm, hot.
Warmbrunnen, *m.* –s, hot springs.
Warnen, *v. a.* & *n.* to warn of, admonish, against.
Warnung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, warning.
Warten, *v. a.* & *n.* to stay, attend to, nurse, wait.
Warum', *adv.* why, wherefore.
Was, *prn.* what.
Waschen, *v. a.* & *n. p.* 358; to wash.
Wasser, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, water.
Weben, *p.* 358; to weave, work, float, wave, entwine.
Weber, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, weaver.
Wechsel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, vicissitude, change.
Wecken, *v. a.* to wake, awake.
Weder, *conj.* neither.
Weg, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, way, passage, walk, road, manner, means.
Wegbleiben, *v. n. ir.* to stay away, stay out, be omitted.
Wegen, *prep.* because of on account of, for, by reason of.
Wegfliegen, *v. n. ir* to fly away

Digitized by Google

Weggehen, *v. n. ir.* to go away.
Weglaufen, *v. n. ir.* to run away.
Wegnehmen, *v. n* to take away.
Weh, *adj. & conj.* sore, painful; – thun, to ache, pain, hurt; es thut ihm weh, it hurts him; weh mir! wo is me!
Wehmuth, *f.* –, sadness, wofulness, sorrowfulness.
Wehmüthig, *adj.* sad, sorrowful, woful, mournful, melancholy.
Weib, *n.* –es, *pl.* –er, wife, woman.
Weich, *adj.* soft, tender, weak.
Weil, *adv. & conj.* while, during, as, as long as, when, because, since.
Wein, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, wine, vine.
Weinen, *v. n.* to weep, cry.
Weise, *adj.* wise, sage.
Weise, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, mode, manner, way, fashion, method, melody, tune.
Weisheit, *f.* –, wisdom, prudence.
Weiß, *adj.* white, clean.
Weit, *adj. & adv.* distant, remote, far, far off, afar, wide, large; aus weiter Fern', from afar.
Weiter, farther, else; – gehen, to go on.
Weizen, *m.* –s, wheat.
Welcher, *prn.* who, that, which, what, some. (L. 39.)
Welken, *v. n.* to wither, fade, dry.
Welle, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, wave, billow.
Welt, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, world.
Weltberühmt, *adj.* far-famed.
Weltmeer, *n.* ocean.
Wenig, *adj. & adv.* little, few, some; ein –, a little.
Wenn, *adv. & conj.* if, in which case, when, whenever.
Wer, *prn.* who, he who, whoever.
Werden, *v. n. ir.* (L. 46), to become, grow, turn, be, prove, happen.
Werfen, *p.* 358; to throw, cast.
Werth, *adj.* worth, dear.
Werth, *m.* –es, worth, value, price.
Wesen, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, being.
Weser, *f.* Weser.
Wespe, *f* –, *pl.* –n, wasp.
Wetter, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, weather, storm.
Wider, *prep.* against, contrary to, in opposition to.
Widersprech'en, *v. n. ir.* to contradict.
Widerstehen, *v. a. n. ir.* to resist, withstand.
Widerstre'ben, *v. n.* to strive against, struggle against.
Widrig, *adj.* contrary, adverse, repugnant, loathsome.
Wie, *adv. & conj.* how, as, when, like.
Wieder, *adv.* again, anew; –kommen, to come again, return.
Wiederschein, *m.* reflection.
Wiedersehen, *v. a. ir.* to see again.
Wiege, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, cradle.
Wien, *n.* Vienna.
Wiese, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, meadow.
Wieviel'ste (§ 45. 5).
Wild, *adj.* wild, savage, fierce.
Wildpret, *n.* –es, game, venison.
Wille, *m.* –ns, will, mind, purpose.
Willkom'men, *adj.* welcome.
Wind, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, wind, air.
Winden, *p.* 358; to wind, wring, twist; *v. r. ir.* to wind, writhe.
Winkel, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, corner, nook.
Wirklich, *adj.* actual, real, true.
Wirth, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, host, landlord, innkeeper, master of the house.
Wissen, *p.* 358; to know, have knowledge of.
Witzig, *adj.* witty, ingenious.
Wo, *adv.* where, if.
Woge, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, billow, wave.
Woher', *adv.* whence, from what place.
Wohin', *adv.* whither, which way.
Wohl, *adv.* well, indeed, probably;
Wohlgefallen, *n.* –s, pleasure, delight.
Wohlriechend, *adj.* fragrant.
Wohlthäter, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, benefactor.
Wohlthätig, *adj.* beneficent, charitable.
Wohlthun, *v. n. ir.* to do well, do good, benefit.
Wohnen, *v. n.* to lodge, dwell, abide, reside.
Wohnung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, dwelling.
Wolf, *m.* –es, *pl.* Wölfe, wolf.
Wolke, *f.* –, *pl.*. –n, cloud.
Wolle, *f.* –, wool.
Wollen (L. 45. 10).
Wonne, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, delight, pleasure, bliss.
Worin', *adv.* wherein, wherein, in which, in what.

Digitized by Google

Wort, *n.* –es. *pl.* –e (Wörter), word; zu – kommen, to have an opportunity to speak.
Wörterbuch, *n.* –es, *pl.* –bücher, dictionary, lexicon, vocabulary.
Wovon', *adv.* whereof, of which, of what, of whom.
Wundarzt, *m* surgeon.
Wunde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, wound, hurt.
Wunsch, *m.* –es, *pl.* Wünsche, wish, desire.
Wünschen, *v. a.* to wish, desire.
Würde, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, dignity, honor.
Würdig, *adj.* worthy, deserving.
Würdigen, *v. a.* to deign, vouchsafe, value, estimate.
Wurm, *m.* –es, *pl.* Würmer, worm.
Würze, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, seasoning, spice.
Würzlein, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, root. (L. 24. 2.)
Würzreich, *adj.* aromatic, spiced.
Wüthen, *v. n.* to rage, chafe, foam, rave.

Z

Zähe, *adj* tough, tenacious, sticky.
Zählen, *v. a.* to number, tell, count.
Zahm, *adj.* tame, domestic.
Zahn, *m.* –es, *pl.* Zähne, tooth.
Zange, *f.* –, *pl.* –n, tongs.
Zart, *adj.* tender, soft, delicate.
Zärtlich, see zart.
Zauberschein, *m.* –es, *pl.* –e, magic-light, fascinating appearance.
Zehnte, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, tithe, tenth.
Zehnmal, ten times.
Zeichnen, *v. a.* to draw, delineate.
Zeigen, *v. c* to show, point out.
Zeiger, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, pointer, hand.
Zeit, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, time, period.
Zeitig, *adj.* early, seasonable.
Zeitlang, a little while, short time.
Zeitung, *f.* –, *pl.* –en, news, tidings, *pl.*; newspaper, gazette.
Zerbre'chen, *v. a.* & *n. ir.* to break to pieces, fracture; sich den Kopf –, to rack one's brains.
Zerschmet'tern, *v. a.* to crash, crush, shatter, dash to pieces.
Zerstö'ren, *v. a.* to destroy, demolish.
Zertre'ten, *v. a. ir.* to crush by treading on, tread down.
Zeuge, *m.* –n, *pl.* –n, witness.
Zeus, *m.* Jupiter.
Ziehen, *v. a.* & *n. ir.* to draw, pull, cultivate, to go, march, migrate
Ziel, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, term, limit, aim, butt, scope, goal.
Zielen, *v. n.* to aim, take aim.
Zifferblatt, *n.* –es, *pl.* –blätter, dial, dial-plate.
Zimmer, *n.* –s, *pl.* –, room, appartment; –mann, *m.* carpenter.
Zinn, *n.* tin, pewter.
Zinnern, *adj.* tin pewter, made of pewter *or* tin.
Zittern, *v. n.* to tremble. quake.
Zöllner, *m.* –s, *pl.* –, toll-gatherer.
Zu, *prep.* & *adv.* at, by, to, for, in, on.
Zucker *m.* –s, sugar
Zuckerbrod, *n.* –es, –s, *pl.* –e, sugar bread, sweet biscuit.
Zufall, *m.* –es, *pl.* Zufälle, chance, accident, adventure; durch –, by chance.
Zufol'ge, *prep.* according to.
Zufrie'den, *adj.* content, contented, satisfied.
Zugehören, *v. n.* to appertain, belong to.
Zugleich', *adv.* at the same time, at once, together.
Zugthier, *n.* –es, *pl.* –e, draught animal.
Zukommen, *v. n. ir.* to come to, approach; *v. imp.* to belong to, become.
Zuletzt', *adv.* at last, lastly, after all, finally.
Zumachen, *v. a.* to shut, close.
Zürnen, *v. n.* to be angry.
Zurück', *adv.* back, backward.
Zurück'kehren, *v. n.* to return.
Zurück'weichen, *v. n. ir.* to recede, retire, withdraw.
Zurufen, *v. a.* & *n. ir.* to give a call, call to.
Zusam'menziehen, *v. a. ir.* to draw together, contract.
Zusehen, *v. n. ir.* to look at, behold, connive at.
Zutragen, *v. a. ir.* to carry to, to bring; *v. r. ir.* to happen, chance, come to pass.
Zuverlässig, *adj.* positive, reliable.
Zuversicht, *f.* –, confidence, trust, assurance.

Digitized by Google

Zuvor, *adv.* before, first, heretofore. formerly.
Zuvor'kommen, *v. n. ir.* to anticipate. prevent, obviate.
Zuweilen, *adv.* sometimes, at times, occasionally.
Zuwi'der, *prep. & adv.* contrary to, against, offensive.
Zwanzig, twenty.
Zwanzigſte, twentieth.
Zwar, *conj.* certainly, it is true, to be sure, indeed.
Zwei, two —**mal**, *adv.* twice.
Zweifeln, *v. n.* to doubt.
Zweig, *m.* —**es**, *pl.* —**e**, branch, bough twig.
Zweigen, *v. a.* to graft, branch.
Zweiſchneidig, *adj.* two-edged.
Zweite, second.
Zweitens, *adv.* secondly.
Zwiefach, two-fold.
Zwingen, *p.* 358; to constrain, force compel.
Zwiſchen, *prep.* between, among.
Zwölf, twelve; —**mal**, twelve times

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY

FOR TRANSLATING ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

A

Able, fähig, geſchickt, see können (L.45).
Above, oben, über.
Accompany, begleiten.
Accomplish, ausführen, ausrichten.
According, nach, gemäß, zufolge, –as, je nachdem.
Account, die Rechnung; on – of, wegen, auf Abſchlag.
Accuse, anklagen, beſchuldigen.
Acquaintance, die Bekanntſchaft, der Bekannte.
Acquainted, bekannt, vertraut, kundig.
Across, kreuzweiſe, über, querüber.
Act, handeln, ſich benehmen.
Action, die Handlung.
Actor, der Schauſpieler.
Adage, das Sprichwort.
Adapt, ſich ſchicken.
Adhere, anhangen.
Adherent, anhängend, Anhänger.
Advice, der Rath, die Nachricht.
Affair, das Geſchäft, die Sache.
Afraid, furchtſam, bange, to be –, fürchten.
After, nach, nachdem; –noon, der Nachmittag.
Again, wieder, noch einmal.
Against, wider, gegen.
Agreeable, angenehm.
Ail, ſchmerzen; what ails you? was fehlt Ihnen?
Aim, das Ziel, der Zweck, die Abſicht; zielen.
Air, die Luft.
All, alles, ganz, überhaupt.
Ally, der Bundesgenoß.
Almond, die Mandel.
Almost, faſt, beinahe.
Alone, allein.
Along, längs, entlang.
Already, bereits, ſchon.
Also, auch, gleichfalls.
Although, obgleich.
Always, immer, ſtets.
American, amerikaniſch, Amerikaner.
Among, unter, zwiſchen.
Anchor, der Anker.
And, und.
Angle, die Angel.
Animal, das Thier.
Another, ein anderer, noch einer.
Answer, die Antwort, antworten.
Anticipate, zuvorkommen.
Anvil, der Amboß.
Any, –body, Jemand; –thing, etwas.
Any one, Jemand, irgend Jemand.
Appear, erſcheinen, ſcheinen.
Apple, der Apfel.
Apprentice, der Lehrling.
Apricot, die Aprikoſe.
Architect, der Baumeiſter.
Arm, der Arm.
Army, die Armee, das Kriegsheer.
Around, herum, um, umher.
Arrest, verhaften.
Arrival, die Ankunft.
Arrive, ankommen.
Arrow, der Pfeil.
Art, die Kunſt.
Artist, der Künſtler.
As, als, da, weil, wie, ſo.
Ashamed (to be), ſich ſchämen.
Ask, fragen, bitten.
Asleep, eingeſchlafen.
Assent, beiſtimmen.
Assist, beiſtehen, helfen.
Assistance, der Beiſtand, die Hilfe.
Assistant, der Gehülfe.
At, zu, an, bei, in, auf über vor, aus, mit, gegen.
Attentive, aufmerkſam.
Auger, der Bohrer.

Digitized by Google

August, der August.
Aunt, die Muhme, Tante
Austrian, der Oesterreicher.
Avail, helfen, nützen, sich bedienen.
Avoid, meiden, vermeiden.
Away, weg, fort.
Ax, die Art, das Beil.
Axis, die Achse.

B

Bad, schlecht, böse, schädlich.
Bag, der Sack.
Baker, der Bäcker.
Ball, der Ball, das Tanzfest.
Bark, die Barke; bellen.
Barley, die Gerste.
Barrel, das Faß, die Tonne.
Basin, das Becken.
Basket, der Korb.
Bavaria, Bayern.
Bavarian, der Bayer, baierisch.
Bean, die Bohne.
Bear, der Bär; ertragen, gebären.
Beast, das Thier; – of burden, Lastthier; – of prey, Raubthier.
Beat, schlagen, klopfen.
Beautiful, schön.
Beauty, die Schönheit.
Because, weil, deßwegen.
Become, werden, sich schicken, geziemen.
Bee, die Biene.
Beech, die Buche.
Beer, das Bier.
Before, vor, bevor, ehe, vorn, vorher, bereits, früher.
Beggar, der Bettler.
Begin, beginnen, anfangen.
Behave, sich betragen.
Behavior, das Betragen.
Behind, hinter, hinten, zurück.
Believe, glauben.
Belong, gehören, angehören.
Below, unter, unterhalb.
Bench, die Bank.
Beneath, unter.
Benefactor, der Wohlthäter.
Berlin, Berlin.
Beside, Besides, neben, außer, außerdem; to be – one's self, außer sich sein.
Between, zwischen, unter.
Beyond, über, jenseits, außer, hinaus.
Bind, binden, (by oath) verpflichten.
Bird, der Vogel; – of prey, der Raubvogel.
Bite, beißen.
Black, schwarz, dunkel; –smith, der Grobschmied.
Blame, tadeln; der Tadel.
Bleat, blöken.
Blessing, der Segen, die Wohlthat.
Blind, blind.
Blotting-paper, das Löschpapier.
Blue, blau.
Board, das Brett.
Boast, groß thun, prahlen, sich rühmen.
Boat, der Kahn.
Body, der Leib, Körper.
Book, das Buch.
Bookbinder, der Buchbinder.
Bookseller, der Buchhändler.
Boot, der Stiefel.
Bow, der Bogen.
Boy, der Knabe.
Braid, flechten, weben.
Brass, *adj.* messingen.
Brave, tapfer, brav, edel.
Bread, das Brod.
Break, brechen, zerbrechen.
Breastpin, die Brustnadel.
Bremen, Bremen.
Brewer, der Brauer.
Bridge, die Brücke.
Bring, bringen.
Broom, der Besen.
Brother, der Bruder; – in law, der Schwager.
Brown, braun.
Brush, die Bürste.
Bud, die Knospe, das Auge.
Build, bauen.
Building, das Gebäude.
Burdensome, lästig.
Burn, brennen.
Bury, begraben.
Business, das Geschäft, die Sache.
But, aber, sondern, außer, nur, als.
Butcher, der Fleischer.
Butter, die Butter.
Button, der Knopf.
Buy, kaufen.
By, von, durch, zu, nach, mit, für, neben, bei, auf.

C

Cabinet-maker, der Tischler.
Cage, der Käfig.

Digitized by Google

Calf, das Kalb,
Call, rufen, nennen.
Camel, das Kameel'.
Can, die Kanne; können, im Stande sein.
Candle, das Licht, die Kerze; -stick, der Leuchter.
Cane, der Stock, das Rohr.
Cap, die Kappe, Mütze.
Capable, fähig, tüchtig.
Captain, der Hauptmann, Kapitän.
Care, die Sorge, Sorgfalt; to take —, Sorge tragen, pflegen.
Carpenter, der Zimmermann.
Carpet, der Teppich.
Carriage der Wagen.
Cask, das Faß.
Castle, das Schloß.
Cat, die Katze
Catch, fangen, ergreifen.
Cathedral, der Dom.
Cattle, das Vieh.
Cause, die Ursache, Sache; verursachen, bewirken.
Celebrated, berühmt.
Certain, gewiß, zuverlässig, gewißlich.
Chain, die Kette; fesseln.
Chair, der Stuhl, Sessel.
Chalk, die Kreide.
Charles, Karl.
Cheat, betrügen.
Cheese, der Käse.
Cherry, die Kirsche.
Child, das Kind.
Chisel, der Meißel.
Church, die Kirche.
City, die Stadt.
Clean, rein.
Climb, klimmen, klettern, ersteigen.
Cloak, der Mantel.
Cloth, das Zeug, Tuch.
Clothes, die Kleidung.
Cloud, die Wolke.
Coachman, der Kutscher.
Coarse, grob.
Coat, der Rock.
Coffee, der Kaffee.
Cold, kalt, frostig; die Kälte.
Collar, der Kragen.
Cologne, Köln.
Color, Farbe; färben.
Come, kommen. P. 350, gelangen.
Comforter, der Tröster.
Command, der Befehl; befehlen, gebieten.
Commit, begehen.
Company, die Gesellschaft, der Besuch.
Compel, nöthigen, zwingen.
Complain, sich beklagen.
Conceal, verbergen.
Conduct, die Aufführung, das Betragen.
Confide, vertrauen.
Confirm, bestätigen.
Conjunction, das Bindewort.
Conquer, siegen.
Conscious, bewußt.
Consequent, folgend, folglich.
Contented, zufrieden.
Contradict, widersprechen.
Convict, überführen.
Convince, überzeugen.
Cook, der Koch, die Köchin.
Cooper, der Böttcher, Küfer.
Copper, das Kupfer; *adj.* kupfern.
Copy, abschreiben.
Cost, kosten.
Cotton, die Baumwolle.
Country, das Land; -man, der Landmann, Bauer.
Courage, der Muth, die Tapferkeit.
Cousin, der Vetter, die Cousine.
Cover, der Deckel; decken, bedecken.
Cow, die Kuh.
Crane, der Kranich.
Crawl, kriechen schleichen.
Creep, kriechen.
Crime, das Verbrechen.
Criminal, der Verbrecher.
Crocodile, das Krokodill.
Cup, die Tasse.
Cut, der Schnitt; schneiden, hauen.
Cutler, der Messerschmied.

D

Dagger, der Dolch.
Dangerous, gefährlich.
Daughter, die Tochter; — in-law, die Schwiegertochter.
Day, der Tag; to-day, heute; — before yesterday, vorgestern; -laborer, der Taglöhner.
Dead, todt.
Deaf, taub.
Deal, der Theil; a great —, sehr viel.
Dear, theuer, werth.
Death, der Tod.
Deceive, betrügen, hintergehen, täuschen.

Digitized by Google

Deed, die That.
Deep, tief.
Defeat, überwinden, schlagen.
Defy, Trotz bieten, trotzen, verschmähen.
Deserve, verdienen.
Design, das Vorhaben.
Desk, das Pult.
Despair, verzweifeln.
Destiny, das Verhängniß, die Bestimmung.
Destitute, entblößt, hilflos.
Destroy, zerstören, zu Grunde richten.
Devoted, ergeben.
Dictionary, das Wörterbuch.
Die, der Stempel, die Würfel; sterben, umkommen.
Difference, der Unterschied.
Different, verschieden.
Difficult, schwer, schwierig.
Dig, graben.
Dignity, die Würde, der Rang, das Amt.
Diligence, der Fleiß.
Diligent, fleißig, emsig.
Discontented, unzufrieden.
Distinct, deutlich.
Disturber, der Störer.
Ditch, der Graben.
Do, thun, machen, verrichten, sich befinden.
Dog, der Hund.
Door, die Thüre, *or* Thür.
Doubt, zweifeln.
Down, unten, nieder, hinab, hinunter, herunter.
Draught-animal, das Zugthier.
Draw, ziehen, zeichnen.
Dresden, Dresden.
Dress, das Kleid.
Drink, der Trank, das Getränke; saufen, trinken.
Drive, treiben.
Dry, trocken.
Duck, die Ente.
Due, gebührend, angemessen.
Dull, dumm.
During, während.
Duty, die Pflicht, Schuldigkeit.
Dyer, der Färber.

E

Eagle, der Adler.
Ear, das Ohr.
Earn, verdienen, gewinnen.
Earth, die Erde.
Easy, –ily, leicht, ruhig, frei.
Eat, essen, fressen.
Eel, der Aal.
Eight, acht.
Either, einer von beiden, entweder.
Elephant, der Elephant.
Emerald, der Smaragd.
Emperor, der Kaiser.
End, das Ende.
Enemy, der Feind.
English, die Engländer; englisch.
Englishman, der Engländer.
Enjoy, sich erfreuen, genießen.
Enough, genug, hinlänglich.
Entire, ganz, vollständig.
Envious, neidisch.
Envy, beneiden.
Escape, entrinnen, entkommen.
Esteem, schätzen, achten.
Eternity, die Ewigkeit.
Europe, Europa.
Even, eben, gerade, sogar, selbst.
Evening, der Abend, die Abendzeit.
Ever, je, jemals, immer.
Every, –where, allenthalben, überall.
Exercise, die Uebung, die Aufgabe; üben.
Expect, erwarten.
Eye, das Auge, Oehr.

F

Fail, fehlen, unterlassen.
Faithful, treu, redlich.
Fall, der Fall; fallen; to – asleep, einschlafen, entschlafen.
Fan, der Fächer.
Far, entfernt, fern.
Fast, fest, geschwind, schnell.
Father, der Vater; – in law, der Schwiegervater; –land, das Vaterland.
Fault, der Fehler, die Schuld.
Favorable, günstig.
Fear, die Furcht; fürchten.
Feather, die Feder.
Fellow-scholar, der Mitschüler.
Few, wenig; a –, einige.
Field, das Feld.
Fifty, fünfzig.
Fifteen, fünfzehn.
Fight, fechten, streiten.
Final, –ly, endlich.

Digitized by Google

Find, finden, antreffen.
Fine, fein, schön.
Finger, der Finger.
Fire, das Feuer.
First, erste.
Fish, der Fisch; fischen.
Fisherman, der Fischer.
Fit, passen.
Flatter, schmeicheln, liebkosen.
Flatterer, der Schmeichler.
Flattering, schmeichelhaft, schmeichelnd
Flax, der Flachs.
Flee, fliehen.
Florin, der Gulden.
Flour, das Mehl.
Flow, fließen, strömen.
Flower, die Blume, Blüthe.
Flute, die Flöte.
Fly, die Fliege; fliegen, fliehen.
Foam, der Schaum; schäumen.
Follow, folgen, nachfolgen.
Fool, der Thor, Narr.
Foolish, thöricht, närrisch.
Foot, der Fuß; on —, zu Fuß.
For, für, nach, mit, um ... willen, an, aus, während, auf, zu, denn.
Forest, der Forst, Wald.
Forget, vergessen. P. 356.
Fork, die Gabel.
Four, vier.
Fowl, das Huhn.
France, Frankreich.
Francis, Franz.
Frankfort, Frankfurt.
Free, befreien, frei.
French, französisch, die Franzosen.
Frenchman, der Franzose.
Friend, der Freund, die Freundin.
Friendly, freundlich.
From, von, aus.
Fruit, die Frucht, das Obst; —tree der Obstbaum.

G

Gain, gewinnen.
Gallant, tapfer brav.
Garden, der Garten.
Gardener, der Gärtner.
Gather, sammeln, lesen.
General, allgemein; der Feldherr General.
Generally, gewöhnlich; im Allgemeinen.
Generous, großmüthig, freigebig.
Gentleman, Herr, der gebildete, feine Mann.
German, deutsch, der Deutsche.
Germany, Deutschland.
Get, erhalten, bekommen, kommen, gelangen, gerathen, lassen; to —rid of, los werden; to — at, beikommen.
Giant, der Riese; —Mountains, Riesengebirge.
Girl, das Mädchen.
Give, geben, schenken.
Glad, froh, heiter, zufrieden; to be —, sich freuen.
Glass, das Glas, der Spiegel.
Glazier, der Glaser
Glove, der Handschuh.
Go, gehen. P. 348.
Gold, das Gold; golden; —smith, der Goldschmied.
Gone, weg, fort.
Good, gut.
Goose, die Gans.
Govern, regieren, lenken, beherrschen.
Gracious, gnädig, gütig.
Gradual, —ly, nach und nach, stufenweise.
Grain, das Korn, Getreide
Grass, das Gras.
Grateful, dankbar.
Grave, das Grab.
Gray, grau.
Great, groß.
Greece, Griechenland.
Green, grün, frisch, unreif.
Grieve, kränken.
Grind, mahlen.
Grow, wachsen.
Guide, der Führer.
Guilty, schuldig.

H

Haggard, hager.
Half, halb.
Hamburg, Hamburg.
Hammer, der Hammer; hämmern
Hand, die Hand.
Handkerchief, das Taschentuch.
Handle, der Stiel.
Hang, hangen, behängen.
Happen, sich ereignen, geschehen
Happy, glücklich.
Harbor, der Hafen
Hard, hart, schwer
Hasten, eilen.

Digitized by Google

Hat, der Hut; –maker, der Hutmacher.
Hate, haſſen, verabſcheuen.
Hateful, verhaßt, gehaſſig.
Hatter, der Hutmacher.
Have, haben.
Hay, das Heu.
He, er, derjenige.
Head, der Kopf.
Health, die Geſundheit.
Healthy, geſund.
Hear, hören.
Heaven, der Himmel.
Heavy, ſchwer.
Help, die Hilfe; helfen, see können (L. 45).
Helpless, hülflos.
Hemp, der Hanf.
Here, hier hierher.
Hers, der, die, das ihrige.
Hessian, der Heſſe.
High, hoch.
Him, ihm, dem, ihn, den.
Himself, ſelbſt, ſich.
His, ſein, der ſeinige, *or* ſeine.
Hit, ſchlagen, treffen.
Hold, halten.
Hole, das Loch, die Höhle.
Home, nach Hauſe; at –, zu Hauſe.
Honest, ehrlich, rechtſchaffen.
Honey, der Honig.
Honor, die Ehre; ehren.
Hope, die Hoffnung; hoffen.
Horse, das Pferd, Roß; on –back, zu Pferde.
Hostility, die Feindſeligkeit.
Hotel, der Gaſthof, das Gaſthaus.
Hour, die Stunde.
House, das Haus.
How, wie, auf welche Art.
Howl, heulen.
Hundred, hundert.
Hungarian, der Ungar; ungariſch.
Hungry, hungrig; he is –, es hungert ihn, *or* ihn hungert.
Hunter, der Jäger.
Hurt, weh thun.
Husbandman, der Landmann.
Hypocrisy, die Heuchelei.

I

I, ich; I say! hören Sie doch! hören Sie einmal.
Idle, müßig, träge.
Idleness, die Trägheit, Faulheit.
If, wenn, falls.
Ill-natured, böſe.
Image, das Bild.
Immediate, gleich, augenblicklich, ſogleich.
Immortal, unſterblich.
Impolite, unhöflich.
Improbable, unwahrſcheinlich.
In, in, bei, an, zu, auf, mit, unter, nach, über, herein, hinein.
Indolent, laſſig, träge.
Industrious, fleißig.
Inhabitant, der Einwohner.
Injure, ſchaden, beleidigen, beeinträchtigen.
Injurious, ungerecht, nachtheilig.
Ink, die Tinte; –stand, das Tintenfaß.
Innocence, die Unſchuld.
Innocent, unſchuldig,
Inquire, ſich erkundigen, fragen.
Insecure, unſicher.
Insist, beſtehen.
Instead of, ſtatt, anſtatt.
Instruct, unterrichten.
Instructive, belehrend, lehrreich.
Interesting, anziehend, intereſſant.
Into, in.
Iron, das Eiſen; eiſern.
It, es.
Italian, italieniſch; der Italiener.

J

Jacket, die Jacke.
Journey, die Reiſe.
Joy, die Freude.
June, der Juny *or* Juni.
Just, gerecht, rechtſchaffen, eben.

K

Kettle, der Keſſel.
Key, der Schlüſſel.
Kind, die Gattung, Art; what kind of (L. 13.), *adj.* gütig, freundlich.
Kindness, die Güte.
King, der König.
Kingdom, das Königreich.
Knife, das Meſſer.
Know, wiſſen, kennen.

L

Labor, die Arbeit.
Laborer, der Arbeiter, Taglöhner
Lady, die Frau, Dame.
Lamb, das Lamm.
Lame, lahm.

Digitized by Google

Landscape, die Landschaft.
Language, die Sprache.
Large, groß, weit, breit.
Last, letzt.
Laugh, das Lachen, Gelächter; lachen.
Law, das Gesetz.
Lay, legen.
Lazy, faul, träge.
Lead, das Blei.
Lead, führen.
Leader, der Führer
Leaf, das Blatt.
Learn, lernen, erfahren.
Learned, gelehrt.
Leather, das Leder; ledern.
Leave, lassen, verlassen.
Length, die Länge; at –, endlich.
Less, kleiner, weniger.
Let, lassen, vermiethen.
Letter, der Buchstabe, Brief; –paper, das Briefpapier.
Liberty, die Freiheit; at –, see dürfen (L. 45).
Lie, die Lüge; lügen.
Lie, liegen.
Life, das Leben.
Light, das Licht; to come to –, ans Tageslicht kommen.
Lighten, leuchten, blitzen.
Like, gleich, ähnlich; gefallen; the –, dergleichen; he would – to, er möchte gern.
Lime, das Kalk.
Little, klein, gering, wenig.
Live, leben, wohnen.
Lock, das Schloß; zuschließen, schliessen; –smith, der Schlösser.
Lofty, hoch, erhaben.
Long, lang, lange.
Look, das Ansehen haben; aussehen: to – for, suchen.
Lose, verlieren.
Loud, –ly, laut.
Love, die Liebe; lieben.
Low, niedrig, brüllen.

M

Magdeburg, Magdeburg.
Maize, der Mais.
Make, machen, verrichten, lassen.
Man, der Mensch, Mann.
Manheim, Mannheim.
Many, viel; L. 65; – a, mancher.
Marble, der Marmor.
March, der März.
Mark, das Zeichen, Ziel.
Mason, der Maurer.
Mast, der Mast.
Master, der Meister, Herr; – of a language, einer Sprache mächtig.
Matter, die Sache; what is the –? was gibt es?
May, der Mai.
May, mögen, können, dürfen.
Mayence, Mainz.
Meadow, die Wiese.
Mean, gemein, schlecht; das Mittel· by means of, vermittelst.
Measles, die Masern.
Measure, das Maß; messen.
Meat, das Fleisch.
Meet, to go to –, entgegen gehen, treffen, begegnen.
Melon, die Melone.
Melt, schmelzen.
Memory, das Gedächtniß.
Mention, erwähnen.
Merchant, der Kaufmann.
Messenger, der Bote.
Migrate, ziehen.
Milk, die Milch.
Miller, der Müller.
Mind, das Gemüth, der Sinn.
Mindful, aufmerksam, eingedenk.
Mine, mein, meinige. (L. 35).
Miser, der Geizhals.
Miserable, elend, erbärmlich.
Misfortune, das Unglück.
Miss, das Fräulein.
Misunderstand, falsch verstehen, missverstehen.
Modest, bescheiden.
Money, das Geld, die Münze.
Month, der Monat.
Moon, der Mond.
More, das Mehr; mehr.
Morning, der Morgen.
Mother, die Mutter.
Mountain, der Berg.
Much, viel, sehr.
Mule, das Maulthier.
Munich, München.
Murder, ermorden.
Music, die Musik.
Must, müssen. (L. 45).
Mustard, der Senf.
My, mein, meine.

Digitized by Google

N

Nail, der Nagel.
Name, der Name.
Narrow, enge.
Native-country, das Vaterland.
Natural, natürlich.
Nature, die Natur.
Near, nahe, beinahe, fast, bei.
Need, bedürfen, nöthig haben.
Needle, die Nadel.
Neighbor, der Nachbar, Nächste, die Nachbarin.
Negligent, nachlässig.
Neither, weder, auch nicht; — . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
Nephew, der Neffe.
Nest, das Nest.
Never, nie, niemals.
Nevertheless, nichtsdestoweniger, dessenungeachtet, dennoch.
New, neu, frisch.
News, die Neuigkeit, Nachricht.
Newspaper, die Zeitung.
Next, nächst, folgend.
Night, die Nacht.
No, nein, nicht, kein.
Nobody, Niemand. (L. 18. 5).
None, keiner, keine, keines.
Nor, noch, auch nicht.
North, Norden.
Norwegian, der Norweger.
Not, nicht.
Nothing, nichts.
Notwithstanding, ungeachtet, dennoch, doch.
Now, nun, jetzt, soeben.

O

Oak, die Eiche.
Oats, der Hafer.
Obedience, der Gehorsam.
Obedient, gehorsam.
Obey, gehorchen.
Oblige, verpflichten, verbinden, see müssen (L. 45).
Obstinate, eigensinnig.
Of, von, wegen, vermittelst — course, natürlich, es versteht sich.
Offend, beleidigen.
Office, das Amt.
Officer, der Officier.
Often, oft, öfters.
Oil, das Oel.
Old, alt.
On, an, auf, in, bei, zu, mit, unter, vor, über, von, weg, weiter, fort, gegen, zufolge.
Only, einzig, allein, nur, erst.
Opinion, die Meinung.
Oppress, unterdrücken.
Or, oder.
Oration, die Rede.
Orator, der Redner.
Orchard, der Obstgarten.
Order, bestellen.
Orphan, der, die Waise.
Ostrich, der Strauß.
Other, der, die, das andere; every — day, einen Tag um den andern; —wise, anders, sonst.
Our, unser, der unsrige.
Out, aus, draußen; — of, aus, außer.
Outside, außerhalb.
Over, über, auf, hinüber, herüber, vorüber, vorbei, allzu, zu sehr, weit, breit, überhin, durch, vor.
Owe, schuldig sein, verdanken.
Ox, der Ochs.

P

Pain, der Schmerz.
Paint brush, der Pinsel.
Painter, der Maler.
Painting, das Gemälde.
Pair, das Paar.
Palace, der Palast.
Pale, bleich.
Paper, das Papier; papieren.
Parasol, der Sonnenschirm.
Parents, die Eltern.
Paris, Paris.
Part, der Theil.
Passion, die Leidenschaft.
Past, vergangen, vorbei.
Patient, geduldig; der Kranke, Patient.
Patriotic, patriotisch.
Pea, die Erbse.
Peace, der Friede.
Peaceful, friedsam, friedlich.
Peach, die Pfirsiche.
Peacock, der Pfau.
Pear, die Birne.
Pearl, die Perle.
Peasant, der Landmann, Bauer.
Peculiarity, die Eigenheit.

Digitized by Google

Pen, die Feder, Schreibfeder; –knife, das Federmesser.
Pencil, der Pinsel, Bleistift.
People, das Volk, die Leute; bevölkern.
Pepper, der Pfeffer.
Perfect, vollkommen.
Perhaps, vielleicht.
Perish, umkommen, zu Grunde gehen.
Pestilence, die Pest.
Physician, der Arzt.
Piece, das Stück.
Pigeon, die Taube.
Pink, die Nelke.
Pit, die Grube.
Pitcher, der Krug.
Pity, das Mitleiden· it is a –, es ist Schade; bemitleiden, bedauern.
Plan, der Plan, Entwurf.
Plane, der Hobel.
Plate, der Teller.
Play, spielen, scherzen.
Player, der Spieler.
Pleasant, –ly, angenehm.
Please, gefallen, ergötzen.
Pleasure, das Vergnügen.
Plum, die Pflaume.
Pole, der Pole.
Polite, fein, artig, höflich.
Poor, arm, dürftig, mager.
Porcelain, das Porzellan.
Post-mark, der Stempel.
Pound, das Pfund.
Pour, gießen, einschenken.
Poverty, die Armuth.
Powder, das Pulver.
Power, die Macht, Gewalt, Kraft.
Powerful, –ly, mächtig.
Practical, praktisch.
Practice, die Uebung.
Praise, das Lob; loben, preisen.
Preposition, das Verhältnißwort.
Pretty, hübsch, nett, zierlich.
Prince, der Prinz, Fürst.
Principle, der Grundsatz.
Prison, das Gefängniß.
Probable, wahrscheinlich.
Pronoun, das Fürwort.
Promise, das Versprechen; versprechen, geloben.
Pronounce, aussprechen.
Proud, stolz, trotzig.
Prussia, Preußen.
Punish, bestrafen.
Pure, rein, lauter.
Purse, der Beutel.
Put, stellen, legen.

Q

Quarrel, zanken, streiten
Queen, die Königin.

R

Rage, wüthen.
Rain, der Regen; regnen.
Raise, heben, aufheben.
Rapid, schnell, geschwind.
Rather, lieber.
Raven, der Rabe.
Read, lesen.
Really, wirklich, in der That
Receive, empfangen, erhalten.
Recommend, empfehlen.
Recover, gesund werden, genesen
Red, roth.
Rejoice, sich freuen.
Relation, der, die Verwandte.
Reliable, zuverlässig.
Remain, bleiben.
Remember, sich erinnern.
Renowned, berühmt.
Resemble, gleichen, ähnlich sein.
Reside, wohnen.
Resistance, der Widerstand.
Respect, achten, schätzen, hochachten.
Result, die Folge, der Erfolg.
Return, zurückkehren, zurückgeben, zurückschicken.
Reward, vergelten, belohnen.
Rice, der Reiß.
Rich, reich.
Ride, reiten, fahren.
Ridicule, lächerlich machen, sich über ... aufhalten.
Ring, der Ring, Kreis, Klang
Ripe, reif, zeitig.
Ripen, reifen.
River, der Fluß, Strom.
Road, die Straße ; der Weg.
Rob, rauben, berauben.
Robbery, der Raub.
Rock, der Fels, Felsen.
Roof, das Dach.
Room, der Raum, die Stube, das Zimmer.
Rope, das Seil ; –maker, der Seiler
Rose, die Rose,
Ruby, der Rubin.

Digitized by Google

Rule, die Regel, Herrſchaft.
Run, laufen, rennen, rinnen; – away, durchgehen.
Russia, Rußland.
Russian, der Ruſſe; ruſſiſch.
Rusty, roſtig.
Rye, der Roggen, das Korn.

S

Sad, traurig, betrübt.
Saddle, der Sattel.
Saddler, der Sattler.
Sailor, der Matroſe.
Sake. (L. 60.)
Salt, das Salz.
Same, derſelbe, dieſelbe, daſſelbe; the very –, der nämliche.
Satin, der Atlaß.
Satisfied, zufrieden.
Saxony, Sachſen.
Say, ſagen.
Scarlet-fever, das Scharlachfieber.
Scholar, der Schüler, Gelehrte, die Schülerin.
School, die Schule.
Scold, ſchelten.
Sea, die See, das Meer.
Seal, der Seehund.
Seal, das Petſchaft, der Stempel.
Sealing-wax, das Siegellack.
Season, die Jahreszeit, rechte Zeit.
Season of the year, die Jahreszeit.
See, ſehen.
Seem, ſcheinen.
Seize, ergreifen.
Seldom, ſelten.
Self, ſelbſt.
Selfish, eigennützig.
Sell, verkaufen.
Send, ſenden, ſchicken; to – for, holen laſſen.
Sense, der Sinn, Verſtand.
September, September.
Sergeant, der Feldwebel.
Servant, der Diener; – girl, das Dienſtmädchen.
Several, verſchiedene, mehrere.
Sew, nähen.
Shall, ſollen, werden.
Sharp, –ly, ſcharf.
Sharpen, ſchärfen, ſchleifen, zuſpitzen.
Sheep, das Schaf.
Shine, ſcheinen, leuchten.
Ship, das Schiff.
Shoe, der Schuh, das Hufeiſen; – maker, der Schuhmacher.
Shoot, ſchießen.
Shore, das Ufer.
Shriek, ſchreien.
Short, kurz.
Shovel, die Schaufel.
Show, zeigen.
Sick, krank, unwohl.
Side, die Seite; on this –, diesſeits on the other –, jenſeits.
Siege, die Belagerung.
Sight, das Geſicht; out of –, aus den Augen.
Silk, die Seide; ſeiden.
Silly, einfältig, albern.
Silver, das Silber; ſilbern.
Similar, ähnlich.
Since, ſeitdem, vorher, weil, da.
Sing, ſingen.
Singer, der Sänger.
Sister, die Schweſter; – in law, die Schwägerin.
Sit, ſitzen, paſſen.
Situation, die Stelle.
Six, ſechs.
Sixteenth, ſechszehnte.
Skillful, geſchickt.
Slaughter, ſchlachten.
Sleep, der Schlaf; ſchlafen.
Sleeve, der Aermel.
Slow, langſam.
Small, klein, gering; –pox, die Blattern.
Smile, lächeln.
Smith, der Schmied, Schmid, Schmidt.
Smoke, der Rauch; rauchen.
Smooth, glatt.
Snow, der Schnee; ſchneien.
So, ſo.
Sojourn, der Aufenthalt.
Sofa, das Ruhebett, Sopha.
Soft, weich, ſanft, leiſe.
Soldier, der Soldat.
Some, –body, jemand; –thing, etwas, –times, zuweilen, manchmal; – where, irgendwo.
Son, der Sohn.
Song, der Geſang, das Lied.
Soon, bald, früh.
Sorrow, der Kummer.
Sorry, traurig, betrübt; I am –, es thut mir leid.
South, Süden.
Spade, der Spaten.

Digitized by Google

Spanish, ſpaniſch.
Spare, ſchonen.
Sparrow, der Sperling.
Speak, ſprechen, reden.
Spin, ſpinnen, drehen.
Spirit, der Geiſt, die Seele.
Spite, der Groll; in – of, trotz.
Split, ſpalten.
Sponge, der Schwamm.
Spoon, der Löffel.
Spring, der Sprung, die Quelle, der Frühling; ſpringen.
Stable, der Stall.
Stand, der Stand, die Stelle; ſtehen
Start, fahren, abreiſen.
State, der Staat; –'s-man, der Staatsmann.
Stay, der Aufenthalt; bleiben.
Stead, die Stelle. (L. 60.)
Steal, ſtehlen.
Steel, der Stahl; ſtählen, ſtählern. (L. 15. 5).
Steep, ſteil.
Still, ſtill, ruhig, noch.
Sting, der Stachel; ſtechen.
Story, die Geſchichte, das Mährchen.
Stove, der Ofen.
Stranger, der Fremde, Unbekannte.
Stream, der Strom.
Street, die Straße.
Strength, die Stärke.
Strike, ſchlagen, ſtoßen, hauen.
Strong, ſtark, kräftig, derb.
Study, ſtudiren, nachdenken.
Stupid, dumm, albern.
Subject, der Unterthan; unterthan.
Succeed, nachfolgen, gelingen.
Succumb, erliegen.
Suffer, leiden.
Sugar, der Zucker.
Summer, der Sommer.
Sun, die Sonne.
Superior, überlegen, vorzüglicher
Supply, erſetzen.
Sure, ſicher, gewiß.
Surgeon, der Wundarzt.
Swallow die Schwalbe.
Swan, der Schwan.
Swede, der Schwede.
Sweep, kehren.
Swell, ſchwellen, aufſchwellen.
Swim, ſchwimmen.
Sword, das Schwert.

T

Table, die Tafel, der Tiſch.
Tailor, der Schneider.
Take, nehmen, machen; to – cold, ſich erkälten; to – off, abnehmen.
Tanner, der Gerber.
Tea, der Thee.
Teach, lehren, unterrichten.
Teacher, der Lehrer, die Lehrerin.
Tedious, langweilig.
Tell, zählen, erzählen.
Than, als, denn.
That, *prn.* jener, welcher, der.
That, *conj.* daß.
The, der, die, das, je ..., deſto ..., um ſo; – more, – better, je mehr, deſto beſſer.
Thee, dir, dich; of –, deiner.
Their, ihr, ihre.
Them, ihnen, ſie.
Themselves, ſie ſelbſt, ſich ſelbſt.
There, da, dort, daſelbſt, dahin, es; – fore, daher, darum, alſo,
They, ſie.
Thief, der Dieb.
Thing, das Ding, die Sache.
Think, denken, meinen, glauben; to – of, gedenken.
Third, dritte; das Drittel.
This, dieſer.
Thirty, dreißig.
Thorn, der Dorn.
Though, obſchon, obgleich.
Thought, der Gedanke.
Thousand, tauſend.
Thrash, dreſchen.
Thrasher, der Dreſcher.
Threaten, drohen.
Three, drei.
Thresh, *see* Thrash.
Through, durch.
Throw, werfen.
Thunder, donnern, wettern.
Thus, ſo, alſo, auf dieſe Art.
Thyself, du ſelbſt, ſelbſt, dich, dir
Tiger, der Tiger.
Till, bis.
Time, die Zeit, das Mal.
Tin, das Zinn.
Tinman, der Klempner.
Tired, müde, überdrüſſig.
To, zu, um, an, auf, mit, nach, für, gegen, bis; – and fro, hin und her

Digitized by Google

Tobacco, der Tabak.
To-day, heute.
Toilsome, anstrengend.
Toll-gatherer, der Zöllner.
To-morrow, morgen.
Too, zu, allzu, auch.
Tooth, der Zahn.
Toothache, das Zahnweh.
Toward, gegen.
Traitor, der Verräther.
Translate, übersetzen.
Trash, der Tand.
Travel, reisen.
Traveler, der Reisende.
Treat, behandeln.
Tree, der Baum, Stamm.
Tremble, zittern.
Trouble, die Unruhe, der Verdruß, Kummer.
True, wahr, treu.
Trunk, der Koffer, Stamm.
Truth, die Wahrheit.
Try, prüfen, versuchen.
Turk, der Türke.
Turkey, die Türkei.
Turn, die Reihe; drehen, drechseln.
Twelve, zwölf.
Twenty, zwanzig.
Twice, zweimal.
Two, zwei.
Tyrant, der Tyrann, Wüthrich.

U

Ugly, häßlich.
Umbrella, der Regenschirm.
Unaccustomed, ungewohnt.
Uncle, der Oheim, Onkel.
Uncommon, ungemein.
Under, unter unten, nieder, untergeordnet.
Understand, verstehen, begreifen; see können. (L. 45).
Unfavorable, ungünstig.
Unfortunate, unglücklich.
Unhappy, unglücklich.
United, vereinigt.
Unpleasant, unangenehm.
Until, bis.
Untrue, unwahr, untreu.
Unwell, unwohl.
Up, auf, aufwärts, hinauf, herauf, empor.
Upon, auf, an, über, bei, aus, in, nach, zufolge.
Useful, nützlich.

V

Vain, eitel.
Valiant, tapfer, brav.
Value, der Werth.
Veil, der Schleier.
Venture, wagen.
Very, sehr.
Vessel, das Gefäß.
Vest, die Weste.
Vex, plagen, quälen verdrießen.
Vienna, Wien.
Village, das Dorf.
Vinegar, der Essig.
Violin, die Geige.
Virtue, die Tugend; by – of, kraft.
Visit, der Besuch; besuchen.
Voice, die Stimme.

W

Wafer, die Oblate.
Wagon, der Wagen; –maker, der Wagner.
Wait, warten.
Waiter, der Kellner.
Walk, der Gang, Weg, Spaziergang; gehen.
Want, das Bedürfniß; to be in –, benöthigt sein, nöthig haben; Mangel leiden an ...
War, der Krieg.
Warm, warm; –spring, Warmbrunnen.
Wash, waschen; –stand, der Waschtisch.
Wasp, die Wespe.
Watch, die Uhr, Taschenuhr; –maker, der Uhrmacher.
Watchful, wachsam.
Water, das Wasser.
Wave, die Welle, Woge.
Way, der Weg.
We, wir.
Wealth, der Reichthum.
Wear, tragen, anhaben.
Weary, müde.
Weather, das Wetter.
Weave, weben.
Weaver, der Weber.
Weed, das Unkraut.
Week, die Woche.
Weep, weinen, beweinen
Well, wohl, gut.
Whale der Wallfisch.

Digitized by Google

What, was, welcher, welch ein, was für ein, wie viel.
Wheat, der Weizen.
When, wenn, wann, als, da.
Where, wo, wohin.
Wherein, worin.
Whether, ob.
Which, welcher, welche, welches.
While, indem, während.
Whistle, die Pfeife, pfeifen.
White, weiß.
Who, wer, welcher, der, die; -ever, wer auch immer.
Whole, ganz.
Why, warum (L. 13. 6).
Wild, wild.
Will, der Wille; wollen. (L. 45).
Win, gewinnen.
Window, das Fenster.
Wine, der Wein.
Wise, weise, verständig.
Wish, der Wunsch; wünschen; see wollen., (L. 45).
With, mit, nebst, sammt, bei, auf, für an, durch.
Within, in, innerhalb.
Without, außer, ohne.
Wolf, der Wolf.
Woman, das Weib, die Frau.
Wood, das Holz; -cutter, der Holzhauer
Wooden, hölzern.
Wool, die Wolle.
Word, das Wort.
Work, die Arbeit, das Werk; arbeiten.
World, die Welt, Erde; -renowned, weltberühmt.
Worm, der Wurm.
Worst, schlechteste, ärgste.
Worth, der Werth; werth, würdig.
Worthy, würdig.
Wretched, elend.
Write, schreiben.
Writing-book, das Schreibbuch; -desk, das Schreibpult; -paper das Schreibpapier.
Wrong, unrecht, falsch.

Y

Yarn, das Garn.
Year, das Jahr.
Yellow, gelb.
Yes, Ja.
Yesterday, gestern.
Yet, doch, dennoch, noch.
Yonder, dort.
You, ihr, etc. (L. 27).
Young, jung, frisch.
Your, euer, dein, Ihr.
Youth, die Jugend.

ERRATA.

Bed, das Bett.
Citizen, der Bürger.
Evil, das Uebel; *adj.* übel, böse.
Pupil, der Zögling, Schüler.
Renounce, entsagen.
Service, der Dienst.
Spear, der Speer.
Vain, eitel; in—, vergebens.
Weak, schwach.

Digitized by Google

GENERAL INDEX.

A, o, u changed to the umlauts, ä, ö, ü, L.* 2. II., in derivative forms, § 11. 1.
Abbreviations, p. 261.
Aber, allein, ſondern, distinguished, § 256. 2. a. L. 21. 4.
Abstract nouns, § 5. 2.
Accent, § 2. 10. L. 2. VI.
Achten, L. 62. 6.
Accusative or dative after certain prepositions, § 116. Rule for the use of, § 132. Verbs requiring two, § 132. 2. Used to denote measure, distance or time, § 132. 3. Construed absolutely, § 132. 5.
Adjectives, formed by suffixes, § 25. § 26. Predicative and attributive, p. 44. (*Note*). Declension of, § 27. Old form of, § 28. § 29. L. 14. New form of, § 30. § 31. L. 15. Mixed form of, § 32. L. 16. Comparison of, § 35. L. 32. Used as nouns, § 34. 5. L. 33. 1. Comparatives and superlatives, § 37. Irregular and defective forms of, § 39. Compared by means of adverbs, § 41. Their agreement with nouns, § 135. L. 14. 4. Repetition of, for different genders, § 135. 5. Requiring the gen., L. 61. Requiring the dat., L. 63.
Adverbs, § 100. Formed from nouns, §. 101. From adjectives, § 102. From pronouns, § 103. From verbs, § 104. By composition, § 105. Comparison of, § 106. Nouns used as, §. 128. L. 61. 8. Syntax of, § 151.
Aller, prefixed to superlatives, § 38. 2. L. 32. 7. Applied to number and quantity, § 53. 3. Peculiar use of, § 134. 1.
Als, L. 69. 3.
Alſo, L. 69. 4.
Am, with the positive of an adjective used for the superlative, § 38. 1. L. 32. 6. This form of superl. when used, §. 42.
An, § 116. L. 68. 1. 2.
Ander, L. 65. 1.
Andere, der, instead of der zweite, § 45. 3.
Anderthalb, instead of zweitehalb, § 49. (*Note*).
Anſtatt, § 110. 1. L. 60. 7. Before infinitive, L. 49. 5.
Apposition, rule for, § 133. § 123. 6. 7.
Attributive adjective, L. 14.
Articles, declension of, § 4. L. 8. 4, 12. 4. Contracted with prepositions, § 4. 2. L. 20. 4. Rule for the use of, § 120. L. 42. Def. art. in place of possess. pron., § 134. 7. With ſolch, § 120. 4. Before halb and beide, § 120. 2. A. Omission of, L. 43.
Auch, answering to *ever* and *even*, L. 69. 5.
Auf, § 116. L. 68. 3.
Auxiliary verbs, divided into two classes, § 70. 1. Those of the first class, haben, ſein and werden, when and how used, § 70. § 71. Those of the second class, when and how used, § 74. Infinitives of the second class in place of the participle, § 74. 3.
Bald, L. 69. 6.
Bar, suffix, § 25.
Be, prefix, § 97. 1.
Befinden, L. 29. 10.
Behalten, L. 62.
Bei, its use, § 112. 3. L. 66. 3.
Beide, beides, L. 65. 2.
Bis, L. 69. 7.
Capitals, rules for, § 5. 2. (*Note*).
Cardinal numbers, § 44. Gender of, taken merely as figures, § 44. 7.
Cases, § 3. 4. 5. Of participles, § 147. 1. L. 8; 60; 61; 62; 63.

* L. refers to Lessons, p. 19—260 inclusive; § refers to the second part, p. 263—446 inclusive.

Digitized by Google

Chen, diminutives in, § 10. L. 24. 1. Represented by pronouns masc. or fem., § 134. 2. L. 28. 4.
Collective nouns, form of, § 11. 3. Pronouns, referring to them, § 134. 3.
Collocation of words, § 158. L. 53.
Comparison of adjectives, § 35. L. 32. Euphonic changes in forming, § 36. Comparatives and superlatives, declension of, § 37. L. 32. 5. Irregular forms of, § 39. L. 32. 4.
Comparison of adverbs, § 106.
Composing German, Exercises in, L. 25. Models for, p. 449.
Compounds, formation of, § 2. 6. 7. Accent of, § 2. 10.
Compound verbs, § 89. Separable, § 90. L. 51. Paradigm of a compound separable, § 92. Compounds inseparable, § 95. L. 54.
Conditional mood, obs. on the several uses of, § 144. 1. 2. 3, &c. L. 56.
Conjugation of verbs, § 75. Regular, L. 37. Irregular, L. 47.
Conjunctions, § 117. Syntax of, § 156. Examples, illustrating the use of, L. 69.
Consonants, classification and pronunciation of, L. 11. IV. V.
Correlatives, § 156. 2. *g*.
Da, compounded with other words, § 103. L. 52. 2.
Dafür (nichts dafür können), L. 45. 6.
Das, peculiar use of, § 62. 1. § 134. 1.
Daß, its use, § 156. 2. *b*. L. 69. 9.
Dative, after certain prepositions, § 116. Peculiar uses of, § 129. 1. 2. 3, &c. § 134. 8. After verbs compounded with er, ver, &c., § 130. After adjectives, § 131.
Declension, of the article, § 4. Of nouns, § 12. Old form, § 13. New form, § 14. Of adjectives, § 27. Of comparatives and superlatives, § 37. Of adjective, article, noun, demonst. and poss. pronouns, L. 30. 9.
Demonstrative pronouns, § 61. § 62. L. 10, 44.
Denn, L. 69. 10
Der, (determinative) when absolute, its form in the gen. plural, § 63. 2. (relative) its use, § 65. 2.
Derjenige, L. 41.
Derivation and composition of words, § 2. Derivatives, secondary, § 2. 3. 4. 5.
Dero and Ihro, p. 312. (*Note*).
Deß (deſſen), when used, § 62. 4
Deßhalb, deßwegen, L. 53. 6.
Deſto, L. 32. 10.
Determinative pronouns, § 63 L. 41.
Dieſer and jener distinguished, § 62. 2.
Dieſes, dies, peculiar use of, § 62. 1. § 134. 1.
Dimidiative numerals, how formed, § 49.
Diminutives, § 10. L. 24. 1. 2. Gender of pronouns referring to, § 134. 2. L. 28. 4.
Distinctive numerals, how formed, § 51. 1. 2.
Diphthongs, sounds of, L. 2. III.
Distributive numerals, how formed, § 46.
Doch, § 156. 2. *c*. L. 69. 11.
Drei and zwei, when declined, § 44. 4.
Dürfen, conjugation of, § 83. 2. Remarks on, § 83. 9.
Eben, before a demonstrative, § 62. 6.
Ei, termination, § 10.
Eigen, L. 16 3.
Ein, one, how declined, § 44. 2. 3
Einander, its use, § 60. 3.
Einige, etliche, etwas, § 53.
Emp and ent, § 97. 2.
En, suffix, forming adjectives, § 25. L. 15. 5.
Entgegen, § 112. 5.
Er and ver, § 97. 3. 4.
Erinnern, L. 62. 1.
Erſt, L. 69. 14.
Es, peculiar use of, § 57. 8 § 134. 1. 5.
Es ſei denn, L. 69. 10.
Etwa, L. 69. 15.
Etwas, L. 65. 4.
Ew., L. 27. 3. (*Note.*)
Etymology, § 1.
Euphonic letters, § 2. 8. § 11. 2

Digitized by Google

Fehlen, L. 57. 5.
Feminine nouns, indeclinable in the singular, § 12. 4. Exceptions to this, p. 277. (*Note*).
Foreign nouns, § 16. Old declension of, § 17. New declension of, § 18. Partly of the old and partly of the new, § 19.
Frau, Fraulein, L. 70.
Für, L. 67. 2.
Future tenses, observ. on the use of, § 141. 1. 2. L. 38. 4.
Ganz and halb, before names of places, § 53. 2. Ganz und gar, L. 19. 3.
Gar, L. 69. 16.
Ge, prefix of nouns, § 2. 3. § 11. 3. Prefixed to the past participle, § 69. 4. Inserted between the prefix and the radical in compound verbs separable, § 93. 3. § 99. 3. Excluded from the perfect participle of compound verbs inseparable, § 94.
Geben, L. 57. 4.
Gegen, L. 67. 3.
Gegenüber, L. 66. 5.
Gender, the natural and grammatical, § 6. 1. 2. Rules of, § 7. Gender of compounds and foreign words, § 8.
Genitive, limiting a noun, § 123. Limiting an adjective, § 124. With the verbs achten, &c., § 125. After reflexive verbs, § 126. After the impersonal es gelüstet mich, &c., § 126. 1. After anklagen, belehren, &c., § 127. Nouns in, used as adverbs, § 128. L. 61. 8. With prepositions, L. 60.
Genug, L. 53. 7.
Gern, L. 69. 17.
Gleich, L. 69. 18.
Haben, when and how used as an auxiliary, § 70. 3. 4. § 71. 2. L. 48. Paradigm of, § 72. 1. § 73.
Haft, suffix, § 25.
Halb, § 53. 2.
Halben or Halber, § 110. 3. L. 60. 4.
Halben, wegen and um – willen with the genitive of personal pronouns, § 57. 1. L. 60. 6.
Haus, nach or zu, L. 43. 2.
Heißen, L. 49. 1. *obs.*
Heit, suffix, § 10.
Her and hin, § 103. 3. 4. L. 52.
Herr, L. 70.
Hin, L. 52.
Hoch, form of, in the comparative § 40. 1.
Helen lassen, L. 49. 6.
Hundert and tausend as collectives, § 44. 6.
Ihro and Dero, p. 312. (*Note*).
Immer, L. 69. 19.
Imperative mood, observations on the several uses of, § 145. 1 2. L. 50. 5. Past participle, n place of, § 145. 3.
Imperfect, observations on the use of, § 138. 1. 2. 3.
Impersonal verbs, § 88. L. 57.
In, L. 68. 4.
In or inn, feminine terminations, § 10.
Indefinite numerals, how formed, § 53.
Indefinite pronouns, § 59.
Indicative mood, for the imperative § 142. 2. L. 38.
Infinitive mood, use of, in place of a past participle, § 74. 3. *Without* zu, § 146. 1. L. 49. *With* zu, § 146. 2. As a verbal substantive, § 146. 3. Active form used passively, § 146. 4. L. 49. 6. Position of, § 158. *b*. Answering after bleiben, gehen &c., to our present participle, L. 49.
Interjection, § 118. § 157.
Interrogative conjugation, L. 6.
Interrogative pronouns, § 66, 67. L. 13.
Irgend, L. 65. 6.
Irregular verbs, commonly so called, list of, § 78. 1. Thos properly so called, § 81, 82, 83.
Isch, suffix, § 25.
Iterative numerals how formed, § 50.
Ja, L. 69. 20.
Je, used in forming distributives, § 46. Before comparatives, § 156 2. *d*. L. 32. 10.
Jeder, § 53. Jedweder, § 53.
Jeglicher, § 53. L. 42. 3.
Jemandem (dative), remark on the use of, § 59. 3.

Digitized by Google

Jener and dieſer, distinguished, § 62. 2.
Jenes, peculiar use of, § 62. 1.
Kein, § 53. 3. L. 69. 22.
Keines von beiden, L. 65. 2.
Keit, suffix, § 10.
Können, conjugation of, § 83. 3. Remarks on, § 83. 10. L. 45. 5.
Laſſen, remarks upon, p. 338. (*Note*). L. 45. 11.
Lein, diminutives in, § 10. L. 24. 1. Represented by a pronoun masculine or feminine, § 134. 2.
Letters of union, § 2 7. 8. 9. Of euphony between suffix and radical, § 11. 2.
Lich, § 25.
List, of (so called) irregular verbs, § 78. 1.
Man, its use, § 59. 2. L. 19.
Mancher, § 53.
Mehr, its two form in plural, § 40. 2. Mehr, mehrere, § 53.
Mit, L. 66. 6.
Mixed conjugation, how produced, § 81.
Mixed declension of adjectives, § 32. L. 16. Rule for the use of, § 33.
Mögen, conjugation of, § 83. 4. Remarks on, § 83. 11. L. 45. 7.
Moods, § 68. 5. Indicative, § 142. Subjunctive, § 143. L. 55. Conditional, § 144. L. 56. Imperative, § 145. L. 50. 5. Infinitive, § 146.
Multiplicative numerals, how formed, § 47.
Müſſen, conjugation of, § 83. 5. Remarks on, § 83. 12. L. 45. 8.
Nach, § 112. 8. L. 66. 8.
Nah, form of in superl., § 40. 1.
Negative conjugation, L. 21.
Nichts dafür können, L. 45. 6.
Nicht wahr ? L. 21. 5.
Noch, L. 69. 23.
Niemandem, dative, remark on the use of, § 59. 3.
Nominative, the case of the *subject*, § 121. Seldom omitted, § 121. 1.
Nouns, common and proper, § 5. 1. Collective and abstract, § 5. 2. Gender of, § 6. Derivation of, § 9. Declension of, § 12. Old form of, § 13. L. 8. 4. New form of, § 14. L. 30. 2. Obs. on irregular, § 15. Foreign, § 16. Proper, declension of, § 20, 21, 22. Of measure, number &c. § 123.
Numbers, § 3. 3.
Numerals, § 43. Cardinals, § 44. Ordinals, § 45. Distributives, § 46. Multiplicatives, § 47. Variatives, § 48. Dimidiatives, § 49. Iteratives, § 50. Distinctives, § 51. 1. 2. Partitives, § 52. Indefinites, § 53.
Nun, L. 69. 24.
Nur, L. 69. 25.
Obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, § 156. 2. a.
Ob, L. 66. 10.
Ohne, L. 67. 4. Followed by the infinitive, L. 49. 5.
Ordinal numbers, § 45. Rules for forming, § 45. 2. 4. Interrogative form, § 45. 5.
Paradigms of haben and ſein, § 72. 1. 2. Of werden, § 72. 3. Of a verb of the Old form, § 78. Of irregular verbs, § 83. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. Of a passive verb, § 85. Of a reflexive verb, § 87. Of a compound verb, § 92.
Participles, their form and meaning, § 69. L. 37. 1. 2. Declined like adjectives, § 34. 4. L. 37. 4. Past participle for the imperative, § 145. 3. L. 50. 3. Place of the past part. of the mood auxiliaries, supplied by the infinitive, § 74. 3. Cases of, § 147. 1. Uses of part. in German restricted, § 147. 2. 3. Present part., its agreement with its noun, § 148. Usually attributive, § 148. 1. With the article often used substantively, § 148. 2. Not, as in English, an abstract verbal noun, § 148. 3. Its position, § 148. 4. Adverbial power of, § 148. 5. Preterite part., peculiar uses of, § 149. 2. Used absolutely, § 149. 3. Future part., § 150. L. 50. 4.
Particles, p. 388 (*Note*), L. 51. 54.
Partitive numerals, how formed, § 52.
Passive verb, mode of forming, § 84. 1. Paradigm of, § 85. L. 58. Advantage over the English,

Digitized by Google

§ 84. 3. Other methods expressing passivity, § 84. 4.
Perfect tense, obs. on the use of, § 139. 1. 2. 3. L. 38. 3.
Personal pronouns, construed with halben, wegen and um – willen, § 57. 2. Third pers. of, representing things without life, § 57. 3. Third pers. plural used for the second in addressing persons, § 57. 6. L. 27. 5. used as reflexives, § 60. 4. L. 29. 1.
Phrases, idiomatic, p. 446.
Pluperfect tense, § 140.
Plural, nouns having no, § 15. 2. Nouns, having two forms in the, § 15. 3.
Possessive pronouns, forms of, § 58. 2. L. 12. 2. How declined, when conjunctive, § 58. 3. When absolute, § 58. 4. 5. 6. L. 35. Place of, supplied by the def. art. § 58. 8.
Predicate, of a sentence, 119. § Nouns, when used as, § 122. List of adjectives, always used as, §. 27. 2.
Prefixes of verbs, simple separable, § 90. Compound separable, § 91. L. 51. When separated from the radical, § 93. Inseparable, § 94. 95. Compound prefixes inseparable, § 96. L. 54. Separable and inseparable, § 98. L. 54. 2.
Prepositions, table of, § 108. Those construed with genitive, § 109. 110. L. 60. With dative, § 111. 112. L. 20. 1. With accusative, § 113. 114. L. 20. 2. With the dat., or acc., § 115. 116. L. 20. 3. Examples of the use of, L. 66. 67. 68. Syntax of, § 152. 153. 154. 155.
Primitives, § 2. 2.
Pronouns, table of, § 55. Personal, § 56. 57. L. 27; 28. Possessive, § 58. Indefinite, § 59. Reflexive and reciprocal, § 60. L. 29. Demonstrative, § 61. 62. L. 10; 44. Determinative, § 63. L. 41. Relative, § 64. 65. L. 39. Interrogative, § 66. 67. L. 13. Syntax of, § 134.
Proper names, declension of, § 20. L. 30 4. In the plural, § 21. Of countries &c., § 22. 23.
Quantity, weight &c., words of, when qualified by numerals, rarely in the plural, p. 279. *Note.* L. 59.
Recht, with haben, L. 36. 2.
Reciprocal pronouns, § 60. L. 29. 6.
Reflexive pronouns, § 60. L. 29. Special form for, in the dat. and acc., § 60. 4.
Reflexive verbs, how produced, § 86. 1. L. 29. 9. Some with the dat. and some with the acc. of the recip. pron., § 86. 2. Often equivalent to passives, § 86. 4. Paradigm of a reflexive, § 87.
Reihe, L. 46. 2.
Relative pronouns, § 64. 65. L. 39. Can not (welcher excepted) be joined with a noun like an adjective, § 65. 1. Never omitted, § 134. 4.
Repetition of the adject. when referring to nouns of different genders, § 135. 5.
Sal, ſchaft, ſel, terminations, § 10.
Sam, termination, § 25.
Schon, L. 69. 26.
Schuld ſein, L. 46. 2.
Schuldig ſein, L. 61. 5.
Sein, when and how used as an auxiliary, § 70. 5. § 71. 3. 4. L. 48. Paradigm of, § 72. 2. § 73.
Sein, (possess.), peculiar use of, § 135. 4.
Seit, L. 66. 11.
Selbſt or ſelber, § 57. 4. L. 29.
Sentence, essential parts of, § 119. § 158. 2. Simple and compound, § 119. Principal and subordinate, § 160. L. 39.
Singular, nouns having no, § 15.
So, § 156. 2 *f.* L. 69. 27.
Solch, when not declined, § 63. 4. (*Note*).
Sollen, conjugation of, § 83. 6. Remarks on, § 83. 13. L. 45. 9. As imperative, L. 50. 5. *obs.*
Some, L. 39. 4.
Spazieren gehen, fahren, &c., L. 49. 2.
Speech, parts of, § 3. 1. Those inflected, § 3. 2.

Digitized by Google

Subject of a sentence, § 119. § 158. 2.
Subjunctive mood, observations on the several uses of, § 143. L. 2. 3., &c. L. 55.
Suffixes, used in forming nouns, § 10. Used in forming adjectives, § 25.
Synoptical view of ſein, haben, werden, § 73.
Syntax, § 119.
Tauſend and hundert, employed as collectives, § 44. 6.
Tenses, § 68. 6. L. 37. Mode of conjugating, § 75. 4. L. 37. Terminations of, § 76. Present, syntax of, § 137. Imperfect, syntax of, § 138. Perfect, syntax of, § 139. Pluperfect, syntax of, § 140. Futures, syntax of, § 141.
Thum, suffix, § 10.
Thun, not used as an auxiliary, § 137. 6.
Ueber, L. 68. 5.
Um, § 114. 4. L. 67. 5.
Um—willen, § 110. 2. 5. L. 60.
Umhin (nicht—können), L. 45. 6.
Umlauts, sounds of, L. 2. 2. Use of, p. 275. (*Note*).
Ung, suffix, § 10.
Unrecht haben, L. 36. 2.
Unter, L. 68. 6.
Unter vier Augen, L. 68. 6.
Variative numerals, how formed, § 48.
Verbs, classification of, according to form and meaning, § 68. 2. 3. Moods and tenses of, § 68. 5. 6. Auxiliary, § 70. Old and new conjugations of, § 75. Paradigm of one of the Old form, § 78. List of those of the Old form, § 78. 1. Paradigm of one of the New form, § 80. Those of the Mixed conjugation, § 81. 82. Paradigms of dürfen, können, mögen, müſſen, ſollen, wiſſen and wollen, § 83. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. Passive, § 84. Paradigm of a passive, § 85. Reflexive, § 86. Paradigm of a reflexive, § 87. Impersonal, § 88. Compound, § 88. 89. Paradigm of a compound, § 92. Syntax of, § 136.
Viel, when declined, § 53. 3. L. 65. 7. 8. 9.
Vielleicht, L. 69. 30.
Von, § 112. 12. L. 66. 12. Before names, § 23. 3. With the dative instead of the genitive, § 123. 7
Vor, L. 68. 7.
Vowels, classification and pronunciation of, L. 2. 1.
Was, § 67. 3. § 134. 1. L. 13; 40.
Was, for warum, § 67. 3.
Was für ein, § 66. 4. 5. § 67. 1. 2 L. 13.
Wegen, L. 60.
Welcher (relative), genitive of, when used, § 65. 1.
Wenig, when declined, § 53. 3. L. 65. 7. 8. 9.
Wer and was (relatives), their use and position, § 65. 3. 4. 5. L. 40. As interrogatives, § 66. 3. L. 13.
Werden, auxiliary of the first class, § 70. 2. Paradigm of, § 72. 3. § 73. L. 46.
Werth ſein, L. 61. 6.
Wie, L. 69.
Wie befinden Sie ſich, L. 29. 10.
Wie viel, § 45. 5.
Wiſſen, conjugation of, § 83. 7. Placed before an infinitive, L. 49. 7.
Wo, compounded with other words, § 103. L. 52.
Wohl, L. 69. 34.
Wollen, conjugation of, § 83. 8. Remarks on, § 83. 14. L. 45. 10.
Worden, for geworden, § 84. 2.
Zu, § 112. 9. 13. L. 66. 13. When between the parts of a compound verb, § 93.
Zufolge, § 110. 8. L. 60.
Zu Grunde gehen, richten, L. 43. 6.
Zu Hauſe, L. 43. 2.
Zwei and drei, when declined, § 44. 4.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

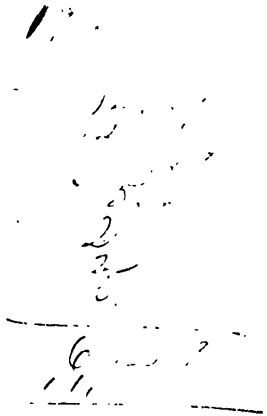
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

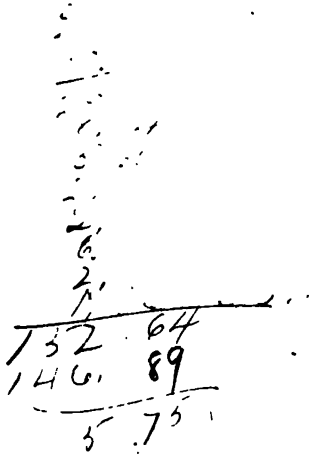
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google







Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google